

The Herbal

Or

General History of Plants

By

John Gerard
And
Thomas Johnson

Volume 5
(Book 3 & Appendices)

Published by the Ex-classics Project, 2020

<http://www.exclassics.com>

Public Domain

CONTENTS

GERARD'S HERBAL	9
Volume 5.....	9
The Proem.....	10
CHAP. 1. Of Roses.	11
CHAP. 2. Of the Musk Roses.	19
CHAP. 3. Of the Wild Roses.	24
CHAP. 4. Of the Bramble or Blackberry bush.	28
CHAP. 5. Of Holly Roses, or Cistus.....	32
CHAP. 6. Of other Plants Reckoned for Dwarf Kinds of Cistus.....	41
CHAP. 7. Of Cistus Ledon, and Ladanum.....	46
CHAP. 8. Of Rosemary.	55
CHAP. 9. Of Upright Woodbine.....	59
CHAP. 10. Of Senna.	63
CHAP. 11. Of Bastard Senna.....	66
CHAP. 12. Of Liquorice.	70
CHAP. 13. Of Milk Trefoil or Shrub Trefoil.....	73
CHAP. 14. Of Bastard Milk Trefoils.	79
CHAP. 15. Of the Venomous Tree Trefoil.	82
CHAP. 16. Of the Shrub Trefoil called also Makebate.	84
CHAP. 17. Of Broom, and Broomrape.....	86
CHAP. 18. Of Base Broom or Greenweed.	92
CHAP. 19. Of Spanish Base Brooms.....	95
CHAP. 20. Of Furze, Gorse, Whin, or Prickly Broom.	97
CHAP. 21. Of Cammock Furze, Rest-Harrow, or Petty Whin.....	101
CHAP. 22. Of Gooseberry, or Feaberry Bush.	103
CHAP. 23. Of Barberries.	106
CHAP. 24. Of the Whitethorn, or Hawthorn Tree.....	108
CHAP. 25. Of Goat's Thorn.....	110
CHAP. 26. Of the Egyptian Thorn.....	114
CHAP. 27. Of Box Thorn, and the juice thereof called Lycium.	116
CHAP. 28. Of Ram or Hart's Thorn.....	118
CHAP. 29. Of Christ's Thorn.....	122
CHAP. 30. Of Buckthorn, or Laxative Ram.....	124
CHAP. 31. Of the Holm, Holly, or Hulver Tree.....	127

CHAP. 32. Of the Oak.	129
CHAP. 33. Of the Scarlet Oak.	133
CHAP. 34. Of the Great Scarlet Oak.	136
CHAP. 35. Of the Great Holm Oak.	138
CHAP. 36. Of the Cork Oak.	141
CHAP. 37. Of the Gall Tree.	143
CHAP. 38. Of Mistletoe.	146
CHAP. 39. Of the Cedar Tree.	149
CHAP. 40. Of the Pitch Tree.	152
CHAP. 41. Of the Pine Tree.	154
CHAP. 42. Of the Wild Pine Tree.	157
Of Resins.	163
CHAP. 43. Of the Fir or Deal Tree.	166
CHAP. 44. Of the Larch Tree.	169
CHAP. 45. Of the Cypress Tree.	173
CHAP. 46. Of the Tree of Life.	176
CHAP. 47. Of the Yew Tree.	178
CHAP. 48. Of the Juniper Tree.	181
CHAP. 49. Of the Prickly Cedar, or Cedar Juniper.	185
CHAP. 50. Of Savin.	188
CHAP. 51. Of Tamarisk.	191
CHAP. 51. Of Heath, Heather, or Ling.	194
CHAP. 53. Of Heath of Jericho.	202
CHAP. 54. Of the Chaste Tree.	204
CHAP. 55. Of the Willow Tree.	206
CHAP. 56. Of the Olive Tree.	211
CHAP. 57. Of Privet or Prim-Print.	214
CHAP. 58. Of Mock Privet.	216
CHAP. 59. Of Bastard Privet.	219
CHAP. 60. Of the Fruitless Privet.	221
CHAP. 61. Of the White and Blue Pipe Privet.	223
CHAP. 62. Of Widow-Wail, or Spurge Olive.	226
CHAP. 63. Of German Olive Spurge.	228
CHAP. 64. Of Spurge Flax.	230
CHAP. 65. Of Spurge Laurel.	232

CHAP. 66. Of Rose Bay, or Oleander.	234
CHAP. 67. Of Dwarf Rose Bay.	236
CHAP. 68. Of the Bay or Laurel Tree.	237
CHAP. 69. Of the Wild Bay Tree.	240
CHAP. 70. Of the Box Tree.	242
CHAP. 71. Of the Myrtle Tree.	244
CHAP. 72. Of Sweet Willow or Gale.	248
CHAP. 73. Of Worts or Whortleberries.	250
CHAP. 74. Of the Marsh Whortleberries or Fen-Berries.	256
CHAP. 75. Of Cloudberry.	257
CHAP. 76. Of Shrub Heartwort of Ethiopia.	258
CHAP. 77. Of the Elder Tree.	259
CHAP. 78. Of Marsh or Water Elder.	263
CHAP. 79. Of Danewort, Wallwort, or Dwarf Elder.	265
CHAP. 80. Of Bean Trefoil.	267
CHAP. 81. Of Judas Tree.	269
CHAP. 82. Of the Carob Tree, or Saint John's Bread.	271
CHAP. 83. Of <i>Cassia Fistula</i> , or Pudding Pipe.	274
CHAP. 84. Of the Lentisk, or Mastic Tree.	276
CHAP. 85. Of the Turpentine Tree.	278
CHAP. 86. Of the Frankincense Tree.	281
CHAP. 87. Of Fistic Nuts.	283
CHAP. 88. Of the Bladder Nut.	285
CHAP. 89. Of the Hazel Tree.	287
CHAP. 90. Of the Walnut Tree.	290
CHAP. 91. Of the Chestnut Tree.	292
CHAP. 92. Of the Beech Tree.	296
CHAP. 93. Of the Almond Tree.	298
CHAP. 94. Of the Peach Tree.	301
CHAP. 95. Of the Apricot Tree.	304
CHAP. 96. Of the Pomegranate Tree.	306
CHAP. 97. Of the Quince Tree.	310
CHAP. 98. Of the Medlar Tree.	313
CHAP. 99. Of the Pear Tree.	316
CHAP. 100. Of the Wild Pear Tree.	318

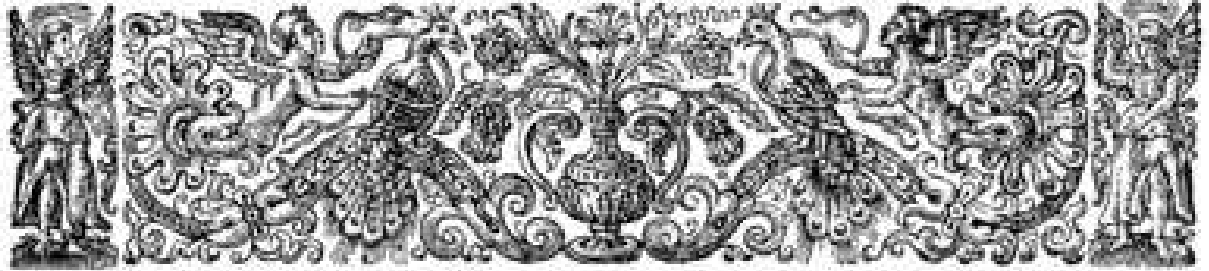
CHAP. 101. Of the Apple Tree.....	320
CHAP. 102. Of the Wilding or Crab Tree.	323
CHAP. 103. Of the Citron, Lemon, Orange, and Assyrian Apple trees.	325
CHAP. 104. Of the Cornel Tree.....	330
CHAP. 105. Of the Female Cornel or Dogberry Tree.	332
CHAP. 106. Of Spindle Tree or Prickwood.	334
CHAP. 107. Of the Black Alder Tree.	337
CHAP. 108. Of the Service Tree.	339
CHAP. 109. Of the Ash Tree.	341
CHAP. 110. Of the Wild Ash, otherwise called Quickbeam or Quicken Tree.....	343
CHAP. 111. Of Curriers' Sumach.	345
CHAP. 112. Of Red Sumach.	347
CHAP. 113. Of the Alder Tree.	349
CHAP. 114. Of the Birch Tree.....	351
CHAP. 115. Of the Hornbeam, or Hardbeam Tree.....	353
CHAP. 116. Of the Elm Tree.....	355
CHAP. 117. Of the Lime or Linden Tree.	359
CHAP. 118. Of the Maple Tree.	361
CHAP. 119. Of the Poplar Tree.	363
CHAP. 120. Of the Plane Tree.....	368
CHAP. 121. Of the Wayfaring Tree.	370
CHAP. 122. Of the Bead Tree.	372
CHAP. 123. Of the Lotus, or Nettle Tree.	375
CHAP. 124. Of Italian Wood of Life, or Pockwood, vulgarly called <i>Lignum vitæ</i> ...	378
CHAP. 125. Of the Strawberry Tree.....	380
CHAP. 126. Of the Plum Tree.	382
CHAP. 127. Of Sebesten, or the Assyrian Plum.....	387
CHAP. 128. Of the Indian Plum, or Mirobalans.....	389
CHAP. 129. Of the Jujube Tree.	392
CHAP. 130. Of the Cherry Tree.	394
CHAP. 131. Of the Mulberry Tree.	401
CHAP. 132. Of the Sycomore Tree.	404
CHAP. 133. Of the Fig Tree.	406
CHAP. 134. Of the Prickly Indian Fig Tree.	409
CHAP. 135. Of the Arched Indian Fig Tree.	411

CHAP. 136. Of Adam's-Apple Tree, or the West-Indian Plantain.	413
CHAP. 137. Of the Date Tree.	416
CHAP. 138. Of the Wild Date Tree.	419
CHAP. 139. Of the Drunken Date Tree.	422
CHAP. 140. Of the Indian Nut Tree.	424
CHAP. 141. Of the Dragon Tree.	427
CHAP. 142. Of the Sassafras or Ague Tree.	429
CHAP. 143. Of the Storax Tree.	431
CHAP. 144. Of the Sorrowful Tree or Indian Mourner.	433
CHAP. 145. Of the Balsam Tree.	435
CHAP. 146. Of a kind of Balm, or Balsam Tree.	439
CHAP. 147. Of the Canel, or Cinnamon Tree.	442
CHAP. 148. Of Gum Lac, and his Rotten Tree.	445
CHAP. 149. Of the Indian Leaf.	447
CHAP. 150. Of the Clove Tree.	449
CHAP. 151. Of the Nutmeg Tree.	451
CHAP. 152. Of the Pepper Plant.	454
CHAP. 153. Of Bastard Pepper, called Betel, or Betre.	458
CHAP. 154. Of Grains, or Grains of Paradise.	460
CHAP. 155. Of Yucca.	461
CHAP. 156. Of the Fruit Anacardium, and Caious, or Caiocus.	463
CHAP. 157. Of Indian Morris Bells, and divers other Indian Fruits.	465
CHAP. 158. Of the Vomiting and Purging Nuts.	467
CHAP. 159. Of Divers Sorts of Indian Fruits.	469
CHAP. 160. Of Sundew, Youthwort, or Ros Solis.	482
CHAP. 161. Of Moss of trees.	484
CHAP. 162. Of Ground Moss.	486
CHAP. 163. Of Liverwort.	493
CHAP. 164. Of Lungwort, or wood Liverwort, and Oyster-green.	496
CHAP. 165. Of Sea Moss, or Coralline.	503
CHAP. 166. Of Coral.	508
CHAP. 167. Of Mushrooms, or Toadstools.	512
CHAP. 168. Of Great Toothwort, or Clowns' Lungwort.	520
CHAP. 169. Of Sanders.	522
CHAP. 170. Of Stony Wood, or Wood Made Stones.	524

CHAP. 171. Of the Goose Tree, Barnacle Tree, or the Tree bearing Geese.	525
AN APPENDIX OR ADDITION of certain Plants omitted in the former History...	528
CHAP. 1. Of the Maracoc or Passion-Flower.....	529
CHAP. 2. Of Ribes or Red Currants.....	531
CHAP. 3. Of Parsley Break-Stone, and Bastard Rupturewort.....	533
CHAP. 4. Of Heath Spurge and Rock Rose.....	535
CHAP. 5. Of Bastard Dwarf Box.....	538
CHAP. 6. Of Winged Bindweed, or Quamoclit.....	539
CHAP. 7. Of the Sensitive Herb.	541
CHAP. 8. Of the Staff Tree, and Evergreen Privet.....	544
CHAP. 9. Of Mock Willow.	546
CHAP. 10. Of the Strawberry Bay.....	547
CHAP. 11. Of the Cherry-Bay.	548
CHAP. 12. Of the Evergreen Thorn.....	549
CHAP. 13. Of the Egyptian Nap, or Great Jujube Tree.....	551
CHAP. 14. Of the Persian Plum.....	553
CHAP. 15. Of Gesner's Wild Quince.....	554
CHAP. 16. Of Tamarind.	554
CHAP. 17. Of the Mamoera, the Male and Female.....	557
CHAP. 18. Of the Clove-Berry Tree.	559
CHAP. 19. Of Guaiacum, or Indian Pockwood.....	561
CHAP. 20. Of the Guava, or Orange-Bay.	564
CHAP. 21. Of the Coral Tree.....	566
CHAP. 22. Of the Sea Lentil.	568
CHAP. 23. Of the Sea Feather.	570
CHAP. 24. Of the Sea Fan.	572
CHAP. 25. Of China, and Bastard China.....	573
CHAP. 26. Of Costus.....	576
CHAP. 27. Of Drake's Root, or Contrayerva.....	578
CHAP. 28. Of Lignum Aloes.....	580
CHAP. 29. Of Gedwar.	582
CHAP. 30. Of Rosewood.....	584
CHAP. 31. Of Divers Other Plants Previously Omitted.....	585
Glossary	595
Glossary of Latin descriptive words in plant names.....	608

GERARD'S HERBAL

Volume 5



**THE THIRD BOOK OF
THE HISTORY OF
PLANTS**

*Containing the Description, Place, Time, Names, Nature, and Virtues, of Trees,
Shrubs, Bushes, Fruit-bearing Plants, Resins, Gums, Roses, Heath, Mosses: some
Indian Plants, and other rare Plants not remembered in the Proem to the first book.
Also Mushrooms, Coral, and their several kinds, &c.*

The Proem.

Having finished the treatise of herbs and plants in general, used for meat, medicine, or sweet smelling use, only some few omitted for want of perfect instruction, and also being hindered by the slackness of the cutters or gravers of the those; which wants we intend to supply in this third and last part.

CHAP. 1. Of Roses.

The Kinds.

The plant of Roses, though it be a shrub full of prickles, yet it had been more fit and convenient to have placed it with the most glorious flowers of the world, than to insert the same here among base and thorny shrubs: for the Rose doth deserve the chiefest and most principal place among all flowers whatsoever; being not only esteemed for his beauty, virtues, and his fragrant and odoriferous smell; but also because it is the honour and ornament of our English sceptre, as by the conjunction appeareth in the uniting of those two most royal houses of Lancaster and York. Which pleasant flowers deserve the chiefest place in crowns and garlands, as Anacreon Thus a most ancient Greek poet (whom Henricus Stephanus hath translated in a gallant Latin verse) affirms in those verses of a Rose, beginning thus

Rosa honos, decusque florum,
Rosa, cura, amorque Veris.
Rosa, cœlitum voluptas,
Roseis puer Cytheres.
Caput implicat Corollis,
Charitum chorus frequentans.

The Rose is the honour and beauty of flowers,
The Rose is the care and love of the spring,
The Rose is the pleasure of th'heavenly powers:
The Boy of fair Venus, Cythera's darling,
Doth wrap in his head round with garlands of Rose,
When to the dances of the Graces he goes.

Augerius Busheckius speaking of the estimation and honour of the Rose, reporteth that the Turks can by no means endure to see the leaves of Roses fall to the ground, because that some of them have dreamed, that the first or most ancient Rose did spring of the blood of Venus; and others of the Muhammadans say, that it sprang of the sweat of Muhammad.

But there are many kinds of Roses differing either in the bigness of the flowers, or the plant itself, roughness or smoothness, or in the multitude of the flowers, or in the fewness, or else in colour and smells: for divers of them are high and tall, others short and low; some have five leaves, others very many. Theophrastus telleth of a certain rose growing about Philippi, with an hundred leaves, which the inhabitants brought forth of Pangæum, and planted it in Campania, as Pliny saith; which we hold to be the Holland Rose, that divers call the Provence Rose, but not properly.

Moreover, some be red, others white, and most of them or all, sweetly smelling, especially those of the garden.

1 *Rosa alba.*
The White Rose.



Fig. 1786. The White Rose (1)

2 *Rosa rubra.*
The red Rose.



Fig. 1787. The Red Rose (2)

The Description.

1. If the curious could so be content, one general description might serve to distinguish the whole stock or kindred of the Roses, being things so well known: notwithstanding I think it not amiss to say something of them severally, in hope to satisfy all. The white Rose hath very long stalks of a woody substance, set or armed with divers sharp prickles: the branches whereof are likewise full of prickles, whereon do grow leaves consisting of five leaves for the most part, set upon a middle rib by couples; the odd leaf standing at the point of the same, and every one of those small leaves somewhat snipped about the edges, somewhat rough, and of an overworn green colour: from the bosom whereof shoot forth long footstalks, whereon do grow very fair double flowers, of a white colour, and very sweet smell, having in the middle a few yellow threads or chives; which being past there succeedeth a long fruit, green at the first, but red when it is ripe, and stuffed with a downy choking matter, wherein is contained seed as hard as stones. The root is long, tough, and of a woody substance.

2. The Red Rose groweth very low in respect of the former: the stalks are shorter, smoother, and browner of colour: the leaves are like, yet of a worse dusty colour: the flowers grow on the tops of the branches, consisting of many leaves, of a perfect red colour: the fruit is likewise red when it is ripe: the root also woody.

3 *Rosa Provincialis, sive Damascena.*
The Prouince, or Damaske Rose.



Fig. 1788. The Provençe or Damask Rose
(3)

5 *Rosa sine spinis.*
The Rose without prickles.

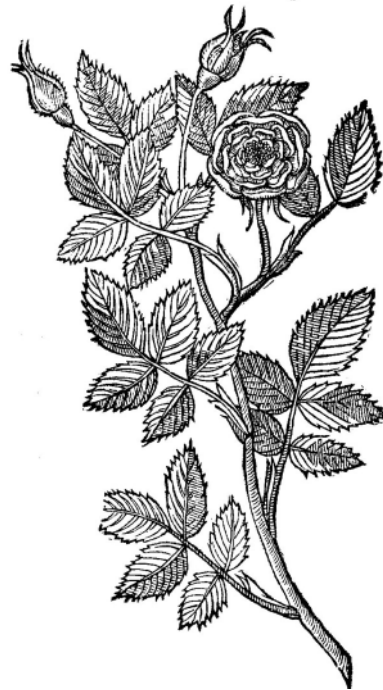


Fig. 1789. The Thornless Rose (5)

3. The common Damask Rose in stature, prickly branches, and in other respects is like the white Rose; the especial difference consisteth in the colour and smell of the flowers; for these are of a pale red colour, and of a more pleasant smell, and fitter for meat or medicine.

4. The *Rosa provincialis minor*, or lesser Provençe Rose differeth not from the former, but is altogether lesser: the flowers and fruit are like: the use in physick also agreeth with the precedent.

5. The Rose without prickles hath many young shoots coming from the root, dividing themselves into divers branches, tough, and of a woody substance as are all the rest of the Roses, of the height of two or three cubits, smooth and plain without any roughness or prickles at all; whereon do grow leaves like those of the Holland Rose, of a shining deep green colour on the upper side, underneath somewhat hoary and hairy. The flowers grow at the tops of the branches, consisting of an infinite number of leaves, greater than those of the Damask Rose, more double, and of a colour between the Red and Damask Roses, of a most sweet smell. The fruit is round, red when it is ripe, and stuffed with the like flocks and seeds of those of the Damask Rose. The root is great, woody, and far spreading.

6 *Rosa Hollandica, five Batava.*
The great Holland Rose, commonly called the great Province Rose.



Fig. 1790. The Great Holland or Provence Rose (6)

6. The Holland or Provence Rose hath divers shoots proceeding from a woody root, full of sharp prickles, dividing itself into divers branches, whereon do grow leaves consisting of five leaves set upon a rough middle rib, and those snipped about the edges: the flowers grow on the tops of the branches, in shape and colour like the Damask Rose, but greater and more double, insomuch that the yellow chives in the middle are hard to be seen; of a reasonable good smell, but not full so sweet as the common Damask Rose: the fruit is like the other of his kind.

We have in our London gardens one of the red Roses, whose flowers are in quantity and beauty equal with the former, but of greater estimation, of a perfect red colour, wherein especially it differeth from the Provence Rose; in stalks, stature, and manner of growing it agreeth with our common red Rose.

The Place.

All these sorts of Roses we have in our London gardens, except that Rose without prickles, which as yet is a stranger in England. The double white Rose doth grow wild in many hedges of Lancashire in great abundance, even as Briers do with us in these southerly parts, especially in a place of the country called Leyland, and in a place called Roughford, not far from Latham. Moreover, in the said Leyland fields doth grow our garden Rose wild, in the ploughed fields among the corn in such abundance, that there may be gathered daily, during the time, many bushels of Roses, equal with the best garden Rose in each respect: the thing that giveth great cause of wonder is, that in a field in the place aforesaid, called Glover's Field, every year that the field is ploughed for corn, that year the field will be spread over with Roses; and when it lieth as they call it ley, and not ploughed, then shall there be but few Roses to be gathered, by the relation of a curious gentleman there dwelling, so often remembered in our history.

Thus our author, but I have heard that the Roses which grow in such plenty in Glover's field, every year the field is ploughed, are no other than Corn Rose, that is, red Poppies, however our author was informed.

The Time.

These flower from the end of May to the end of August, and divers times after, by reason the tops and superfluous branches are cut away in the end of their flowering: & then do they sometimes flower even until October, and after.

The Names.

The Rose is called in Latin *Rosa*: in Greek *Rodon*, (as Plutarch saith) because it sendeth forth plenty of smell.

The middle part of the Roses, that is, the yellow chives, or seeds and tips, is called *Anthos*, and *Flos Rosæ*, the flower of the Rose: in shops, *Anthera*, or the blowing of the rose.

The white parts of the leaves of the flower itself, by which they are fastened to the cups, be named *Ungues* or nails. That is called *Calix*, or the cup, which containeth and holdeth in together the yellow part and leaves of the flower.

Alabastri, are those parts of the cup which are deeply cut, & that compass the flower close about before it be opened, which be in number five, two have beards and two have none, and the fifth hath but half one: most do call them *Cortices Rosarum*, or the husks of the roses: the shoots of the plant of roses, Strabo Gallus in his little garden doth call *Viburna*.

The white Rose is called *Rosa album*: in English, the White Rose: in High Dutch, *Weisz Roosen*: in Low Dutch, *Witte Roosen*: in French, *Rose Blanche*: of Pliny, *Spineola Rosa*, or *Rosa campana*.

The red Rose is called in Latin, *Rosa rubra*: the Frenchmen, *Rose Franche*, *Rose de Provins*, a town in Champagne: of Pliny, *Trachinia*, or *Prænestina*.

The Damask Rose is called of the Italians *Rosa incarnata*: in High Dutch, *Leibfarbige Roosen*: in Low Dutch, *Provencie Roose*: of some, *Rosa provincialis*, or Rose of Provence: in French of some, *Melesia*: the Rose of Melaxo, a city in Asia, from whence some have thought it was first brought into those parts of Europe.

The great Rose, which is generally called the great Provence rose, which the Dutch men cannot endure; for say they, it came first out of Holland, and therefore to be called the Holland Rose: but by all likelihood it came from the Damask rose, as a kind thereof, made better and fairer by art, which seemeth to agree with truth.

The rose without prickles is called in Latin, *Rosa sine spinis*, and may be called in English, the rose without thorns, or the Rose of Austria, because it was first brought from Vienna, the metropolitan city of Austria, and given to that famous herbarist Carolus Clusius.

The Temperature.

The leaves of the flowers of roses, because they do consist of divers parts, have also divers and sundry faculties: for there be in them certain that are earthy and binding, others moist and watery, and sundry that are spiritual and airy parts, which notwithstanding are not all after one sort, for in one kind these excel, in another those, all of them have a predominant or overruling cold temperature, which is nearest to a

mean, that is to say, of such as are cold in the first degree, moist, airy, and spiritual parts are predominant in the White roses, Damask and Musk.

The Virtues.

A. The distilled water of roses is good for the strengthening of the heart, & refreshing of the spirits, and likewise for all things that require a gentle cooling.

B. The same being put into junketting dishes, cakes, sauces, and many other pleasant things, giveth a fine and delectable taste.

C. It mitigateth the pain of the eyes proceeding of a hot cause, bringeth sleep, which also the fresh Roses themselves provoke through their sweet and pleasant smell.

D. The juice of these roses, especially of Damask, doth move to the stool, and maketh the belly soluble: but most effectually that of the Musk roses: next to them is the juice of the Damask, which is more commonly used.

E. The infusion of them doth the same, and also the syrup made thereof, called in Latin *Drosatum*, or *Serapium*: the apothecaries call it Syrup of Roses solutive, which must be made of the infusion in which a great number of the leaves of these fresh roses are divers and sundry times steeped.

F. It is profitable to make the belly loose & soluble, whenas either there is no need of other stronger purgation, or that it is not fit and expedient to use it: for besides those excrements which stick to the bowels, or that in the first and nearest veins remain raw, phlegmatic, and now and then choleric, it purgeth no other excrements, unless it be mixed with certain other stronger medicines.

G. This syrup doth moisten and cool, and therefore it allayeth the extremity of heat in hot burning fevers, mitigateth the inflammations of the entrails, and quenched thirst: it is scarce good for a weak and moist stomach, for it leaveth it more slack and weak.

H. Of like virtue also are the leaves of these preserved in sugar, especially if they be only bruised with the hands, and diligently tempered with sugar, and so heat at the fire rather than boiled.

The Temperature of Red Roses.

There is in the red Roses, which are common everywhere, and in the other that be of a deep purple, called Provence Roses, a more earthy substance, also a drying and binding quality, yet not without certain moisture joined, being in them when they are as yet fresh, which they lose when they be dried: for this cause their juice and infusion doth also make the body soluble, yet not so much, as of the others aforesaid. These roses being dried and their moisture gone, do bind and dry; and likewise cool, but lesser than when they are fresh.

The Virtues.

I. They strengthen the heart, and help the trembling and beating thereof.

K. They give strength to the liver, kidneys, and other weak entrails; they dry and comfort a weak stomach that is flashy and moist; stay the whites and reds, stanch bleedings in any part of the body, stay sweatings, bind and loose, and moisten the body.

L. And they are put into all manner of counterpoisons and other like medicines, whether they be to be outwardly applied or to be inwardly taken, to which they give effectual binding, and certain strengthening quality.

M. Honey of Roses, or *Mel Rosarum*, which is made of them, is most excellent good for wounds, ulcers, issues, and generally for such things as have need to be cleansed and dried.

N. The oil doth mitigate all kinds of heat, and will not suffer inflammations or hot swellings to rise, and being risen it doth at the first assuage them.

The Temperature and Virtues of the parts.

O. The flowers or bloomings of Roses, that is to say, the yellow hairs and tips, do in like manner dry and bind, and that more effectually than of the leaves of the roses themselves: the same temperature the cups and beards be of; but seeing none of these have any sweet smell, they are not so profitable, nor so familiar or beneficial to man's nature: notwithstanding in fluxes at the sea it than avail the chirurgeon greatly, to carry store thereof with him, which doth there prevail much more than at the land.

P. The same yellow called *Anthera*, stayeth not only those lasks and bloody fluxes which do happen at the sea, but those at the land also, and likewise the white flux and red in women, if they be dried, beaten to powder, and two scruples thereof given in red wine, with a little powder of Ginger added thereto: and being at the sea, for want of red wine you may use such liquor as you can get in such extremity.

Q. The little heads or buttons of the Roses, as Pliny writeth, do also stanch bleeding, and stop the lask.

R. The nails or white ends of the leaves of the flowers are good for watering eyes.

S. The juice, infusion, or decoction of Roses, are to be reckoned among those medicines which are soft, gentle, loosing, opening and purging gently the belly, which may be taken at all times and in all places, of every kind or sex of people, both old and young, without danger or peril.

T. The syrup made of the infusion of Roses is a most singular & gentle loosing medicine, carrying downwards choleric humours, opening the stoppings of the liver, helping greatly the yellow jaundice, the trembling of the heart, & taking away the extreme heat in agues and burning fevers which is thus made:

V. Take two pound of Roses, the white ends cut away, put them to steep or infuse in six pints of warm water in an open vessel for the space of twelve hours: then strain them out, and put thereto the like quantity of Roses, and warm the water again, so let it stand the like time: do thus four or five times; in the end add unto that liquor or infusion, four pound of fine sugar in powder; then boil it unto the form of a syrup, upon a gentle fire, continually stirring it until it be cold; then strain it, and keep it for your use, whereof may be taken in white wine, or other liquor, from one ounce unto two.

X. Syrup of the juice of Roses is very profitable for the griefs aforesaid, made in this manner:

Y. Take Roses, the white nails cut away, what quantity you please, stamp them, and strain out the juice, the which you shall put to the fire, adding thereto sugar, according to the quantity of the juice: boiling them on a gentle fire unto a good consistence.

Z. Unto these syrups you may add a few drops of oil of Vitriol, which giveth it a most beautiful colour, and also helpeth the force in cooling hot and burning fevers

and agues: you likewise may add thereto a small quantity of the juice of Lemons, which doth the like.

AA. The conserve of Roses as well that which is crude and raw, as that which is made by ebullition or boiling, taken in the morning fasting, and last at night, strengtheneth the heart, and taketh away the shaking and trembling thereof, strengtheneth the liver, kidneys, and other weak entrails, comforteth a weak stomach that is moist and raw; stayeth the whites and reds in women, and in a word is the most familiar thing to be used for the purposes aforesaid, and is thus made:

BB. Take the leaves of Roses, the nails cut off, one pound, put them into a clean pan; then put thereto a pint and a half of scalding water, stirring them together with a wooden slice, so let them stand to macerate, close covered some two or three hours; then set them to the fire slowly to boil, adding thereto three pounds of sugar in powder, letting them to simmer together according to discretion, some hour or more; then keep it for your use.

CC. The same made another way, but better by many degrees: take Roses at your pleasure, put them to boil in fair water, having regard to the quantity; for if you have many roses, you may take the more water; if fewer, the less water will serve: the which you shall boil at the least three or four hours, even as you would boil a piece of meat, until in the eating they be very tender, at which time the Roses will lose their colour, that you would think your labour lost, and the thing spoiled. But proceed, for though the Roses have lost their colour, the water hath gotten the tincture thereof; then shall you add unto one pound of Roses, four pound of fine sugar in pure powder, and so according to the rest of the roses. Thus shall you let them boil gently after the sugar is put thereto, continually stirring it with a wooden spatula until it be cold, whereof one pound weight is worth six pound of the crude or raw conserve, as well for the virtues and goodness in taste, as also for the beautiful colour.

DD. The making of the crude or raw conserve is very well known, as also sugar roset, and divers other pretty things made of roses and sugar, which are impertinent unto our history, because I intend neither to make thereof an apothecary's shop, nor a sugar baker's storehouse, leaving the rest for our cunning confectioners.

CHAP. 2. Of the Musk Roses.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of Roses planted in gardens, besides those written of in the former chapter, which are of most writers reckoned among the wild Roses, notwithstanding we think it convenient to put them into a chapter between those of the garden and the brier Roses, as indifferent whether to make them of the wild roses, or of the tame, seeing we have made them denizens in our gardens for divers respects, and that worthily.

1 *Rosa Moschata simpliciflora.*
The single Muske rose.



2 *Rosa Moschata multiplex.*
The double Muske rose.



Fig. 1791. The Single Musk Rose (1)

Fig. 1792. The Double Musk Rose (2)

The Description.

1. The single Musk Rose hath divers long shoots of a greenish colour and woody substance, armed with very sharp prickles, dividing itself into divers branches whereon do grow long leaves, smooth & shining, made of divers leaves set upon a middle rib, like the other roses: the flowers grow on the tops of the branches, of a white colour, and pleasant sweet smell, like that of Musk, whereof it took his name; having certain yellow seeds in the middle, as the rest of the roses have: the fruit is red when it is ripe, and filled with such chaffy flocks and seeds as those of the other roses: the root is tough and woody.

2. The double Musk rose differeth not from the precedent in leaves, stalks, and roots, nor in the colour of the flowers, or sweetness thereof, but only in the doubleness of the flowers, wherein consisteth the difference.

3 *Rosa Moschata species maior.*
The great Muske rofe.



Fig. 1793. The Great Musk Rose (3)

4 *Rosa Holofericea.*
The veluet rofe.



Fig. 1794. The Velvet Rose (4)

3. Of these roses we have another in our London gardens, which of most is called the Blush Rose; it flowereth when the Damask rose doth: the flowers hereof are very single, greater than the other Musk roses, and of a white colour, dashed over with a light wash of carnation, which maketh that colour which we call a blush colour: the proportion of the whole plant, as also the smell of the flowers, are like the precedent.

4. The Velvet Rose groweth always very low, like unto the red rose, having his branches covered with a certain hairy or prickly matter, as fine as hairs, yet not so sharp or stiff that it will harm the most tender skin that is: the leaves are like the leaves of the white Rose: the flowers grow at the top of the stalks, doubled with some yellow thrums in the midst, of a deep and black red colour, resembling red crimson velvet, whereupon some have called it the Velvet rose: when the flowers be faded, there follow red berries full of hard seeds, wrapped in a down or woolliness like the others.

5 *Rosa lutea.*
The yellow rofe.



Fig. 1795. The Yellow Rose (5)

‡ 6 *Rosa Lutea multiplex.*
The double yellow rofe.



Fig. 1796. The Double Yellow Rose (6)

5. The Yellow rose which (as divers do report) was by art so coloured, and altered from his first estate, by grafting a wild rose upon a Broom stalk; whereby (say they) it doth not only change his colour, but his smell and force. But for my part I having found the contrary by mine own experience, cannot be induced to believe the report: for the roots and offsprings of this rose have brought forth yellow roses, such as the main stock or mother bringeth out, which event is not to be seen in all other plants that have been grafted. Moreover, the seeds of yellow roses have brought forth yellow roses, such as the flower was from whence they were taken; which they would not do by any conjectural reason, if that of themselves they were not a natural kind of rose. Lastly, it were contrary to that true principle, *Naturæ sequitur fœmina quodque sua*: that is to say; *Every seed and plant bringeth forth fruit like unto itself*, both in shape and nature: but leaving that error, I will proceed to the description: the yellow rose hath brown and prickly stalks or shoots, five or six cubits high, garnished with many leaves, like unto the Musk rose, of an excellent sweet smell, and more pleasant than the leaves of the Eglantine: the flowers come forth among the leaves, and at the top of the branches of a fair gold yellow colour: the thrums in the middle, are also yellow: which being gone, there follow such knops or heads as the other roses do bear.

6. Of this kind there is another more rare and set by, which in stalks, leaves, and other parts is not much different from the last described, only the flower is very double, and it seldom fairly shows itself about London, where it is kept in our chief gardens as a prime rarity.

7 *Rosa Cinnamomea pleno flore.*
The double Cinnamon Rose.



‡ 8 *Rosa Cinnamomea flore simplici.*
The single Cinnamon Rose.



Fig. 1797. The Double Cinnamon Rose (7) Fig. 1798. The Single Cinnamon Rose(8)

7. The Canel or Cinnamon rose, or the rose smelling like Cinnamon, hath shoots of brown colour, four cubits high, beset with thorny prickles, and leaves like unto those of Eglantine, but smaller and greener, of the savour or smell of cinnamon, whereof it took his name, and not of the smell of his flowers (as some have deemed) which have little or no savour at all: the flowers be exceeding double, and yellow in the middle, of a pale red colour, and sometimes of a carnation: the root is of a woody substance.

8. We have in our London gardens another Cinnamon or Canel rose, not differing from the last described in any respect, but only in the flowers. for as the other hath very double flowers, contrariwise these of this plant are very single, wherein is the difference.

The Place.

These Roses are planted in our London gardens, and elsewhere, but not found wild in England.

The Time.

The Musk Rose flowereth in autumn, or the fall of the leaf: the rest flower when the Damask and red Rose do.

The Names.

The first is called *Rosa moschata*, of the smell of Musk, as we have said: in Italian, *Rosa Moschetta*: in French *Roses Musquées*, or *Muscadelles*: in Low Dutch, *Musket roosen*: in English, Musk Rose: the Latin and English titles may serve for the rest.

The Temperature.

The Musk Rose is cold in the first degree, wherein airy and spiritual parts are predominant: the rest are referred to the Brier rose and Eglantine.

The Virtues.

A. Conserve or syrup made of the Musk rose, in manner as before told in the Damask and red roses, doth purge very mightily waterish humours, yet safely, and without all danger, taken in the quantity of an ounce in weight.

B. The leaves of the flowers eaten in the morning, in manner of a salad, with oil, vinegar and pepper, or any other way according to the appetite and pleasure of them that shall eat it, purge very notably the belly of waterish and choleric humours, and that mightily, yet without all peril or pain at all, insomuch as the simplest may use the quantity, according to their own fancy; for if they do desire many stools, or sieges, they are to eat the greater quantity of the leaves; if fewer, the less quantity; as for example: the leaves of twelve or fourteen flowers give six or eight stools, and so increasing or diminishing the quantity, more or fewer, as myself have often proved.

C. The white leaves stramped in a wooden dish with a piece of alum, and the juice strained forth into some glass vessel, dried in the shadow, and kept, is the most fine and pleasant yellow colour that may be devised, not only to limn or wash pictures and imagery in books, but also to colour meats and sauces, which notwithstanding the alum is very wholesome.

There is not anything extant of the others, but are thought to be equal with the white Musk Rose, whereof they are taken and holden to be kinds.

CHAP. 3. Of the Wild Roses.

1 *Rosa sylvestris odora.* The Eglantine, or sweet Brier.

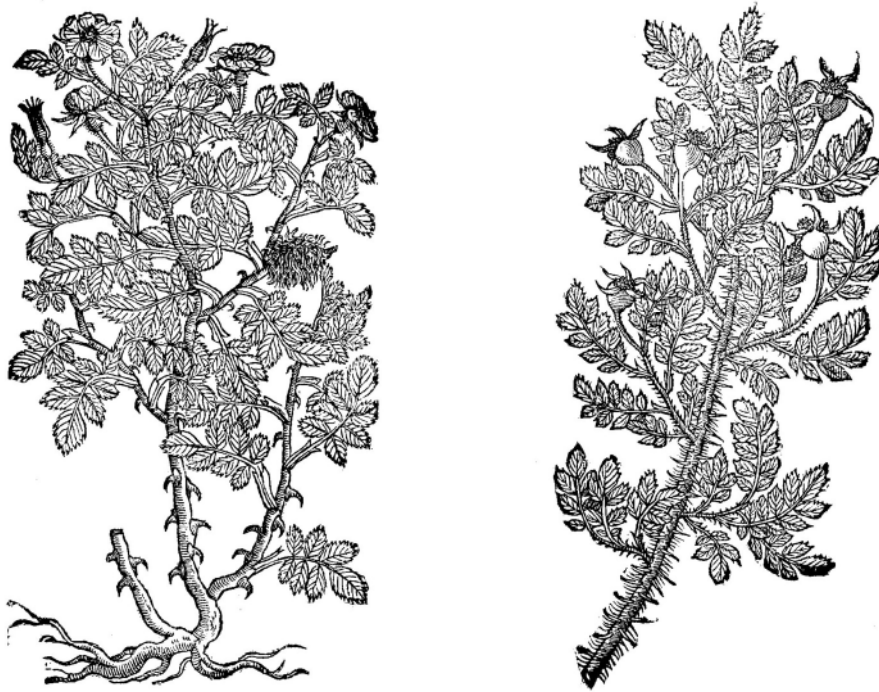


Fig. 1799. The Eglantine or Sweet Brier (1)

The Description.

The sweet Brier doth oftentimes grow higher than all the kinds of Roses; the shoots of it are hard, thick, and woody; the leaves are glittering, and of a beautiful green colour, of smell most pleasant: the Roses are little, five-leaved, most commonly whitish, seldom tending to purple, of little or no smell at all: the fruit is long, of colour somewhat red, like a little olive stone, and like the little heads or berries of the others, but lesser than those of the garden: in which is contained rough cotton, or hairy down and seed, folded and wrapped up in the same, which is small and hard: there be likewise found about the slender shoots hereof, round, soft, and hairy sponges, which we call Brier Balls, such as grow about the prickles of the Dog-rose.

‡ 2 *Rosa syl. odora flore duplici.*
The double Eglantine.



Fig.1800. Double Eglantine (2)

3 *Rosa Canina inodora.*
The Brier Rose, or Hip tree.



Fig. 1801. Brier Rose (3)

2. We have in our London gardens another sweet Brier, having greater leaves, and much sweeter: the flowers likewise are greater, and somewhat doubled, exceeding sweet of smell, wherein it differeth from the former.

3. The Brier Bush or Hip tree is also called *Rosa canina*, which is a plant so common and well known, that it were to small purpose to use many words in the description thereof: for even children with great delight eat the berries thereof when they be ripe, make chains and other pretty gewgaws of the fruit: cooks and gentlewomen make tarts and such like dishes for pleasure thereof, and therefore this shall suffice for the description.

4 *Rosa Pimpinelle folio.*
The Pimpinell Rose.



Fig. 802. Pimpinell Rose (4)

4. The Pimpinell Rose is likewise one of the wild ones, whose stalks shoot forth of the ground in many places, of the height of one or two cubits, of a brown colour, and armed with sharp prickles, which divide themselves toward the tops into divers branches, whereon do grow leaves consisting of divers small ones, set upon a middle rib like those of Burnet, which is called in Latin *Pimpinella*, whereupon it was called *Rosa Pimpinella*, the Burnet Rose. The flowers grow at the tops of the branches, of a white colour, very single, and like unto those of the Brier or Hip tree: after which come the fruit, black, contrary to all the rest of the roses, round as an apple; whereupon some have called it *Rosa pomifera*, or the Rose bearing apples: wherein is contained seed, wrapped in chaffy or flocky matter, like that of the Brier: the root is tough and woody.

The Place.

These wild Roses do grow in the borders of fields and woods, in most parts of England. The last groweth very plentifully in a field as you go from a village in Essex, called Grays (upon the brink of the river Thames) unto Horndon-On-The-Hill, insomuch that the field is full fraught therewith all over.

It groweth likewise in a pasture as you go from a village hard by London called Knightsbridge, unto Fulham, a village thereby, and in many other places.

We have them all except the Brier Bush in our London gardens, which we think unworthy the place.

The Time.

They flower and flourish with the other Roses.

The Names.

The Englantine Rose, which is *Cynorrhodi*, or *Caninæ Rosæ species*, a kind of Dog's-Rose: and *Rosa sylvestris*, the wild Rose: in Low Dutch, **Eglantier**: in French, *Esglentine*; and as Ruellius testifies, *Eglenterium*: who also suspects it to be *Cynosbaton*, or *Canirubus*: of which Dioscorides hath written in these words; *Cynosbatus*, or *Canirubus*, which some call *Oxycantha*, is a shrub growing like a tree, full of prickles, with a white flower, long fruit like an olive stone, red when it is ripe, and downy within: in English we call it Eglantine, or sweet Brier.

The spongy balls which are found upon the branches are most aptly and properly called *Spongiolæ sylvestris Rosæ*, the little sponges of the wild Rose. The shops mistake it by the name of *Bedeguar*; for *Bedeguar* among the Arabians is a kind of Thistle, which is called *Spina alba*, the White Thistle.

The Brier or Hip tree is called *Rosa sylvestris*, the wild Rose: in High Dutch, **Wilde Rosen**: in French, *Roses sauvages*: Pliny, *lib. 8. cap. 25*, saith that it is *Rosa canina*, Dog's Rose: of divers, *Caninasentis*, or Dog's Thorn: in English, Brier bush, and Hip tree: the last hath been touched in the description.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The faculties of these wild Roses are referred to the manured Rose, but not used in physic where the other may be had: notwithstanding Pliny affirmeth, that the root of the Brier bush is a singular remedy found out by oracle against the biting of a mad dog, which he sets down in his eighth book, chap. 41.

B. The same author, *lib. 25. cap. 2*. affirmeth, that the little spongy Brier ball stamped with honey and ashes causeth hairs to grow which are fallen through the disease called Alopecia, or the Fox's evil, in plain terms the French pox.

C. Fuchsius affirms, that the spongy excrescence or ball growing upon the Brier are good against the stone and strangury, if they be beaten to powder and inwardly taken.

D. They are good not as they be diuretics or provokers of urine, or as they are wearers away of the stone, but as certain other binding medicines that strengthen the weak and feeble kidneys; which do no more good to those that be subject to the stone, than many of the diuretics, especially of the stronger sort; for by too much using of diuretics or pissing medicines, it happeneth that the kidneys are over-weakened, and oftentimes too much heated, by which means not only the stones are not diminished, worn away, or driven forth, but oftentimes are also increased and made more hard: for they separate and take away that which in the blood is thin, watery, and as it were wheyish; and the thicker part, the stronger sorts of diuretics do draw together and make hard: and in like manner also others that are not so strong, by the overmuch using of them, as Galen. *lib. 5. Of the Faculties of Simple Medicines* reporteth.

E. The fruit when it is ripe maketh most pleasant meats and banqueting dishes, as tarts and such like; the making whereof I commit to the cunning cook, and teeth to eat them in the rich man's mouth.

CHAP. 4. Of the Bramble or Blackberry bush.

1 *Rubus*.
The Bramblebush.



Fig. 1803. Bramble or Blackberry (1)

2 *Rubus Idæus*.
The Raspis bush or Hinde-berry.



Fig. 1804. Raspis or Raspberry (3)

The Description.

1. The common Bramble bringeth forth slender branches, long, tough, easily bowed, ramping among hedges and whatsoever stands near unto it; armed with hard and sharp prickles, whereon do grow leaves consisting of many set upon a rough middle rib, green on the upper side, and underneath somewhat white: on the tops of the stalks stand certain flowers, in shape like those of the Brier Rose, but lesser, of colour white, and sometimes washed over with a little purple: the fruit or berry is like that of the Mulberry, first red, black when it is ripe, in taste between sweet and sour, very soft, and full of grains: the root creepeth, and sendeth forth here and there young springs.

Rubus repens fructu cæsius

2. This hath a round stalk set full of small crooked and very sharp pricking thorns, and creepeth on hedges and low bushes of a great length, on the upper side of a light red colour, and underneath green, and taketh root with the tops of the trailing branches, whereby it doth mightily increase: the leaves grow without order, composed of three leaves, and sometimes of five, or else the two lower leaves are divided into two parts, as Hop leaves are now and then, of a light green colour both above and underneath. The flowers grow on the tops of the branches, *racematim*, [like a bunch of grapes] many together, sometimes white, sometimes of a very light purple colour, every flower containing five leaves, which are crumpled or wrinkled, and do not grow plain: the fruit follows, first green, and afterwards blue, every berry composed of one or two grains, seldom above four or five growing together, about the bigness of currants,

wherein is contained a stony hard kernel or seed, and a juice of the colour of Claret wine, contrary to the common *Rubus* or Bramble, whose leaves are white underneath: the berries being ripe are of a shining black colour, and every berry contains usually above forty grains closely compacted and thrust together. The root is woody and lasting. This grows common enough in most places, and too common in ploughed fields. Sept. 6. 1619. *John Goodyer*.

3. The Raspis or Framboise bush hath leaves and branches not much unlike the common Bramble, but not so rough nor prickly, and sometimes without any prickles at all, having only a rough hairiness about the stalks: the fruit in shape and proportion is like those of the Bramble, red when they be ripe, and covered over with a little downiness; in taste not very pleasant. The root creepeth far abroad, whereby it greatly increaseth. This grows either with prickles upon the stalks, or else without them: the fruit is usually red, but sometimes white of colour.

4 *Rubus Saxatilis*.
Stone blacke-Berry bush.



Fig. 1805. Stone Bramble (4)

5 *Chamaemorus*.
Knot berry bush.



Fig. 1806. Knotberry (5)

4. Stone Bramble seldom groweth above a foot high, having many small flexible branches without prickles, trailing upon the ground, covered with a reddish bark, and somewhat hairy: the leaves grow three together, set upon tender naked footstalks somewhat snipped about the edges: the flowers grow at the end of the branches, consisting of four small white leaves like those of the Cherry tree: after which come small grape-like fruit, consisting of one, two, or three large transparent berries, set together as those of the common Bramble, of a red colour when they be ripe, and of a pleasant taste; but somewhat astringent. The roots creep along in the ground very far abroad, whereby it greatly increaseth.

4. *Chamaemorus* (called in the North part of England, where they especially do grow, Knot-berries, and Knought-berries) is likewise one of the Brambles, though without prickles: it brings forth small weak branches or tender stems of a foot high; whereon do grow at certain distances rough leaves in shape like those of the Mallow, not unlike to the leaves of the Gooseberry bush: on the top of each branch standeth one flower and no more, consisting of five small leaves of a dark purple colour: which being fallen, the fruit succeedeth, like unto that of the Mulberry, whereof it was called *Chamaemorus*, dwarf Mulberry; at the first white and bitter, after red and somewhat pleasant: the root is long, something knotty; from which knots or joints thrust forth a few thready strings. (I take that plant to which our author hereafter hath allotted a whole chapter, and called *Vaccinia nubis*, or Cloud-berries, to be the same with this, as I shall show you more largely in that place.)

The Place.

The Bramble groweth for the most part in every hedge and bush.

The Raspis is planted in gardens: it groweth not wild that I know of, except in the field by a village in Lancashire called Harwood, not far from Blackburn.

I found it among the bushes of a causeway, near unto a village called Wistaton, where I went to school, two miles from Nantwich in Cheshire.

The stone Bramble I have found in divers fields in the Isle of Thanet, hard by a village called Birchington, near Queake's house, sometimes Sir Henry Crispe's dwelling place. (I fear our author mistook that which is here added in the second place, for that which he figured and described in the third (now the fourth) which I know not yet to grow wild with us.)

Knot-berries do love open snowy hills and mountains; they grow plentifully upon Ingleborough hills among the heath and ling, twelve miles from Lancashire, being thought to be the highest hill in England.

They grow upon Stanmore between Yorkshire and Westmorland, and upon other wet fells and mountains.

The Time.

These flower in May and June with the Roses: their fruit is ripe in the end of August and September.

The Names.

The Bramble is called in French, *Rouges*, *Loi Duyts Brelmers*: in Latin, *Rubus*, and *Sentis*, and *Vepres*, as Ovid writeth in his first book of *Metamorphosis*.

*Aut lepori qui vepre latens hostilia cernit
Ora canum*

Or to th' hare, that under bramble closely lying, spies
The hostile mouths of dogs.

Of divers it is called *Cynosbatus*, but not properly; for *Cynosbatus* is the wild Rose, as we have written: in High Dutch, *Bremen*: in Low Dutch, *Breemen*: in French, *Rouce*: in Italian, *Garza*: in English, Bramble bush, and Blackberry bush.

The fruit is named in Latin *Morum rubi*; and as Fuchsius thinketh, *Vacinium*, but not properly; in shops, *Mora Bati*: and in such shops as are more barbarous, *Mora bassi*: in English, Blackberries.

The Raspis is called in Latin, *Rubus idæus*, of the mountain Ida on which it groweth: in English, Raspis, Framboise, and Hind-berry.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The young, buds or tender tops of the Bramble bush, the flowers, the leaves, and the unripe fruit, do very much dry and bind withal: being chewed they take away the heat and inflammation of the mouth, and almonds of the throat: they stay the bloody flux, and other fluxes, and all manner of bleedings: of the same force is their decoction, with a little honey added.

B. They heal the eyes that hang out, hard knots in the fundament, and stay the hemorrhoids, if the leaves be laid thereunto.

C. The juice which is pressed out of the stalks, leaves, and unripe berries, and made hard in the sun, is more effectual for all those things.

D. The ripe fruit is sweet, and containeth in it much juice of a temperate heat, therefore it is not unpleasant to be eaten.

E. It hath also a certain kind of astringion or binding quality.

F. It is likewise for that cause wholesome for the stomach, and if a man eat too largely thereof, saith Galen, he shall have the headache: but being dried whilst it is yet unripe it bindeth and drieth more than the ripe fruit.

G. The root besides that it is binding, containeth in it much thin substance, by reason whereof it wasteth away the stone in the kidneys, saith Galen.

H. Pliny writeth, that the berries and flowers do provoke urine, and that the decoction of them in wine is a present remedy against the stone.

I. The leaves of the Bramble boiled in water, with honey, alum, and a little white wine added thereto, make a most excellent lotion or washing water to heal the sores in the mouth, the privy parts of man or woman, and the same decoction fasteneth the teeth.

K. The Raspis is thought to be like the Bramble in temperature and virtues, but not so much binding or drying. The Raspis, saith Dioscorides, performeth those things which the Bramble doth. The fruit is good to be given to those that have weak and queasy stomachs.

CHAP. 5. Of Holly Roses, or Cistus.

The Kinds.

Cistus hath been taken of divers to be a kind of Rose: the old writers have made two sorts thereof, male and female; and likewise a third sort, which is called *Ledum*: the later herbarists have discovered divers more, as shall be declared.

A General Description, wherein all the sorts of Cistus are comprised.

Cistus and his kinds are woody shrubs full of branches, of the height of two or three cubits; some have broad leaves, others rough, uneven, wrinkled, somewhat downy, and most like the leaves of Sage; although some have the leaves of Rosemary, others the form of those of the Poplar tree: the flowers grow on the tops of the branches, like unto the wild Rose, yet such as very quickly fade, perish, and fall away: those of the male are most of a reddish blue or purple colour; and of the female white: in their places come up little heads or knops somewhat round, in which is contained small seed; the roots of them all are woody.

There groweth up sometimes under the shrub hard to the roots, a certain excrescence or hypocist, which is thick, fat, gross, full of juice, without leaves, wholly consisting of many little cases or boxes, as do those of Henbane or of the Pomegranate tree; of a yellowish red colour in one kind; and in another white, and in certain other green or grassy, as Dioscorides saith.

1 *Cistus mas angustifolius.*
The male Holly Rose.



2 *Cistus mas cum Hypocistide.*
The male Holly Rose with his excrescence.



Fig. 1807. Male Cistus or Holly Rose (1)

Fig. 1808. Male Cistus with an Excrescence
(2)

The Description.

1. The first kind of Cistus groweth up like a small bush or shrub, of a woody substance, three or four cubits high, garnished with many small and brittle branches, set full of crumpled or rugged leaves very like unto Sage leaves: at the top of the branches come flowers of a purple colour, in shape like unto a single Brier Rose, having leaves somewhat wrinkled like a cloth new dried before it be smoothed, and in the midst a few yellow chives or thrums: the flowers for the most part do perish and fall away before noon, and never cease flowering in such manner from the month of May unto the beginning of September, at which time the seed is ripe, being of a reddish colour, and is contained in an hard hairy husk not much unlike the husk of Henbane.

The second sort of Cistus, being another kind of the male Cistus, which Pena calls *Cistus mas cum Hypocistide*, is like unto the former, but that from the root of this kind there cometh a certain excrescence or out-growing, which is sometimes yellow, sometimes green; and sometimes white; from which is drawn by an artificial extraction a certain juice called in shops *Hypocistis*.

3 *Cistus mas dentatus*.
Toothed or snipt male Cistus.



4 *Cistus mas tenuifolius*.
Thin leaved Cistus.



5 *Cistus femina*.
The female Cistus.



7 *Cistus folio Halimi*.
Cistus with leaues like Sea Purflane.



Fig. 1809. Kinds of Cistus (3-7)

3. This kind of Cistus hath many woody stalks divided into divers brittle branches of a russet colour; whereon do grow rough leaves somewhat cut or toothed on the edges, and of an overworn colour: the flowers grow on the tops of the branches, in form of a Musk Rose, but of an excellent bright purple colour: after which come round knops, wherein is contained small reddish seed: the root is tough and woody.

4. This fourth sort of Cistus hath divers woody branches, whereon are set, thick thrust together, divers small leaves narrow like those of winter Savoury, but of an overworn russet colour: the root and flowers are like the precedent.

5. The first of the females is like unto the male Cistus in each respect, saving that the flowers hereof are of a white colour, with divers yellow thrums in the middle; and the others purple, wherein consisteth the difference.

6. The second female of Matthiolus' description hath many hard and woody stalks, branched with divers arms or wings: whereon are set by couples rough hoary and hairy leaves, of a dark russet colour: among which come forth small white flowers like unto those of the Jasmine: the root is tough and woody. (Thus saith our author, but I judge this all one with the former, and therefore have omitted the figure as impertinent, although our author followed it, making the flower so little in his description.)

7. The seventh sort of Cistus groweth up to the height of a small hedge bush, having divers brittle branches full of pith: whereon are set leaves by couples, like those of Sea Purslane, that is to say, soft, hoary, and as it were covered over with a kind of mealiness: the flowers are yellow, and less than those of the former.

8 *Cistus folio Lavandulae.*
Lavander leaved Cistus.



Fig. 1810. Lavender-Leaved Cistus (8)

9 *Cistus folio Thymi.*
Cistus with the leaues of Tyme.



Fig. 1811. Thyme-Leaved Cistus (9)

8. The eighth Cistus hath likewise shrubby stalks in manner of a hedge tree, whereon do grow at certain distances divers leaves close joined together at the stalk, like those of the former, but somewhat lower and narrower: the flowers we have not expressed in the figure, by reason we have no certain knowledge of them.

9. This ninth Cistus is likewise a woody shrub some foot high: the stalks are very brittle, as are all the rest of his kind; whereon do grow very small leaves like those of Thyme: the flowers are white, which maketh it one of the females.

10 *Cistus humilis latifolius.*
Low Cistus with broad leaues.



11 *Cistus humilis angustifolius.*
Low Cistus with narrow leaues.



12 *Cistus humilis Austriaca Clusij.*
Low Cistus of Austria.



13 *Cistus humilis serpilli folio.*
Low Cistus with leaues like wilde Tyme.



Fig. 1812. Kinds of Cistus (10-13)

10. The Low or Base Cistus with broad leaves, groweth like a small shrub, of a woody substance: the leaves are many, of a dark green colour: the flowers are in form like the other, but of yellow colour: the roots are likewise woody.

11. This Narrow-Leaved low Cistus hath divers tough branches leaning to the ground, whereon do grow without order many small narrow leaves somewhat long, of a gummy taste at the first, afterwards bitter: the flowers grow on the tops of the

branches, of a yellow colour, consisting of five leaves, with certain chives in the middle; after which follow three square cods or seed-vessels: the root is tough and woody.

12. The Low or Base Cistus of Austria groweth likewise leaning to the ground, having many woody branches very firm and tough, covered with a blackish bark; whereon do grow very many rough and hairy leaves in shape like those of the small Myrtle, of a shining green on the upper-side, and of an astringent taste: on every branch standeth one flower, seldom two, in form like the other, but consisting of one leaf deeply divided into five parts, and of a white colour tending to a flesh colour.

13. This low sort of Cistus hath many long tough branches trailing upon the ground, of a reddish colour, whereon do grow small leaves like those of wild Thyme, of a dark green colour, very thick and fat, and somewhat hairy: the flowers grow at the top of the branches, of a yellow gold colour, consisting of five small leaves of a very sweet smell. The root is thick, hard, and woody.

14 *Cistus exoticus* Lobelij.
Lobel's strange Cistus.



Fig. 1813. Lobel's Strange Cistus (14)

16 *Myrtocistus Tho. Penni* Angli.
Dr. Penny his Cistus.



Fig. 1815. Dr. Penny's Cistus (16)

14. This strange and rare plant of Lobel's observation I have thought meet to be inserted amongst the kinds of Cistus, as a friend of theirs, if not one of the kind: it hath leaves like unto the male Cistus (the first in this chapter described) but more hairy, bearing at the top of his branches a small knop in shape like a rotten Strawberry, but not of the same substance; for it is compact of a scaly or chaffy matter such as is in the midst of the Camomile flowers, and of a russet colour.

15. This adulterine or counterfeit or forged Cistus grows to the height of a hedge bush: the branches are long or brittle, whereon do grow long leaves like those of the Willow, of an overworn russet colour: the flowers are small, consisting of five little

yellow leaves: the whole plant being well viewed seemeth to be a Willow, but at the first sight one of the Cistus; so that it is a plant participating of both: the root is woody. Bauhine judges this (which our author out of Tabernamontanus figured and named *Cistus adulterinus*) to be the Cistus set forth in the eighth place of the next chapter save one: but I rather judge it to be of the *Ledum Silesiacum* set forth in the eleventh place of that chapter, and again in the twelfth, where you may find more thereof.

16. This kind of Cistus, which Dr. Penny (a famous physician of London deceased) did gather upon the islands of Majorica or Majorca, and called it by the name in Latin, *Myrtocistus Balearica*, is a shrub growing to the height of three cubits, having a very rough bark, beset roundabout with rough and scabbed warts; which bark will of itself easily fall away from the old branches or boughs of the tree. The leaves of this tree are almost like them of *Myrtus*, very rough underneath like the branches aforesaid; but the leaves that grow higher, and toward the top of the branches, are smooth, growing about the branches very thick together, as in the other kinds of Cistus. The flowers are yellow, growing on the top of the twigs, consisting of five long leaves full of many very long chives within. When the flowers be faded, there followeth a very long and five-square head or husk full of seed. The whole tree is very sweet, out of which issueth a gum or resin, or rather a thick clammy and fat juice, such as cometh forth of the kinds of *Ledum*.

17 *Cistus annuus.*
Cistus lasting one yeare.



Fig. 1815. Annual Cistus (17)

18 *Cistus annuus longifolius* Lobelij.
Long leafed yearely Cistus.



Fig. 1816. Long-leaved Annual Cistus (18)

17. This Annual Cistus groweth up from seed with one upright stalk to the height of a cubit, oft-times divided into other small branches; whereon grow rough leaves somewhat long, of a dark green colour. The flowers grow at the top of the stalks, consisting of 5 small yellow leaves: which being past, there followeth a three-square

seed vessel full of small reddish seed. The root is small and woody, and perisheth when the seed is perfected.

18. This other Cistus that lasteth but one year hath long stalks divided into other branches of the height of two cubits; whereon do grow long rough leaves, set three together at certain distances, the middlemost whereof is longer than the other two: the flowers grow on the sides of the branches, like the female Cistus, of a white colour: the root is of a woody substance, as are all the rest of his kind.

‡ 19 *Cistus annuus flore maculato.*
Spotted annual Cistus.



‡ 20 *Cistus folio Sampsuchi.*
Marjerome leaved Cistus.



Fig. 1817. Spotted Annual Cistus (19)

Fig. 1818. Marjoram-Leaved Cistus (20)

19. This grows some foot high, with a square rough greenish stalk, whereon by couples at certain spaces stand little longish rough leaves, yet toward the top of the stalk they stand sometimes three together: upon the top of the little branches grow flowers like those of the other Cistus, of colour yellow, with a fine sanguine spot upon each leaf of the flower. It groweth in some parts of France, as also on the Alps in Italy. Clusius describes it by the name of *Cistus annuus* 2. Pona in his *Mons Baldus* calls it *Cistus annuus flore guttato*.

20. This hath many slender branches whereon grow small roundish leaves, hoary, and somewhat like those of Marjoram, somewhat less, with the middle rib standing out. The flowers grow upon the tops of the branches, and consist of five white leaves, with a dark purple spot in the middle of each leaf: the threads in the middle of the flower are of a yellow colour: their seed-vessels are of the bigness of those of Flax, but three-square, containing a seed of the bigness of that of Henbane. Clusius found this in divers parts of Spain, and sets it forth by the name of *Cistus folio sampsuchi*.

The Place.

Holly Roses grow in Italy, Spain, and Languedoc, and in the countries bordering upon the river Padus, in all Etruria and Massilia, and in many other of the hotter provinces of Europe, in dry and stony places, varying infinitely according to the diversity of the regions where they do grow; of which I have two sorts in my garden, the first, and the *Cistus annuus*.

The Time.

They flower from May to September.

The Names.

The Holly Rose is called in Greek *Kistos*, and Latin, also *Cistus*, and *Rosa sylvatica*: of divers, *Rosa canina*, as Scribonius Largus writeth, but not properly: in Spanish, *Estepa*: of the Portugals, *Rosella*: in English, Holly Rose, and *Cistus*, after the Greek name. The fungous excrescence growing at the root of *Cistus*, is called in Greek, *ipokistis*, because it groweth under the shrub *Cistus*: it is also called *Limodoron*: some call it *kytinus*, among whom is Paulus Ægineta, who also doth not call that *Hypocistis* which groweth under the shrub *Cistus*, but the juice hereof; whereupon might grow the word *Hypocistis*, by which name the apothecaries call this juice when it is hardened: of some it is called *Erithanon*, *Citinus*, and *Hypoquistidos*.

The Temperature.

Cistus, as Galen saith, doth greatly dry, near hand in the second degree, and it is of that coldness, that it hath withal a temperate heat: the leaves and the first buds being beaten do only dry and bind, in such sort as they may close up ulcers, and join together green wounds.

The Virtues.

A. The flowers are of most force, which being drunk with wine are good against the bloody flux, weakness of the stomach, fluxes, and overflowings of moist humours.

B. They cure putrefied ulcers being applied in manner of a poultice: Dioscorides teacheth that they are a remedy for eating ulcers, being anointed therewith; and that they cure burnings, scaldings, and old ulcers.

C. *Hypocistis* is much more binding: it is a sure remedy for all infirmities that come of fluxes, as voiding of blood, the whites, the lask, and the bloody flux: but if it be requisite to strengthen that part which is overweakned with a superfluous moisture, it doth notably comfort and strengthen the same.

D. It is excellent to be mixed with fomentations that serve for the stomach and liver.

E. It is put into the Treacle of Vipers, to the end it should comfort and strengthen weak bodies, as Galen writeth.

CHAP. 6. Of other Plants Reckoned for Dwarf Kinds of Cistus.

1. 2. *Helianthemum Anglicum luteum vel album.*
English yellow or white dwarf Cistus.



Fig.1819. English Dwarf Cistus (1,2)

The Description.

1. The English dwarf Cistus, called of Lobel, *Panax chironium* (but there is another *Panax* of Chiron's description, which I hold to be the true and right *Panax*, notwithstanding he hath inserted it amongst the kinds of Cistus, as being indifferent to join with us and others for the insertion) is a low and base plant creeping upon the ground, having many small tough branches, of a brown colour; whereupon do grow little leaves set together by couples, thick, fat, and full of substance, and covered over with a soft down: from the bosom whereof come forth other lesser leaves: the flowers before they be open are small knops or buttons, of a brown colour mixed with yellow; and being open and spread abroad are like those of the wild Tansy, and of a yellow colour, with some yellower chives in the middle: the root is thick, and of a woody substance.

2. The second is very like unto the precedent, saving that the leaves are long, and do not grow so thick thrust together, and are more woolly: the flowers are greater, and of a white colour, wherein the especial difference consisteth. The root is like the former.

3 *Helianthemum luteum Germanicum*. The yellow dwarfe Cistus of Germanie.



Fig. 1820. Yellow Dwarf Cistus of Germany (3)

3. There is found in Germany, a certain plant like to Cistus, and *Ledon*, but much lesser, creeping upon the ground, unless it be propped up, having a multitude of twiggy branches, slender, and fine: whereupon do grow leaves lesser than those of *Ledon* or Cistus, very like to that of our English white dwarf Cistus, of a full substance, slightly haired: wherein is contained a tough juice: the flowers are small like little Roses, or the wild Tansy, of a yellow colour the roots be slender, woody, and something red.

4 *Helianthemum album Germanicum*. The white dwarfe Cistus of Germanie.



Fig. 1821. White Dwarf Cistus of Germany (4)

4. This differeth not from the last described, saving that the flowers hereof are very white, and the others yellow, wherein they especially differ.

5 *Helianthemum Sabaudicum.*
The dwarf Cistus of Savoy.

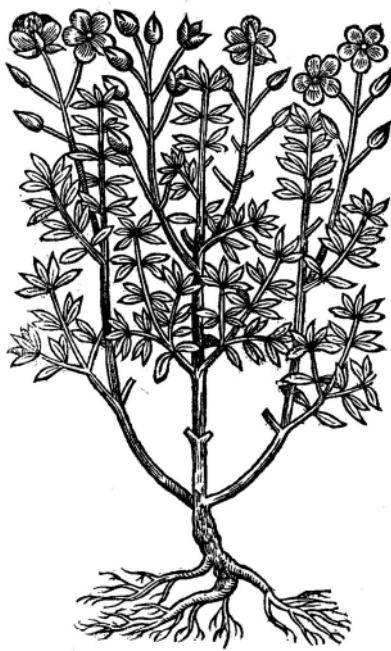


Fig. 1822. Dwarf Cistus of Savoy (5)

6 *Helianthemum angustifolium.*
Narrow leaved dwarf Cistus.



Fig. 1823. Narrow-Leaved Dwarf Cistus(6)

5. The Dwarf Cistus of Savoy hath divers tough branches, of a reddish colour, very tough and woody, divided into divers other branches: whereon are set small leaves, four together, by certain spaces; the flowers grow at the top of the branches like those of our yellow Dwarf Cistus, of a yellow colour: the root is very woody.

6. This Dwarf Cistus with narrow leaves, hath very many small flexible branches, of a brown colour, very smooth, and ramping upon the ground; whereon do grow small, long, narrow leaves, like those of Thyme of Candy, from the bosom whereof come forth divers other smaller leaves: the flowers grow on the tops of the branches, of a bleak yellow colour: the root is likewise woody.

‡ 7 *Chamaecistus serpillifolius*.
Tyme leaved dwarfe Cistus.



Fig. 1824. Thyme-Leaved Dwarf Cistus (7)

‡ 8 *Chamaecistus Friscus*.
Frisian Dwarfe Cistus.



Fig. 1825. Frisian Dwarf Cistus (8)

7. To these I may fitly add two more: the first of these hath creeping stalks, some foot or two long, blackish, and divided into sundry smaller branches: the leaves grow thick and many together, set by couples (though the figure do not well express so much:) these leaves are small, of the bigness of those of Thyme, thick, green above, and whitish underneath, and of a bitter taste: at the ends of the branches grow two or four flowers near together, very small, composed of five little leaves, of a kind of flesh colour: to these succeed heads opening themselves when they come to ripeness into five parts, and containing a very small seed: the root is hard and woody, sending out certain fibres: also the branches here and there put forth some fibres. This plant dried hath a pretty pleasing smell. This grows upon the highest Austrian and Styrian Alps, and is set forth by Clusius by the name of *Chamaecistus septimus*.

8. The same author also in his *Curae Posteriores* gives us the history of this, which he received with some other rare plants from John Dortman, a famous and learned apothecary of Groeningen: This little plant is in leaf and root almost like and near of the same bigness with the Celtic Nard, yet the stalks are unlike, which are small, set with a few longish leaves, and at the tops they carry five or six pretty flowers like those of Crowfoots, consisting of six leaves apiece, of a yellow colour, yet with some few spots of another colour, and these set in a double ring about the middle; after these follow heads or seed vessels with forked tops, filled with a chaffy seed: the whole plant smells somewhat strong. It grows together with *Gramen Pernassi* in rotten moorish places about a village in the county of Drenthe. Dortman called this *Hirculus Friscus*: Clusius addes, *qui Chamæcisti genus* ["which is of the Dwarf Cistus genus"]

The Place.

Their several titles have touched their natural countries: they grow in rough, dry, and sunny places, in plain fields and upon mountains.

Those of our English growing, I have found in very many places, especially in Kent, upon the chalky banks about Gravesend, Southfleet, and for the most part all the way from thence unto Canterbury and Dover.

The Time.

They flower from July to the end of August.

The Names.

Travis calleth dwarf Cistus in the High Dutch tongue, *Heyden Diope*: in Latin, *Gratia Dei*, but there is another herb called also of the later herbarists *Gratia Dei*, which is *Gratiola*: Valerius Cordus nameth it *Helianthemum*, and *Solis flos*, or sun flower: of Clusius, *Chamaecistus*, or Dwarf Cistus.

Pliny writeth, that *Helianthe* groweth in the champion country Temiscyra in Pontus, and in the mountains of Cilicia near to the sea: and he saith further, that the wise men of those countries, and the kings of Persia do anoint their bodies herewith, boiled with Lion's fat, a little saffron, and wine of dates, that they may seem fair and beautiful; and therefore have they called it *Heliocaliden*, or the beauty of the sun: Matthiolus saith, that *Helianthemum* is taken of some to be *Panacea Chironium*, or Chiron's All-Heal: but it is nothing likely, as we have said.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The faculties and temperature are referred to the kinds of Cistus, for it healeth wounds, stancheth blood, and stoppeth the spittings of blood, the bloody flux, and all other issues of blood.

B. The same boiled in wine healeth ulcers in the mouth and privy parts, if they be washed therewith: to be brief, it joineth together and strengtheneth: which things do plainly and evidently show, that it is not only like to Cistus and Ledon in form, but in virtues and faculties also, and therefore it is manifest, that it is a certain wild kind of Cistus and Ledon.

CHAP. 7. Of Cistus Ledon, and Ladanum.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of Cistus, whereof that gummy matter is gathered, called in shops *Ladanum*, and *Labdanum*, but unproperly.

1 *Cistus Ledon* 1. *Clusij*.
The first Cistus bringing *Ladanum*.



2 *Cistus ledon* 2. *Clusij*.
The second gum Cistus.



3 *Cistus ledon populea fronde.*
Cistus ledon with leaues like the Poplar.



4 *Cistus ledon* 4. *Clusij*.
Cistus ledon, the 4. of *Clusius*.



Fig. 1826. Kinds of Cistus Ledon (1-4)

The Description.

1. Cistus Ledon is a shrub, growing to the height of a man, and sometimes higher; having many hard woody branches, covered with a blackish bark: whereupon do grow leaves set together by couples, one right against another like unto wings, of an inch broad, of a black swart green on the uppersides, and whitish underneath: whereon is gathered a certain clammy transparent or through-shining liquor, of a very hot sweet smell, which being gathered and hardened, is that which in shops is called *Labdanum*: the flowers grow at the ends of the branches like little roses, consisting of five white leaves, every one decked or beautified toward the bottom with pretty dark purplish spots tending to blackness, having in the middle very many yellow chives, such as are in the middle of the Rose: after come the knaps or seed vessels full of most small reddish seed; the whole plant being dried, groweth somewhat whitish, and of a pleasant smell, the which it retaineth many years.

2. The second groweth likewise to the height of an hedge bush, the branches are long, and very fragile or easy to break, whereon do grow leaves greener than any other of his kind; yet underneath of a hoary colour; growing toward winter to be somewhat reddish, of a sour and binding taste: the flowers are like the precedent: the form whereof the graver hath omitted, in other respects like the former.

3. The third sort of Cistus Ledon groweth up to the height of a small hedge bush, having many twiggy branches; whereon do grow leaves like those of the Poplar tree, sharp at the point, covered over with that clammy dew that the others are: the flowers grow at the tops of the branches, of a white colour like the precedent.

4. The fourth of Clusius' description groweth likewise to the height of a shrubby bush, having many branches, flexible, hoary, and hairy: the leaves are like the rest of his kind, but softer, more hairy, of a swart green colour, dashed over with that dewy fatness, not only in the spring time, but in the heat of summer likewise: the flowers are white, with yellow thrums in the middle: the rest answereth the last described.

5 *Cistus Ledon* 5. *Clusij.*
The fift *Cistus Ledon.*



6 *Cistus Ledon* 6. *Clusij.*
The sixth *Cistus Ledon.*



7 *Cistus Ledon* 7. *Clusij.*
The 7. *Cistus Ledon.*



8 *Cistus Ledon cum Hypocistide Lobelij.*
The 8. *Cistus Ledon*, with his excrecence.



Fig. 1827. Kinds of *Cistus Ledon* (5-8)

5. The fifth groweth up like a hedge bush with many tough branches, whereon are set long rough leaves, hoary underneath, somewhat dashed over with that fatty dew or humour that the rest are possessed of: the flowers are likewise of a white colour, with certain yellow chives in the middle: the root is woody.

6. The sixth hath divers small branches covered with a blackish bark: the flowers are set together at the tops of the branches by certain spaces: they are yellow, and like the former in each respect.

7. The seventh is a low shrub growing to the height of two cubits, having many branches covered with a bark of the colour of ashes; whereon are confusedly set divers leaves at certain distances, small, narrow, like those of Winter Savory, of an overworn russet colour, very thick, fat, and glutinous: the flowers are white, & differ not, nor the seed from the rest.

8. The eighth groweth up like a little hedge bush, having leaves like the common female Cistus, saving that those of this plant are sprinkled over with that clammy moisture, and the other not so: the flowers and seed are also like. From the root of this plant cometh such like excrescence called *Limodoron*, *Orobranche*, or *Hypocistus*, as there doth from the first male Cistus, wherein it differeth from sll the rest under the name Ledon.

9 *Cistus Ledon* 10. *Clusij*.
The 10. *Cistus Ledon*.



10 *Cistus Ledon Myrtifolium*.
Cistus Ledon with leaues like Myrtle.



Fig. 1828. Clusius' Tenth *Cistus Ledon* (9) Fig. 1829. Myrtle-Leaved *Cistus Ledon* (10)

9. The ninth hath divers brittle stalks of an ash colour tending to a russet; whereon are set very many leaves like those of Thyme, of an overworn colour: the flowers are white, with certain chives in the middle, which the graver hath omitted in the figure.

10. The tenth groweth up like a small shrub, having brittle stalks, covered with a blackish bark, and divided into divers branches; whereon are set upon short truncheons or fat footstalks, four or five like those the Myrtle tree, of a strong smell: the flowers are likewise of a white colour.

11 *Cistus Ledum Silesiacum.*
The Polonian Cistus Ledon.



12 *Cistus Ledum Rosmarini folio.*
Cistus Ledon with leaues like Rosemarie.



Fig. 1830. Silesian Cistus Ledon (11)

Fig. 1831. Rosemary-Leaved Cistus Ledon (12)

11,12. The twelfth kind of Cistus Ledon groweth upright with a straight body or stock, bringeth at the top many small twigs or rods of a cubit long, covered with a bark of the colour of ashes, which divide themselves into other branches, of a purplish colour, beset with long and narrow leaves, not much unlike to Rosemary, but longer; of a green colour above, but underneath having as it were a long rib, made or compact of wool or down; of a sweet and pleasant smell, and somewhat sharp in taste: on the tops of the branches grow knops or heads, compact as it were of many scales, of an iron or rusty colour: out of which cometh and proceedeth a certain round and long mane, or hairy paniced tuft of flowers, with many long, tender, green, and somewhat woolly stalks or twigs growing unto them, of a sweet scent and smell: the flowers consist of five little white leaves, within which are contained ten white chives with a long style or pointel in the midst of the flower: when the flowers be faded, there succeed long knops or heads which are five-cornered, in shape and bigness like unto the fruit and berries of *Cornus*, which being green, are bespeckled with many silver spots, but being ripe, are of a red colour; containing within them a long yellow seed, which is so small and slender, that it is like to the dust or powder that falleth out of wormholes. This is the *Ledum Silesiacum* of Clusius; and the *Ledum Rosmarini folio* of Tabernamontanus; it is also the *Rosmarinum sylvestre* of Matthioli, and *Chamaepeuce* of Cordus: and I am deceived if the figure which Tabernamontanus and our author out of him gave by the name of *Cistus adulterinus* were not of this.

13 *Cistus Ledum Matthioli.*
Cistus Ledon of Matthioli's description.



Fig. 1832. Matthioli's Cistus Ledon (13)

14 *Cistus Ledum Alpinum Clusij.*
The Mountaine Cistus.



Fig. 1833. Mountain Cistus (14)

13. Among the shrubby bushes comprehended under the title of Cistus Ledum, Matthioli hath set forth one, whereof to write at large were impossible, considering the author is so brief, and of ourselves we have not any acquaintance with the plant itself: Dioscorides to help what may he, saith, that it is a shrub growing like unto the stock or kindred of the *Cisti*: from whose leaves is gathered a clammy dew which maketh that gummy matter that is in shops called *Lapdanum*: it groweth, saith he, in hot regions (but not with us:) the Mauritanians call the juice or clammy matter, *Leden*, and *Laden*: of some, *Ladano* and *Odano*: in Spanish, *Xara*, and further saith, it groweth in Arabia, where the bush is called *Chasus*: thus much for the description. Our author here seems to make Dioscorides to comment upon Matthioli, which shows his learning, and how well he was exercised in reading or understanding anything written of plants. But of this enough; The plant here figured which Matthioli judges to be the true *Ledon*, or *Cistus Ladanifera* of Dioscorides, hath large stalks and branches, whereon grow very thick leaves, broad also and long, with the nerves running alongst the leaves: the flower of this consists of five white leaves, and the seed is contained in a three-cornered seed vessel.

14. The fourteenth Cistus, being one of those that do grow upon the Alpish mountains, which Lobel setteth down to be *Balsamum alpinum* of Gesner: notwithstanding I think it not amiss to insert it in this place, having for my warrant that famous herbarist Carolus Clusius: this plant is one of beautifullest, differing in very notable points, and yet resembleth them in the woody branches and leaves: it riseth up having many weak branches leaning to the ground, yet of a woody substance, covered over with an ash coloured bark: the leaves are broad, and very rough, of a shining green colour, and a binding taste: the flowers grow at the tops of the branches like little bells,

hanging down their heads, divided at the lips or brims into five divisions, of a deep red color on the outside, and dashed over here and there with some silver spots; on the inside of a bright shining red colour, with certain chives in the middle, and of a very sweet smell, as is all the rest of the plant; after which come small heads or knaps, full of seed like dust, of a very strong smell, making the head of them to ache that smell thereto: the root is long, hard, and very woody: oftentimes there is found upon the trunk or naked part of the stalks certain excrescences, or outgrowings in manner of galls, of a fungous substance, like those of Touchwood, white within, and red without, of an astringent or binding taste.

‡ 15 *Cistus Ledon folijs Rosifmarini.*
Rosemary leaved Cistus Ledon.



Fig. 1834. Rosemary-Leaved Cistus Ledon (15)

15. This grows some cubit and better high, and hath long narrow glutinous leaves like in shape to those of Rosemary, set by couples, but not very thick: the branches whereon the flowers do grow are slender, and the seed vessels are divided into five parts as in other plants of this kind. This Clusius found in Spain, and sets forth for his *Ledum nonum*.

The Place.

Cistus Ledon groweth in the island of Candy, as Bellonius doth testify, in untilled places everywhere: it is also found in Cyprus, as Pliny showeth, and likewise in many places of Spain that lie open to the sun: moreover both the form and bigness of the leaves, and also of the plants themselves, as well of those that bring forth *Ladanum*, as the other Cistus, do vary in this wonderful manner according to the diversity of the places and countries where they grow: they are strangers in these Northerly parts, being very impatient of our cold climate.

The Time.

They flower for the most part from May to the end of August: the clammy matter which falleth upon the leaves, which is a liquid kind of resin of a sweet smell, is

gathered in the spring time as Dioscorides saith: but as Petrus Bellonius affirmeth (being an eye-witness of the gathering) in the midst of summer, and in the extreme heat of the dog-days, the which in our time not without great care and diligence, and as great labour, is gathered from the whole plant (with certain instruments made in manner of tooth-picks, or ear-picks, which in their tongue they call *Ergastiri*) and not gathered from the beards of goats, as it is reported in the old fables of the lying monks themselves, called *Calohieros*, that is to say Greekish monks, who of very mockery have foisted that fable among others extant in their works.

Thus saith our author, but I think it not amiss for the better explanation of the matter here treated of, as also to show you after what manner our author in divers places gave the testimonies of sundry writers, and how well he understood them, here to set down in English the words of Bellonius concerning the gathering of *Ladanum*, which are these. "The Greeks (saith he) for the gathering of *Ladanum*, provide a peculiar instrument which in their vulgar tongue they term *Ergastiri*: This is an instrument like to a rake without teeth, to this are fastened sundry thongs cut out of a raw and untanned hide; they gently rub these upon the *Ladanum*-bearing shrubs, that so the liquid moisture concrete about the leaves may stick to them, which afterwards with knives they shave off these thongs in the heat of the day. Wherefore the labour of gathering *Ladanum* is exceeding great, yea intolerable, seeing they must of necessity stay in the mountains all the day long in the greatest heat of the dog-days: neither usually shall you find any other who will take the pains to gather it, besides, the *Calohieroi*, that is the Greek monks. It is gathered nowhere in the whole Island of Candy in greater plenty, than at the foot of the mountain Ida at a village called Cogualino, and at Milopotamo."

The Names.

The shrub itself is called in Greek and Latin *Ledon*, or *Ladon*: it is a kind of *Cistus* or Holly Roses: the fat or clammy matter which is gathered from the leaves, is named *Ladanon* and *Ledanon*, according to the Greek: the apothecaries corruptly call it *Lapdanum*: Dioscorides counteth that to be the best which is sweet of smell, and somewhat green, that easily waxeth soft, is fat, without sand, and is not easily broken, but very full of resin or gum.

The Temperature.

Ladanum, saith Galen, is hot in the later end of the first degree, having also a little astringent or binding quality; it is likewise of a thin substance, and therefore it softeneth, and withal doth moderately digest, and also concoct.

The Virtues.

A. *Ladanum* hath a peculiar property against the infirmities of the mother, it keepeth hairs from falling; for it wasteth away any settled or putrefied humour that is at their roots.

B. Dioscorides saith, that *Ladanum* doth bind, heat, supple, & open, being tempered with wine, myrrh, and oil of Myrtles; it keepeth hairs from falling, being anointed therewith; or laid on mixed with wine, it maketh the marks or scars of wounds fair and well coloured.

C. It taketh away the pain in the ears if it be poured or dropped therein, mixed with honeyed water, or with oil of roses.

D. A fume made thereof draweth forth the afterbirth, and taketh away the hardness of the matrix.

E. It is with good success mixed with mollifying plasters that mitigate pain.

F. Being drunk with wine, it stoppeth the lask, and provoketh urine.

G. There is made hereof divers sorts of pomanders, chains, and bracelets, with other sweets mixed therewith.

CHAP. 8. Of Rosemary.

1 *Rosmarinum Coronarium*,
Garden Rosemarie.



Fig. 1835. Garden Rosemary (1)

2 *Rosmarinum sylvestre*.
Wilde Rosemarie.



Fig. 1836. Wild Rosemary (2)

The Description.

1. Rosemary is a woody shrub, growing oftentimes to the height of three or four cubits, especially when it is set by a wall: it consisteth of slender brittle branches whereon do grow very many long leaves, narrow, somewhat hard, of a quick spicy taste, whitish underneath, and of a full green colour above, or in the upper side, with a pleasant sweet strong smell; among which come forth little flowers of a whitish blue colour: the seed is blackish: the roots are tough and woody.

2. The wild Rosemary Clusius hath referred unto the kinds of Cistus Ledon; we have as a poor kinsman thereof inserted it in the next place, in kindred or neighbourhood at the least. This wild Rosemary is a small woody shrub, growing seldom above a foot high, having hard branches of a reddish colour, dividing themselves into other smaller branches of a whitish color: whereon are placed without order divers long leaves, green above, and hoary underneath, not unlike to those of the dwarf Willow, or the common Rosemary, of a dry and astringent taste, of little smell or none at all: the flowers stand on the tops of the branches, set upon bare or naked footstalks, consisting of five small leaves of a reddish colour, somewhat shining; after which appear little knops full of small seed: the root is tough and woody.

3 *Casia Poetica, Lobelij.*
The Poets Rosemarie or Gardrobe.



Fig. 1837. Poets' Rosemary (3)

3. This plant grows up like an hedge shrub of a woody substance, to the height of two or three cubits; having many twiggy branches of a green colour: whereupon do grow narrow leaves like unto *Linaria* or Toad-flax, of a bitter taste; among which come forth small mossy flowers, of a greenish yellow colour like those of the Cornel tree, and of the smell of Rosemary: which hath moved me to place it with the Rosemaries as a kind thereof, not finding any other plant so near unto it in kind and neighbourhood: after the flowers be past, there succeed fruit like those of the Myrtle tree, green at the first, and of a shining red colour when they be ripe, like Coral, or the berries of Asparagus, soft and sweet in taste, leaning a certain acrimony or sharp taste in the end: the stone within is hard as is the nut, wherein is contained a small white kernel, sweet in taste: the root is of a woody substance: it flowereth in the summer; the fruit is ripe in the end of October: the people of Granada, Montpellier, and of the kingdom of Valencia, do use it in their presses and wardrobes, whereupon they call it *Guardalobo*. This in Clusius his time when he lived about Montpellier was called *Osyris*; but afterwards they called it *Casia*, thinking it that mentioned by the poet Virgil; the which it cannot be, for it hath no sweet smell. Pena and Lobel judge it to be the *Casia* of Theophrastus, wherewith also it doth not well agree.

The Place.

Rosemary groweth in France, Spain, and in other hot countries, in woods, and in untilled places: there is such plenty thereof in Languedoc, that the inhabitants burn scarce any other fuel: they make hedges of it in the gardens of Italy and England, being a great ornament unto the same: it groweth neither in the fields nor gardens of the Eastern cold countries; but is carefully and curiously kept in pots, set into the stoves and cellars, against the injuries of their cold Winters.

Wild Rosemary groweth in Lancashire in divers places, especially in a field called Little Reed, amongst the Whortleberries, near unto a small village called

Maudsley; there found by a learned gentleman often remembered in our history (and that worthily) Mr. Thomas Hesketh.

The Time.

Rosemary flowereth twice a year, in the spring, and after in August. The wild Rosemary flowereth in June and July.

The Names.

Rosemary is called in Latin, *Rosmarinus coronaria*: it is surnamed *coronaria*, for difference sake between it and the other *Libanotides*, which are reckoned for kinds of Rosemary, and also because women have been accustomed to make crowns and garlands thereof: in Italian, *Rosmarino coronario*: in Spanish, *Romero*: in French and Dutch *Romarin*.

Wild Rosemary is called *Rosmarinus sylvestris*: of Cordus, *Chamaepeuce*.

The Temperature.

Rosemary is hot and dry in the second degree, and also of an astringent or binding quality, as being compounded of divers parts, and taking more of the mixture of the earthy substance.

The Virtues.

A. Rosemary is given against all fluxes of blood; it is also good, especially the flowers thereof, for all infirmities of the head and brain, proceeding of a cold and moist cause; for they dry the brain, quicken the senses and memory, and strengthen the sinewy parts.

B. Serapio witnesseth, that Rosemary is a remedy against the stuffing of the head, that cometh through coldness of the brain, if a garland thereof be put about the head, whereof Abin Mesue giveth testimony.

C. Dioscorides teacheth that it cureth him that hath the yellow jaundice, if it be boiled in water and drunk before exercise, & that after the taking thereof the patient must bathe himself & drink wine

D. The distilled water of the flowers of Rosemary being drunk at morning and evening first and last, taketh away the stench of the mouth and breath, and maketh it very sweet, if there be added thereto, to steep or infuse for certain days, a few cloves, mace, cinnamon, and a little aniseed.

E. The Arabians and other physicians succeeding, do write, that Rosemary comforteth the brain, the memory, the inward senses, and restoreth speech unto them that are possessed with the dumb palsy, especially the conserve made of the flowers and sugar, or any other way confected with sugar, being taken every day fasting.

F. The Arabians, as Serapio witnesseth, give these properties to Rosemary: it heateth, say they, is of subtle parts, is good for the cold rheum which falleth from the brain; driveth away windiness, provoketh urine, and openeth the stoppings of the liver and milt.

G. Tragus writeth, that Rosemary is spice in the German kitchens, and other cold countries. Further, he saith, that the wine boiled with Rosemary, and taken of women troubled with the mother, or the whites, helpeth them, the rather if they fast three or four hours after.

H. The flowers made up into plates with sugar after the manner of sugar roset and eaten, comfort the heart, and make it merry, quicken the spirits, and make them more lively.

I. The oil of Rosemary chemically drawn, comforteth the cold, weak and feeble brain in most wonderful manor.

K. The people of Thuringia do use the wild Rosemary to provoke the desired sickness.

L. Those of Marchia use to put it into their drink the sooner to make their clients drunk, and also do put it into chests and presses among clothes, to preserve them from moths or other vermin.

[The virtues in the last two places properly belong to the *Rosmarinum sylvestre* of Matthiolus, which is the *Chamaepeuce* of Cordus, and is described in the 11th place of the foregoing chapter, by the name of *Cistus ledum silesiacum*.]

CHAP. 9. Of Upright Woodbine.

1 *Periclymenum rectum Sabaudicum.*
Sauoy Honifuckles.



Fig. 1838. Savoy Honeysuckle (1)

2 *Periclymenum rectum Germanicum.*
Germane Honifuckles.



Fig. 1839. German Honeysuckle (2)

The Description.

1. This strange kind of Honeysuckle, found in the woods of Savoy, represents unto us that shrub or hedge-bush called *Cornus fœmina*, the Dog-berry tree, or Prick-timber tree, having leaves and branches like the common Woodbine, saving that this doth not clamber or climb as the others do, but contrariwise groweth upright, without leaning to one side or other, like a small tree or hedge-bush: the flowers grow upon the tender sprays or twiggy branches, by couples, not unlike in shape and colour to the common Woodbine, but altogether lesser, and of a white colour, having within the same many hairy chives like the other of his kind: after which come red berries joined together by couples: the root is tough and woody.

2. The stalks of the second be oftentimes of a mean thickness, the woody substance somewhat whitish and soft: the branches be round, and covered with a whitish bark; notwithstanding in the beginning when the sprays be young they are somewhat reddish. The leaves be long, like those of the common Honeysuckle, soft, and of a white green: on the lower side they be whiter, and a little hairy: the flowers be lesser than any of the Woodbines, but yet of the same fashion, and of a whitish colour, joined together by couples upon several slender footstalks, like little wild Cherries, of a red colour, the one lesser oftentimes than the other.

3 *Periclymenum rectum fructu caruleo.*
Upright Wood-binde with blew berries.



Fig. 1840. Blueberry Woodbine (3)

4 *Periclymenum rectum fructu rubro.*
Cherry Wood-binde.



Fig. 1841. Cherry Woodbine (4)

3. This strange kind of Woodbine, which Carolus Clusius hath set forth in his *Pannonic Observations*, riseth up oftentimes to the height of a man, even as the former doth; which divides itself into many branches, covered with a rough black bark; that choppeth and gapeth in sundry clefts as the bark of the Oak. The tender branches are of a whitish green colour, covered with a woolly hairiness, of an overworn colour, whereupon do grow leaves set by couples one against the other, like unto the common Woodbine, of a drying bitter taste: the flowers grow by couples likewise, of a whitish colour. The fruit succeedeth, growing like little cherries, each one on his own footstalk, of a bright and shining blue colour; which being bruised, do dye the hands of a reddish colour, and they are of a sharp winy taste; and contain in them many small flat seeds. The root is woody, dispersing itself far abroad.

4. This kind of upright Woodbine groweth up likewise to the height of a man, and oftentimes more high, like to the last described, but altogether greater. The berries hereof are very black, wherein especially is the difference. The leaves of this are as large as Bay leaves, sharp pointed, green above, and whitish underneath, but not hairy, nor snipped about the edges: the flowers grow by couples, of a whitish purple, or wholly purple: to these pairs of flowers there commonly succeeds but one berry, larger than any of the former, of the bigness of a little cherry, and of the same colour, having two marks upon the top thereof, where the flowers stood.

Periclymeni 3. & 4. flores.
The floures of the third and fourth.



Fig. 1842. The flowers of (3) and (4)

5 *Chamapericlymenum.*
Dwarfe Hony-suckle.



Fig. 1843. Dwarf Honeysuckle (5)

5. To the kinds of Woodbines this plant may likewise be referred, whose picture with this description was sent unto Clusius long since by that learned doctor in physic Thomas Penny (of our London college of famous memory:) it riseth up with a stalk of a foot high; whereupon are set by couples fair broad leaves one right against another, ribbed with certain nerves like those of Plantain, sharp pointed, and somewhat hollowed in the middle like Spoonwort: from the bosom of which leaves come forth small flowers, not seen or described by the author: after which cometh forth a cluster of red berries, thrust hard together as those of Aaron or Priest's Pint. The root is tough and very slender, creeping far abroad under the upper crust of the earth, whereby it occupieth much ground.

The Place.

These plants are strangers in England: they grow in the woods and mountains of Switzerland, Germany, Savoy, and other those parts tending to the East, East North-East, and East and by South.

I have a plant of the first kind in my garden: the rest as yet I have not seen, and therefore cannot write so liberally thereof as I could wish.

The dwarf Honeysuckle grows in the maritime parts of Norway and Sweden, & the countries thereabout.

The Time.

They flower for the most part when the others do, that is to say in May and June, and their fruit is ripe in September.

The Names.

Upright Woodbine or Honeysuckle is called *Periclymenum stans*, and *Periclymenum rectum*, or upright Woodbine: of Dodonæus, *Xylosteum*: in High Dutch, **Honds Kirschen**, that is to say, *Canum Cerasa*, or Dog Cherries. The English names are expressed in their several titles. It hath been called *Chamæcerasus*, but not truly.

The Temperature and Virtues.

Touching the temperature and virtues of these upright Woodbines, we have no experience at all ourselves, neither have we learned anything of others.

CHAP. 10. Of Senna.

Sena folijs obtusis.
Italian Sene.



Fig. 1844. Senna

The Description

Senna bringeth forth stalks a cubit high, set with divers branches: the leaves are long, winged, consisting of many small leaves like those of Liquorice, or of bastard Senna: the flowers come forth of the bottom of the wings, of colour yellow, standing upon slender footstalks; from which after the flowers be gone hang forked cods, the same bowing inward like a half-moon, plain and flat, in which are contained seeds like to the seeds or kernels of grapes, of a blackish colour. The root is slender, long, and unprofitable, which perisheth when the leaves are gathered for medicine, and the seeds be ripe, and must be sown again the next year, even as we do corn.

There is another kind of Senna growing in Italy, like the other in each respect, saving that it is greater, and hath not that force in purging that the other hath.

The Place and time.

This is planted in Syria and Egypt, also in Italy, in Provençe in France, in Languedoc. It hardly groweth in high and low Germany, neither in England: it prospereth in hot regions, and cannot away with cold; for that cause it is in Italy sown in May, and continueth no longer than autumn: the best is brought from Alexandria and Egypt. The Arabians were the first that found it out.

The Names.

The Persians call it *Abalzemer*, as Mesue his copy teacheth: the apothecaries *Sena*, by which name it was known to Actuarius the Grecian, and to the later Latins: it is called in English, Senna.

The Temperature.

Senna is of a mean temperature, neither hot nor cold, yet inclining to heat, and dry almost in the third degree: it is of a purging faculty, and that by the stool, in such sort as it is not much troublesome to man's nature, having withal a certain binding quaity, which it leaveth after the purging.

The Virtues.

A. It voideth forth phlegmatic and choleric humours, also gross and melancholic, if it be helped with something tending to that end.

B. It is a singular purging medicine in many diseases, fit for all ages and kinds.

C. It purgeth without violence or hurt, especially if it be tempered with Anise seed or other like sweet smelling things added, or with gentle purgers or lenitive medicines. It may be given in powder, but commonly the infusion thereof is used.

D. The quantity of the powder is a dram weight, and in the infusion, four, five, or more. It may be mixed in any liquor.

E. It is in the decoction or in the infusion tempered with cold things in burning agues and other hot diseases: in cold and long infirmities it is boiled with hot opening simples and such like; or else it is steeped in wine, in which manner, as familiar to man's nature, it draweth forth gently by the stool, almost without any kind of pain, crude and raw humours.

F. Most of the Arabians commend the cods, but our physicians the leaves rather; for unless the cods be full ripe they engender wind; and cause gripings in the belly. For they are oftentimes gathered before they be ripe, and otherwise easily fall away being shaken down by the wind, by reason of their weak and slender stalks.

G. Some also think that Senna is hurtful to the stomach, and weakeneth the same, for which cause they say that Ginger or some sweet kind of spice is to be added, whereby the stomach may be strengthened. Likewise Mesue noteth that it is slow in operation, and therefore sal-gem is to be mixed with it. Moreover, Senna purgeth not so speedily as stronger medicines do.

H. Notwithstanding it may be helped not only by sal-gem, but also by other purging things mixed therewith, that is to say with simple medicines, as Rhubarb, Agaric, and others; and with compounds, as that which is called *Catholicon*, or the electuary *Diaphanicon*, or that which is made of the juice of roses, or some other, according as the condition or quality of the disease and of the sick man requireth.

I. The leaves of Senna are a familiar purger to all people, but they are windy, and do bind the body afterwards, very much disquieting the stomach with rumbling and belching: for the avoiding of which inconvenience there must be added cinnamon, ginger, aniseed, and fennel seed, raisins of the sun, and such like that do break wind, which will the better help his purging quality.

K. Senna doth better purge when it is infused or steeped, than when it is boiled: for doubtless the more it is boiled the less it purgeth, and the more windy it becometh.

L. Take Borage, Bugloss, Balm, Fumitory, of each three drams, Senna of Alexandria very well prepared and pounded, two ounces, strew the powder upon the herbs and distil them: the water that cometh thereof reserve to your use to purge those that live delicately, being minisetred in white wine, with sugar, in condited confections,

and such dainty ways, wherein delicate and fine people do greatly delight: you may also (as was said before) add hereunto according to the malady, divers purgers, as Agaric, Myrobalans, &c.

M. The powder of Senna after it is well prepared two ounces, of the powder of the root of Mechoacan four drams, powder of Ginger, Anise seeds, of each a little, a spoonful of Anise seeds, but a very little Ginger, and a modicum or small quantity of sal-gem: this hath been proved a very fit and familiar medicine for all ages and sexes. The patient may take one spoonful or two thereof fasting, either in pottage, some supping in drink, or white wine. This is right profitable to draw both phlegm and melancholy from the breast and other parts.

N. The leaves of Senna and Camomile are put in baths to wash the head.

O. Senna opens the inward parts of the body which are stopped, and is profitable against all griefs of the principal members of the body.

P. Take Senna prepared according to art one ounce, ginger half a quarter of an ounce, twelve cloves, fennel seed two drams, or instead thereof cinnamon and tartar, of each half a dram, powder all these; which done, take thereof in white wine one dram before supper, which doth marvellously purge the head.

Q. Handle Senna in manner above specified, then take half an ounce thereof, which done, add thereto sixty raisins of the sun with the stones picked out, one spoonful of Anise seeds brayed, boil these in a quart of ale till one half be wasted, and while it is boiling put in your Senna: let it stand so till the morning, then strain it, and put in a little ginger: then take the one half of this potion and put thereunto two spoonfuls of syrup of roses: drink this together, I mean the one half of the medicine at one time, and if the patient cannot abide the next day to receive the other half, then let it be deferred until the third day after.

R. Senna and Fumitory (as Rasis affirmeth) do purge adust humours, and are excellent good against scabs, itch, and the ill affection of the body.

S. If Senna be infused in whey, and then boiled a little, it becometh good physic against melancholy, cleanseth the brain and purgeth it, as also the heart, liver, milt, and lungs, causeth a man to look young, engendereth mirth, and taketh away sorrow: it cleareth the sight, strengtheneth hearing, and is very good against old fevers and diseases arising of melancholy.

CHAP. 11. Of Bastard Senna.

1 *Colutea*.
Bastard Sene.



Fig. 1845. Bastard Senna (1)

2 *Colutea Scorpioides*.
Bastard Senewith Scorpion cods.



Fig. 1846. Scorpion Senna (2)

The Description.

1. *Colutea* and Senna be so near the one unto the other in shape and show, that the unskilful herbarists have deemed *Colutea* to be the right Senna. This bastard Senna is a shrubby plant growing to the form of a hedge bush or shrubby tree: his branches are straight, brittle, and woody; which being carelesly broken off, and as negligently pricked or stuck in the ground, will take root and prosper at what time of the year soever it be done; but slipped or cut, or planted in any curious sort whatsoever, among an hundred one will scarcely grow: these boughs or branches are beset with leaves like *Sena* or *Securidaca*, not much unlike Liquorice: among which come forth fair broom-like yellow flowers, which turn into small cods like the sound of a fish or a little bladder, which will make a crack being broken between the fingers: wherein are contained many black flat seeds of the bigness of tares, growing upon a small rib or sinew within the cod: the root is hard, and of a woody substance.

2. Bastard Senna with Scorpion Cods is a small woody shrub or bush, having leaves, branches, and flowers like unto the former bastard Senna, but less in each respect: when his small yellow flowers are fallen there succeed little long crooked cods like the long cods or husks of Matthiulus his *Scorpioides*, whereof it took his name: the root is like the root of the Box tree, or rather resembling the roots of *Dulcamara* or Bitter-Sweet, growing naturally in the shadowy woods of Valena in Narbonne; whereof I have a small plant in my garden, which may be called Scorpion Senna.

3 *Colutea scorpioides humilis.*
Dwarfe bastard Sene.



Fig. 1847. Dwarf Bastard Senna (3)

4 *Colutea scorpioides montana Clusij.*
Mountaine bastard Sene.



Fig. 1848. Mountain Bastard Senna (4)

3. The low or dwarf *Colutea* of Clusius' description, hath a thick woody root covered with a yellowish bark, with many fibres annexed thereto, which bringeth forth yearly new shoots whereby it greatly increaseth, of a cubit and a half high, smooth, and of a green colour; whereon do grow leaves composed of six or seven leaves and sometimes nine, set upon a middle rib like those of the common kind, of a styptic taste, with some sharpness or biting: the flowers grow upon slender footstalks, long and naked like those of the Pea, and of a yellow colour, of little or no smell at all, and yet that little nothing pleasant: after which come forth long cods, wherein is contained small seed like those of the Strangle Tare.

4. This Mountain Bastard Senna hath stalks, leaves, and roots like the last described. The flowers grow on the tops of the branches in manner of a crown; whereupon some have called it *Coronilla*: in shape like those of the Pea, and of a yellow colour: the cods as yet we have not seen, and therefore not expressed in the figure.

5 *Colutea minima, sive Coronilla.*
The smallest bastard Sene.



Fig. 1849. Smallest Bastard Senna (5)

5. This small bastard Senna groweth like a small shrub creeping upon the ground, half a cubit high, bringing forth many twiggly branches, in manner of those of the Spanish Broom; whereupon do grow leaves like those of Lentils or the Strangle Tare, with many small leaves set upon a middle rib, somewhat fat or full of juice, of the colour of the leaves of Rue or Herb-Grace, of an astringent and unpleasant taste: the flowers grow at the tops of the branches, of a yellow colour, in shape like those of the smallest Broom: after which come little crooked cods like the claws or toes of a bird, wherein is contained seed somewhat long, black, and of an unsavoury taste: the root is long, hard, tough, and of a woody substance.

6. There is also found another sort hereof, not much differing from the former, saving that this plant is greater in each respect, wherein especially consisteth the difference.

The Place.

Colutea or bastard Senna groweth in divers gardens, and cometh up of seed; it quickly cometh to perfection, insomuch that if a stick thereof be broken off and thrust into the ground, it quickly taketh root, yea although it be done in the middle of summer, or at any other time, even as the sticks of willow and elder, as myself have often proved; which bring forth flowers and fruit the next year after.

The second with Scorpion cods groweth likewise in my garden: the last doth grow in divers barren chalky grounds of Kent towards Sittingbourne, Canterbury, and about Southfleet; I have not seen them elsewhere: the rest are strangers in England.

The Time.

They flower from May till summer be well spent, in the mean season the cods bring forth ripe seed.

The Names.

This shrub is called in Latin, as Gaza expoundeth it, *Coloutea* or *Colutea*: in High Dutch, *Welch Linsen*: in French, *Baguenaudier*: they are deceived that think it to be Senna, or any kind thereof, although we have followed others in giving it to name Bastard Senna, which name is very unproper to it: in Low Dutch it is called *Sene Boom*: and we may use the same name Senna tree, in English.

This *Colutea*, or Bastard Senna, doth differ from that plant *Colytea*, of which Theophrastus writeth in his third book. The fifth is the *Polygala valentina* of Clusius.

The Nature and Virtues.

A. Theophrastus, neither any other hath made mention of the temperature or faculties in working of these plants, more than that they are good to fatten cattle, especially sheep.

CHAP. 12. Of Liquorice.

1 *Glycyrrhiza Echinata* Dioscoridis.
Hedge-hogge Licorice.



Fig. 1850. Hedgehog Liquorice (1)

‡ 2 *Glycyrrhiza vulgaris*.
Common Licorice.



Fig. 1851. Common Liquorice (2)

The Description.

1. The first kind of Liquorice hath many woody branches, rising up to the height of two or three cubits, beset with leaves of an overworn green colour, consisting of many small leaves set upon a middle rib, like the leaves of *Colutea*, or the Mastic tree, somewhat glutinous in handling: among which come small knops growing upon short stems betwixt the leaves and the branches, clustering together, and making a round form and shape: out of which grow small blue flowers, of the colour of an English Hyacinth; after which succeed round, rough, prickly heads, consisting of divers rough or leafy husks closely and thick compact together; in which is contained a flat seed: the root is straight, yellow within, and brown without: of a sweet and pleasant taste.

2. The common and usual Liquorice hath stalks and leaves very like the former, saving that his leaves are greener and greater, and the flowers of a light shining blue colour: but the flowers of this are succeeded by longish cods that grow not so thick clustering together in round heads as the former, but spike fashion, or rather like the wild Vetch called *Onobrychus*, or *Galega*. The cods are small and flat like unto the Tare: the roots are of a brownish colour without, and yellow within like Box, and sweeter in taste than the former.

The Place

These plants do grow in sundry places of Germany wild, and in France and Spain, but they are planted in gardens in England, whereof I have plenty in my garden:

the poor people of the North parts of England do manure it with great diligence, whereby they obtain great plenty thereof, replanting the same once in three or four years.

The Time.

Liquorice flowereth in July, and the seed is ripe in September.

The Names.

The first is called in Greek *Glykyrriza*: in Latin, *Dulcis radix*, or sweet root: this Liquorice is not known either to the apothecaries or to the vulgar people: we call it in English, Dioscorides his Liquorice.

It is most evident that the other is *Glycyrrhiza*, or Liquorice: the apothecaries call it by a corrupt word, *Liquiritia*: the Italians, *Regalitia*: the Spaniards, *Regeliza* and *Regalitia*: in High Dutch, *Susꝛhotz*, *Susꝛwurtzel*: in French, *Rigolisse*, *Raigalisse*, and *Reglisse*: in Low Dutch, *Callissehout*, *Suethout*: in English, common Liquorice: Pliny calleth it *Scythica herba*: it is named *Scythice* of the country Scythia, where it groweth.

The Temperature.

The nature of Dioscorides his Liquorice, as Galen saith, is familiar to the temperature of our bodies, and seeing it hath a certain binding quality adjoined, the temperature thereof so much as is hot and binding, is specially of a warm quality, coming nearest of all to a mean temperature; besides, for that it is also sweet, it is likewise meanly moist.

For as much as the root of the common Liquorice is sweet, it is also temperately hot and moist; notwithstanding the bark thereof is something bitter and hot, but this must be scraped away; the fresh root when it is full of juice doth moisten more than the dry.

The Virtues.

A. The root of Liquorice is good against the rough harshness of the throat and breast; it openeth the pipes of the lungs when they be stuffed or stopped, and ripeneth the cough, and bringeth forth phlegm.

B. The juice of Liquorice made according to art, and hardened into a lump, which is called *Succus liquiritiæ*, serveth well for the purposes aforesaid, being holden under the tongue, and these suffered to melt.

C. Moreover, with the juice of Liquorice, Ginger, and other spices, there is made a certain bread or cakes, called gingerbread, which is very good against the cough, and all the infirmities of the lungs and breast: which is cast into moulds, some of one fashion, and some of another.

D. The juice of Liquorice is profitable against the heat of the stomach, and of the mouth.

E. The same is drunk with wine of raisins against the infirmities of the liver and chest, scabs or sores of the bladder, and diseases of the kidneys.

F. Being melted under the tongue it quencheth thirst: it is good for green wounds being laid thereupon, and for the stomach if it be chewed.

G. The decoction of the fresh roots serveth for the same purposes.

H. But the dried root most finely powdered is a singular remedy for a pin and a web in the eye, if it be strewed thereupon.

I. Dioscorides and Pliny also report, that Liquorice is good for the stomach and ulcers of the mouth, being cast upon them.

K. It is good against hoarseness, difficulty of breathing, inflammation of the lungs, the pleurisy, spitting of blood or matter, consumption or rottenness of the lungs, all infirmities and ruggedness of the chest.

L. It takes away inflammations, mitigateth and tempereth the sharpness and saltness of humours, concocteth raw humours, and procureth easy spitting.

The decoction is good for the kidneys and bladder that are exulcerated.

M. It cureth the strangury, and generally all infirmities that proceed of sharp, salt, and biting humours.

N. These things concerning Liquorice hath also Theophrastus: viz. that with this and with cheese made of mares' milk the Scythians were reported to be able to live eleven or twelve days.

O. The Scythian root is good for shortness of breath, for a dry cough, and generally for all infirmities of the chest.

P. Moreover, with honey it healeth ulcers, it also quencheth thirst if it be held in the mouth: for which cause they say that the Scythians do live eleven or twelve days with it and *Hippace*, which is cheese made of mares' milk, as Hippocrates witnesseth.

Q. Pliny in his twenty-fifth book, chap. 8, hath thought otherwise than truth, that *Hippace* is an herb so called.

CHAP. 13. Of Milk Trefoil or Shrub Trefoil.

The Kinds.

There be divers kinds or sorts of the shrubby Trefoil, the which might very well have passed among the three-leaved Grasses, had it not been for my promise in the proem of our first part, that in the last book of our History the shrubby or woody plants should be set forth, every one as near as might be in kindred and neighbourhood.



Fig. 1852. Kinds of Shrub Trefoil (1,2,4,5)

The Description.

1. The first kind of *Cytisus* or shrubby Trefoil grows to the form of a small shrub or woody bush two or three cubits high, branching into sundry small boughs or arms, set full of leaves like the small Trefoil, dark green, and not hairy, three growing always together: among these come forth small yellow flowers like them of French Broom, which do turn into long and flat cods, containing small seed of a blackish colour.

2. The second kind of *Cytisus* is likewise a small shrub, in shape after the manner of the former, but that the whole plant is altogether smaller, and the leaves rounder, set together by couples, and the small cods hairy at the ends, which sets forth the difference. The leaves of this are almost round, and grow three together close to the stalk: they are smooth, of a fresh green, and the middlemost leaf of the three is the largest, and ends in a sharp point: the flowers are of the bigness and colour of the *Trifolium corniculatum*: it flowers in May.

3. The root of this third kind is single, from whence spring up many smooth brittle stalks divided into many wings and branches, whereon grow green leaves smaller than those of Meadow Trefoil: the flowers are yellow, lesser than Broom flowers, otherwise very like, growing about the tops of the twiggy branches, divided into spoky tufts: which being faded, there follow thin long narrow cods, lesser than those of the Broom, wherein is contained small black seed. The root is long, deeply growing into the ground, and sometimes waxeth crooked in the earth. [This also hath smooth green leaves, and differs little (if anything at all) from the first described, wherefore I thought it needless to give a figure. Our author called it *Cytisus siliquosus*, Codded shrub Trefoil, because one of the branches was fairly in the figure expressed with cods; I know no other reason, for all the *Cytisi* are codded as well as this.]

4. The fourth kind of *Cytisus* hath a great number of small branches and stalks like the former, but it is a lower plant, and more woolly; whose stalks and branches grow not very high, but yet very plentifully spread about the sides of the plant: the leaves are greater than the former, but lesser than those of Meadow Trefoil: the flowers grow close together, as though they were bound up or compact into one head or spoky tuft somewhat greater than the former: the cods are also greater, and more hairy: the root groweth very deep into the ground, whereunto are adjoined a few fibres: it falleth out to be more hairy or woolly in one place than in another, and the more hairy and woolly that it is, the whiter it waxeth; for the roughness bringeth it a certain whitish colour. The branches of this oft-times lie along upon the ground: the leaves are smooth and green above, and hoary underneath: the flowers yellow, which fading sometimes become orange coloured: the cods are round, and seeds brownish.

5. The fifth kind of *Cytisus* groweth to the height of a cubit or more, having many slender twiggy branches like Broom, streaked and very hard: whereupon grow leaves very like Fenugreek, yet all hoary, three together: from the bosom of which, or between the leaves and the stalks, come forth yellow flowers very like Broom, Spartum, or Pea, but smaller: the cods be like unto Broom cods, of an ash colour, but slenderer, rougher, and flatter; in the several cells or divisions whereof are contained bright shining seeds like the black seeds of Broom: all the whole plant is hoary like *Rhamnus* or *Halymus*.

6 *Cytisus Pinnatus*.
Winged shrub Trefoile.



Fig. 1853. Winged Shrub Trefoil (6)

7 *Cytisus 7. Cornutus*.
The Horned shrub Trefoile.



Fig. 1854. Horned Shrub Trefoil (7)

6. The sixth kind of *Cytisus* or bush Trefoil groweth to the height of a tall man, with long stalks covered over with a blackish bark, and a few boughs or branches, beset or garnished with leaves like the common Trefoil, but smaller, growing also three together, whereof the middlemost of the three leaves is twice as long as the two side leaves; the upper side whereof is green, and the lower side somewhat reddish and hairy: the flowers grow along the stalks almost from the bottom to the top, of a golden yellow colour, fashioned like the Broom flower, but greater than any of the rest of his kind, and of a reasonable good savour: the seed hath the pulsy taste of *Cicer*.

7. The seventh kind of *Cytisus* hath many tough and hairy branches rising from a woody root, four or five cubits high, which are divided into sundry smaller branches beset with leaves like the Meadow Trefoils; among which come forth yellow flowers like Broom, that turn into crooked flat cods like a sickle, wherein is contained the seed tasting like *Cicer* or *Legumen*. The whole plant is hoary like *Rhamnus*, and being broken or bruised smelleth like Rocket.

8 *Cytisus* 8.
The eighth shrub Trefoile.

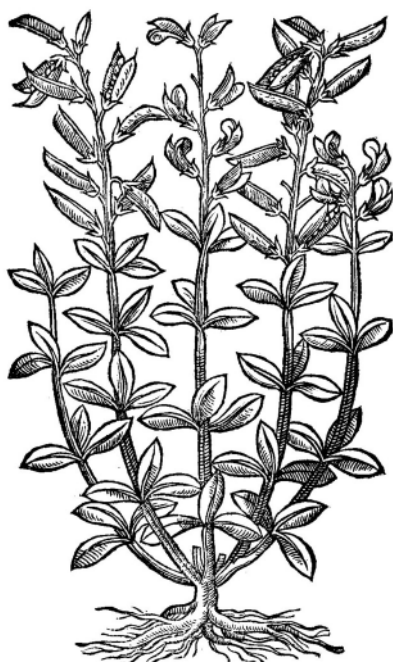


Fig. 1855. 8th Shrub Trefoil (8)

9 *Cytisus adulterinus, sine Alysson fruticans.*
Bastard shrub Trefoile.



Fig. 1856. Bastard Shrub Trefoil (9)

8. This eighth kind of *Cytisus*, which Pena setteth forth, is doubtless another kind of *Cytisus* resembling the former in leaves, flowers, and cods, saving that the small leaves (which are always three together) are a little snipped about the edges: the whole plant is slenderer, softer, and greener, rather resembling an herb than a shrub: the root is small and single.

9. This bastard or misbegotten shrub Trefoil, or bastard *Cytisus*, groweth up like a shrub, but not of a woody substance, having tender stalks smooth and plain: whereon do grow hairy leaves like the other, divers set upon one footstalk, contrary to all the rest: the flowers grow along the items like those of the Stock Gillyflowers, of a yellow colour: the root is tough and woody.

The Place.

These plants were first brought into Italy and Greece from one of the Isles of Cyclades, called Cyntho or Cynthus. [Now called Delos – Ed.] and since found in many places of France, as about Montpellier, Veganium, and other places: they are strangers in England, though they grow very plentifully in Scotland, as it is reported; whereof I have two sorts in my garden, that is to say, *Cytisus Maranthæ*, or the horned *Cytisus*, and likewise one of the smallest, that is to say, the third in number. The second groweth in the garden of Mr. John Tradescant.

The Time.

These plants flower for the most part in May, June, and July, and some after: the seed is ripe in September.

The Names.

The Grecians and Latins do call this shrub *Kyntusos*, of Cynthusa an island before mentioned, in which place they are in great estimation for that they do so wonderfully feed cattle, and increase milk in their dugs, nourish sheep and goats, which bring young ones good for store and increase. One author doth call these plants in Latin *Fæcundum foenum*, fertile or fruitful hay, for that the kinds hereof cause milk to increase, maketh good blood and juice, augmenteth strength, and mutiplieth the natural seed of generation; they may be called in English Milk Trefoil, of the store of milk which they increase.

The Temperature.

The leaves of Milk Trefoil do cool, as Dioscorides writeth; they assuage swellings in the beginning, if they be stamped and laid unto them with bread: the decoction thereof drunk provoketh urine: Galen teacheth, that the leaves of Milk Trefoil have a digesting or wasting quality mixed with a watery and temperate faculty, as have those of the Mallow.

The Virtues.

A. Women, saith Columella, if they want milk must steep dry Milk Trefoil in fair water, and when it is throughly soaked, they must the next day mix a quart or thereabouts of the same pressed or strained forth with a little wine, and so let it be given unto them to drink, and by that means they themselves shall receive strength, and their children comfort by abundance of milk.

B. Hippocrates reckoneth up Milk Trefoil among those things that increase milk, in his book *Of the Nature of Women, and of Women's Diseases*.

C. Also Aristomachus of Athens in Pliny, commandeth to give with wine the dry plant, and the same likewise boiled in water, to nurses to drink when their milk is gone.

D. Democritus and Aristomachus do promise that you shall want no bees, if you have Milk Trefoil for them to feed on: for all writers with one consent do conclude (as Galen saith) that bees do gather of the flowers of Milk Trefoil very great store of honey.

E. Columella teacheth, that Milk Trefoil is notable good for hens, bees, goats, kine, and all kind of cattle, which quickly grow fat by eating thereof, and that it yieldeth very great store of milk.

F. The people of Bœtica and Valencia (where there is great store of *Cytisus*) do use it very much for the silkworms to hang their web upon after they have been well fed with the leaves of Mulberries.

G. Milk Trefoil is likewise a marvellous remedy against the sciatica, and all other kinds of gouts.

CHAP. 14. Of Bastard Milk Trefoils.

1 *Pseudocytisus* 1.
The first bastard shrub Trefoile.



2 *Pseudocytisus* 2.
The 2. bastard shrub Trefoile.



3 *Cytisus semper virens*.
The euer-greene shrub Trefoile.



4 *Pseudocytisus hirsutus*.
The hairie bastard tree Trefoile.



Fig. 1857. Bastard Milk Trefoils (1-4)

The Description.

This riseth up with little stalks from the root, brittle, very many in number, parted into wings and branches, about which grow many leaves lesser than those of the Meadow Trefoil, of colour green: the flowers about the tops of the twigs be orderly

placed in manner like ears, of colour yellow, lesser than those of broom, otherwise all alike: in their places grow up slender cods long, narrow, and lesser than the cods of Broom: rough also and hairy; in which do lie little blackish seeds: the root is long, and groweth deep and oftentimes creepeth aslope.

2. The second kind of bastard Milk Trefoil is like unto the former in plentiful stalks and twigs, but that it is lower and more downy, neither do the stalks thereof stand upright, but rather incline to the one side: the leaves also are somewhat greater, but yet lesser than those of the Meadow Trefoil, wholly white, and they never open themselves out, but keep always folded with the middle rib standing out: the flowers likewise be closelier joined together, and compacted as it were into a little head, and be also something greater: the cods in like manner are a little bigger and hairy, and of a blackish purple or murrey: the root groweth deep in the ground, being divided into a few sprigs; it oftentimes happeneth to grow in one place more hairy or downy than in another: the more hairy and downy it is, the more white and hoary it is; for the hairiness doth also bring with it a certain whitish colour.

3. The third kind of bastard Milk Trefoil bringeth forth a company of young shoots that are somewhat writhed and crooked, long leaves of a fair green colour: the flowers are closed together, long, white, or else galbineous, sweetly smelling, that is to say, having the smell of honey: the shrub itself is always green both summer and winter. This grows four foot or better high, with slender hoary branches set with leaves three standing together upon a very short stalk, and the middle leaf is as long again as the other two; they are very white and hoary, and the yellow flowers grow out of the bosoms of the leaves all alongst the

4. The fourth shrub is likewise one of the wild kind, though in face and nature like the manured *Cytisus* It groweth up like a small shrub or hedge bush to the height of two or three yards, on whose branches do grow three rough or hairy leaves, set upon a slender footstalk, of a grass green colour above, with a reddish hairiness below: the flowers grow alongst the stalks from the middle to the top, of a bright shining yellow colour: the root is likewise woody.

The Place.

These kinds of Milk Trefoils are found in Moravia, so called in our age, which in times past was named *Marcomannorum provincia*, and in the upper Pannonia, otherwise called Austria, near to highways, and in the borders of fields; for they seem after a sort to joy in the shade. They grow (according to Clusius) in sundry parts of Spain.

The Time.

They flower specially in June and July.

The Names.

It is evident enough that they are bastard kinds of Milk Trefoils, and therefore they may be called and plainly termed *Pseudocytisi*, or bastard Milk Trefoils, or *Cytisi sylvestres*, that is to say, wild Milk Trefoils.

The Temperature and Virtues.

What temperature these shrubs are of, or what virtues they have we know not, neither have we as yet found out by our own experience anything, and therefore they may be referred to the other Milk Trefoils.

CHAP. 15. Of the Venomous Tree Trefoil.

† 1 *Dorycnium Montpelienfium.*
The venomous Trefoile of Montpellier.



2 *Dorycnium Hispanicum.*
The venomous Trefoile of Spain.



Fig. 1858. Montpellier Venomous Trefoil
(1)

Fig. 1859. Spanish Venomous Trefoil (2)

The Description.

1. The Venomous Trefoil of Montpellier hath many tough and pliant stalks, two or three cubits high, divided into sundry small twiggy branches, beset with leaves three together, placed from joint to joint by spaces, somewhat hoary, very like unto the leaves of *Cytisus*, or Rue: among which come forth many small mossy white flowers, tuft fashion, in small bundles like nosegays, and very like the flowers of the Olive or Oak tree, which turn into small roundish bladders, as it were made of parchment: wherein is contained black seed like wild Lotus, but in taste like the wild Tare: the whole plant is of an unsavoury smell; the root is thick, and of a woody substance.

2. The Spanish Venomous Trefoil hath a woody stalk, rough and hoary, divided into other small branches, whereon do grow leaves like the precedent: the flowers grow on the tops of the branches, whereon do grow leaves like those of the Pea, and of a yellow, or rather greenish colour, wherein it differeth from the precedent.

The Place.

These venomous Trefoils grow in Narbonne, on the barren and stony craggy mountains, at Frontignan, and about the sea coasts, and are strangers in England.

The Time.

They flourish from May to the end of June.

The Names.

Dorycnium is that poisonous or venomous plant wherewith in times past they used to poison their arrow heads, or rather weapons, thereby to do the greater hurt unto those whom they did assail or pursue, whereupon it took his name: great controversy hath been among herbarists, what manner of plant *Dorycnium* should be; some saying one thing, and some another: which controversies and sundry opinions are very well consuted by the true censure of Rondeletius, who hath for a definitive sentence set down the plant described for the true *Dorycnium*, and none other, which may be called in English, Venomous Tree Trefoil. These plants do not sufficiently answer to the description of Dioscorides, neither can any one say certainly, that they are poisonous.

The Temperature.

Dorycnium is very cold, without moistning.

The Virtues.

A. Venomous Trefoil hath not one good quality that I can read of, but it is a pestilent venomous plant, as hath been said in the description

CHAP. 16. Of the Shrub Trefoil called also Makebate.

Polemonium sive Trifolium fruticans.
Shrubby Trefoile, or yellow Iasmine.



Fig. 1860. Makebate Shrub Trefoil.

The Description.

This shrubby plant called *Polemonium*, hath many woody twigs, growing unto the height of four or five cubits, having small twiggy branches, of a dark green colour, garnished with small leaves of a deep green colour, always three joined together upon little footstalks, like the *Cytisus* bush, or the Field Trefoil, but smaller: the flowers be yellow and round, divided into five or six parts, not much unlike the yellow Jasmine, which hath caused many to call it yellow Jasmine, even unto this day: when the flowers be faded, there succeed small round berries as big as a Pea, of a black purplish colour when they be ripe, which being broken will dye or colour the fingers like Elderberries: within these berries are contained a small flat seed, like unto Lentils: the root is long and small, creeping hither and thither under the earth, putting forth new springs or shoots in sundry places, whereby it wonderfully increaseth.

The Place.

It groweth plentifully in the country of Montpellier at New Castle upon the dry hills, and hot banks of the Olive fields, and in the stony fields and wood of Grammont: it grows in my garden, and in other herbarists' gardens in England.

The Time.

It flowers in summer: the seed is ripe in autumn; the shrub itself is always green, and hath a lasting root.

The Names.

Most do call it *Cytisus*, but we had rather name it *Trifolium fruticans*: for it doth not agree with *Cytisus* or Milk Trefoil, as in the chapter before it is plain enough by his description, unless it be *Cytisus Marcelli*, or Marcellus his Milk Trefoil, with which

peradventure it might be thought to have soame likeness, if the flowers which are yellow were white or blue.

There be divers also that take this Trefoil to be *Polemonium*, forasmuch as the leaves hereof seem to be somewhat like those of common Rue, but *Polemonium* hath not the leaf of common Rue, otherwise called Herb-Grace, but of the other, that is to say, of St. John's Rue: it is called in English, Shrubby Trefoil, or Makebate.

The Temperature.

Polemonium is of temperature dry in the second degree, with some acrimony or sharpness.

The Virtues.

A. This shrubby plant hath so many singular and excellent virtues contained in it, that some have called it by the name *Chiliodunamis* that is, having an hundred (sic) properties.

B. It is very effectual against the stinging of scorpions, and (as some write) if a man hold it in his hand, he cannot be hurt with the biting of any venomous beast.

C. Being taken in vinegar it is very good for those that are splenetic, and whose spleen or milt is affected with oppilations or stoppings.

D. If the root be taken in wine it helpeth against the bloody flux, it provoketh urine being drunk, with water, scoureth away gravel, and easeth the pain and ache called the sciatica.

CHAP. 17. Of Broom, and Broomrape.

1 *Genista.*
Broome.



Fig. 1861. Broom (1)

2 *Rapum Genistæ, sive Orobanche.*
Broome Rape, or Orobanche.



Fig. 1862. Broomrape, or Orobanche (2)

The Description.

1. Broom is a bush or shrubby plant, it hath stalks or rather woody branches: from which do spring slender twigs, cornered, green, tough, and that be easily bowed, many times divided into small branches: about which do grow little leaves of an obscure green colour, and brave yellow flowers; and at the length flat cods, which being ripe are black, as be those of the common Vetch, in which do lie flat seeds, hard, something brownish, and lesser than lentils: the root is hard and woody, sending forth divers times another plant of the colour of an Oaken leaf, in shape like unto the bastard Orchis, called Bird's-Nest, having a root like a Turnip or Rape, whereupon it is called *Rapum Genistæ*, or Broomrape.

2 This is a certain bulbed plant growing unto the roots of broom, big below, and smaller above, covered with blackish scales, and of a yelowish pulp within: from which doth rise a stalk a span long, having whitish flowers about the top, like almost to those of Dead Nettle: after which grow forth long, thick, and round husks, in which are contained very many seeds, and good for nothing: the whole plant is of the colour of the oaken leaf.

‡ *Orobanche Monspeliaca flo. oblongis.*
Long floured Broome Rape.



Fig. 1863. Long-Flowered Broomrape

‡ *Orobanche flore maiore.*
Great floured Broome Rape.



Fig. 1864. Great-Flowered Broomrape

‡ *Orobanche ramosa.*
Branched Broome Rape.



Fig. 1865. Branched Broomrape

Of this Orobanche or Broomrape there are some varieties observed and set forth by Lobel and Clusius; the first of these varieties hath longer and smaller flowers than the ordinary. The second hath larger flowers, and those of a blueish colour, and is sometimes found among corn. The third is parted towards the top into sundry branches;

the flowers of this are either blue, purplish, or else white, and it willingly grows among hemp.

3 *Genista Hispanica.*
Spanish Broome.



Fig. 1866. Spanish Broom (3)

5 *Chamaenista Anglica.*
English Dwarf Broome.



Fig. 1867. English Dwarf Broom (5)

3. The Spanish Broom hath likewise woody stems, from whence grow up slender pliant twigs, which be bare and naked without leaves, or at the least having but few small leaves, set here and there far distant one from another, with yellow flowers not much unlike the flowers of common Broom, but greater, which, turn into small long cods, wherein is contained brown and flat seed: the root is tough and woody.

4. Small-Leaved or thin-Leaved Broom hath many tough pliant shoots rising out of the ground, which grow into hard and tough stalks, which are divided into divers twiggy branches whereon do grow very small thin leaves, of a whitish colour; whereupon some have called it *Genista alba*, white Broom: the flowers grow at the top of the stalks, in shape like those of the common Broom, but of a white colour, wherein it specially differeth from the other Brooms.

5. English Dwarf Broom hath many twiggy branches, very green, tough, somewhat streaked or cornered, leaning toward the ground: whereon do grow leaves set without order, sometimes two together, and often three or four growing fast together, like unto the common Broom, green on the upper side, hoary underneath, and of a bitter taste: among which leaves come forth yellow flowers like those of common Broom, but lesser, of little or no smell at all: after which appear small cods somewhat hairy, wherin is contained small seed: the root is tough and woody.

Bauhine judges these two last described to be only varieties of the common Broom; to whose opinion I do much incline, yet I have let our author's description stand, together with the figure of this latter, which seemingly expresses the greatest difference.

**6 Chamægenista Pannonica.
Dwarf broome of Hungarie.**



Fig. 1868. Hungarian Dwarf Broom (6)

6. The Dwarf Broom of Hungary hath stalks and yellow flowers like those of the last described: the leaves hereof are different, they are longer, and more in number: the whole plant is altogether greater, wherein especially consisteth the difference.

The Place.

The common Broom groweth almost everywhere in dry pastures and low woods.

The Broomrape is not to be found but where Broom doth grow: it groweth in a Broom field at the foot of Shooter's Hill next to London; upon Hampstead Heath, and in divers other places.

Spanish Broom groweth in divers kingdoms of Spain and Italy; we have it in our London gardens.

The White Broom groweth likewise in Spain and other hot regions; it is a stranger in England; of this Titus Calphurnius makes mention in his second Eclogue of his Bucolics, writing thus:

*Cernis ut, ecce pater, quas tradidit Ornite vaccæ
Molle sub hirsuta latus explicuere genista.*

See father, how the kine stretch out their tender side
Under the hairy broom, that grows in fields so wide.

The Time.

Broom flowereth in the end of April or May, and then the young buds of the flowers are to be gathered, and laid in pickle or salt, which afterwards being washed or boiled, are used for salads, as capers be, and be eaten with no little delight: the cods and seeds be ripe in August; the Rape appeareth and is seen especially in the month of June.

The Spanish Broom doth flower sooner, and is longer in flowering.

The Names.

This shrub is called in Latin, *Genista*, or as some would have it *Genesta*: in Italian, *Genestra*: in Spanish likewise *Genestra*, or *Giestra*: in High Dutch, *Þfrimmen*: in Low Dutch, *Þrem*: in French, *Genest*: in English, Broom. The Spanish Broom by most writers is judged to be the *Spartium* of Dioscorides.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The twigs, flowers, and seeds of Broom are hot and dry in the second degree: they are also of a thin essence, and are of force to cleanse and open, and especially the seed, which is dryer and not so full of superfluous moisture

B. The decoction of the twigs and tops of Broom doth cleanse and open the liver, milt, and kidneys.

C. It driveth away by the stool watery humours, and therefore it is wholesome for them that have the dropsy, especially being made with wine; but better for the other infirmities with water.

D. The seed also is commended for the same purposes.

B. There is also made of the ashes of the stalks and branches dried and burnt, a lye with thin white wine, as Rhenish wine, which is highly commended of divers for the green sickness and dropsy, and this doth mightily expel and drive forth thin and watery humours together with the urine, and that by the bladder; but withal it doth by reason of his sharp quality many times hurt and fret the entrails.

F. Mesue saith, that there is in the flowers and branches a cutting moisture, but full of excrements, and therefore it causeth vomit: and that the plant doth in all his parts trouble, cut, attenuate, and violently purgeth by vomit and stool, phlegm and raw humours out of the joints.

G. But these things are not written of Broom, but of Spartum, which purgeth by vomit, after the manner of Hellebore, as both Dioscorides and Pliny do testify.

H. Mesue also addeth, that Broom doth break the stone of the kidneys and bladder, and suffereth not the matter whereof the stone is made to lie long, or to become a stone.

I. The young buds or little flowers preserved in pickle, and eaten as a salad, stir up an appetite to meat and open the stoppings of the liver and milt.

L. The same being fully blown, stamped and mixed with swine's grease, do ease the pain of the gout.

M. And Mesue writeth, that this tempered with honey of Roses, or with an egg, doth consume away the King's evil.

N. The Rape of the Broom or Broomrape, being boiled in wine, is commended against the pains of the kidneys and bladder, provoketh urine, breaketh the stone, and expelleth it.

O. The juice pressed forth of Broomrape healeth green wounds, and cleanseth old and filthy ulcers: the later physicians do affirm that it is also good for old venomous and malicious ulcers.

P. That worthy prince of famous memory Henry 8, King of England, was wont to drink the distilled water of Broom flowers against surfeits and diseases thereof arising.

Q. Sir Thomas Fitzherbert Knight, was wont to cure the black jaundice with this drink only.

R. Take as many handfuls (as you think good) of the dried leaves of Broom gathered and brayed to powder in the month of May, then take unto each handful of the dried leaves, one spoonful and a half of the seed of Broom brayed into powder: mingle these together, and let the sick drink thereof each day a quantity, first and last, until he find some ease. The medicine must be continued and so long used, until it be quite extinguished: for it is a disease not very suddenly cured, but must by little and little be dealt withal.

S. Orobanch or Broomrape sliced and put into oil olive, to infuse or macerate in the same, as ye do Roses for oil of roses, scoureth and putteth away all spots, lentils, freckles, and pustules from the face, or any part of the body, being anointed therewith.

T. Dioscorides writeth, that Orobanch may be eaten either raw or boiled, in manner as we use to eat the sprigs or young shoots of Asparagus.

V. The flowers and seeds of Spanish Broom are good to be drunk with Mead or honeyed water in the quantity of a dram, to cause one to vomit with great force and violence, even as white Hellebore, or neesing powder.

X. If it be taken alone, it loosneth the belly, driveth forth great quantity of watery and filthy humours.

CHAP. 18. Of Base Broom or Greenweed.

1 *Genistella tinctoria.*
Greenweed or Dyers weed.



2 *Genistella infectoria.*
Wooddie Dyers weed.



3 *Genistella pinnata.*
Winged Greenweed.



4 *Genistella globulata.*
Globe Greene weed.



Fig. 1869. Kinds of Greenweed (1-4)

The Description.

1. This base kind of Broom called Greenweed or Dyers' weed, hath many tough branches proceeding from a woody root: whereon do grow great store of leaves, of a deep green colour, somewhat long like those of Flax: the flowers grow at the top of the

branches not much unlike the leaves of Broom, but smaller; of an exceeding fair yellow colour, which turn into small flat cods, wherein is contained a little flat seed.

2. Carolus Clusius setteth forth another kind of Broom, which Dodonæus calleth *Genista tinctoria*, being another sort of dyers' weed: it groweth like the Spanish Broom: upon whose branches do grow long and small leaves like Flax, green on the upper side, and of an hoary shining colour on the other. The flowers grow at the top of the stalks, spike fashion, in form and colour like the former; the roots are thick and woody.

3. Carolus Clusius setteth forth two kinds of Broom. The first is a low and base plant, creeping and lying flat upon the ground, whose long branches are nothing else, but as it were stalks consisting of leaves thick in the midst, and thin about the edges, and as it were divided with small nicks; at which place it beginneth to continue the same leaf to the end, and so from leaf to leaf, until it have increased a great sort, all which do as it were make one stalk; and hath none other leaves, saving that in some of the nicks or divisions there cometh forth a small leaf like a little ear. At the end of those flat and leafed stalks come forth the flowers, much like the flowers of the common Greenweed, but lesser, and of a yellow colour, which turn into small cods. The roots are very long, tough, and woody, full of fibres, closing at the top of the root, from whence they proceed as from one body.

4. This kind of Greenweed called of some *Chamaespartium* hath a thick woody root; from which rise up divers long leaves, consisting as it were of many pieces set together like a pair of beads (as may better be perceived by the figure, than expressed by words) green on the upper side, and whitish underneath, very tough, and as it were of a rushy substance: among which rise up very small naked rushy stalks; on the top whereof groweth an ear or spike of a chaffy matter, having here and there in the said ear divers yellow flowers like Broom, but very small or little.

5 *Genistella Lagopoides maior.*
Hares foot Greenweed.



6 *Genistella Lagopoides minor.*
Small Greenweed with Hares foot floure.



Fig. 1870. Hare's-Foot Greenweed (5) Fig. 1871. Small Hare's-Foot Greenweed (6)

5. The fifth Greenweed hath a woody tough root, with certain strings annexed thereto: from which rise up divers long, flat leaves, tough, & very hard, consisting as it were of many little leaves, set one at the end of another, making of many one entire leaf, of a green colour: amongst which come forth divers naked hard stalks, very small and stiff, on the tops whereof stand spiky ears of yellow flowers, like those of Broom, in shape like that great three-leaved grass, called *Lagopus*, or like the Foxtail Grass: after which come flat cods, wherein is enclosed small seed like to Tares both in taste and form.

6. This differeth not from the precedent in stalks, roots and leaves: the flowers consist of a flocky soft matter, not unlike to the grassy tuft of Foxtail, resembling the flower of *Lagopus*, or Hare's-foot, but having small yellow flowers lesser than the former, wherein it chiefly differeth from the other of his kind.

The Place.

The first being our common Dyer's Weed, groweth in most fertile pastures and fields almost everywhere. The rest are strangers in England.

The Time.

They flower from the beginning of July to the end of August.

The Names.

The first of these Greenweeds is named of most herbarists *Flos tinctorius*, but more rightly, *Genista tinctoria*, of this Pliny hath made mention. The Greenweeds, saith he, do grow to dye cloths with, in his 18th book 6th chapter. It is called in High Dutch, **Jferblumen**, and **Ackerbrem**: in Italian, *Cerretta*, and *Cosaria*, as Matthiolus writeth in his chapter of *Lysimachia*, or Loosestrife: in English, Dyers' Greenweed, Base Broom, and Woodwaxen.

The rest we refer to their several titles.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. These plants are like unto common Broom in bitterness, and therefore are hot and dry in the second degree: they are likewise thought to be in virtues equal; notwithstanding their use is not so well known, and therefore not used at all where the other maybe had: we shall not need to speak of that use that dyers make thereof, being a matter impertinent to our history.

CHAP. 19. Of Spanish Base Brooms.

1 *Pseudospartum Hispanicum Aphyllum*:
Spanish Broome without leaues.



Fig. 1872. Leafless Spanish Broom (1)

2 *Pseudospartum album Aphyllum*.
The white leafe-lesse Spanish broom.



Fig. 1873. White Leafless Spanish Broom
(2)

The Description.

1. This grows to the height of a cubit, and is covered with a crested and rough bark; and divided into many longish branches crested & green, which at their first springing up have some leaves upon them, which fall away as soon as the plant comes to flower: from the sides of the branches come forth long footstalks whereon hang some small yellow flowers, which are succeeded by short round yellowish-red cods which commonly contain but one seed, seldom two, and these hard and black, and like a little Kidney, which when it is ripe will rattle in the cod being shaken.

2. This naked broom groweth up to the height of a man: the stalk is rough, and void of leaves, very green and pliant, which divideth itself into divers twiggy branches, green, and tough, like rushes: the flowers grow all along the stalks like those of broom, but of a white colour, wherein it differeth from all the rest of his kind.

The Place.

These grow in the provinces of Spain, and are in one place higher and more bushy, and in another lower.

The Time.

The first flowers in May, and the second in February.

The Names.

These base Spanish brooms may be referred to the true, which is called in Greek *Sparton*: the Latins use the same name, calling it sometimes *Spartum*, and *Spartium*: in Spanish, *Retama*: in English, Spanish Broom, and Bastard Spanish Broom.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Both the seeds and juice of the branches of these base Brooms, wherewith they in Spain and other hot regions do tie their vines, do mightily draw, as Galen writeth.

B. Dioscorides saith, that the seeds and flowers being drunk in the quantity of a dram, with mead or honeyed water, doth cause one to vomit strongly, as the Hellebore or neezing powder doth, but yet without jeopardy or danger of life: the seed purgeth by stool.

C. The juice which is drawn from out of the branches steeped in water, being first bruised, is a remedy for those that are tormented with the sciatica, and for those that be troubled with the squincy, if a draught thereof be drunk in the morning; some use to steep the branches in sea water, and to give the same in a clyster, which purgeth forth bloody and slimy excrements.

CHAP. 20. Of Furze, Gorse, Whin, or Prickly Broom.

† *Genista spinosa vulgaris.*
Great Furze bush.



Fig. 1874. Great Furze (1)

2 *Genista spinosa minor.*
The small Furze bush.



Fig. 1875. Small Furze (2)

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of prickly Broom, called in our English tongue by sundry names, according to the speech of the country people where they do grow: in some places, Furze; in others, Whins, Gorse, and of some, Prickly Broom.

The Description.

1. The Furze bush is a plant altogether a thorn, fully armed with most sharp prickles, without any leaves at all except in the spring, and those very few and little, and quickly falling away: it is a bushy shrub, often rising up with many woody branches to the height of four or five cubits, or higher, according to the nature and soil where they grow: the greatest and highest that I did ever see do grow about Exeter in the West parts of England; where the great stalks are dearly bought for the better sort of people, and the small thorny sprays for the poorer sort. From these thorny branches grow little flowers like those of Broom, and of a yellow colour, which in hot regions under the extreme heat of the sun are of a very perfect red colour: in the colder countries of the East, as Danzig, Brunswick, and Poland, there is not any branch hereof growing, except some few plants and seeds which myself have sent to Elbing otherwise called Meluin, where they are most curiously kept in their fairest gardens, as also our common Broom, the which I have sent thither likewise, being first desired by divers earnest letters: the cods follow the flowers, which the graver hath omitted, as a German who had never seen the plant itself, but framed the figure by hearsay: the root is strong, tough, and woody,

We have in our barren grounds of the North parts of England another sort of Furze, bringing forth the like prickly thorns that the others have: the only difference consisteth in the colour of the flowers; for the others bring forth yellow flowers, and those of this plant are as white as snow.

2. To this may be joined another kind of Furze which bringeth forth certain branches that be some cubit high, stiff, and set round about at the first with small winged Lentil-like leaves and little harmless prickles, which after they have been a year old, and the leaves gone, be armed only with most hard sharp prickles, crooking or bending their points downwards. The flowers hereof are of a pale yellow colour, lesser than those of Broom, yet of the same form: the cods are small, in which do lie little round reddish seeds: the root is tough and woody.

Of this Clusius reckons up three varieties: the first growing some cubit high, with deep yellow flowers: the second grows higher, and hath paler coloured flowers: the third groweth to the height of the first, the flowers also are yellow, the branches more prickly, and the leaves hairy; and the figure I give you is of this third variety.

† 3 *Genista Spinosa minor siliqua rotunda.*
Small round codded Furze.



Fig. 876. Small Round-Codded Furze (3)

4 *Genistella aculeata.*
Needle Furze or petty Whin.



Fig. 1877. Needle Furze (4)

3. This seldom exceeds a foot in height, and it is on every side armed with sharp prickles, which grow not confusedly, as in the common sort, but keep a certain order, and still grow forth by couples: they are of a lighter green than those of the common Furze: on the tops of each of the branches grow two or three yellow flowers like those of the former; which are succeeded by little round rough hairy cods of the bigness of Tares. This flowers in March, and groweth in the way between Bordeaux and Bayonne in France, and upon the Pyrennean mountains. Clusius makes it his *Scorpius* 2, or second sort of Furze: Lobel calls it *Genista spartium spinosum alterum*.

4. This small kind of Furze (growing upon Hampstead Heath near London, and in divers other barren grounds, where in manner nothing else will grow) hath many weak and flexible branches of a woody substance: whereon do grow little leaves like those of Thyme among which are set in number infinite most sharp prickles, hurting like needles, whereof it took his name. The flowers grow on the tops of the branches like those of Broom, and of a pale yellow colour. The root is tough and woody.

5 *Genista spinosa humilis.*
Dwarfe or low Futzze.

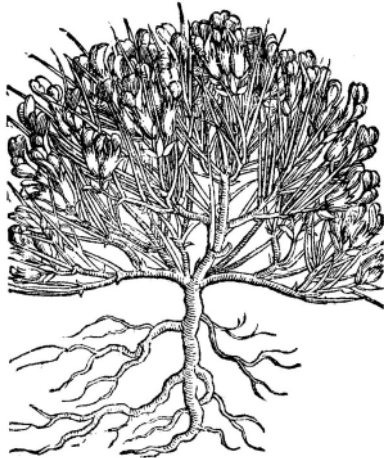


Fig. 1878. Dwarf Furze (5)

6 *Genista aculeata minor, sine Nepa Theophr.*
Scorpion Futzze.



Fig. 1879. Scorpion Furze. (6)

5. This plant (saith Clusius) is wholly new and elegant, some span high, divided into many branches, some spread upon the ground, others standing upright, having plentiful store of green prickles: the flowers in shape are like those of Broom, but less, and of a blueish purple colour, standing in rough hairy whitish cups, two or three flowers commonly growing near together: sometimes whilst it flowers it sendeth forth little leaves, but not very often, and they are few, and like those of the second described, and quickly fall away, so that the whole plant seems nothing but prickles, or like a hedgehog when she folds up herself: the root is woody, and large for the proportion of the plant. It grows in the kingdom of Valencia in Spain, where the Spaniards call it *Erizo*, that is, the hedgehog; and thence Clusius also termed it *Erinacea*. It flowereth in April.

6. The smallest of all the Furzes is that of the ancients called *Nepa*, or Scorpion Furze, as the word *Nepa* seemeth to import: it is a stranger in England: it hath been touched of the ancients in name only: which fault they have been all and every of them to be complained of, being so brief that nothing can be gathered from their description: and therefore I refer what might hereof be said to a further consideration. This hath a thick woody black root some half foot long, from whence arise many slender branches some foot high, which are set with many stiff and sharp prickles, growing somewhat after the manner of the wild prickly Sperage: the young plants have little leaves like those of Tragacanth; the old ones none: the flowers are small, and come forth at the bottom of the prickles, and they are succeeded by broad cods wherein the seed is contained. It grows in divers places of France and Spain, and is thought to be the *Scorpius* of Theophrastus, which Gaza translates *Nepa*.

The Place.

The common sort hereof are very well known to grow in pastures and fields in most places of England. The rest are likewise well known to those that curiously observe the difference.

The Time.

They flower from the beginning of May to the end of September.

The Names.

Furze is commonly called *Genista spinosa*: in High Dutch, *Gaspeldoren*: in English, Furze, Furzen bushes, Whin, Gorse, and Thorn-Broom.

This thorny Broom is taken for Theophrastus his *Scorpius*, which Galen nameth *Nepa*: the name *Scorpius* in Pliny is *polysemon*, that is to say, signifying many things, and common to certain plants: for besides this *Scorpius* of which he hath made mention, *lib. 25, cap. 5*, setting down Theophrastus his words, where he maketh *Aconitum thelyphonon* to be *Scorpius*, *lib. 23. cap. 10*, and likewise other plants under the same title, but improperly.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. There is nothing written in Theophrastus concerning the faculties of *Scorpius spinosus*, or Furze: Pliny seemeth to attribute unto it the same virtues that *Scorpioides* hath: notwithstanding the later writers do agree that it is hot and dry of complexion: the seeds are used in medicines against the stone, and staying of the lask.

CHAP. 21. Of Cammock Furze, Rest-Harrow, or Petty Whin.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of Rest-Harrow, which some have inserted among the smooth Brooms; others, among those with prickles, whereof some have purple flowers and likewise full of prickles; others, white flowers, and sharp thorns: some also purple flowers, others white, and also yellow, and every of them void of prickles.

1 *Anonis, sine Resta Bouis.*
Cammocke, or Rest-Harrow.



Fig. 1880. Rest-Harrow (1)

3 *Anonis non spinosa purpurea.*
Purple Rest-Harrow without prickles.



Fig. 1881. Purple Rest-Harrow (3)

The Description.

1. Cammock or ground Furze riseth up with stalks a cubit high, and often higher, set with divers jointed branches, tough, pliable, and full of hard sharp thorns: among which do grow leaves in form like those of St. John's Wort, or rather of the Lentil, of a deep green colour: from the bosom of which thorns and leaves come forth the flowers, like those of Peas, of a purple colour: after which do come the cods, in which do lie flat seed: the root is long, and runneth far abroad, very tough, and hard to be torn in pieces with the plough, insomuch that the oxen can hardly pass forward, but are constrained to stand still, whereupon it was called Rest-plough, or Rest-Harrow.

2. We have in our London pastures, and likewise in other places, one of the Rest-Harrows, not differing from the precedent in stalks, leaves, or prickles: the only difference is, that this plant bringeth forth white flowers, and the others not so; whence we may call it *Anonis flore albo*, Cammock with white flowers.

3. Rest-Harrow without thorns hath a tough hoary rough stalk, divided into other rough branches, whereon are set without order, long leaves sharp pointed, slightly cut about the edges, of an hoary colour, and somewhat hairy: from the bosom whereof cometh forth purple Pea-like flowers of a reasonable good smell: the root is very tough, long, and woody.

4 *Anonis, sine Spinalutea.*
Yellow Rest-Yarrow.



Fig. 1882. Yellow Rest-Harrow (4)

4. The yellow-flowered Cammock is a stranger in these parts, it is only found in the cold Eastern countries, for aught that I can learn; it differs not from the last described, saving that the flowers hereof are of a dark yellow colour, wherein it differeth from all the other of his kind.

The Place.

Those grow in arable grounds in fertile pastures, and in the borders of fields, in a fat, fruitful, and long lasting soil: it is sooner found than desired of husbandmen, because the tough and woody roots are cumbersome unto them, for that they stay the plough, and make the oxen stand.

The Time.

They send forth new shoots in May: they be full grown in autumn, and then those that of nature are prickly be fullest of sharp thorns: they flower in July and August.

The Names.

Cammock is called in Greek and likewise in Latin *Anonis*, and *Ononis*: of herbarists commonly *Aresta bovis*,["stop-oxen"] and *Remora aratri*,["plough delayer"] because it maketh the oxen whilst they be in ploughing to rest or stand still: it is also called *Acutella*, of the stiff and sharp thorns which prick those that pass by: in French, *Areste bæuf*, and *Bouverande*.

Crateuas nameth it *Ægipyrus*: in High Dutch, *Stalkraut*: in Low Dutch, *Prangwortele*: in Italian, *Bonaga*: in Spanish, *Gattilhos*: in French, *Arreste beuf*, *Beuf* & *Bouverande*: in English, Cammock, Rest-Harrow, Petty Whin, and ground Furze.

The Temperature.

The root of Cammock is hot in the third degree, as Galen saith: it cutteth also and maketh thin.

The Virtues.

A. The bark of the root drunk with Wine provoketh urine, breaketh the stone, and driveth it forth.

B. The root boiled in water and vinegar allayeth the pain of the teeth, if the mouth be often washed therewith hot.

C. Pliny reporteth, that being boiled in Oxymel (or the syrup made with honey and vinegar) till the one half be wasted, it is given to those that have the falling sickness. Matatthiolus reporteth, that he knew a man cured of a rupture, by taking of the powder of this root for many months together

D. The tender sprigs or crops of this shrub before the thorns come forth, are preserved in pickle, and be very pleasant sauce to be eaten with meat as salad, as a Dioscorides teacheth.

CHAP. 22. Of Gooseberry, or Feaberry Bush.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of the Gooseberries; some greater, others less: some round, others long, and some of a red colour: the figure of one shall serve for the rest.

I will not much insist upon diversities of fruits, because my kind friend Mr. John Parkinson hath sufficiently in his late work discoursed upon that subject; only because I judge many will be desirous to know their names, and where to get them, I will briefly name the chief varieties our kingdom affords; and such as are desirous of them may find them with Mr John living in Old Street.

The sorts of Gooseberries are these: the long green, the great yellowish, the blue, the great round red, the long red, and the prickly Gooseberry.

Vua Criffa.
Goose-berries.



Fig. 1883. Gooseberries

The Description.

The Gooseberry bush is a shrub of three or four cubits high, set thick with most sharp prickles: it is likewise full of branches, slender, woody, and prickly: whereon do grow round leaves cut with deep gashes into divers parts like those of the Vine, of a very green colour: the flowers be very small, of a whitish green, with some little purple dashed here and there: the fruit is round, growing scatteringly upon the branches, green at the first, but waxing a little yellow through maturity, full of a winy juice somewhat sweet in taste when they be ripe; in which is contained hard seed of a whitish colour: the root is woody, and not without strings annexed thereto.

There is another whose fruit is almost as big as a small cherry, and very round in form: as also another of the like bigness, of an inch in length, in taste and substance agreeing with the common sort.

We have also in our London gardens another sort altogether without prickles: whose fruit is very small, lesser by much than the common kind, but of a perfect red colour, wherein it differeth from the rest of his kind.

The Place.

These plants do grow in our London gardens and elsewhere in great abundance.

The Time.

The leaves come forth in the beginning of April or sooner: the fruit is ripe in June and July.

The Names.

This shrub had no name among the old writers, who as we deem knew it not, or else esteemed it not: the later writers call it in Latin *Crossularia*: and oftentimes of the

berries, *Uva Crispa*, *Uva spina*, *Uva spinella*, and *Uva Crispina*: in High Dutch, *Kruselbeer*: in Low Dutch, *Stekelbessen*: in Spanish, *Uva Crispa*, or *Espina*: in Italian, *Uva spina*: in French, *Groiselles*: in English, Gooseberry, Gooseberry bush, and Feaberry bush in Cheshire, my native country.

The Temperature.

The berries of this bush before they be ripe are cold and dry, and that in the later end of the second degree, and also binding.

The Virtues.

A. The fruit is used in divers sauces for meat, as those that are skilful in cookery can better tell than myself.

B. They are used in broths instead of Verjuice, which maketh the broth not only pleasant to the taste, but is greatly profitable to such as are troubled with a hot burning ague.

C. They are diversly eaten, but howsoever they be eaten they always engender raw and cold blood: they nourish nothing or very little: they also stay the belly, and stanch bleedings.

D. They stop the menses, or monthly sickness, except they happen to be taken into a cold stomach, then do they not help, but rather clog or trouble the same by some manner of flux.

E. The ripe berries, as they are sweeter, so do they also little or nothing bind, and are something hot, and yield a little more nourishment than those that be not ripe, and the same not crude or raw; but these are seldom eaten or used as sauce.

F. The juice of the green Gooseberries cooleth all inflammations, erysipelas, and Saint Anthony's fire.

G. They provoke appetite and cool the vehement heat of the stomach and liver.

H. The young and tender leaves eaten raw in a salad, provoke urine, and drive forth the stone and gravel.

CHAP. 23. Of Barberries.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of Barberries, some greater, others lesser, and some without stones.

Spina acida, siue Oxyacantha.
The Barberry bufh.



The Description.

The Barberry plant is an high shrub or bush, having many young straight shoots and branches, very full of white and prickly thorns; the rind whereof is smooth and thin, the wood itself yellow: the leaves are long, very green, slightly nicked about the edges, and of a sour taste: the flowers be yellow, standing in clusters upon long stems: in their places come up long berries, slender, red when they be ripe, with a little hard kernel or stone within; of a sour and sharp taste: the root is yellow, disperseth itself far abroad, and is of a woody substance.

We have in our London gardens another sort, whose fruit is like in form and substance, but one berry is as big as three of the common kind, wherein consisteth the difference.

We have likewise another without any stone, the fruit is like the rest of the Barberries, both in substance and taste.

The Place.

The Barberry bush groweth of itself in untoiled places and desert grounds, in woods, and the borders of fields, especially about a gentleman's house called Mr. Monke, dwelling in a village called Iver, two miles from Colebrooke, where most of the hedges are nothing else but Barberry bushes.

They are planted in gardens in most places of England.

The Time.

The leaves spring forth in April: the flowers and fruit in September.

The Names.

Galen calleth this thorn in Greek, *Oxyakantha*, who maketh it to differ from *Oxyakanthos*, in his book *Of the Faculties of Simple Medicines*: but more plainly in his book *Of The Faculties of Nourishments*; where he reckoneth up the tender springs of Barberries among the tender shoots that are to be eaten, such as *Oxyacanthus* or the Hawthorn bringeth not forth, wherein he plainly made a difference, *Oxyacantha* the Barberry bush, and *Oxyacanthos* the Hawthorn tree.

Dioscorides hath not made mention of this thorn; for that which he calleth *Oxyacantha* in the feminine gender, is Galen's *Oxyacanthus* in the masculine gender.

Avicenna seemeth to contain both these shrubs under the name of *Amyrberis*, but we know they are neither of affinity or neighbourhood, although they be both prickly.

The shrub itself is called in shops Barbaries, of the corrupted name *Amyrberis*, of the later writers *Crespinus*: in Italian, *Crespino*: in Spanish, *Espino de maiuelas*: in High Dutch, *Þaiselbeer*: in Low Dutch, *Saureboom*: in French, *Espine vinette* and thereupon by a Latin name, *Spinivinera*, *Spina acida*, and *Oxyacantha galeni*. In English, a Barberry bush, or Piprige Tree, according to Dr Turner.

The Temperature.

The leaves and berries of this thorn are cold and dry in the second degree: and as Galen also affirmeth, they are of thin parts, and have a certain cutting quality.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves are used of divers to season meat with, and instead of a salad, as be those of Sorrel.

B. The decoction thereof is good against hot burnings and choleric agues: it allayeth the heat of the blood, and tempereth the overmuch heat of the liver.

C. The fruit or berries are good for the same things, and be also profitable for hot lasks, and for the bloody flux, and they stay all manner of superfluous bleedings.

D. The green leaves of the Barberry bush stamped, and made into sawce, as that made of Sorrel, called green sauce, doth cool hot stomachs, and those that are vexed with hot burning agues, and procureth appetite.

E. The conserve made of the fruit and sugar performeth all those things before remembered, but with better force and success.

F. The roots of the tree steeped for certain days together in strong lye, made with ashes of the ash tree, and the hair often moistned therewith, maketh it yellow.

G. The bark of the roots is also used in medicines for the jaundice, and that with good success.

CHAP. 24. Of the Whitethorn, or Hawthorn Tree.

The Kinds.

There be two sorts of the Whitethorn Trees described of the later writers, one very common in a most parts of England: there is another very rare, and not found in Europe, except in some few rare gardens of Germany; which differeth not from our common Hawthorn, saving that the fruit here of is as yellow as Saffron: we have in the west of England one growing at a place called Glastonbury, which bringeth forth his flowers about Christmas, by the report of divers of good credit, who have seen the same; but myself have not seen it; and therefore leave it to be better examined.

1 *Oxyacanthus*.
The Haw-thorne tree.



Fig. 1885. Hawthorn (1)

2 *Aria Theophrasti*.
Cumberland Haw-thorne.

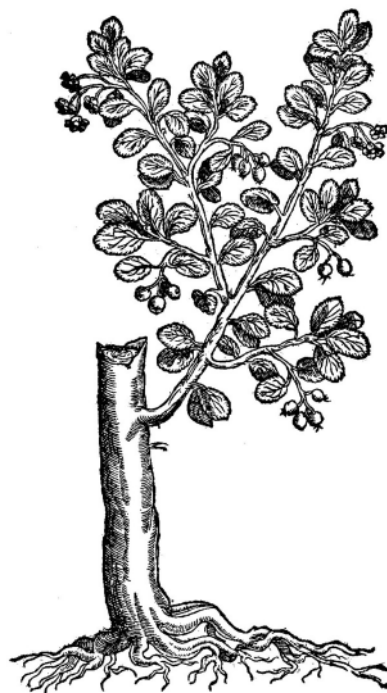


Fig. 1886. Cumberland Hawthorn (2)

The Description.

1. The Whitethorn is a great shrub growing oftentimes to the height of the Pear tree; the trunk or body is great: the boughs and branches hard and woody, set full of long sharp thorns: the leaves be broad, cut with deep gashes into divers sections, smooth, and of a glistening green colour: the flowers grow upon spoky roundels, of a pleasant sweet smell, sometimes white, and often dashed over with a light wash of purple; which hath moved from to think some difference in the plants: after which come the fruit, being round berries, green at the first, and red when they be ripe; wherein is found a soft sweet pulp, and certain whitish seed: the root groweth deep in the ground, of a hard woody substance.

2. The second and third have been touched in the first title, notwithstanding I have thought it not unfit to insert in this place a plant participating with the Hawthorn in flowers and fruit, and with the Service Tree in leaves, and not unlike in fruit also.

Theophrastus hath set forth this tree under the name of *Aria*, which groweth unto the form of a small tree, delighting to grow in our shadowy woods of Cumberland and Westmorland, and many other places of the North country, where it is to be found in great quantity: but seldom in Spain, Italy, or any hot region. This tree is garnished with many large branches beset with leaves like the Pear tree, or rather like the Alder leaf, of a dark green colour above, and of a white colour underneath: among these leaves come forth tufts of white flowers, very like unto the Hawthorn flowers, but bigger: after which succeed small red berries, like the berries of the Hawthorn, and in taste like the Neapolitan Medlar: the temperature and faculties whereof are not yet known.

The Place.

The Hawthorn groweth in woods and in hedges near unto highways almost everywhere. The second is a stranger in England. The last groweth at Glastonbury Abbey, as it is credibly reported unto me. The *Aria* groweth upon Hampstead Heath, and in many places of the West of England.

The Time.

The first and second flower in May; whereupon many do call the tree itself the May bush, as a chief token of the coming in of May: the leaves come forth a little sooner: the fruit is ripe in the beginning of September, and is a food for birds in winter.

The Names.

Dioscorides describeth this shrub, and nameth it *Oxyakantha*, in the feminine gender: and Galen in his book *Of The Faculties Of Simple Medicines*, *Oxyakanthos*, in the masculine gender: *Oxyacanthus*, saith he, is a tree, and is like to the wild Pear tree in form, and the virtues not unlike, &c. Of *Oxyakantha*, Dioscorides writeth thus: It is a tree like to the wild Pear tree, very full of thorns, &c. Serape calleth it *Amyrberis* and some, saith Dioscorides, would have it called *Pyrina*, but the name *Pyrina* seemeth to belong to the yellow Hawthorn: it is called in High Dutch, *Haogdoren*; in Low Dutch, *Hagedoren*: in Italian, *Bagaia*: in Spanish, *Pirlitero*: in French, *Aub-espine*: in English, Whitethorn, Hawthorn tree; and of some Londoners, May bush. Thus our author, but this is not the *Oxyakantha* of the Greeks, but that which is called *Pyracantha*, as shall be showed hereafter.

The second is thought to be the *Aria* of Theophrastus, and so Lobel and Tabernamontanus call it. Some, as Bellonius, Gesner, and Clusius, refer it to the *Sorbus*, and that not unfitly: in some places of this kingdom they call it a White Bean tree.

The Temperature.

The fruit of the Hawthorn tree is very astringent.

The Virtues.

A. The haws or berries of the Hawthorn tree, as Dioscorides writeth, do both stay the lask, the menses, and all other fluxes of blood: some authors write, that the stones beaten to powder, and given to drink are good against the stone.

CHAP. 25. Of Goat's Thorn.

1 *Tragacantha, sive spina Hirci.*
Goats Thorne.



Fig. 1887. Goat's-Thorn (1)

The Description.

1. The first *Tragacantha* or Goat's-Thorn hath many branchy boughs and twigs, slender and pliant, so spread abroad upon every side, that one plant doth sometimes occupy a great space or room in compass: the leaves are small, and in shape like Lentil leaves, whitish, and somewhat mossy or hairy, set in rows one opposite against another: the flower is like the blossom of the Lentil, but much lesser, and of a whitish colour, and sometimes marked with purple lines or streaks: the seed is enclosed in small cods or husks, almost like unto the wild *Lotus* or horned Trefoil: the whole plant on every side is set full of sharp prickly thorns, hard, white, and strong: the roots run under the ground like Liquorice roots, yellow within, and black without, tough, limber, and hard to break; which being wounded in sundry places with some iron tool, and laid in the sun at the highest and hottest time of summer, issueth forth a certain liquor which being hardened by the sun, is that gum which is called in shops *Tragacantha*: and of some, though barbarously *Dragagant*.

2 *Spina Hirci minor.*
Small Goats Thorne.



Fig. 1888. Small Goat's-Thorn (2)

‡ *Tragacantha minoris icon accuratior.*
A better figure of the Goats-thorne.



Fig. 1889. A better figure of Small Goat's-Thorn.

2. The second kind of *Tragacantha* is a low and thick shrub, having many shoots growing from one turf: of a white or grayish colour, about a cubit high, stiff and woody: the leaves are like the former, and guarded with most stiff pricks not very safely to be touched: among the thorny leaves come forth many flowers in small tufts like *Genistella*, but that they are white: the cods are many, straight and thorny like *Genistella*, wherein are many small white and three-cornered seeds as big as mustard seed. This differs from the former in that it is smaller, and loseth the leaves every winter, when as the former keeps on the leaves until new ones come in the spring. The middle rib of the winged leaves ends in a prick, which by the falling of the leaves becometh a long and naked thorn. I have given you a more accurate figure hereof out of Clusius, wherein the leaves, flowers, cods, and seeds are all expressed apart.

† 3 *Poterion* Lob. *sive Pimpinella spinosa* Camer.
Burnet Goats-thorne.



Fig. 1890. Burnet Goat's-Thorn (3)

3. The Grecians have called this plant *Nouroda*, because it is good for the sinews: it should seem it took the name *Poterion*, of *Potrix*, ["drunkard"] because it loveth a watery or fenny soil: it hath small branches, and leaves of *Tragacantha*, growing naturally in the tract of Piedmont in Italy: it spreadeth abroad like a shrub: the bark or rind is blackish, and dry without great moisture, very much writhed or wrinkled in and out as that of *Nepa* or *Corruda*: the sharp pricks stand not in order as *Tragacantha*, but confusedly, and are finer and three times lesser than those of *Tragacantha*, growing much after the manner of *Astragalus*: but the particular leaves are green above, and white below, shaped somewhat like Burnet: the seed is small and red, like unto Sumach, but lesser.

The Place.

Petrus Bellonius in his first book *Of Singularities* reports, that there is great plenty hereof growing in Candy upon the tops of the mountains. Theophrastus saith that it was thought to grow nowhere but in Candy; but now it is certain that it is found in Achaia, Peloponessus, and in Asia: it doth also grow in Arcadia, which is thought not to be inferior to that of Candy. It is thought by Lobel to grow in Languedoc in France, whereof Theophrastus hath written in his ninth book; that the liquor or gum issueth out of itself, and that it is not needful to have the root broken or cut. The best is that, saith Dioscorides, which is through-shining, thin, smooth, unmixed, and sweet of smell and taste.

The Time.

They flower and flourish in the summer months: I have sown the seed of *Poterion* in April, which I received from Ioachimus Camerarius of Nuremberg, that grew in my garden two years together, and after perished by some mischance.

The Names.

Goat's-Thorn is called in Greek *Tragakantha*: Of most herbarists likewise *Tragacantha*: we may call it in Latin *Spina hirci*: in French, *Barbe Renard*: and in English for want of a better name, Goat's-Thorn: the liquor or gum that issueth forth of the roots beareth the name also of *Tragacantha*: it is called in shops *Gummi Tragacanthæ*; and in a barbarous manner *Gummi Tragacanthi*: in English, Gum Dragagant.

The Temperature.

This plant in each part thereof is of a drying faculty without biting. It doth consolidate or glue together sinews that be cut: but the roots have that faculty especially, which are boiled in wine, and the decoction given unto those that have any grief or hurt in the sinews.

Gum Dragagant hath an emplastic quality, by reason whereof it dulleth or allayeth the sharpness of humours, and doth also something dry.

The Virtues.

A. The gum is singular good to be licked in with honey against the cough, roughness of the throat, hoarseness, and all sharp and thin rheums or distillations: being laid under the tongue it taketh away the roughness thereof.

B. Being drunk with cuit or the decoction of Liquorice it taketh away and allayeth the heat of the urine: it is also used in medicines for the eyes.

C. The greatest part of those artificial beads, sweet chains, bracelets, and such like pretty sweet things of pleasure are made hard and fit to be worn by mixing the gum hereof with other sweets, being first steeped in Rose water till it be soft.

CHAP. 26. Of the Egyptian Thorn.

‡ 1 *Acacia Dioscoridis.*
The Egyptian Thorne.



Fig. 1891. Egyptian Thorn (1)

† 2 *Acacia altera trifolia.*
Thorny Trefoile.



Fig. 1892. Thorny Trefoil (2)

The Description.

1. Dioscorides maketh mention of *Acacia*, whereof the first is the true and right *Acacia*, which is a shrub or hedge tree, but not growing right or straight up as other small trees do: his branches are woody, beset with many hard and long thorns; about which grow the leaves, compact of many small leaves clustering about one side, as in the Lentil: the flowers are whitish, the husks or cods be plain and flat, yea very broad like unto Lupines, especially on that side where the seed grows, which is contained sometimes in one part, and sometimes in two parts of the husk, growing together in a narrow neck: the seed is smooth and glistening. There is a black juice taken out of these husks, if they be dried in the shadow when they be ripe; but if when they are not ripe, then it is somewhat red: some do wring out a juice out of the leaves and fruit: there floweth also a gum out of this tree, which is the gum of Arabia, called gum arabic.

2. Dioscorides having described *Spina acacia*, setteth down a second kind thereof, calling it *Acacia altera*, which hath the three leaves of Rue or *Cytisus*, and cods like those of *Genistella*, but somewhat more blunt at the end, and thick at the back like a razor, and still groweth forward narrower and narrower, until it come to have a sharp edge: in these cods are contained three or four flat seeds like *Genistella*, which before they wax ripe are yellow, but afterwards black: the whole plant groweth to the height of *Genista spinosa*, or Gorse, both in shape, height, and resemblance, and not to the height of a tree, as Matthiolus would persuade us, but full of sharp thorns like the former.

The Place.

The true Acacia groweth in Egypt, Palestine, Lombardy, and Syria, as Dioscorides writeth: among the shrubs and trees that remain always green, Acacia is noted for one by Petrus Belloninus, in his first book *Of Singularities*, chap. 44.

The other Acacia groweth in Cappadocia and Pontus, as Dioscorides writeth: it is also found in Corsica, and on divers mountains of Italy, and likewise upon all the coast of Liguria and Lombardy, and upon the Narbonne coast of the Mediterranean sea.

The Time.

These flower in May, and their fruit is ripe in the end of August.

The Names.

The tree Acacia is named of the Græcians *Akakia*, yea even in our time, and likewise of the Latins *Acacia*: it is also called *Ægyptia spina*: this strange thorn hath no English name that I can learn, and therefore it may keep still the Latin name *Acacia*, yet I have named it the Egyptian Thorn: the juice is called also *Acacia* after the name of the plant: the apothecaries of Germany do use instead hereof, the juice that is pressed forth of sloes or snags, which they therefore call *Acacia Germanica*: Matthiolus pictureth for *Acacia* the tree which the later herbarists do call *Arbor Iudæ*, to which he hath untruly added thorns, that he might belie *Acacia*, and yet he hath not made it agree with Dioscorides his description.

They call this; *Eteros Akakia*, in Latin *Acacia altera*, or the other *Acacia*, and *Pontica Acacia*, or Pontic *Acacia*.

The Nature.

The juice of *Acacia*, as Galen saith, consisteth not of one only substance, but is of substance both cold and earthy, to which also is coupled a certain watery essence, and it likewise hath thin and hot parts dispersed in itself: therefore it is dry in the third degree, and cold in the first if it be not washed; and in the second, if it be washed: for by washing it loseth his sharp and biting quality and the hot parts.

The Virtues.

A. The juice of *Acacia* stoppeth the lask, the inordinate course of women's terms, and man's involuntary issue called *Gonorrhœa*, if it be drunk in red wine.

B. It healeth the blastings and inflammations of the eyes, and maketh the skin and palms of the hands smooth after the healing of the serpigo: it healeth the blisters and extreme heat in the mouth, and maketh the hairs black that are washed therewith.

C. It is good, saith Dioscorides, against St. Anthony's fire, the shingles, chimetla, pterygia, and whitlows.

D. The gum doth bind and somewhat cool: it hath also joined unto it an emplastic quality, by which it dulleth or allayeth the sharpness of the medicines wherewith it is mixed. Being applied with the white and yolk of an egg, it suffereth not blisters to rise in burned or scalded parts. Dioscorides.

The juice of the other, saith Dioscorides, doth also bind, but it is not so effectual nor so good in eye medicines.

CHAP. 27. Of Box Thorn, and the juice thereof called Lycium.

1 *Lycium, sive Pyracantha.*
Box Thorne.

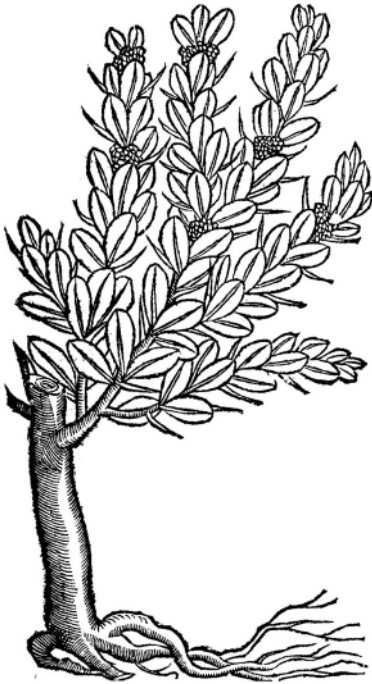


Fig. 1893. Box Thorn (1)

‡ 2 *Lycium Hispanicum.*
Spanish Box Thorne.



Fig. 1894. Spanish Box Thorn (2)

The Description.

1. Box Thorn is a rare plant, in shape not unlike the Box tree, whereof it hath been reckoned for a wild kind, having many great branches set full of round and thick leaves, very like that of the common Box tree: amongst which grow forth most sharp pricking thorns: the flowers grow among the leaves, which yield forth small black berries of a bitter taste, as big as a peppercorn: the juice whereof is somewhat oily, and of a reddish colour; which bitter juice being set on fire, doth burn with a marvellous cracking and sparkling; the ashes thereof are of a red colour: it hath many woody roots growing aslope.

2. The other kind of *Pyracantha* or *Lycium*, groweth like unto the common Privet, having such like leaves, but somewhat narrower: the tops of the slender sprigs are furnished with prickles: the root is tough, and of a woody substance.

The Place.

They grow in Cappadocia and Lycia, and in many other countries: it prospereth in rough places, it hath likewise been found in Languedoc, and Provence in France: Begonius writeth that he found it in Palestine.

Matthiolus pictureth for Box Thorn, a plant with Box leaves, with very many boughs, and certain thorns standing among them: but the notable herbarist Anguillar and others, hold opinion, that it is not the right; with whom we also do agree.

There is drawn out of the leaves and branches of box Thorn, or as Pliny saith, out of the boughs and roots being throughly boiled, a juice, which is named *Lycium*.

Dioscorides saith, that the leaves and branches must be brayed, and the infusion made many days in the decoction thereof, after which the faeces or woody stuff must be cast away, and that which remaineth boiled again till it become as thick as honey: Pliny saith, that the roots and branches are very bitter, and for three days together they must be boiled in a copper vessel, and the wood and sticks often taken out till the decoction be boiled to the thickness of honey.

The Time.

They flower in February and March, and their fruit is ripe in September.

The Names.

It is named in Latin *Buxea spina*: and in English, Box Thorn: of some, Asses' Box Tree, and Prickly Box: it is also named *Lycium*, of the juice which is boiled out of it: the juice is properly called *lykion*, and retaineth in Latin the same name *Lycium*: it is termed in English Thorn Box. But it seemeth to me, that the original name *Lycium* is fitter, being a strange thing, and known to very few: the apothecaries know it not, who instead thereof do use amiss the juice of the fruit of Woodbine, and that not without great error, as we have already written.

Dioscorides teacheth to make a chylisma of Sumach which is good for those things that *Lycium* is, and is used when *Lycium* is not to be had, and is to be put in all medicines instead thereof.

The Temperature.

Lycium, or the juice of Box Thorn, is as Galen teacheth, of a drying quality, and compounded of divers kinds of substances, one of thin parts digesting and hot; another earthy and cold, by which it enjoyeth his binding faculty: it is hot in a mean, and therefore it is used for several purposes.

The Virtues.

A. *Lycium* cleareth the sight, saith Dioscorides, healeth the scurvy festered sores of the eyelids, the itch, and old fluxes, or distillations of humours; it is a remedy for the running of the ears; for ulcers in the gums, and almonds of the throat, and against the chaps or gallings of the lips and fundament.

CHAP. 28. Of Ram or Hart's Thorn.

The Kinds.

After the opinion of Dioscorides there be three sorts of *Rhamnus*, one with long, flat & soft leaves: the other with white leaves, and the third with round leaves, which are somewhat blackish. Theophrastus and Pliny affirm that there are but two, the one white, and the other black, both which do bear thorns: but by the labour and industry of the new and late writers there are found sundry sorts more, all which and every one of them are plants of a woody substance, having also many straight twiggy and pliant branches, set with most sharp pricking thorns.

‡ 1 *Rhamnus 1. Clusij flo. albo.*
White floured Ram-thorne.



‡ *Rhamnus alter Clusij flore purpureo.*
Purple floured Ram-thorne.



‡ 2 *Rhamnus 2. Clusij.*
Sallow-Thorne.



3 *Ramnus tertius Clusij.*
Ram or Harts-Thorne.



Fig. 1895. Kinds of Ram or Hart's Thorn (1-3)

The Description.

1. This is a shrub growing in the hedges, and bringing forth straight branches and hard thorns, like to those of the Hawthorn, with little leaves, long, something fat and soft: and this hath that notable learned man Clusius described more diligently in these words: the Ram is a shrub fit to make hedges of, with straight branches, parting itself into many twigs, white, and set with stiff and strong thorns, having leaves, which

for the most part grow by fours or fives at the root of every thorn, long, something fat, like to those of the Olive tree, somewhat white, but tender and full of juice; which in autumn do sometimes fall off, leaving new growing in their places: the flowers in autumn are something long, whitish, divided at the brims into five parts: in their places is left a seed, in show as in *Gelsemine*: notwithstanding it was never my chance to see the fruit: the root is thick and diversly parted.

I observed another (saith the same author) almost like to the former, but lower, and divided into more branches, with lesser leaves, more thick and salt of taste, and whiter also than the former: the flowers are like, in all things but their colour, those of the former, which in this are purple.

2. This hath more flexible stalks and branches, and these also set with thorns: the leaves are narrow, and not so thick or fleshy as those of the former, yet remain always green like as they do: the flowers are small and mossy, of a greenish colour, growing thick about the branches, and they are succeeded by a round fruit, yellowish when it is ripe, and remaining on the shrub all the winter: The whole shrub looks as if it were sprinkled over with dust.

3. To these may be added another growing with many branches to the height of the Sloe tree or Blackthorn, and these are covered with a blackish bark, and armed with long prickles: the leaves, as in the first, grow forth of certain knots many together, long, narrow, fleshy, green, and continuing all the year: their taste is astringent, somewhat like that of Rhubarb: the flowers show themselves at the beginning of the spring, of a greenish colour, growing thick together, and near the setting on of the leaves; in summer it carries a black fruit almost like a Sloe, round, and harsh of taste.

The Place.

The first of these grows in sundry places of Spain, Portugal, and Provence: the other variety thereof Clusius saith he found but only in one place, and that was near the city Orihuela, called by the ancients Orcellis, by the river Segura, upon the borders of the kingdom of Valencia: the second grows in many places of Flanders and Holland, and in some valleys by rivers sides. The third grows in the untilled places of the kingdom of Granada and Murcia.

The Time.

This Ram is evergreen together with his leaves: the fruit or berries remain on the shrub, yea even in winter.

The Names.

The Grecians call this *Ramnos*: the Latins also *Rhamnus*; and of divers it is also named *Spina alba*, or Whitethorn, *Spina cervalis*, or Hart's-thorn, as we find written among the bastard words. Marcellus nameth it *Spina salutaris* and *Herba salutaris*, which hath, saith he, as it were a grape. It is called in Italian *Marruca* and *Rhamno*: in Spanish, *Scambrones*: in English, Ram, or Hart's-Thorn.

The Temperature.

The Ram, saith Galen, doth dry and digest in the second degree, it cooleth in the later end of the first degree, and in the beginning of the second.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves, saith Dioscorides, are laid poultice-wise upon hot choleric inflammations, and Saint Anthony's fire, but we must use them whilst they be yet but tender, as Galen addeth.

B. The leaves and buds or young shoots of the first are eaten as salads with oil, vinegar, and salt, at Salamanca and other places of Castile, for they have a certain acrimony and acidity which are grateful to the taste. A decoction of the fruit of the third is good to foment relaxed and weak or paralytic members, and to ease the pain of the gout, as the inhabitants of Granada told Clusius.

CHAP. 29. Of Christ's Thorn.

Paliurus.
Christ's Thorne.



Fig. 1896. Christ's Thorn

The Description.

Christ's Thorn or Ram of Libya, is a very tough and hard shrubby bush, growing up sometimes unto the height of a little tree, having very long and sharp prickly branches; but the thorns that grow about the leaves are lesser, and not so prickly as the former. The leaves are small, broad, and almost round, somewhat sharp pointed; first of dark green colour, and then somewhat reddish. The flowers grow in clusters at the top of the stalks, of a yellow colour: the husks wherein the seeds be contained, are flat and broad, very like unto small bucklers, as hard as wood, wherein are contained three or four thin and flat seeds, like the seed of Line or Flax.

The Place.

This Thorn groweth in Libya; it is better esteemed of in the country of Cyrene than is their Lotus tree, as Pliny affirmeth. Of this shrub Diphilus Siphnius in Athenæus in his fourteenth book maketh mention, saying, that he did very often eat of the same in Alexandria that beautiful city.

Petrus Bellonius who travelled over the Holly Land, saith, that this shrubby thorn *Paliurus* was the thorn wherewith they crowned our Saviour Christ: his reason for the proof hereof is this, that in Judæa there was not any thorn so common, so pliant, or so fit for to make a crown or garland of, nor any so full of cruel sharp prickles. It groweth throughout the whole country in such abundance, that it is their common fuel to burn; yea so common with them there, as our Gorse, Brakes, and Broom is here with us. Josephus in his first book of *Antiquities*, and 11th chap. saith, that this Thorn hath the most sharp prickles of any other; and therefore that Christ might be the more

tormented, the Jews rather took this than any other. Of which I have a small tree growing in my garden, that I have brought forth by sowing of the seed.

The Time.

The leaves fall away and continue not always green, as do those of the Rams: it buddeth forth in the spring, as Pliny testifieth.

The Names.

This Thorny shrub is called in Greek, Latin and Italian *Paliurus*: for want of an English name, it may be termed Ram of Libya, or Christ's Thorn: Pliny reporteth, that the seed is called *Zura*.

The Temperature.

The leaves and root of Christ's Thorn do evidently bind and cut.

The Virtues.

A. By virtue of this cutting quality the seed doth wear away the stone, and cause tough and slimy humours to remove out of the chest and lungs, as Galen saith.

B. The decoction of the leaves and root of Christ's Thistle, as Dioscorides writeth, stoppeth the belly, provoketh urine, and is a remedy against poisons, and the bitings of serpents.

C. The root doth waste and consume away phymata and œdemata if it be stamped and applied.

D. The seed is good for the cough, and weareth away the stone in the bladder.

CHAP. 30. Of Buckthorn, or Laxative Ram.

‡ 1 *Rhamnus solutivum.*
Buck-thorne.



Fig. 1897. Buckthorn (1)

‡ 2 *Rhamnus solutivus minor.*
Middle Buck-thorne.



Fig. 1898. Middle Buckthorn (2)

The Description.

1. Buckthorn groweth in manner of a shrub or hedge tree; his trunk or body is often as big as a man's thigh; his wood or timber is yellow within, and his bark is of the colour of a Chestnut, almost like the bark of a Cherry tree. The branches are beset with leaves that are somewhat round, and finely snipped about the edges like the leaves of the Crab or Wilding tree: among which come forth thorns which are hard and prickly: the flowers are white and small, which being faded there succeed little round berries, green at the first, but afterwards black, whereof that excellent green colour is made, which the painters and limners do call sap green; but these berries before they be ripe do make a fair yellow colour, being steeped in vinegar.

2. Besides the common kind, Clusius mentions two other: the first of which hath branches some two cubits long, subdivided into divers others, covered with a smooth bark like that of the former, which, the upper rind being taken off, is of a yellowish green colour, and bitterish taste: the branches have some few prickles upon them, and commonly end in them: the leaves are almost like those of the common kind; but smaller, narrower, and somewhat resembling those of the Blackthorn, having somewhat a drying taste: the flower consists of four leaves of a yellowish green colour: the root is woody as in other shrubs: Clusius found this growing in the mountainous places of Austria, and calls it *Spina infectoria pumila*.

† 3 *Rhamnus solutivus pumilus.*
Dwarfe Buck-thorne.



Fig. 1899. Dwarf Buckthorn (3)

3. This other hath branches four cubits long, and of the thickness of one's little finger, or lesser, covered with a black and shrivelled bark: and towards the top divided into little boughs, which are covered with a thin & smoother bark, and commonly end in a sharp thorn: the leaves much resemble those of the Sloe tree yet are they shorter and lesser, green also, and snipped about the edges; first of an astringent, and afterwards of somewhat a bitterish taste; the flowers which grow amongst the leaves are of an herby colour, and consist of four leaves: the fruit is not much unlike that of the former; but distinguished with two, & sometimes with three crests or dents, first green, and then black when it is ripe: the root is thick, woody and hard. Clusius found this on the hill above the baths of Baden, he calls it *Spina infectoria pumila* 2. This Matthiolus and others call *Lycium italicum*.

The Place.

Buckthorn groweth near the borders of fields, in hedges, woods, and in other untoiled places: it delighteth to grow in rivers and in water ditches: it groweth in Kent in sundry places, as at Farningham upon the cony burrows belonging sometime to Mr. Sibil, as also upon cony burrows in Southfleet, especially in a small and narrow lane leading from the house of Mr. William Swan unto Longfield downs, also in the hedge upon the right hand at Dartford town's end towards London, and in many places more upon the chalky banks and hedges.

The Time.

It flowereth in May, the berries be ripe in the fall of the leaf.

The Names.

The later herbarists call it in Latin *Rhamnus solutivus*, because it is set with thorns, like as the Ram, and beareth purging berries. Matthiolus nameth it *Spina infectoria*; Valerius Corsius, *Spina cervi*, and divers call it *Burgispina*. It is termed in

High Dutch, *Creukbeer weghdorn*: in Italian, *Spino Merlo*, *Spino Zerlino*, *Spino Cervino*: in English, Laxative Ram, Way-Thorn, and Buckthorn: in Low Dutch they call the fruit or berries *Rhijnbessen*, that is, as though you should say in Latin; *Bacca Rhenane* ["Rhine berries"]: in English, Rhineberries: in French, *Nerprun*.

The Temperature.

The berries of this Thorn, as they be in taste bitter and binding, so be they also hot and dry in the second degree.

The Virtues.

A. The same do purge and void by the stool thick phlegm, and also choleric humours: they are given being beaten into powder from one dram to a dram and a half: divers do number the berries, who give to strong bodies from fifteen to twenty or more; but it is better to break them and boil them in fat flesh broth without salt, and to give the broth to drink: for so they purge with lesser trouble and fewer gripings.

B. There is pressed forth of the ripe berries a juice, which being boiled with a little alum is used of painters for a deep green, which they do call sap green.

C. The berries which be as yet unripe, being dried and infused or steeped in water, do make a fair yellow colour; but if they be ripe they make a green.

CHAP. 31. Of the Holm, Holly, or Hulver Tree.

Agrifolium.
The Holly tree.



Fig. 1900. Holly

The Description.

The Holly is a shrubby plant, notwithstanding it oftentimes grows to a tree of a reasonable bigness: the boughs whereof are tough and flexible, covered with a smooth and green bark. The substance of the wood is hard and sound, and blackish or yellowish within, which doth also sink in the water, as doth the Indian wood which is called *Guaiacum*: the leaves are of a beautiful green colour, smooth and glib, like almost the bay leaves, but lesser, and cornered in the edges with sharp prickles, which notwithstanding they want or have few when the tree is old: the flowers be white, and sweet of smell: the berries are round, of the bigness of a little Pea, or not much greater, of colour red, of taste unpleasant, with a white stone in the midst, which do not easily fall away, but hang on the boughs a long time: the root is woody.

There is made of the smooth bark of this tree or shrub, birdlime, which the birders and country men do use to take birds with: they pull off the bark, and make a ditch in the ground, specially in moist, boggy, or soggy earth, whereinto they put this bark, covering the ditch with boughs of trees, letting it remain there till it be rotten and putrefied, which will be done in the space of twelve days or thereabout: which done, they take it forth, and beat in mortars until it be come to the thickness and clamminess of lime: lastly, that they clear it from pieces of bark and other filthiness, they do wash it very often: after which they add unto it a little oil of nuts, and after that do put it up in earthen vessels.

The Place.

The Holly tree groweth plentifully in all countries. It groweth green both winter and summer: the berries are ripe in September, and they do hang upon the tree a long time after.

The Names.

This tree or shrub is called in Latin *Agrifolium*: in Italian, *Agrifoglio*, and *Aguifoglio*: in Spanish, *Azebo*: in High Dutch, *Walddistel*, and of divers **Steepalmen**; in Low Dutch, **Huist**; in French, *Hous* and *Housson*: in English, Holly, Hulver, and Holm.

The Temperature.

The berries of Holly are hot and dry, and of thin parts, and waste away wind.

The Virtues.

A. They are good against the colic: for ten or twelve being inwardly taken bring away by the stool thick phlegmatic humours, as we have learned of them who oftentimes made trial thereof,

B. The birdlime which is made of the bark hereof is no less hurtful than that of Mistletoe, for it is marvellous clammy, it glueth up all the entrails, it shutteth and draweth together the guts and passages of the excrements, and by this means it bringeth destruction to man, not by any quality, but by his glueing substance.

C. Holly beaten to powder and drunk is an experimented medicine against all the fluxes of the belly, as the dysentery and such like.

CHAP. 32. Of the Oak.

1 *Quercus vulgaris cum lanæ & musco suo.*
The Oke Tree with his Acornes and Moiffe.



Fig. 1901. Oak with acorns (1)

2 *Quercus vulgaris cum excrementis fungosis:*
The common Oke with his Apple or greene Gall.



Fig. 1902. Oak with galls (2)

The Description.

1. The common Oak groweth to a great tree; the trunk or body whereof is covered over with a thick rough bark full of chops or rifts: the arms or boughs are likewise great, dispersing themselves far abroad: the leaves are bluntly indented about the edges, smooth, and of a shining green colour, whereon is often found a most sweet dew and somewhat clammy, and also a fungous excrescence, which we call Oak Apples. The fruit is long, covered with a brown hard and tough pilling, set in a rough scaly cup or husk: there is often found upon the body of the tree, and also upon the branches, a certain kind of long white moss hanging down from the same: and sometimes another woody plant, which we call Mistletoe, being either an excrescence or outgrowing from the tree itself, or of the dung (as it is reported) of a bird that hath eaten a certain berry. Besides these there are about the roots of old Oaks within the earth certain other excrescences, which Bauhine and others have called *Uva quercinae*, ["Oak grapes"] because they commonly grow in clusters together, after the manner of grapes and about their bigness, being sometimes round, & otherwhiles cornered, of a woody substance, hollow within; and sometimes of a purple, otherwhiles of a whitish colour on the outside: their taste is astringent, and use singular in all dysenteries and fluxes of blood, as Encelius affirms, *Cap. 51. de Lapid. & Gen.*

3 *Quercus humilis.*
The dwarfe Oke.



Fig. 1903. Dwarf Oak (3)

3. Carolus Clusius reporteth that he found this base or low Oak not far from Lisbon, of the height of a cubit, which notwithstanding did also bear an acorn like that of our Oak tree, saving that the cup is smoother, and the acorn much bitterer, wherein it differeth from the rest of his kind.

There is a wild Oak which riseth up oftentimes to a marvellous height, and reacheth very far with his arms and boughs, the body whereof is now and then of a mighty thickness, in compass two or three fathoms: it sendeth forth great spreading arms, divided into a multitude of boughs. The leaves are smooth, something, hard, broad, long, gashed in the edges, green on the upper side: the acorns are long, but shorter than those of the tamer Oak; every one fastened in his own cup, which is rough without: they are covered with a thin rind or shell: the substance or kernel within is divided into two parts, as are beans, peas, and almonds: the bark of the young Oaks is smooth, glib, and good to thicken skins and hides with, but that of the old Oaks is rugged, thick, hard, and full of chops: the inner substance or heart of the wood is something yellow, hard and sound, and the older the harder: the white and outward part next to the bark doth easily rot, being subject to the worm, especially if the tree be not felled in due time: some of the roots grow deep into the earth, and other some far abroad, by which it stiffly standeth.

The Place.

The Oak doth scarcely refuse any ground; for it groweth in a dry and barren soil, yet doth it prosper better in a fruitful ground: it groweth upon hills and mountains, and likewise in valleys: it cometh up everywhere in all parts of England, but is not so common in other of the South and hot regions.

The time.

The Oak doth cast his leaves for the most part about the end of autumn: some keep their leaves on, but dry, all winter long, until they be thrust off by the new spring.

The Names

The Oak is called in Latin, *Quercus*: of some, *Placida*, as Gaza translatheth it. It may be called *Sativa*, *Urbana*, or *Culta*, some also, *Emeros mudion* and *Robur*. We may name it in English, the tamer Oak tree: in French, *Chesne*: in Dutch, *Eyecken boom*.

The fruit is named in Latin, *Glans*: in High Dutch, *Ëitjel*: in Low Dutch, *Ëekel*: in Spanish, *Bellotus*: in Italian, *Chiande*: in English, acorn and mast.

The cup wherein the acorn standeth is named in Greek *Omphakis*, as Paulus Ægineta in his third book, 42nd chapter testifieth, saying, *Omphacis* is the hollow thing out of which the acorn groweth: in Latin, *calix glandis*: in shops, *Cupula glandis*: in English, the acorn cup.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The leaves, bark, acorn cups, and the acorns themselves, do mightily bind and dry in the third degree, being somewhat cold withal.

B. The best of them, saith Galen, is the thin skin which is under the bark of the tree, and that next, which lieth nearest to the pulp, or inner substance of the acorn; all these stay the whites, the reds, spitting of blood and lasks: the decoction of these is given, or the powder of them dried, for the purposes aforesaid.

C. Acorns if they be eaten are hardly concocted, they yield no nourishment to man's body, but that which is gross, raw, and cold.

D. Swine are fatted herewith, and by feeding hereon have their flesh hard and sound.

E. The acorns provoke urine, and are good against all venom and poison, but they are not of such a stopping and binding faculty as the leaves and barke.

F. The Oak apples are good against all fluxes of blood and lasks, in what manner soever they be taken, but the best way is to boil them in red wine, and being so prepared, they are good also against the excessive moisture and swelling of the jaws and almonds or kernels of the throat.

G. The decoction of Oak apples stayeth women's diseases, and causeth the mother that is fallen down to return again to the natural place, if they do sit over the said decoction being very hot.

H. The same steeped in strong white wine vinegar, with a little powder of brimstone, and the root of *Ireos* mingled together, and set in the sun by the space of a month, maketh the hair black, consumeth proud and superfluous flesh, taketh away sun-burning, freckles, spots, the morpew, with all deformities of the face, being washed therewith.

I. The Oak Apples being broken in sunder about the time of their withering, do foreshew the sequel of the year, as the expert Kentish husbandmen have observed by the living things found in them: as if they find an ant, they foretell plenty of grain to ensue: if a white worm like a gentle or maggot, then they prognosticate murrain of beats and cattle; if a spider, then (say they) we shall have a pestilence or some such like

sickness to follow amongst men: these things the learned also have observed and noted; for Matthiolus writing upon Dioscorides saith, that before they have an hole through them, they contain in them either a fly, a spider, or a worm: if a fly, then war insueth, if a creeping worm, then scarcity of victuals, if a running spider, then followeth great sickness or mortality.

CHAP. 33. Of the Scarlet Oak.

The Kinds.

Although Theophrastus hath made mention but of one of these Holm or Holly Oaks only, yet hath the later age set down two kinds thereof; one bearing the scarlet grain, and the other only the acorn, which thing is not contrary to Dioscorides his opinion, for he entreateth of that which beareth the acorn, in his first book, among the Oaks; and the other he describeth in his fourth book, under the title *Coccus Baphice*.

Ilex Coccigera.
The Scarlet Oke.



Fig. 1904. Scarlet Oak.

The Description.

The Oak which beareth the scarlet grain is a small tree, in manner of a hedge tree, of a mean bigness, having many fair branches or boughs spread abroad: whereon are set leaves, green above, white underneath, snipped about the edges, and at every corner one sharp prickle, in manner of the smoother Holly: among which cometh sometimes, but not often, small acorns, standing in little cups or husks, armed with pricks as sharp as thorns, and of a bitter taste. Besides the acorns, there is found cleaving unto the woody branches, a certain kind of berries, or rather an excrescence, of the substance of the Oak Apple, and of the bigness of a pea, at the first white, and of the colour of ashes when they be ripe, in which are engendered little maggots, which seem to be without life until they feel the heat of the sun, and then they creep, and seek to fly away. But the people of the country (which make a gain of them) do watch the time of their flying, even as we do bees, which they then take and put into a linen bag, wherein they shake and bolt them up and down until they be dead, which they make up into great lumps oftentimes, and likewise sell them to dyers apart, even as they were taken forth of the bag, whereof is made the most perfect scarlet.

The Place.

This Oak groweth in Languedoc, and in the countries thereabout, and also in Spain: but it beareth not the scarlet grain in all places, but in those especially, which lie towards the Midland Sea and which be subject to the scorching heat of the sun, as Carolus Clusius witnesseth; & not there always, for when the tree waxeth old it grows to be barren. Then do the people cut and lop it down; that after the young shoots have attained to two or three years growth, it may become fruitful again.

Petrus Bellonius in his books *Of Singularities* showeth, that *Coccus baphicus* or the Scarlet Grain doth grow in the Holy Land, and near to the lake which is called the Sea of Tiberias, and that upon little trees, whereby the inhabitants get great store of wealth, who separate the husks from the pulp or maggots, and sell this being made up into balls or lumps, much dearer than the empty shells or husks.

Of this grain also Pausanias hath made mention in his tenth book, and showeth, that the tree which bringeth forth this grain is not great, and also groweth in Phocis, which is a country in Macedonia near to the Boetians, not far from the mountain Parnassus.

Theophrastus writeth, that the Scarlet Oak, is a great tree, and riseth up to the height of the common Oak: amongst which writers there are some contrariety. Petrus Bellonius reporteth it is a little tree, and Theophrastus a great one, which may chance according to the soil and climate; for that upon the stony mountains cannot grow to that greatness as those in the fertile grounds.

The Time.

The little grains or berries which grow about the boughs begin to appear especially in the spring, when the Southwest winds do blow: the flowers fall and are ripe in June, together with the maggots growing in them, which receiving life by the heat of the sun, do forthwith fly away (in manner of a moth or butterfly) unless by the care and diligence of the keepers, they be killed by much and often shaking them together, as aforesaid.

The tree or shrub hath his leaves always green: the acorns be very late before they be ripe, seldom before new come up in their place.

The Names.

The Scarlet Oak is called in Latin *Ilex*: the later writers, *Ilex cocciger*, or *coccifera*; in Spanish, *Coscoia*: for want of a fit English name, we have thought good to call it by the name of Scarlet Oak, or Scarlet Holm Oak: for *Ilex* is named of some in English, Holm, which signifieth Holly or Hulver. But this *Ilex*, as well as those that follow, might be called Holm Oak, Hulver Oak, or Holly Oak, for difference from the shrub or hedge tree *Agrifolium*, which is simply called Holm, Holly, and Hulver.

The grain or berry that serveth to dye with is properly called in Latin, *Coccus infectoria*, or *Coccum infectorium*: ["Dyers' scarlet"] Pliny also nameth it *Cusculium*: or as most men do read it, *Quisquilium*: the same author saith, that it is likewise named *Scolecion*, or maggot berry.

The Arabians and the apothecaries do know it by the name of *Chesmes*, *Chermes*, and *Kermes*: They are deceived who think that *Chesmes* doth differ from *Infectorium Coccum*: it is called in Italian, *Grano de tinctori*: in Spanish, *Grana de tintoreros*: in High Dutch, *Schatlachbeer*: in French, *Vermillon*, and *Graine d'escarlate*:

in English, after the Dutch, Scarlet Berry, or Scarlet Grain, and after the apothecaries' word, *Coccus Baphicus*: the maggot within is that which is named Cochineal, as most do deem.

Theophrastus saith the acorn or fruit hereof is called of divers *Acylum*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. This grain is astringent and somewhat bitter, and also dry without sharpness and biting, therefore, saith Galen, it is good for great wounds and sinews that be hurt, if it be laid thereon; some temper it with Vinegar; others with Oxymel or syrup of vinegar.

B. It is commended and given by the later physicians to stay the menses: it is also counted among those simples which be cordials, and good to strengthen the heart. Of this grain that noble and famous confection *Alkermes*, made by the Arabians, hath taken his name, which many do highly commend against the infirmities of the heart: notwithstanding it was chiefly devised in the beginning for purging of melancholy; which thing is plainly perceived by the great quantity of lapis lazuli added thereto: and therefore seeing that this stone hath in it a venomous quality, and likewise a property to purge melancholy, it cannot of itself be good for the heart, but the other things be good, which be therefore added, that they might defend the heart from the hurts of this stone, and correct the malice thereof.

C. This composition is commended against the trembling and shaking of the heart, and for swoonings and melancholy passions, and sorrow proceeding of no evident cause: it is reported to recreate the mind, and to make a man merry and joyful.

D. It is therefore good against melancholy diseases, vain imaginations, sighings, grief and sorrow without manifest cause, for that it purgeth away melancholy humours: after this manner it may be comfortable for the heart, and delightful to the mind, in taking away the material cause of sorrow: neither can it otherwise strengthen a weak and feeble heart, unless this stone called *Lapis Cyaneus* be quite left out.

E. Therefore he that is purposed to use this composition against beatings and throbbings of the heart, and swoonings, and that not as a purging medicine, shall do well and wisely by leaving out the stone *Cyaneus*; for this being taken in a little weight or small quantity, cannot purge at all, but may in the mean season trouble and torment the stomach, and withal through his sharp and venomous quality (if it be oftentimes taken) be very offensive to the guts and entrails, and by this means bring more harm than good.

F. Moreover, it is not necessary, no nor expedient, that the bristle dyed with cochineal, called *Chesmes*, as the apothecaries term it, should be added to this composition: for this bristle is not dyed without *Auripigmentum*, called also *Orpiment*, and other pernicious things joined therewith, whose poisonous qualities are added to the juices together with the colour, if either the bristle or dyed silk be boiled in them.

G. The berries of the Cochineal must be taken by themselves, which alone are sufficient to dye the juices, and to impart unto them their virtue: neither is it likewise needful to boil the raw silk together with the grains, as most physicians think: this may be left out, for it maketh nothing at all for the strengthening of the heart.

CHAP. 34. Of the Great Scarlet Oak.

Ilex maior Glandifera.
The great Skarlet Oke.

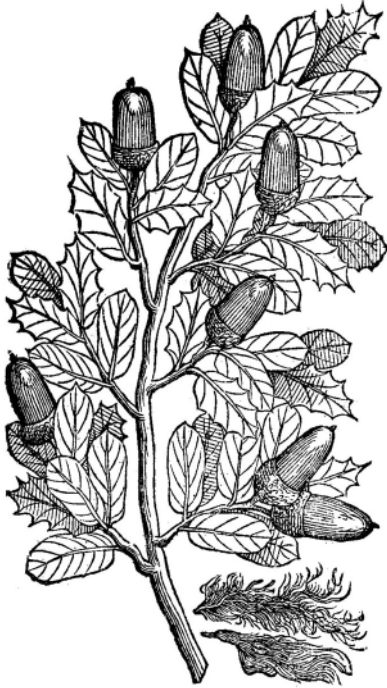


Fig. 1905. Great Scarlet Oak.

‡ *Ilicis ramus floridus.*
The floures of the great Skarlet Oke.



Fig. 1906. The Flowers of the Great Scarlet Oak.

The Description.

The great Scarlet Oak, or the Great Holm Oak, growth many times to the full height of a tree, sometimes as big as the Pear tree, with boughs far spreading like the Acorn or common Mast trees: the timber is firm and sound: the leaves are set with prickles round about the edges, like those of the former Scarlet Oak: the leaves when the tree waxeth old have on them no prickles at all, but are somewhat bluntly cut or indented about the edges, green on the upper side, and grey underneath: the acorn standeth in a prickly cup like our common Oak acorn, which when it is ripe becometh of a brown colour, with a white kernel within of taste not unpleasant. There is found upon the branches of this tree a certain kind of long hairy moss of the colour of ashes, not unlike to that of English Oak. This tree is evergreen, and at the tops of the branches about the end of May, here in England, carries divers catkins of mossy yellow flowers, which fall away, and are not succeeded by the acorns, for they grow out upon other stalks. Clusius in the year 1581 observed two trees; the one in a garden above the Bridge, and the other in the Private Garden at Whitehall, having lesser leaves than the former. The latter of these is yet standing, and every year bears small acorns, which I could never observe to come to any maturity.

The Place.

In divers places there are great woods of these trees, hills also and valleys are beautified therewith: they grow plentifully in many countries of Spain, and in

Languedoc and Provence in great plenty. It is likewise found in Italy. It beareth an acorn greater, and of a larger size than doth the tame Oak; in some countries lesser and shorter: they are strangers in England, notwithstanding there is here and there a tree thereof, that hath been procured from beyond the seas: one groweth in her Majesty's Privy Garden at Whitehall, near to the gate that leadeth into the street, and in some other places here and there one.

The Time.

It is green at all times of the year: it is late before the acorns be ripe. Clusius reporteth, that he saw the flowers growing in clusters of a yellow colour in May.

The Names.

This Oak is named in Latin, *Ilex*: in Spanish, *Enzina*: in Italian, *Elize*: in French, *Chesneverd*: in English, Barren Scarlet Oak, or Holm Oak, and also of same, French or Spanish Oak.

The Spaniards call the fruit or acorn *Bellota*, or *Abillota*. Theophrastus seemeth to call this tree not *Prinos*, but *Smilax*: for he maketh mention but of one *Ilex* only, and that is of Scarlet Oak; and he showeth that the Arcadians do not call the other *Ilex*, but *Smilax*: for the name *Smilax* is of many significations: there is *Smilax* among the Pulses, which is also called *Dolichus*, and *Phaseolus*; and *Smilax aspera*, and *Lævis*, amongst the Bindweeds: likewise *Smilax* is taken of Dioscorides to be *Taxus*, the Yew tree. Of *Smilax*, Theophrastus writeth thus in his third book: the inhabitants of Arcadia do call a certain tree *Smilax*, being like unto the Scarlet Oak: the leaves thereof be not set with such sharp prickles, but tenderer and softer.

Of this *Smilax* Pliny also writeth, in his Sixteenth book, chap. 6, there be of *Ilex*, saith he, two kinds, *Ex iis in Italia folio non multum ab oleis distant*, ["Of these there is one in Italy with a leaf not unlike the Olive"] called of certain Grecians *Smilaces*, in the provinces *Aquifolia*: in which words, instead of Olive trees may perchance be more truly placed *Suberis*, or the Cork tree; for this kind of *Ilex* or *Smilax* is not reported of any of the old writers to have the leaf of the Olive tree: but *Suber* in Greek, called *Phellos*, or the Cork tree, hath a little leaf.

The Temperature and Virtues

A. The leaves of this Oak have force to cool and repel, or keep back, as have the leaves of the Acorns or Mast trees: being stamped or beaten, and applied, they are good for soft swellings, and strengthen weak members.

B. The bark of the root boiled in water until it be dissolved, and laid on all night, maketh the hair black, being first scoured with *Cimolia*, as Dioscorides saith.

C. Clusius reportedth, that the acorn is esteemed of, eaten, and brought into the market to be sold, in the city of Salamanca in Spain, and in many other places of that country; and of this acorn Pliny also hath peradventure written, *lib. 16. cap. 5*, in these words: Moreover, at this day in Spain the acorn is served for a second course.

CHAP. 35. Of the Great Holm Oak.

1 *Cerris maiore Glande.*
The Holme Oke with great Acornes.



Fig. 1907. Holm Oak with Large Acorns (1)

The Description.

Among the wild Oaks this is not the least, for his comely proportion, although profitable for timber, to make coals, carts, wainscot, houses, or ships of: the fruit is not fit for any man or beast to eat, neither any property known for the use of physic or surgery: it groweth up to the height of a fair tree, the trunk or body is great, and very fair to took upon: the wood or timber soft and spongy, scarce good to be burned: from which shooteth forth very comely branches dispersing themselves far abroad; whereon are set for the most part by couples very fair leaves, green above, and of an overworn russet colour underneath, cut or snipped about the edges very deep: the acorn groweth fast unto the boughs, without any footstalk at all, being very like unto our common acorn, set in a rough and prickly cup like an hedgehog or the Chestnut husk, of a harsh taste, and hollow within: this tree beareth or bringeth forth oft-times a certain smooth kind of gall not altogether unprofitable. This Oak likewise bringeth forth another kind of excrescence, which the graver hath omitted in the figure, Gaza nameth it *Penis*. This *Penis* or prick is hollow, mossy, hanging down half a yard long, like a long rag of linen cloth.

2 *Cerris minore Glande.*
The Holme Oke with leffer Acorns.



‡ *Cerri minoris ramulus cum flore.*
A branch of the smaller Holme Oke with floures.



Fig. 1908. Holm Oak with Small Acorns (2)

Fig. 1909. A Branch of the Lesser Holm Oak with Flowers (2)

2. The second is altogether like the first, saving that this beareth smaller acorns, and the whole tree is altogether less, wherein consisteth the difference.

Both this & the former carry flowers clustering upon long stalks, like as in the common Oak; but the fruit doth not succeed them, but grow forth in other places.

The Place.

This Oak groweth in untoiled places, it is seldom times found, and that but in woods only: it is for the most part unknown in Italy, as Pliny reporteth.

The Time.

They bring forth their fruit or acorns in the fall of the leaf.

The Names.

This Oak is called in Greek *Ægilops*: Latin, *Cerrus*: yet doth Pliny make mention both of, *Ægilops*, and also of *Cerrus*: *Ægilops* is likewise one of the diseases of corn, called in Latin, *Festuca*: in English, Wild Oats, and far differing from the tree *Ægilops*.

That which hangeth from the boughs, Pliny, *lib. 16. cap. 8*, calleth *Panus* only: that acorn tree named *Ægilops* bringeth forth *Panos arentes*, withered pricks, covered with white mossy jags hanging down, not only in the bark *Ægilops*, but also from the boughs, half a yard in bigness, bearing a sweet smell, as we have said, among ointments.

John Gerard and Thomas Johnson

The Temperature and Virtues.

We find nothing written of the faculties of this tree among the old writers, neither of our own experience.

CHAP. 36. Of the Cork Oak.

1, 2. *Suber latifolium & angustifolium.*
The Corke tree with broad and narrow leaues.



Fig. 1910. Broad-Leaved and Narrow-Leaved Cork Oak (1 & 2)

The Description.

1. The Cork tree is of a middle bigness like unto *Ilex*, or the barren scarlet Oak, but with a thicker body, and fewer boughs: the leaves be for the most part greater, broader, rounder, and more nicked in the edges: the bark of the tree is thick, very rugged, and full of chinks or crannies that cleaveth and divideth itself into pieces, which unless they be taken away in due time do give place to another bark growing underneath, which when the old is removed is marvellous red, as though it were painted with some colour: the acorn standeth in a cup, which is great, bristled, rough, and full of prickles: this acorn is also astringent or binding, more unpleasant than the Holm acorn, greater in one place, and less in another.

2. The Cork tree with narrow leaves groweth likewise to the height and bigness of a great tree; the trunk or body whereof is covered with a rough and scabbed bark of an overworn blackish colour, which likewise cleaveth and casteth his coat when the inner bark groweth somewhat thick: the branches are long, tough, and flexible, easy to be bowed any way, like those of the Osier; whereupon do grow leaves like those of the precedent, but longer, and little or nothing indented about the edges: the fruit groweth in small cups as the acorns do: they are lesser than those of the other kind, as is the rest of the tree, wherein is the chiefest difference. This varies in the leaf, (as you may see in the figure) which in some is snipped about the edge, in other some not at all.

The Place.

It groweth in the country of Aquitania, near to the mountains called Pyrenaei: it also groweth plentifully in the kingdoms of Spain, differing somewhat from that of Aquitania, as Clusius declareth: it is likewise found in Italy, and that in the territory of

Pisa, with a longer leaf, and sharper pointed; and about Rome with a broader, and cut in the edges like a saw, and rougher, as Matthiolum testifieth.

The Time.

The leaves of the first are always green in Spain and Italy, about the Pyrenæan mountains they fall away in winter.

The Names.

This tree is called in Latin *Suber*: in French, *Liege*: in Italian, *Sugaro*: the same names do also belong to the bark: the Spaniards call the tree *Alcornoque*: and the bark, *Corcha de Alcornoque*: the Englishmen, Cork tree: whereupon the Low-Country men and also Englishmen do call it Cork and yet it is called in Low Dutch also *Wolthout*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. This bark doth manifestly dry, with a binding faculty.

B. Being beaten to powder and taken in water it stancheth bleeding in any part of the body. The Cork which is taken out of wine vessels, saith Paulus, being burnt, maketh ashes which do mightily dry, and are mixed in compositions used against the bloody flux.

C. Cork is also profitable for manythings: it is used (saith Pliny) about the anchors of ships, fishers' nets, and to stop vessels with; and in winter for women's shoes, which use remains with us even to this day: fishermen hang this bark upon the wings of their nets for fear of sinking: and shoe-makers put it in shoes and pantofles for warmness' sake.

CHAP. 37. Of the Gall Tree.

The Kinds.

Of trees that bring forth galls there be divers sorts, as may appear by the divers forms and sorts of galls set forth in this present chapter which may serve for their several distinctions, whereof some bring for the acorns likewise, and some nothing but galls: the figures of some few of the trees shall give you sufficient knowledge of the rest: for all the acorn or mast trees bring forth galls, but those trees whose figures we have set forth do bear those galls fit for medicine, and to thicken skins with.

Dioscorides and Galen make but two sorts of galls; the one little, yellow, full of holes, and more spongy in the inner part, both of them round, having the form of a little ball, and the other smooth and even on the outside: since, the later writers have found more, some having certain little knobs sticking forth, like in form to the gall, which doth also cleave and grow without stalk to the leaf. There is also found a certain excrescence of a light green colour, spongy and watery, in the middle whereof now and then is found a little fly or worm: which soft ball in hot countries doth oftentimes become hard, like the little smooth gall, as Theophrastus saith.

1 *Galla, sine Robur maius.*
The great Gall tree.



Fig. 1911. The Great Gall tree (1)

† 2 *Robur, sine Galla maior altera.*
Another great Gall tree.



Fig. 1912. Another Great Gall tree (2)

The Description.

1. The Gall tree grows up to a sufficient height, having a very fair trunk or body, whereon are placed long twiggy branches bringing forth very fair leaves, broad, and nicked in the edges like the teeth of a saw: among which come forth acorns, although the figure express not the same, like those of the Oak, and likewise a woody

excrescence, which we name the gall, having certain small eminences or bunches on the outside, growing for the most part upon the slender branches without stalks, and sometimes they grow at the ends thereof; which by the heat of the sun are harder, greater, and more solid in one country than another, according to the soil and climate.

2. This grows to the height of a tall man, having leaves deeply divided on the edges like the Oak, and they are green above, but hairy and hoary below; it carries a great gall of the bigness of a little apple, and that in great plenty, & without any order. This groweth in divers parts of Old Castile in Spain, and in all the mountainous woods about Vienna in Austria.

3 *Galla minor.*
The little Gall tree.



Fig. 1913. The Little Gall Tree (3)

3. The lesser gall tree differeth not from the former, saving that it is altogether lesser: the fruit and gall is likewise lesser, wherein especially consisteth the difference.

The Place.

The galls are found in Italy, Spain, and Bohemia, and most of the hot regions.

The Time.

The gall, saith Pliny, appeareth or cometh forth when the sun cometh out of the sign Gemini, and that generally in one night.

The Names.

The gall tree is called *Quercus, Robur*, and *Gallæ arbor*: the apothecaries and Italians keep the name *Galla* for the fruit: in High Dutch, *Galopffel*: in Low Dutch, *Galnoten*: in Spanish, *Agatha Galha*, and *Bugalha*: in French, *Noix de Galle*: in English, Gauls, and Galls.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The gall called *Omphacitis*, as Galen writeth, is dry in the third degree, and cold in the second: it is a very harsh medicine, it fasteneth and draweth together faint and slack parts, as the overgrowings in the flesh: it repelleth and keepeth back rheums and such like fluxes, and doth effectually dry up the same, especially when they have a descent into the gums, almonds of the throat, and other places of the mouth.

B. The other gall doth dry and also bind; but so much lesser, by how much the harsh or choking quality is diminished: being boiled, beaten, and also applied in manner of a plaster is laid with good success upon the inflammations of the fundament, and falling down thereof: it is boiled in water if there be need of a little astringency; and in wine, especially in austere wine, if more need require.

C. Galls are very profitable against the dysentery and the cœliac passion, being drunk in wine, or the powder thereof strewed upon meats.

D. Galls are used in dying and colouring of sundry things, and in making of ink.

E. Last of all, burnt galls do receive a further faculty, namely to stanch blood, and are of thin parts, and of a greater virtue to dry than be those that are not burnt: they must be laid upon hot burning coals until they come to be thorough white, and then they are to be quenched in vinegar and wine.

F. Moreover, galls are good for those that are troubled with the bloody flux and common lasks, being taken in wine or water, and also applied or used in meats: finally, these are to be used as oft as need requireth to dry and bind.

G. Oak Apples are much of the nature of galls, yet are they far inferior to them, and of lesser force.

CHAP. 38. Of Mistletoe .



Fig. 1914. Mistletoe (1)



Fig. 1915. Indian Mistletoe (2)

The Description.

1. *Visca* or Mistletoe hath many slender branches spread overthwart one another, and wrapped and interlaced one within another: the bark whereof is of a light green or Popinjay colour: the leaves of this branching excrescence be of a brown green colour: the flowers be small and yellow: which being past, there appear small clusters of white translucent berries, which are so clear that a man may see through them, and are full of clammy or viscous moisture, whereof the best bird-lime is made, far exceeding that which is made of Holm or Holly bark: and within this berry is a small black kernel or seed: this excrescence hath not any root, neither doth increase himself of his seed, as some have supposed; but it rather cometh of a certain moisture and substance gathered together upon the boughs and joints of the trees, through the bark whereof this vaporous moisture proceeding, bringeth forth the Mistletoe . Many have diversly spoken hereof: some of the learned have set down that it comes of the dung of the bird called a thrush, who having fed of the seeds thereof, as eating his own bane, hath voided and left his dung upon the tree, whereof was engendered this berry, a most fit matter to make lime of to entrap and catch birds withal.

2. Indian Mistletoe groweth likewise upon the branches of trees, running amongst the same in manner of Polypody: the strings of the roots are like those of Couch Grass; from which rise up divers stalks smooth and even, set with joints and knees at certain distances: toward the top comes forth one leaf ribbed like the Plantain leaf, whereon are marked certain round eyes such as are in the haft of a knife; from the bosom whereof

cometh forth a chaffy branch, set with small leaves which continue green winter and summer.

3 *Viscum Peruvianum* Lobelij.
Miffeltoe of Peru.



Fig. 1916. Peruvian Mistletoe (3)

3. There is found also another plant growing upon the boughs or branches of trees, in manner as our Mistletoe doth, and may very well be reckoned as a kind thereof: the plant cleaveth unto the branches, being set thereto as it were with the pillings of the sea onion, of the breadth of a man's hand toward the bottom; and somewhat hollow: the tops whereof are very small and rushy, hollow likewise, and of a purple colour: among which comes forth a branch like that of *Hastula regia*, or the King's Spear, resembling the bush of Oats, covered with a white silk, such as is to be found in *Asclepias*, of a salt and nitrous taste, and very unpleasant.

The Place.

The first kind of Mistletoe groweth upon Oaks and divers other trees almost everywhere; as for the other two they are strangers in England.

The Time.

Mistletoe is always green as well in winter as in summer: the berries are ripe in autumn; they remain all winter through, and are a food for divers birds, as thrushes, blackbirds, and ring-doves.

The Names.

Mistletoe is called in Latin, *Viscum*: in High Dutch, *Mistell*: in Low Dutch, *Marentacken*: in Italian, *Vischio*: in Spanish, *Liga*: in the Portugal language, *Visgo*: in English, Missel, and Mistletoe.

The glue which is made of the berries of Missel is likewise called *Viscum* and *Ixia*: in English, bird-lime. *Ixia* is also called *Chamæleon albus*, by reason of the glue which is oftentimes found about the root thereof. This word is also ascribed to *Chamæleon niger*, as we read among the bastard names. *Ixia* is likewise reckoned up by Dioscorides, *lib.* 6, and by Paulus Aegineta, *lib.* 5, among the poisons: but what this poisonous and venomous *Ixia* is, it is hard and doubtful to declare: many would have it to be *Chamæleon niger*: others, the glue or clammy substance which is made of the berries of Mistletoe; who do truly think that *Ixia* differeth from *Chamæleon niger*: for

Paulus Ægineta, *lib. 5. cap. 30*, in reckoning up of simple poisons hath first made mention of *Chamæleon niger*, then a little after of *Ixia*: and whilst he doth particularly discourse of every one he entreateth of *Chamæleon niger, cap. 32*, and of *Ixia* (which he also nameth *Ulophonon*) *cap. 47.*, and telleth of the dangerous and far differing accidents of them both. And Dioscorides himself, *lib. 6.* where he setteth down his judgement of simple poisons, entreateth first of *Chamæleon niger*, and then a little after of *Ixia*. These things declare that *Chamæleon niger* doth differ from *Ixia*, which is reckoned among the poisons. Moreover, it can nowhere be read that *Chamæleon niger* beareth Birdlime, or hath so glutinous and clammy a substance as that it ought to be called *Ixia*: therefore *Ixia*, as it is one of the poisons, is the glue that is made of the berries of Mistletoe, which because it is sharp and biting, inflameth and setteth the tongue on fire, and with his slimy and clammy substance doth so draw together, shut, and glue up the guts, as that there is no passage for the excrements, which things are mentioned among the mischiefs that *Ixia* bringeth.

Thus saith our author, but I can by no means approve of or yield to this opinion here delivered out of Dodonæus by our author; which is, that the bird-lime made of the berries of Mistletoe is poison; or that *Ixia* set forth by Dioscorides and Nicander for a poison is meant of this: for this is manifestly treated of in Dioscorides, *lib. 3. cap. 103*, by the name of *Ixos*: when as the other is mentioned, *lib. 6. cap. 21*, by the name of *Ixias*: also daily experience shows this plant to have no malign nor poisonous, but rather a contrary faculty, being frequently used in medicines against the epilepsy. Such as would see more concerning *Ixia* or *Ixias*, let them have recourse to the first chapter of the first part of Fabius Columna, *De Stirpibus minimis cognitis & rarioribus*, where they shall find it largely treated of.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The leaves and berries of Mistletoe are hot and dry, and of subtle parts: the bird-lime is hot and biting, and consists of an airy and watery substance, with some earthy quality. for according to the judgement of Galen, his acrimony overcometh his bitterness; for if it be used in outward applications it draweth humours from the deepest or most secret parts of the body, spreading and dispersing them abroad, and digesting them.

B. It ripeneth swellings in the groin, hard swellings behind the ears, and other impostumes, being tempered with resin and a little quantity of wax.

C. With frankincense it mollifieth old ulcers and malicious impostumes, being boiled with unslaked lime, or with *Gagate lapide*, or *Asio*, and applied, it wasteth away the hardnes of the spleen.

D. With orpiment or *Sandaraca* it taketh away foul ill favoured nails, being mixed with unslaked lime and wine lees it receiveth greater force.

E. It hath been most credibly reported unto me, that a few of the berries of Mistletoe bruised and strained into oil, and drunken, hath presently and forthwith rid a grievous and sore stitch.

CHAP. 39. Of the Cedar Tree.

The Kinds.

There be two Cedars, one great bearing cones, the other small bearing berries like those of Juniper.

Cedrus Libani.
The great Cedar tree of Libanus.



Fig. 1917. Cedar of Lebanon

The Description.

The great Cedar is a very big and high tree, not only exceeding all other resinous trees, and those which bear fruit like unto it, but in his tallness and largeness far surmounting all other trees: the body or trunk thereof is commonly of a mighty bigness, insomuch as four men are not able to fathom it, as Theophrastus writeth: the bark of the lower part, which proceedeth out of the earth, to the first young branches or shoots, is rough and harsh; the rest which is among the boughs is smooth and glib: the boughs grow forth almost from the bottom, and not far from the ground, even to the very top, waxing by degrees lesser and shorter till as they grow higher, the tree bearing the form or shape of a pyramid or sharp pointed steeple: these compass the body round about in manner of a circle, and are so orderly placed by degrees, as that, a man may climb up by them to the very top as by a ladder: the leaves be small and round like those of the Pine tree, but shorter, and not so sharp pointed; all the cones or clogs are far shorter and thicker than those of the Fir tree, compact of soft, not hard scales, which hang not downwards, but stand upright upon the boughs, whereunto also they are so strongly fastened, as they can hardly be plucked off without breaking of some part of the branches, as Bellonius writeth: the timber is extreme hard, and rotteth not, nor waxeth old: there is no worms nor rottenness can hurt or take the hard matter or heart of this wood, which is very odoriferous, and somewhat red: Solomon King of the Jews did therefore build God's Temple in Jerusalem of Cedar wood: the Gentiles were wont to make their devils or images of this kind of wood, that they might last the longer.

The Place.

The Cedar trees grow upon the snowy mountains, as in Syria upon Mount Libanus, on which there remain some even to this day, saith Bellonius, planted as is thought by Solomon himself: they are likewise found on the mountains Taurus and Amanus, in cold and stony places: the merchants of the factory at Tripolis told me, that the Cedar tree groweth upon the declining of the mountain Libanus, near unto the Hermitage by the city Tripoli in Syria: they that dwell in Syria use to make boats thereof for want of the Pine tree.

The Time

The Cedar tree remaineth always green, as other trees which bear such manner of fruit: the timber of the Cedar tree, and the images and other works made thereof, seem to sweat and send forth moisture in moist and rainy weather, as do likewise all that have an oily juice, as Theophrastus witnesseth.

The Names.

This huge and mighty tree is called in Greek *Kedros*, in Latin likewise *Cedrus*: in English, Cedar, and Cedar tree. Pliny, *lib. 24. cap. 5*, nameth it *Cedrelate*, as though he should say, *Cedrus abies*, or *Cedrina abies*, Cedar Fir; both that it may differ from the little Cedar, and also because it is very like to the Fir tree.

The resin hath no proper name, but it may be surnamed *Cedrina*, or Cedar resin.

The pitch which is drawn out of this is properly called *Kidroa*: yet Pliny writeth, that also the liquor of the Torch Pine is named *Cedrium*. The best, saith Dioscorides, is fat, through shining, and of a strong smell; which being poured out in drops uniteth itself together, and doth not remain severed.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Cedar is of temperature hot and dry, with such an exquisite tenuity and subtilty of parts, that it seemeth to be hot and dry in the fourth degree, especially the pitch or resin thereof.

B. There issueth out of this tree a resin like unto that which issueth out of the Fir tree, very sweet in smell, of a clammy or cleaving substance, the which if you chew in your teeth it will hardly be gotten forth again, it cleaveth so fast: at the first it is liquid and white, but being dried in the sun it waxeth hard: if it be boiled in the fire an excellent pitch is made thereof, called Cedar Pitch.

C. The Egyptians were wont to coffin and embalm their dead in Cedar, and with Cedar pitch, although they used also other means, as Herodotus recordeth.

D. The condited or embalmed body they call in shops *Mumia*, but very unfitly; for *Mumia* among the Arabians is that which the Grecians call *Pissasphalton*, as appeareth by Avicenna, *cap. 474*. and out of Serapio, *cap. 393*.

E. He that interpreted and translated Serapio was the cause of this error, who translated and interpreted *Mumia* according to his own fancy, and not after the sense and meaning of his author Serapio, saying that this *Mumia* is a composition made of Aloes and Myrrh mingled together with the moisture of man's body.

F. The gum of Cedar is good to be put in medicines for the eyes, for being anointed therewith it cleareth the sight, and cleanseth them from the haw and from stripes.

G. Cedar infused in vinegar and put into the ears killeth the worms therein, and being mingled with the decoction of Hyssop, appeaseth the sounding, ringing, and hissing of the ears.

H. If it be washed or infused in vinegar, and applied unto the teeth, it easeth the toothache.

I. If it be put into the hollowness of the teeth it breaketh them, and appeaseth the extreme griefe thereof.

K. It prevaieth against anginas, and the inflammation of the tonsils, if a gargarism be made thereof.

L. It is good to kill nits and lice and such like vermin: it cureth the biting of the serpent *Cerastes*, being laid on with salt.

M. It is a remedy against the poison of the sea hare, if it be drunk with sweet wine.

N. It is good also for lepers: being put up underneath it killeth all manner of worms, and draweth forth the birth, as Dioscorides writeth.

CHAP. 40. Of the Pitch Tree.

1 *Picea maior.*
The Pitch tree.



Fig. 1918. The Pitch Tree (1)

2 *Picea pumila.*
The dwarfe Pitch tree.



Fig. 1919. The Dwarf Pitch Tree (2)

The Description.

1. *Picea*, the tree that droppeth pitch, called Pitch Tree, groweth up to be a tall, fair, and big tree, remaining always green like the Pine tree: the timber of it is more red than that of the Pine or Fir: it is set full of boughs not only about the top, but much lower, and also beneath the middle part of the body, which many times hang down, bending toward the ground: the leaves be narrow, not like those of the Pine tree, but shorter and narrower, and sharp pointed like them, yet are they blacker, and withal cover the young and tender twigs in manner of a circle, like those of the Fir tree; but being many, and thick set, grow forth on all sides, and not only one right against another, as in the Yew tree: the fruit is scaly, and like unto the Pine apple, but smaller: the bark of the tree is somewhat black; tough and flexible, not brittle, as is the bark of the Fir tree: under which next to the wood is gathered a resin, which many times issueth forth, and is like to that of the Larch tree.

2. Of this sort (saith Clusius) there is found another that never grows high, but remaineth dwarfish, and it carries certain little nugaments or catkins of the bigness of a small nut, composed of scales lying one upon another, but ending in a prickly leaf, which in time opening show certain empty cavities or cells: from the tops of these sometimes grow forth branches set with many short and pricking little leaves: all the shrub hath shorter and paler coloured leaves than the former: I observed neither fruit nor flower on this, neither know I whether it carry any. Dalechampius seems to have known this and to have called it *Pinus tubulus* or *tibulus*.

The Place.

The Pitch Tree groweth in Greece, Italy, France, Germany, and all the cold regions even unto Russia.

The Time.

The fruit of the Pitch Tree is ripe in the end of September.

The Names.

The Grecians call this cone tree *Pitys*: the Latins, *Picea*, and not *Pinus*; for *Pinus*, or the Pine tree, is the Grecians *Peyke*: as shall be declared: that is named in Latin *Picea*, Scribonius Largus testifieth, in his 201st Composition, writing after this manner; *Resinæ Petuinæ, id est, ex Picea arbore*, which signifies in English, of the resin of the tree *Pitys*, that is to say, of the Pitch Tree. With him doth Pliny agree, *lib. 16. cap. 10.* where he translating Theophrastus his words concerning *Peuce* and *Pitys*, doth translate *Pitys, Picea*, although for *Peuce* he hath written *Larix*, as shall be declared. Pliny writeth thus; *Larix ustis radicibus non repullulat*: and the Larch tree doth not spring up again when the roots are burnt: the Pitch Tree springeth up again, as it happened in Lesbos, when the wood *Pyrthæus* was set on fire. Moreover, the worms *Pityocampæ* are scarce found in any tree but only in the Pitch Tree, as Bellonius testifieth: so that they are not rashly called *Pityocampæ*, or the worms of the Pitch Tree, although most translators name them *Pinorum erucæ*, or the worms of the Pine trees: and therefore *Pitys* is surnamed by Theophrastus, *Phleriopoios*, because worms and maggots are bred in it. But forso much as the name *Pitys* is common both to the tame Pine, and also to the Pitch Tree, divers of the late writers do for this cause suppose, that the Pitch Tree is named by Theophrastus, *Pitys agria*, or the wild Pine tree. This *Picea* is named in High Dutch, **Schwartz Tannebaum**, and **Rot Tannebaum**, and oftentimes also **Jorenholtz**; which name notwithstanding doth also agree with other plants: in English, Pitch Tree: in Low Dutch, **Þeck boom**.

The Temperature and Virtues.

The leaves, bark, and fruit of the Pitch Tree, are all of one nature, virtue, and operation, and of the same faculty with the Pine trees.

CHAP. 41. Of the Pine Tree.

The Kinds.

The Pine Tree is of two sorts, according to Theophrastus; the one *emeros*, that is to say, tame, or of a the garden; the other *agria*, or wild: he saith that the Macedonians do add a third, which *akarpos*, or barren, or without fruit, that unto us is unknown: the later writers have found more as shall be declared.

Pinus sativa, seu domestica.
The tame or manured Pine tree.



Fig. 1920. The Pine Tree

The Description.

The Pine tree groweth high, and great in the trunk or body, which below is naked, but above it is clad with a multitude of boughs, which divide themselves into divers branches, whereon are set small leaves, very straight, narrow, somewhat hard and sharp pointed: the wood or timber is hard, heavy, about the heart or middle full of an oleous liquor, & of a reddish colour: the fruit or clogs are hard, great, and consist of many sound woody scales, under which are included certain knobs, without shape, covered with a wooden shell, like small nuts, wherein are white kernels, long, very sweet, and covered with a thin skin or membrane, that easily is rubbed off with the fingers; which kernel is used in medicine.

The Place.

This tree groweth of itself in many places of Italy, and especially in the territory of Ravenna, and in Languedoc, about Marseilles, in Spain, & in other regions, as in the East countries: it is also cherished in the gardens of pleasure, as well in the Low Countries as England.

The Time.

The Pine tree groweth green both winter and summer: the fruit it commonly two years before it be ripe: wherefore it is not to be found without ripe fruit, and also others as yet very small, and not come to ripeness.

The Names.

It is called in Latin, *Pinus*, and *Pinus sativa, urbana*, or rather *mansueta*: in English, tame and garden pine: of the Macedonians and other Grecians, *Peuke emerós*, but the Arcadians name it *Pitus*, for that which the Macedonians call *Peuke emerós* the Arcadians name *Pitus*, as Theophrastus saith, and so doth the tame Pine in Arcadia, and about Elia change her name: and by this alteration of them it happens that the fruit or nuts of the Pine tree found in the cones or apples, be named in Greek by Dioscorides, Galen, Paulus, and others *pitnides*, as though they should term it *pityos fructus*, or the fruit of the Pine tree.

There is also another *Pitus*, in Latin *Picea*, or the Pitch Tree, which differeth much from the Pine tree: but *Pytis* of Arcadia differeth nothing from the Pine tree, as we have said.

The fruit or apples of these be called in Greek *kanoi*, and in Latin *coni*, notwithstanding *conos* is a common name to all the fruits of these kind of trees: they also be named in Latin, *nuces pinea*: by Mnesitheus in Greek *osrakides*: by Diocles Carystius, *pitaina karpa*, which be notwithstanding the fruit or clogs of the tree that Theophrastus nameth *Peuke*, or the wild Pine tree, as Athenæus saith. It is thought that the whole fruit is called by Galen in his 4th *Commentary upon Hipocrates' Books of Diet in sharp diseases, Strobilos*: yet in his 2nd book *Of the Faculties of Nourishments* he doth not call *Conos* or the apple by the name of *Strobilos*, but the nuts contained in it. And in like manner in his seventh book *Of The Faculties of Simple Medicines*; the Pine Apple fruit, saith he, which they call *Coccalus*, and *Strobilus*, as we have said before, that these are named in Greek *pitnides*. This apple is called in High Dutch, *Zyrbel*: in Low Dutch, *Þijn appel*: in English, Pine apple, Clog, and Cone.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The kernels of these nuts do concoct and moderately heat, being in a mean between cold and hot: it maketh the rough parts smooth; it is a remedy against an old cough, and long infirmities of the chest, being taken by itself or with honey, or else with some other licking thing.

B. It cureth the phthisic, and those that pine and consume away through the rottenness of their lungs: it recovereth strength; it nourisheth and is restorative to the body. It yieldeth a thick and good juice, and nourisheth much, yet is it not altogether easy of digestion, and therefore it is mixed with preserves, or boiled with sugar.

C. The same is good for the stone in the kidneys, and against frettings of the bladder, and scalding of the urine, for it allayeth the sharpness, mitigateth pain, and gently provoketh urine: moreover, it increaseth milk and seed, and therefore it also provoketh fleshly lust.

D. The whole Cone or Apple being boiled with fresh Horehound, saith Galen, and afterwards boiled again with a little honey till the decoction be come to the thickness of honey, maketh an excellent medicine for the cleansing of the chest and lungs.

E. The like thing hath Dioscorides; the whole cones, saith he, which are newly gathered from the trees, broken and boiled in sweet wine are good for an old cough, and consumption of the lungs, if a good draught of that liquor be drunk every day.

F. The scales of the Pine apple, with the bark of the tree, do stop the lask and the bloody flux, they provoke urine; and the decoction of the same hath the like property.

CHAP. 42. Of the Wild Pine Tree.

1 *Pinus sylvestris.*
The wilde Pine tree.



Fig. 1921. Wild Pine (1)

2 *Pinus sylvestris mugo.*
The low wilde Pine tree.

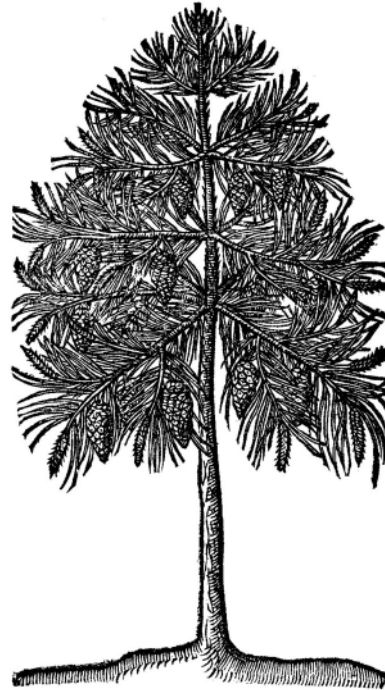


Fig. 1922. Low Wild Pine (2)

The Description.

1. The first kind of Wild Pine tree groweth very great, but not so high as the former, being the tame or manured Pine tree; the bark thereof is glib: the branches are spread abroad, beset with long sharp pointed leaves: the fruit is somewhat like the tame Pine tree, with some resin therein, and sweet of smell, which doth easily open itself, and quickly falleth from the tree.

2. The second kind of Wild Pine tree groweth not so high as the former, neither is the stem growing straight up, but yet it bringeth forth many branches, long, slender, and so easy to be bent or bowed, that hereof they make hoops for wine hogsheads and tuns: the fruit of this pine is greater than the fruit of any of the other wild Pines.

3 *Pinus sylvestris montana.*
The mountaine wilde Pine tree.

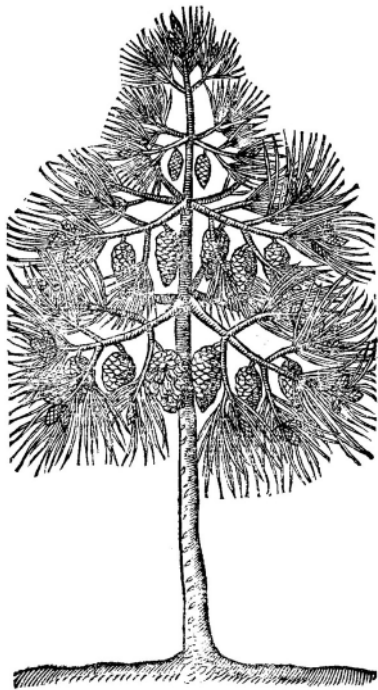


Fig. 1923. Mountain Wild Pine (3)

4 *Pinus montana minor.*
The smaller wilde Pine tree.

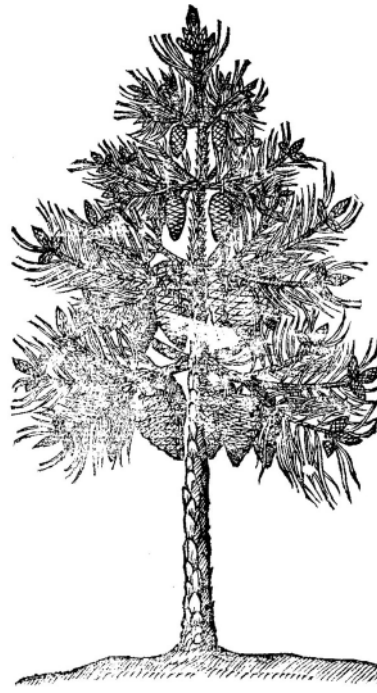


Fig. 1924. Smaller Wild Pine (4)

3. The third kind of wild Pine tree groweth straight upright, and waxeth great and high, yet not so high as the other wild kinds: the branches do grow like the Pitch Tree: the fruit is long and big, almost like the fruit of the said Pitch Tree; wherein are contained small triangled nuts, like the nuts of the Pine Apple Tree, but smaller, & more brittle; in which is contained a kernel of a good taste, like the kernel of the tame Pine apple: the wood is beautiful, and sweet of smell, good to make tables and other works.

4. There is another wild Pine of the mountain, not differing from the precedent but in stature, growing for the most part like a hedge tree, wherein is the difference.

5 *Pinus maritima maior.*
The great Sea Pine tree.



6 *Pinus sylvestris minor.*
The little Sea Pine Tree.



7 *Teda sive pseudopinus.*
The bastard wilde Pine.



8 *Pinaster Austriacus.*
Dwarfe Pine with vpright Cones.



Fig. 1925. Kinds of Wild Pine (5-8)

5. This kind of Pine, called the Sea Pine tree, groweth not above the height of two men, having leaves like the tame Pine tree, but shorter: the fruit is of the same form, but longer, somewhat fashioned like a Turnip: this tree yieldeth very much resin. Bauhine judges this all one with the third.

6. The sixth kind of wild Pine being one of the Sea Pines, groweth like an hedge tree or shrub, seldom exceeding the height of a man; with little leaves, like those of the Larch tree, but always continuing with a very little cone, and fine small kernel.

7. The bastard wild Pine tree groweth up to a mean height; the trunk or body, as also the branches & leaves are like unto those of the manured Pine tree: the only difference is, that some years it resembleth the Pine itself; and the other years as a wild hedge tree, varying often, as nature listeth to play and sport herself amongst her delights, with other plants of less moment: the timber is soft, and not fit for building, but is of the substance of our Birch tree: the fruit is like those of the other wild Pines, whereof this is a kind.

8. This Dwarf Austrian Pine exceeds not the height of a man, but immediately from the root is divided and spread abroad into tough, bending, pretty thick branches, covered over with a rough bark: the leaves, as in the former, come two out of one hose, thicker, shorter, blunter pointed, and more green than the former: the cones or clogs are but small, yet round, and compact, and hang not downwards, but stand upright: the root is tough and woody like other plants of this kind: It grows on the Austrian and Styrian Alps. Clusius sets it forth by the name of *Pinaster 4. austriacus*.

‡ 9 *Pinaster maritimus minor*:
Dwarf Sea Pine.



Fig. 1926. Dwarf Sea Pine (9)

9. This other Dwarf Pine is of the same height with the former, with such tough and bending branches, which are neither so thick nor clad with so rough a bark, nor so much spread. The leaves also are smaller, and not unlike those of the Larix tree, but not so soft, nor falling every year as they do. The cones are little and slender, the kernel small, blackish, and winged as the rest. Clusius found this only in some few places of the kingdom of Murcia in Spain, wherefore he calls it *Pinaster 3. hispanicus*. Dodonæus calls it *Pinus maritima minor*.

The Place.

These wild Pines do grow upon the cold mountains of Livonia, Polonia, Noruegia, and Russia, especially upon the island called Holland within the sound, beyond Denmark, and in the woods by Narva, upon the Liefeland shore, and all the tract of the way, being a thousand versts (each verst containing three quarters of an English mile) from Narva unto Moscovia, where I have seen them grow in infinite numbers.

The time.

The fruit of these Pine trees is ripe in the end of September: out of all there issueth forth a white and sweet smelling resin: they are also changed into *teda*, and out of these is boiled through the force of the fire, a black pitch: the Pitch Tree and the Larch tree be also sometimes changed into *teda*; yet very seldom, for *teda* is a proper and peculiar infirmity of the wild Pine tree. A tree is said to be changed into *teda*, when not only the heart of it, but also the rest of the substance is turned into fatness.

The Names.

All these are called in Greek *peukoi agrioi*, in Latin *Sylvestres Pini*: of Pliny, *Pinastris*: *Pinaster*, saith he in his 16th Book, 10th chapter, is nothing else but *Pinus sylvestris*, or the wild Pine tree, of a lesser height, and full of boughs from the middle, as the tame Pine tree in the top, (most of the copies have falsely) of a marvellous height: they are far deceived who think that the Pine tree is called in Greek *Pitys*, besides the tame Pine which notwithstanding is so called not of all men, but only of the Arcadians (as we have said before) *Pitys*, all men do name the wild *Peuke*; and therefore *Teda*, or the Torch Pine, hereof is said to be in Latin not *Picea*, but *Pinea*, that is, not the Pitch Tree, but the Pine tree, as Ovid doth plainly testify in his Heroical Epistles;

*Ut vidi, ut perii, nec notis ignibus arsi
Ardet ut ad magnos Pinea Teda deos*

["I saw you, and I was undone; nor did I kindle with ordinary fires, but like the pine-torch kindled before the mighty gods." Ovid, *Heroides*, 12:33-4]

Also in *Fastorum* 4.

*Illic accendit geminas pro lampade Pinus
Hinc Cereris sacris nunc quoque Teda datur*

["There she (the goddess) kindled two pine trees to serve her as a light; hence to this day a torch is given out at the rites of Ceres " Ovid, *Fasti*, 4:493-4]

The same doth Virgil also signify in the seventh of his *Æneid*.

*Ipse inter medias, flagrantem servida Pinum
Sustinet —*

["Amid them the queen holds her blazing pine-torch on high " Virgil, *Æneid*, 7:397-8]

Where instead of *flagrantem pinum*, Servius admonisheth us to understand *teda pinea*. Catullus also consenteth with them in the marriage song of Julia and Mallius.

— *Manu*

Pineam quate tedam.

["Let your hand hold up the pine torch", Catullus, *Carmina* 61:14-15]

And Prudentius in *Hymno Cerei Paschalis*.

Seu Pinus piceam fert alimoniam;

["Pitch or pine feeds them (the torches)" Prudentius, *Hymn for the lighting of the Easter Candle*, l. 19]

Moreover, the herb *Peucedanos*, or Horestrange, so named of the likeness of *Peuke*, is called also in Latin *Pinastellum*, of *Pinus* the Pine tree: all which things do evidently declare that *Peuke* is called in Latin not *Picea*, but *Pinus*.

The first of these wild kinds may be *Idaea theophrasti*, or Theophrastus his Pine tree, growing on Mount Ida, if the apple which is shorter were longer: for he nameth two kinds of wild Pines, the one of Mount Ida, and the other the Sea Pine with the round fruit: but we hold the contrary, for the fruit or apple of the Wild Mountain Pine is shorter, and that of the Sea Pine longer. This may more truly be *Macedonum mas*, or the Macedonians' male Pine, for they make two sorts of wild Pines, the male and the female, and the male more writhed and harder to be wrought upon, and the female more easy; but the wood of this is more writhed, and not so much in request for works, as the other, and therefore it seemeth to be the male. This wild Pine tree is called in High Dutch *Hartzbaum*, and *Wilder Hartzbaum*: in Gallia Celtica, *Elvo Alevo* and in Spanish, *Pino Carax*.

The second wild Pine tree is named commonly of the Italians *Tridentinis*, and *Ananiensibus*, *Cembro*, and *Cirmolo*, it seemeth to differ nothing at all from the Macedonians' wild female Pine, for the wood is easy to be wrought on, and serveth for divers and sundry works.

The third they call *Mugo*: this may be named not without cause *Chamaepeuke*, that is to say, *Humilis pinus*, or Dwarf Pine: yet doth it differ from *Chamaepeuce*, the herb called in English, Ground Pine.

The fourth wild Pine is named in Latin, *Maritima*, and *Marina Pinus*, Sea Pine.

That which the Latins call *Teda*, is named in High Dutch, *Kynholtz*: it may be termed in English, Torch-pine.

Pliny is deceived, in that he supposeth the Torch Pine to be a tree by itself, and maketh it the sixth kind of Cone tree; as likewise he erreth in taking *Larix*, the Larch tree, for *Peuke*, the Pine Tree. And as Dioscorides maketh so little difference as scarce any, between *Peuke* and *Pityis* and supposeth them to be both of one kind, so likewise he setteth down faculties common to them both.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The bark of them both, saith he, doth bind; being beaten and applied it cureth merry-galls, and also shallow ulcers and burnings, if it be laid on with litharge and fine frankincense.

B. With the cerot of Myrtles it healeth ulcers in tender bodies: being beaten with copperas it stayeth tetters, and creeping ulcers: it draweth away the birth and after birth, if it be taken under in a fume: being drunk it stoppeth the belly, and provoketh urine.

C. Galen hath almost the same things, but he saith, that the bark of the Pine tree is more temperate than that of the Pitch Tree; the leaves stamped take away hot swellings and sores that come thereof.

D. Being stamped and boiled in vinegar, they assuage the pain of the teeth, if they be washed with this decoction hot: the same be also good for those that have bad livers, being drunk with water or mead.

E. Of the same operation is likewise the bark of the pine nuts; but Galen affirmeth that the cone or apple, although it seem to be like these is notwithstanding of

lesser force, insomuch as it cannot effectually perform any of the aforesaid virtues, but hath in it a certain biting quality, which hurteth.

F. The Torch Pine cut into small pieces and boiled in vinegar, is a remedy likewise against the tooth-ache if the teeth be washed with the decoction.

G. Of this there is made a profitable spather or slice to be used in making of compound plasters and pessaries that ease pain.

H. Of the smoke of this is made a black which serveth to make ink of, and for eating sores in the corners of eyes, and against the falling away of the hair of the eyelids and for watering and bleary eyes, as Dioscorides teacheth.

Of Resins.

The Kinds.

1. Out of the Pine trees, especially of the wild kinds, there issueth forth a liquid, whitish, and sweet smelling resin, and that many times by itself; but more plentifully either out of the cut and broken boughs or forth of the body when the tree cometh to be a Torch Pine.

2. There issueth also forth of the cracks and chinks of the bark; or out of the cut boughs, a certain dry resin, and that forth of the Pine Tree or Fir Tree.

3. There is likewise found a certain congealed resin upon the cones or apples.

It is called in Latin, *Resina*: in High Dutch, *Hartz*: in Low Dutch, *Herst*: in Italian, *Ragia*: in Spanish, *Resina*: in English, Resin or Rosin.

The first is named in Latin, *Liquida Resina*: in shops *Resina Pini* or resin of the Pine tree, and common resin. It happeneth oftentimes through the negligent and careless gathering thereof, that certain small pieces of wood, and little stones be found mixed with it: this kind of resin Galen surnameth confused, which being melted and cleansed from the dross becometh hard and brittle.

The like happeneth also to another liquid resin, which after it is melted, boiled, and cooled again, is hard and brittle, and may likewise be beaten, ground, and searced; and this resin is named in Latin, *Fricta*, and many times *Colophonia*, which name is used among the apothecaries, and may stand for an English name; for Galen in his third book *Of Medicines According to their Kinds* saith, that it is called *Fricta*, and of some *Colophonia*: because in times past, as Dioscorides writeth it was fetched from Colophon, this being yellow or black in comparison of the rest, is white when it is beaten: Pliny in his 14th book, 20th chapter.

The second resin is that of the Pitch Tree without fatness; and that soon waxeth dry: that which in Asia is made of the Pitch Tree being very white, is called *Spagas*, as Pliny testifieth.

The third is unknown in shops. Yet there is to be sold a certain dry resin, but the same is compounded of the resins of the Pine tree, of the cones or clogs, and of the Fir tree mixed all together, which they call *Garipot*: this is used in perfumes instead of frankincense, from which notwithstanding it far differeth.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. All the resins are hot and dry, but not all after one manner: for there is a difference among them: they which be sharper and more biting, are hotter, as that which

cometh of the cones, being of resins the hottest, because it is also the sharpest: the resin of the Pitch Tree is not so much biting, and therefore not so hot: the resin of the Fir tree is in a mean between them both; the liquid resin of the Pine is moister, coming near to the quality and faculty of the Larch resin.

B. The resins which are burnt or dried, as Dioscorides testifieth, are profitable in plasters, and compositions that ease wearisomeness; for they do not only supple or mollify, but also by reason of the thinness of their parts and dryness, they digest: therefore they both mollify and waste away swellings, and through the same faculty they cure wearisomeness, being used in compound medicines for that purpose.

C. The liquid resins are very fitly mixed in ointments, commended for the healing up of green wounds, for they both bring to suppuration, and do also glue and unite them together.

D. Moreover, there is gathered out from the resins as from frankincense, a congealed smoke, called in Latin *Fuligo* and in English, Black, which serveth for medicines that beautify the eyelids, and cure the fretting sores of the corners of the eyes, and also watering eyes, for it drieth without biting.

E. There is made hereof, saith Dioscorides, writing ink, but in our age not that which we write withal, but the same which serveth for printers to print their books with, that is to say, of this black, or congealed smoke, and other things added.

Of Pitch and Tar.

The manner of drawing forth of pitch.

Out of the fattest wood of the Pine tree changed into the Torch Pine, is drawn pitch by force of fire. A place must be paved with stone, or some other hard matter, a little higher in the middle, about which there must also be made gutters, into which the liquor shall fall; then out from them other gutters are to be drawn; by which it may be received; being received, it is put into barrels. The place being thus prepared, the cloven wood of the Torch Pine must be set upright; then must it be covered with a great number of Fir and Pitch boughs, and on every part all about with much stone and earth: and great heed must be taken, lest there be any cleft or chink remaining, only a hole left in the top of the furnace, through which the fire may be put in, and the flame and smoke may pass out: when the fire burneth the pitch runneth forth, first the thin, and then the thicker.

This liquor is called in Latin, *pix*: in English, pitch, and the moisture, even the same that first runneth is named of Pliny in his 16th book, 11th chapter, *cedria*: There is boiled in Europe, saith he, from the Torch Pine a liquid pitch used about ships, and serving for many other purposes; the wood being cloven is burned with fire, and set round about the furnaces on every side, after the manner of making charcoal: the first liquor runneth through the gutter like water: (this in Syria is called *cedrium*, which is of so great virtue, as in Egypt the bodies of dead men are preserved, being all covered over with it) the liquor following being now thicker, is made pitch. But Dioscorides writeth, that *cedria* is gathered of the great Cedar tree, and nameth the liquor drawn out of the Torch tree by force of fire, is that which the Latins call *pix liquida*, the Italians, *pece liquida*: in High Dutch, *weich hart*: in Low Dutch, *tær*: in French, *poix foudire*: in Spanish, *pex liquida*: certain apothecaries, *kitran*: and we in English, Tar.

And of this when it is boiled is made a harder pitch: this is named in Latin, *arida*, or *sicca pix*: of divers, *iterata pix*, or pitch iterated: because it is boiled the second

time. A certain kind hereof being made clammy or gluing is named in shops, *pix navalis*, or ship pitch: in High Dutch, *bach*: in Low Dutch, *steenpeck*: in Italian, *pece secca*: in French, *poix seche*: in Spanish, *pez seca*: in English, stone pitch.

The Temperature and Virtues

A. Pitch is hot and dry, tar is hotter, and for pitch more drying, as Galen writeth. Tar is good against inflammations of the almonds of the throat, and the uvula, and likewise the squincy, being outwardly applied.

B. It is a remedy for mattering ears with oil of roses: it healeth the bitings of serpents, if it be beaten with salt and applied.

C. With an equal portion of wax it taketh away foul ill-favoured nails, it wasteth away swellings of the kernels, and hard swellings of the mother and fundament.

D. With barley meal and a boy's urine it consumeth the King's evil: it stayeth eating ulcers, if it be laid unto them with brimstone, and the bark of the pitch Tree, or with bran.

E. If it be mixed with fine frankincense, and a cerot made thereof, it healeth chops of the fundament and feet.

F. Stone pitch doth mollify and soften hard swellings: it ripens and maketh matter, and wasteth away hard swellings and inflammations of kernels: it filleth up hollow ulcers, and is fitly mixed with wound medicines.

G. What virtue tar hath when it is inwardly taken we may read in Dioscorides and Galen, but we set down nothing thereof; for that no man in our age will easily vouchsafe the taking.

H. There is also made of pitch a congealed smoke or black, which serveth for the same purposes as that of the resins doth.

CHAP. 43. Of the Fir or Deal Tree.

1 *Abies.*
The Firre tree.



Fig. 1927. The Fir Tree (1)

2 *Abietmas.*
The male Firre tree.



Fig. 1928. The Male Fir Tree (2)

3 *Abietus ramus cum julis.*
A branch with Catkins or floures.



Fig. 1929. A Branch of the Fir Tree, showing Leaves and Catkins

The Description.

1. The Fir tree groweth very high and great, having his leaves evergreen; his trunk or body smooth, even and straight, without joints or knots, until it hath gotten branches; which are many and very fair, beset with leaves, not much unlike the leaves of the Yew tree, but smaller: among which come forth flowers upon the taller trees, growing at the bottoms of the leaves like little catkins, as you may see them expressed in a branch apart by themselves: the fruit is like unto the Pine apple, but smaller and narrower, hanging down as the Pine apple: the timber hereof excelleth all other timber for the masting of ships, posts, rails, deal boards, and sundry other purposes.

2. There is another kind of Fir tree, which is likewise a very high and tall tree, and higher than the Pine: the body of it is straight without knots below, waxing smaller and smaller even to the very top: about which it sendeth forth boughs, four together out of one and the selfsame part of the body, placed one against another, in manner of a cross, growing forth of the four sides of the body, and observing the same order even to the very top: out of these boughs grow others also, but by two and two, one placed right against another, out of the sides, which bend downwards when the other bear upwards: the leaves compass the boughs round about, and the branches thereof: they be long, round, and blunt pointed, narrower, and much whiter than those of the Pitch Tree, that is to say, of a light green, and in a manner of a white colour: the cones or clogs be long, and longer than any others of the cone trees, they consist of a multitude of soft scales, they hang down from the end of the twigs, and do not easily fall down; but remain on the tree a very long time: the kernels in these are small, not greater than the kernels of the Cherry stone, with a thin skin growing on the one side, very like almost to the wings of Bees, or great Flies: the timber or substance of the wood is white, and clad with many coats, like the head of an Onion.

The Place.

The Fir trees grow upon high mountains, in many woods of Germany and Bohemia, in which it continueth always green; it is found also on hills in Italy, France, & other countries; it cometh down oftentimes into the valleys: they are found likewise in Prussia, Pomerania, Livland, Russia, & especially in Norway, where I have seen the goodliest trees in the world of this kind, growing upon the rocky and craggy mountains, almost without any earth about them, or any other thing, saving a little moss about the roots, which thrust themselves here and there into the chinks and crannies of the rocks, and therefore are easily cast down with any extreme gale of wind. I have seen these trees growing in Cheshire, Staffordshire, and Lancashire, where they grew in great plenty, as is reported, before Noah's flood: but then being overturned and overwhelmed have lain since in the mosses and watery moorish grounds very fresh and sound until this day, & so full of a resinous substance, that they burn like a torch or link, and the inhabitants of those countries do call it Fir-wood, and Firewood unto this day: out of this tree issueth the resin called *thus*, in English, frankincense: but from the young Fir trees proceedeth an excellent clear and liquid resin, in taste like to the peelings or outward rind of the pomecitron.

The Time.

The time of the Fir tree agreeth with the Pine trees.

The Names.

The tree is called in Latin *Abies*: it is called in High Dutch, *Weis; Thannen*, and *Weis; Thannen baum*: in Low Dutch, *Witte Dennen boom*, or *Abel-boom*, and *Mast-boom*: in Italian, *Abete*: in Spanish, *Abeto*: in English, Fir tree, Mast tree, and Deal tree. The first is called in French, *du Sap*, or *Sapin*: the other is *Suiffe*.

The liquid resin which is taken forth of the bark of the young Fir trees, is called in Latin, *lachryma abietis*, and *lachryma abiegna*: in the shops of Germany, as also of England, *terabithina Veneta*, or Venice Turpentine: in Italian, *lagrimo*: divers do think that Dioscorides calleth it *oleasa resina*, or oil resin; but oil resin is the same that *pix liquida*, or tar is.

Arida abietum resina, or dry resin of the Fir trees, is rightly called in Latin, *abiegna resina*: it hath a sweet smell, and is oftentimes used among other perfumes instead of frankincense.

The Temperature.

The bark, fruit, and gums of the Fir tree, are of the nature of the Pitch Tree and his gums.

The Virtues.

A. The liquid resin of the Fir tree called turpentine, looseth the belly, driveth forth hot choleric humours, cleanseth and mundifieth the kidneys, provoketh urine, and driveth forth the stone and gravel.

B. The same taken with sugar and the powder of Nutmegs, cureth the strangury, stayeth the Gonorrhoea or the involuntary issue of man's nature, called the running of the reins, and the white flux in women.

C. It is very profitable for all green and fresh wounds, especially the wounds of the head: for it healeth and cleanseth mightily, especially if it be washed in Plantain water, and afterward Rose water, the yolk of an egg put thereto, with the powders of olibanum and mastic finely searced, adding thereto a little saffron.

CHAP. 44. Of the Larch Tree.

1 *Larici ramulus.*
A branch of the Larch tree.



Fig. 1930. A Larch Branch

2 *Larix cum Agaricis suis.*
The Larch tree with his Agarick.

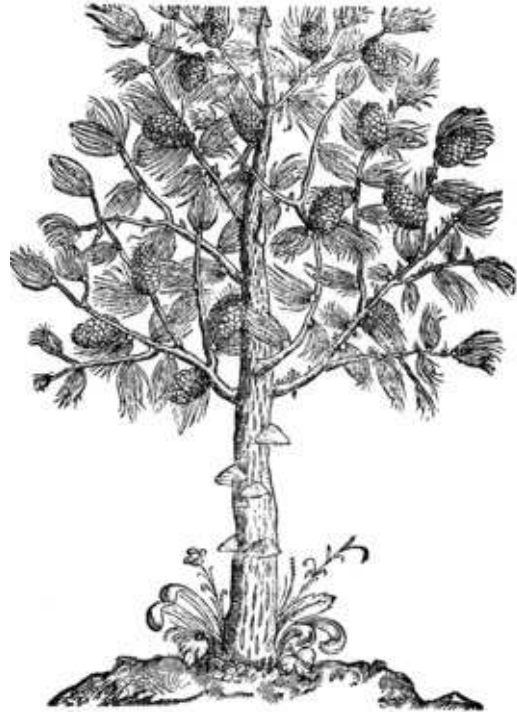


Fig. 1931. The Larch tree with its Fungus

The Description.

The Larch is a tree of no small height, with a body growing straight up: the bark whereof in the nether part beneath the boughs is thick, rugged, and full of chinks; which being cut in sunder is red within, and in the other part above smooth, slippery, something white without: it bringeth forth many boughs divided into other lesser branches, which be tough and pliable. The leaves are small, and cut into many jags, growing in clusters thick together like tassels, which fall away at the approach of winter: the flowers or rather the first shows of the cones or fruit be round, and grow out of the tenderest boughs, being at the length of a brave red purple colour: the cones be small, and like almost in bigness to those of the Cypress tree, but longer, and made up of a multitude of thin scales like leaves: under which lie small seeds, having a thin film growing on them very like to the wings of bees and wasps: the substance of the wood is very hard, of colour, especially that in the midst, somewhat red, and very profitable for works of long continuance.

It is not true that the wood of the Larch tree cannot be set on fire, as Vitruvius reporteth of the castle made of Larch wood, which Cæsar besieged, for it burneth in chimneys, and is turned into coals, which are very profitable for smiths, as Matthioli writeth.

There is also gathered of the Larch tree a liquid resin, very like in colour and substance to the whiter honey, as that of Athens or of Spain, which notwithstanding

issueth not forth of itself, but runneth out of the stock of the tree, when it hath been bored even to the heart with a great and long auger and wimble.

Galen writeth, that there be after a sort two kinds hereof, in his 4th book *Of Medicines, According to the Kinds*, one like unto turpentine, the other more sharper than this, hotter, more liquid, of a stronger smell, and in taste bitterer and hotter: but the latter is thought not to be the resin of the Larch, but of the Fir tree, which Galen because it is after a sort like in substance, might have taken for that of the Larch tree.

There groweth also upon the Larch tree a kind of Mushroom or excrescence, not such as is upon other trees, but whiter, softer, more loose and spongy than any other of the Mushrooms and good for medicine, which beareth the name of *Agaricus*, or Agaric: I find that Pliny supposeth all the Mastic tree, and those that bear galls, do bring forth this *Agaricum*: wherein he was somewhat deceived, and especially in that he took *Glandifera* for *Conifera*, that is, those trees which bear mast or acorns, for the Pine apple trees: but among all the trees that bear *Agaricus*, the Larch is the chief, and bringeth most plenty of Agaric.

The Place.

The Larch tree groweth not in Greece, or in Macedonia, but chiefly upon the Alps of Italy, not far from Trent, hard by the rivers Benacus and Padus; and also in other places of the same mountains: it is likewise found on hills in Moravia, which in times past was called the country of the Marcomans: Fuchsius writeth, that it groweth also in Silesia: others, in Lusatia, in the borders of Poland: it also groweth plentifully in the woods of Gallia Cesalpina.

Pliny hath said somewhat hereof, contradicting the writings of others, in his 16th book, 8th chapter, where he saith, that specially the acorn trees of France do bear Agaric, and not only the acorn trees, but the cone trees also; among which, saith he, the Larch tree is the chief that bringeth forth Agaric, and that not only in Gallia, which now is called France, but rather in Lombardy and Piemont in Italy, where there be whole woods of Larch trees, although they be found in some small quantity in other countries.

The best Agaric is that which is whitest, very loose and spongy, which may easily be broken, and is light, and in the first taste sweet, hard, and well compact: that which is heavy, blackish, and containing in it little threads as it were of sinews, is counted pernicious and deadly.

The Time.

Of all the cone trees only the Larch tree is found to be without leaves in the winter: in the spring grow fresh leaves out of the same knobs, from which the former did fall. The cones are to be gathered before winter, so soon as the leaves are gone: but after the scales are loosed and opened, the seeds drop away: the resin must be gathered in the summer months.

The Names.

This tree is called in Greek and Latin *Larix*, in Italian and Spanish, *Larice*: in High Dutch, *Lerchenbaum*: in Low Dutch *Lorkenboom*: in French, *Melese*: in English, Larch tree, and of some Larix tree.

The liquid resin is named by the Latins *resina larigna*, or *resina laricea*, Larch resin: the Italians, *larga*: the apothecaries, terebinthina, or turpentine, and it is sold and also mixed in medicines instead thereof: neither is that a thing newly done; for Galen

likewise in his time reporteth, that the druggers sold the Larch resin instead of turpentine: and this may be done without error; for Galen himself in one place useth Larch resin for turpentine; and in another, turpentine for Larch resin, in his book *Of Medicines According To The Kinds*.

The Agaric is called in Greek, *Agarikon* and *Agarikos*, in Latin also, *Agaricum* and *Agaricus*, and so likewise in shops: the Italians, Spaniards, and othe nations do imitate the Greek word; and in English we call it Agaric.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The leaves, bark, fruit and kernel, are of temperature like unto the Pine, but not so strong.

B. The Larch resin is of a moister temperature than all the rest of the resins, and is withal without sharpness or biting, much like to the right turpentine, and is fitly mixed with medicines which perfectly cure ulcers and green wounds.

C. All resins, saith Galen, that have this kind of moisture and clamminess joined with them, do as it were bind together and unite dry medicines, and because they have no evident biting quality, they do moisten the ulcers nothing at all: therefore divers have very well mixed with such compound medicines either turpentine resin, or Larch resin: thus far Galen. Moreover, Larch resin performeth all such things that the turpentine resin doth, unto which, as we have said, it is much like in temperature, which thing likewise Galen himself affirmeth.

D. Agaric is hot in the first degree and dry in the second, according to the old writers. It cutteth, maketh thin, cleanseth, taketh away obstructions or stoppings of the entrails, and purgeth also by stool.

E. Agaric cureth the yellow jaundice proceeding of obstructions, and is a sure remedy for cold shakings, which are caused of thick and cold humours.

F. The same being inwardly taken and outwardly applied, is good for those that are bit of venomous beasts which hurt with their cold poison.

G. It provoketh urine, and bringeth down the menses: it maketh the body well coloured, driveth forth worms, cureth agues, especially quotidian and wandering fevers, and others that are of long continuance, if it be mixed with fit things that serve for the disease: and these things it performeth by drawing forth and purging away gross, cold, and phlegmatic humours, which cause the diseases.

H. From a dram weight, or a dram and a half, to two, it is given at once in substance or in powder: the weight of it in an infusion or decoction is from two drams to five.

I. But it purgeth slowly, and doth somewhat trouble the stomach; end therefore it is appointed that Ginger should be mixed with it, or wild Carrot seed, or Lovage seed, or sal-gem, in Latin, *Sal fossilis*.

K. Galen, as Mesue reporteth, gave it with wine wherein Ginger was infused: some use to give it with Oxymel, otherwise called syrup of vinegar, which is the safest way of all.

L. Agaric is good against the pains and swimming in the head, or the falling evil, being taken with syrup of vinegar.

M. It is good against the shortness of breath, called asthma, the inveterate cough of the lungs, the phthisic, consumption, and those that spit blood: it comforteth the weak and feeble stomach, causeth good digestion, and is good against worms.

CHAP. 45. Of the Cypress Tree.

Cupressus sativa & sylvestris.
The Garden and wild Cypresse tree.



Fig. 1932. Cypress

The Description.

The tame or manured Cypress tree hath a long thick and straight body; whereupon many slender branches do grow, which do not spread abroad like the branches of other trees, but grow up alongst the body, yet not touching the top: they grow after the fashion of a steeple, broad below, and narrow toward the top: the substance of the wood is hard, sound, well compact, sweet of smell, and somewhat yellow, almost like the yellow Sanders, but not altogether so yellow, neither doth it rot nor wax old, nor cleaveth or choppeth itself. The leaves are long, round like those of Tamarisk, but fuller of substance. The fruit or nuts do hang upon the boughs, being in manner like to those of the Larch tree, but yet thicker and more closely compact: which being ripe do of themselves part in sunder, and then falleth the seed, which is shaken out with the wind: the same is small, flat, very thin, of a swart ill favoured colour, which is pleasant to ants or pismires, and serveth them for food.

Of this divers make two kinds, the female and the male; the female barren, and the male fruitful. Theophrastus reporteth, that divers affirm the male to come of the female. The Cypress yields forth a certain liquid resin, like in substance to that of the Larch tree, but in taste marvellous sharp and biting.

The wild Cypress, as Theophrastus writeth, is an high tree, and always green, so like to the other Cypress, as it seemeth to be the same both in boughs, body, leaves, and fruit, rather than a certain wild Cypress: the matter or substance of the wood is sound, of a sweet smell, like that of the Cedar tree, which rotteth not: there is nothing so crisped as the root, and therefore they use to make precious and costly works thereof.

I know no difference between the wild and tame Cypress of our author but in the handsomeness of their growth, which is helped somewhat by art.

The Place.

The tame and manured Cypress groweth in hot countries, as in Candy, Lycia, Rhodes, and also in the territory of Cyrene: it is reported to be likewise found on the hills belonging to Mount Ida, and on the hills called *Leuci*, that is to say white, the tops whereof be always covered with snow.

Bellonius denieth it to be found upon the tops of these hills, but in the bottoms on the rough parts and ridges of the hills: it groweth likewise in divers places of England where it hath been planted, as at Sion a place near London, sometime a house of nuns: it groweth also at Greenwich, and at other places, and likewise at Hampstead in the garden of Mr. Wade, one of the clerks of her Majesty's Privy Council.

The wild kind of Cypress tree groweth hard by Ammon's Temple, and in other parts of the country of Cyrene upon the tops of mountains, and in extreme cold countries: Bellonius affirmeth, that there is found a certain wild Cypress also in Candy, which is not so high as other Cypress trees, nor groweth sharp toward the top, but is lower, and hath his boughs spread flat, round about in compass: he saith the body thereof is also thick: but whether this be *Thya*, of which Theophrastus and Pliny make mention, we leave it to consideration.

The Time.

The tame Cypress tree is always green; the fruit may be gathered thrice a year, in January, May, and September, and therefore it is surnamed *Trifera*.

The wild Cypress tree is late, and very long before it buddeth.

The Names.

The tame Cypress is called in Latin, *Cupressus*: in shops, *Cypressus*: in Italian, *Cypresso*: in French and Spanish, *Cipres*; in High Dutch, *Cipressenbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Cypresse boom*: in English, Cypress, and Cypress tree.

The fruit is named in Latin, *Pilula Cupressi*, *Nuces Cupressi*, and *Galbuli*: in shops, *Nuces Cypressi*: in English, Cypress nuts or clogs. This tree in times past was dedicated to Pluto, and was said to be deadly; whereupon it is thought that the shadow thereof is unfortunate.

The wild Cypress tree is called in Greek, *Thya* or *Thyeion*, and *Thyon*: from this doth differ *Thyeia*, being a name not of a plant, but of a mortar in which dry things are beaten: *Thya*, as Pliny writeth, *lib. 13. cap. 16*, was well known to Homer: he showeth that this is burned among the sweet smells, which Circe was much delighted withal, whom he would have to be taken for a goddess, to their blame that call sweet and odoriferous smells, even all of them, by that name; because he doth especially make mention withal in one verse, of *Cedrus* and *Thya*: the copies have falsely *Larix*, or Larch tree, in which it is manifest that he spake only of trees: the verse is extant in the fifth book of Odysseus, where he mentioneth, that Mercury by Jupiter's commandment went to Calypso's den, and that he did smell the burnt trees *Thya* and *Cedrus* a great way off.

Theophrastus attributeth great honour to this tree, showing that the roofs of old temples became famous by reason of that wood, and that the timber thereof, of which the rafters are made is everlasting, and it is not hurt there by rotting, cobweb, nor any other infirmity or corruption.

The Temperature.

The fruit and leaves of the Cypress are dry in the third degree, and astringent.

The Virtues.

A. The Cypress nuts being stamped and drunken in wine, as Dioscorides writeth, stoppeth the lask and bloody flux; it is good against the spitting of blood and all other issues of blood.

B. They glue and heal up great ulcers in hard bodies: they safely and without harm soak up and consume the hid and secret moisture lying deep and in the bottom of weak and moist infirmities.

C. The leaves and nuts are good to cure the rupture, to take away the *polypus*, being an excrescence growing in the nose.

D. Some do use the same against carbuncles and eating sores, mixing them with parched barley meal.

E. The leaves of Cypress boiled in sweet wine or mead, helps the strangury and difficulty of making water.

F. It is reported, that the smoke of the leaves doth drive away gnats, and that the clogs do so likewise.

G. The shavings of the wood laid among garments preserveth them from the moths: the resin killeth moths, little worms, and maggots.

CHAP. 46. Of the Tree of Life.

Arbor Vita.
The Tree of Life.



Fig. 1933. Tree of Life

The Description.

The Tree of Life groweth to the height of a small tree, the bark being of a dark reddish colour: the timber very hard, the branches spreading themselves abroad, hanging down toward the ground by reason of the weakness of the twiggy branches surcharged with very oleous and ponderous leaves, casting, and spreading themselves like the feathers of a wing, resembling those of the Savin tree, but thicker, broader, and more full of gummy or oleous substance: which being rubbed in the hands do yield an aromatic, spicy, or gummy savour, very pleasant and comfortable: amongst the leaves come forth small yellowish flowers, which in my garden fall away without any fruit: but as it hath been reported by those that have seen the same, there followeth a fruit in hot regions, much like unto the fruit of the Cypress tree, but smaller, compact of little and thin scales closely packed one upon another, which myself have not yet seen. The branches of this tree laid down in the earth will very easily take root, even like the Woodbine or some such plant; which I have often proved, and thereby have greatly multiplied these trees.

The Place.

This tree groweth not wild in England, but it groweth in my garden very plentifully.

The Time.

It endureth the cold of our Northern climate, yet doth it lose his gallant greenness in the winter months: it flowereth in my garden about May.

The Names.

Theophrastus and Pliny, as some think, have called this sweet and aromatical tree *Thuia*, or *Thya*: some call it *Cedrus lycia*: the new writers do term it *Arbor vitæ*: in English, the Tree of Life, I do not mean that whereof mention is made, *Genesis* 3. 22.

The Temperature.

Both the leaves and boughs be hot and dry.

The Virtues.

Among the plants of the New-found land, this tree, which Theophrastus calls *Thuia*, or *Thua*, is the most principal, and best agreeing unto the nature of man, as an excellent cordial, and of a very pleasant smell.

CHAP. 47. Of the Yew Tree.

Taxus.
The Yew tree.

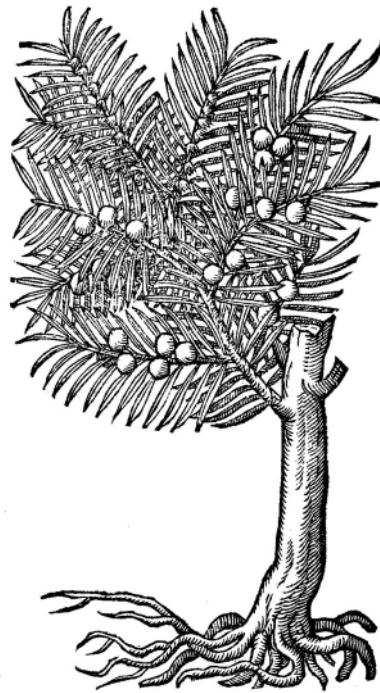


Fig. 1934. Yew

The Description.

Instead of the description and place mentioned by our author (which were not amiss) give me leave to present you with one much more accurate, sent me by Mr. John Goodyer.

Taxus glandifera bacciferaque.
The Yew bearing acorns and berries.

The Yew tree that beareth acorns and berries is a great high tree remaining always green, and hath usually an huge trunk or body as big as the Oak, covered over with a scabbed or scaly bark, often peeling or falling off, and a young smooth bark appearing underneath; the timber hereof is somewhat red, near as hard as Box, universally covered next the bark with a thick white sap like that of the Oak, and hath many big limbs divided into many small spreading branches: the leaves be about an inch long, narrow like the leaves of Rosemary, but smooth, and of a darker green colour, growing all alongst the little twigs or branches close together, seldom one opposite against another, often having at the ends of the twigs little branches composed of many leaves like the former, but shorter and broader, closely compact or joined together: amongst the leaves are to be seen at all times of the year, small slender buds somewhat long, but never any flowers; which at the very beginning of the spring grow bigger and bigger, till they are of the fashion of little acorns, with a white kernel within: after they are of this form, then groweth up from the bottoms of the acorns a reddish matter, making beautiful reddish berries more long than round, smooth on the outside, very clammy within, and of a sweet taste, covering all the acorn, only leaving a little hole at the top, where the top of the acorn is to be seen: these fallen, or devoured by birds, leave behind them a little whitish husk made of a few scales, appearing like a little flower,

which peradventure may deceive some, taking it to be so indeed: it seems this tree if it were not hindred by cold weather, would always have acorns and berries on him, for he hath always little buds, which so soon as the spring yields but a reasonable heat, they grow into the form of acorns: about the beginning of August, seldom before, you shall find them turned into ripe berries, and from that time till Christmas, or a little after, you may see on him both acorns and red berries.

Taxus tantum florens.

The Yew which only flowers.

The Yew which only beareth flowers and no berries, is like the other in trunk, timber, bark, and leaves, but at the beginning of November, or before, this tree doth begin to be very thick set or fraught on the lower side or part of the twigs or little branches, with small round buds, very near as big, and of the colour of Radish seed, and do so continue all the winter, till about the beginning or middle of February, when they open at the top, sending forth one small sharp pointel, little longer than the husk, divided into many parts, or garnished towards the top with many small dusty things like flowers, of the colour of the husks; and if you shall beat or throw stones into this tree about the end of February, or a good space after, there will proceed and fly from these flowers an abundance of dusty smoke. These dusty flowers continue on the trees till about harvest, and then some and some fall away, and shortly after the round buds come up as aforesaid.

Dec. 19, 1621. *John Goodyer.*

The Place.

These trees are both very common in England: in Hampshire there is good plenty of them growing wild on the chalky hills, and in churchyards where they have been planted.

The Time.

The time is expressed in their descriptions.

The Names.

This tree is named by Dioscorides, *Smilax*, by Theophrastus, *Milos*: but Nicander in his book *Of Counterpoisons*, *Smilos*: Galen doth also call it *Kaktos*: it is named in Latin *Taxus*: in High Dutch, *Eybenbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Ybenboom*: in Italian, *Tasso*: in Spanish, *Toxo*, and *Taxo*: in French, *Yf*: in English, Ewe, or Yew tree: in the unlearned shops of Germany, if any of them remain, it is called *Tamariscus*; where in times past they were wont not without great error, to mix the bark hereof in compound medicines, instead of the Tamarisk bark.

The Temperature.

The Yew tree, as Galen reporteth, is of a venomous quality, and against man's nature. Dioscorides writeth, and generally all that heretofore have dealt in the faculty of herbarism, that the Yew tree is very venomous to be taken inwardly, and that if any do sleep under the shadow thereof it causeth sickness and oftentimes death. Moreover, they say that the fruit thereof being eaten is not only dangerous and deadly unto man, but if birds do eat thereof, it causeth them to cast their feathers, and many times to die. All which I dare boldly affirm is altogether untrue: for when I was young and went to school, divers of my school-fellows and likewise myself did eat our fill of the berries of this tree, and have not only slept under the shadow thereof, but among the branches

also, without any hurt at all, and that not one time, but many times. Theophrastus saith, That *animalia*, Galen translates them *Iumenta*, or labouring beasts, do die, if they do eat of the leaves; but such cattle as chew their cud receive no hurt at all thereby.

Nicander in his book *Of Counterpoisons* doth reckon the Yew tree among the venomous plants: setting down also a remedy, and that in these words, as Gorræus hath translated them.

*Parce venenata Taxo, quæ surgit in Oeta
Abietibus similis, lethoque absumit acerbo
Ni præter morem pleno cratere meraca
Fundere vina pares, cum primum sentient æger
Arctari obstructas fauces animæque canalem.*

Shun the poisonous Yew, the which on Oeta grows,
Like to the Fir, it causes bitter death,
Unless besides thy use pure wine that flows
From empty'd cups, thou drink, when as thy breath
Begins to fail, and passage of thy life
Grows strait.

Pena and Lobel also observed that which our author here affirms, and daily experience shows it to be true, that the Yew tree in England is not poisonous: yet divers affirm, that in Provence in France, and in most hot countries, it hath such a malign quality, that it is not safe to sleep or long to rest under the shadow thereof.

CHAP. 48. Of the Juniper Tree.

The Kinds.

Among the Juniper trees one is lesser, another greater, being a strange and foreign tree: one of these bringeth forth a flower and no fruit; the other fruit and no flowers.

1 *Juniperus.*
The Juniper tree.

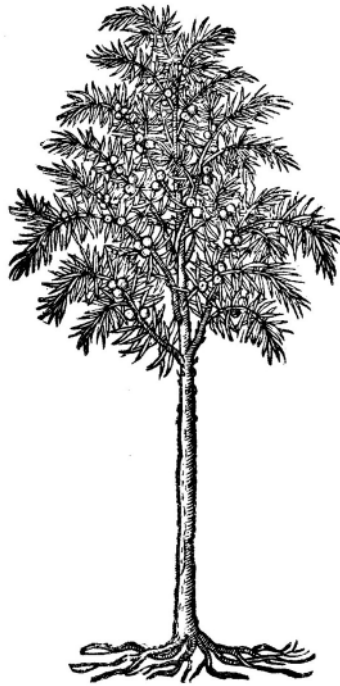


Fig. 1935. Juniper (1)

2 *Juniperus maxima.*
The great Juniper tree.



Fig. 1936. Great Juniper (2)

The Description.

1. The common Juniper tree groweth in some parts of Kent unto the nature and bigness of a fair great tree, but most commonly it grows very low like unto ground Furze: this tree hath a thin bark or rind, which in hot regions will chop and rend itself into many crannies or pieces: out of which rifts issueth a certain gum or liquor much like unto frankincense: the leaves are very small, narrow, and hard, and somewhat prickly, growing evergreen along the branches, thick together: amongst which come forth round and small berries, green at the first, but afterward black declining to blueness, of a good savour, and sweet in taste, which do wax somewhat bitter after they be dry and withered.

2. The great Juniper tree comes now and then to the height of the Cypress tree, with a greater and harder leaf, and also with a fruit as big as Olive berries, as Bellonius writeth, of an exceeding fair blue colour, and of an excellent sweet savour.

‡ 3 *Juniperus Alpina minor.*
Small Juniper of the Alps.



Fig. 1937. Dwarf Alpine Juniper (3)

3. This exceeds not the height of a cubit, but grows low, and as it were creeps upon the ground, and consists of sundry thicker and shorter branches than the common kind, tough also, writhing, and hard to break; leaves always growing at equal distances, as in the common, but yet broader, shorter, and thicker, neither less pricking than they, of a whitish green colour on the inside, and green without, encompass the tender branches. Clusius, who gives us this figure and history observed not the flower, but the fruit is like that of the ordinary, but yet somewhat longer; It grows upon the Austrian Alps, and ripens the fruit in August and September.

The Place.

The common Juniper tree is found in very many places, especially in the South parts of England.

Bellonius reporteth, that the greater groweth upon mount Taurus: Aloysius Anguillaria writeth, that it is found on the sea shores of the Ligurian and Adriatic sea and Illyricum, bringing forth great berries: and others say that it grows in Provence of France: it cometh up for the most part in rough places and near to the sea, as Dioscorides noteth.

The Time.

The Juniper tree flowereth in May; the flower whereof is nothing else but as it were a little yellowish dust or powder strewed upon the boughs. The fruit is ripe in September, and is seldom found either winter or summer without ripe and unripe berries, and all at one time.

The Names.

The Juniper tree is called in Greeke *Arkeuthos*: the apothecaries keep the Latin name *Juniperus*: the Arabians call it *Archonas* and *Archencas*: the Italians, *Ginepro*: in

High Dutch, *Wecchholter*: in Spanish, *Enebro*, *Ginebro*, and *Zimbro*. the French men and base Almains *Geneve*: English, Juniper tree.

The lesser is named in Latin; *Iuniperus*. The great Juniper Tree is called in Latin (by Lobel) *Iuniperus maximus illyricus cærulea bacca*, by reason of the colour of the berries, and may be called in English, Blue Juniper.

The berries are called *grani iuniperi*: in High Dutch, *Krametbeer*, *Wecchholierbeer*: in Low Dutch, *Genebreessen*: in Spanish, *Neurinas*: in English, Juniper berries.

The gum of the Juniper tree is usually called of the apothecaries *vernix*: in Latin, *lachryma iuniperi*: Serapio nameth it *sandarax* and *sandaracha*; but there is another *sandaracha* among the Grecians, being a kind of orpiment, which grows in the same minerals wherein orpiment doth, and this doth far differ from *vernix*, or the Juniper gum. Pliny in his 11th book, 7th chapter maketh mention also of another *sandaracha*, which is called *Erithrace* and *Cerinthus*; this is the meat of bees whilst they be about their work.

The Temperature.

Juniper is hot and dry, and that in the third degree, as Galen teacheth; the berries are also hot but not altogether so dry: the gum is hot and dry in the first degree, as the Arabians write.

The Virtues.

A. The fruit of the Juniper tree doth cleanse the liver and kidneys, as Galen testifieth: it also maketh thin clammy and gross humours: it is used in counterpoisons and other wholesome medicines: being over-largely taken it causeth gripings and gnawings in the stomach, and maketh the head hot: it neither bindeth nor looseth the belly: it provoketh urine.

B. Dioscorides reporteth, that this being drunk is a remedy against the infirmity of the chest, coughs, windiness, gripings and poisons, and that the same is good for those that be troubled with cramps, burstings, and with the disease called the mother.

C. It is most certain that the decotion of these berries is singular good against an old cough, and against that with which children are now and then extremely troubled, called the chin cough, in which they use to rise up raw, tough and clammy humours, that have many times blood mixed with them.

D. Divers in Bohemia do take instead of other drink, the water wherein those berries have been steeped, who live in wonderful good health.

E. This is also drunk against poisons and pestilent fevers, and it is not unpleasant in the drinking: when the first water is almost spent, the vessel is again filled up with fresh.

F. The smoke of the leaves and wood driveth away serpents, and all infection and corruption of the air, which bring the plague, or such like contagious diseases: the juice of the leaves is laid on with wine, and also drunk against the bitings of the viper.

G. The ashes of the burned bark, being applied with water, take away scurf and filth of the skin.

H. The powder of the wood being inwardly taken, is pernicious and deadly, as Dioscorides' vulgar copies do affirm; but the true copies utterly deny it, neither do any of the old writers affirm it.

I. The fume and smoke of the gum doth stay phlegmatic humours that distil out of the head, and stoppeth the rheum: the gum doth stay raw and phlegmatic humours that stick in the stomach and guts, if it be inwardly taken, and also drunk.

K. It killeth all manner of worms in the belly, it stayeth the menses, and hæmorrhoids: it is commended also against spitting of blood; it dryeth hollow ulcers, and filleth them with flesh, if it be cast thereon: being mixed with oil of roses, it healeth chops in the hands and feet.

L. There is made of this and of oil of Linseed, mixed together, a liquor called varnish, which is used to beautify pictures and painted tables with, and to make iron glister, and to defend it from the rust.

CHAP. 49. Of the Prickly Cedar, or Cedar Juniper.

The Kinds.

The Prickly Cedar tree is like to Juniper, and is called the small or little Cedar, for difference from the great and tall Cedar, which bringeth cones; and of this there are two kinds, as Theophrastus and Pliny do testify, that is to say, one of Lycia, and another crimson.

1 *Oxycedrus Phœnicia.*
Crimson: prickly Cedar.



Fig. 1938. Crimson Prickly Cedar (1)

3 *Oxycedrus Lycia.*
Rough Lycian Cedar.

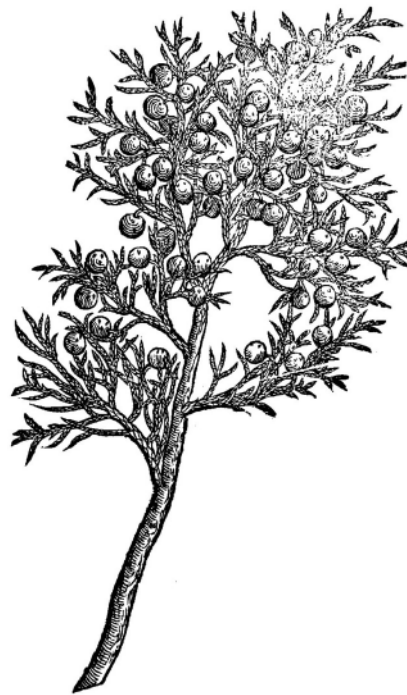


Fig. 1939. Rough Lycian Cedar (2)

The Description.

1. The Crimson or Prickly Cedar seemeth to be very like to the Juniper tree in body and boughs, which are writhed, knotty, and parted into very many wings: the substance of the wood is red, and sweet of smell like that of the Cypress; the tree is covered over with a rugged bark: the leaf be narrow and sharp pointed, harder than those of Juniper, sharper and more pricking, and standing thinner upon the branches: the fruit or berry is sometimes as big as a hazel nut, or, as Theophrastus saith, of the bigness of Myrtle berries, and being ripe it is of a reddish yellow, or crimson colour, sweet of smell, and so pleasant in taste, as even the countrymen now and than do eat of the same with bread.

2. The other low Cedar which grows in Lycia is not so high as the former, having likewise a writhed body as big as a man's arm, full of boughs; the bark is rough, yellowish without, and red within: the leaves stand thicker, like at the first to those of Juniper, but yet somewhat shorter, and in the third or fourth year thicker, long and round withal, coming near to the leaves of the Cypress tree, or of the second Savin, that is,

blunt, and not pricking at all, which being bruised between the fingers do yield a very pleasant smell: so doth one and the selfsame plant firing forth below sharp and psickly leaves, and above thick and blunt ones, as that notable learned herbarist Clusius hath most diligently observed: the fruit or berry is round like that of Juniper, of colour yellow when it is ripe, inclining to a red, in taste somewhat bitter, but sweet of smell.

‡ 3 *Cedrus Lycia altera.*
The other Lycian Cedar.



Fig. 1940. The Other Lycian Cedar (3)

3. This also hath Cypress-like leaves, not unlike those of the last described, yet somewhat thicker and broader: the fruit is also much larger, being as big as Hazel nuts, and of a red or scarlet colour; whence Lobel calleth it *Cedrus phœnicia altera*.

The Place.

The prickly Cedar with the crimson colour cometh up higher and greater in certain places of Italy, Spain, and Asia, and in other countries; for that which grows on Mount Garganus in Apulia is much higher and broader than those that grow elsewhere, and bringeth forth greater berries, of the bigness of an hazel nut, and sweeter, as that most diligent writer Bellonius reporteth. Carolus Clusius sheweth, that the prickly Cedar and the Juniper tree be of so great a growth in divers places of Spain, as he hath observed, as that the body of them is as thick as a man.

The Lycian Cedar is found in Provence of France, not far from Massilia, and groweth in a great part of Greece, in Illyricum and Epirum.

The Time.

Both of them are always green, and in winter also full of fruit, by reason that they continually bring forth berries, as when the old do fall new come in their places: in the spring grow up new buds and beginnings of berries: in autumn they wax ripe the second year, as do the berries of Juniper.

The Names.

They are called in Greek *Oxykedros*, in Latin, *Minores*, and *Humiles Cedri*, little and low Cedars, for difference from the tall and great Cedar which beareth cones.

The former is named in Latin, *Oxycedrus*, and *Cedrus punica*: in English, Prickly Cedar, and Crimson Cedar: Pliny surnameth it *Phænicea*, of the crimson colour of the fruit: the Spaniards call this also *Enebro*, as Clusius testifieth, even by the same name which they give to the Juniper: wherein likewise they are thought to imitate divers of the old writers, who have not by names distinguished the Juniper from the Cedar, but have, as Theophrastus noteth, called them *Cedros*, Cedar trees; yet with an addition, *Oxykedros*, or prickly Cedar.

The other with the blunt leaf is named by Theophrastus, *Likea kedros*, of Pliny also, *Lycia Cedrus*: in Provence of France, *Morveine*: divers name this *Sabina*, and use it instead of Savin, which they want; as the apothecaries of Epidaurus, and in divers cities of Greece, and also in Illyricum and Epirum, as Bellonius testifieth. Some would have it to be *Thya*; but *Thya*, according to Theophrastus, is like, not only in body, leaves, and boughs, but in fruit also, to the Cypress tree, but the fruit of this is nothing like to the Cypress cones.

The fruit of this Cedar is named by Theophrastus, *Cedris*: notwithstanding *Cedrus*, as he himself doth also testify (Gaza nameth it *Credula*) is a certain little shrub which never groweth to a tree.

The gum or liquor which issueth forth of the prickly Cedar is also called *vernix*, and is sold instead thereof.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The little Cedar, as Galen writeth, is hot and dry in a manner in the third degree: the matter or substance thereof is sweet of smell, like that of Juniper, and is used for perfumes and odoriferous smells together with the leaves,

B. The berries or fruit of the low Cedar have the faculties not so strong, as the same author testifieth, insomuch as that they may also be eaten, yet if they be taken too plentifully, they cause headache, and breed heat and gnawings in the stomach. Yet there is a difference between these two Cedar berries; for the crimson ones are not so hot and dry, by reason they are sweeter and pleasanter to the taste, and therefore they are better to be eaten, and do also yield unto the body a kind of nourishment: but the berries of that of Lycia are biting, hotter and drier also than those of Juniper, from which they differ especially in the biting quality, they bring no nourishment at all, and though a man eat never so few of them he shall feel gnawings in his stomach, and pain in his head.

C. The peasants do feed thereon rather to satisfy their hunger, than for any delight they have in the taste, or the physical virtues thereof; albeit they be good against the strangury, and provoke urine.

CHAP. 50. Of Savin.

The Kinds.

There be two kinds of Savin; one like in leaf to Tamarisk, the other to the Cypress tree; whereof the one beareth berries, the other is barren.

1 *Sabina sterilis.*
Barren Sauin.



Fig. 1941. Barren Savin (1)

2 *Sabina baccifera.*
Sauin bearing berries.



Fig. 1942. Berried Savin (2)

The Description.

1. The first Savin, which is the common kind, and best of all known in this country, groweth in manner of a low shrub or tree: the stem or trunk whereof is sometimes as big as a man's arm, dividing itself into many branches set full of small leaves like unto Cypress, or Tamarisk, but thicker, and more sharp or prickly, remaining green winter and summer, in smell rank or very strong, barren both of flowers and fruit.

2. The other Savin is an high tree, as Bellonius saith, as tall as the Almond tree, and much like to the tame Cypress tree: the body is writhed, thick, and sometimes of so great a compass as that it cannot be fathomed; the substance of the wood is red within, as is that of the Juniper, and of the prickly Cedar: the bark is not very thick, and it is of a yellowish red: the leaves are of a marvellous gallant green colour, like to those of the Cypress tree, yet thicker or more in number; in taste bitter, of a spicy smell, and like resin: the boughs are broader, and thick set as it were with wings, like those of the Pitch Tree and of the Yew tree: on which grow a great number of berries, very round like those of the little Cedars, which at the first are green, but when they be ripe they are of a blackish blue. Out of the root hereof issueth oftentimes a resin, which being hard is like to that of the Juniper tree, and doth also crumble in the chewing.

‡ 3 *Sabina baccata altera.*
The lesser berry-bearing Savin.



Fig. 1943. Lesser Berried Savin (3)

3. There is another, which differs from the last described only in that the leaves are smaller and less pricking than those of the former, as also the branches lesser: Lobel calls this *Sabina baccata altera*.

The Place.

Both of them grow upon hills in woods, and in other like untoiled places, as in Candy, Mysia, and elsewhere. P. Bellonius reporteth that he found them both upon the tops of the mountains Taurus, Amanus, and Olympus.

The first is planted in our English gardens almost everywhere: the second is planted both by the seed and by the slip: the slips must be set in a ground that is meanly moist and shadowy, till they have taken root: the shrubs which grow of these decline toward the one side, retaining still the nature of the bough: but that Savin which is planted by the seed groweth more upright; this in continuance of time bringeth forth seeds, and the other for the most part remains barren: both these grow in my garden.

The Time.

They both continue always green: the one is found to be laden with ripe fruit commonly in winter, but it hath fruit at all times; for before the old berries fall, new are come up.

The Names.

Savin is called in Greek *Brathus*, or *Brathu*: in Latin, *Sabina*.

The first is commonly called in the apothecaries' shops by the name *Savina*: of divers, *Savimera*: the Italians and Spaniards keep the Latin name: it is called in High Dutch, *Siben baum*: in Low Dutch, *Sabel boom*: in French, *Savenier*: in English, common Savin, or garden Savin.

Some name the other *Cupressus cretica*, or Cypress of Candy, as Pliny saith, *lib. 12. cap. 17.*, making mention of a tree called *Bruta*: some there are that take this to be *altera Sabina*, or the second Savin, and to be read *Bruta* for *Brathu*, by altering of the vowels. For it is described by Pliny *lib. 12. cap. 17.* to be like the Cypress tree, in these words: They seek in the mountain Elimæi the tree *Bruta*, being like to the broad Cypress tree, having white boughs, yielding a sweet smell when it is set on fire; whereof mention is made with a miracle, in the stories of Claudius Cæsar. It is reported that the Parthians do use the leaves in drinks; that the smell is very like to that of the Cypress tree, and that the smoke thereof is a remedy against other woods. It groweth beyond Pasitigris, near unto the town Sittaca, on mount Zagrus. Thus far Pliny.

The mountains Elimæi are described by Strabo in the country of the Assyrians, next after the mountain Sagrus above the Babylonians; by Ptolomæus not far from the Persian gulf: therefore it is hard to say that *Bruta* is *Sabina altera*, or the second Savin, seeing that so great a distance of the place may undoubtedly cause a difference, and that it is not largely but briefly described. It seemeth that *Thya* mentioned by Theophrastus is more like unto Savin: but yet forasmuch as *Thya* is like in fruit to the Cypress tree, and not to the fruit or berries of the little Cedars, it is also very manifest, that the second Savin is not *Thya*, neither *Arbor vitæ*, so called of the later herbarists: it is likewise named by Lobel; *Sabina genuina baccifera, atrocærulea*, that is, the true Savin that beareth berries of a blackish blue colour.

The Temperature.

The leaves of Savin, which are most used in medicine, are hot and dry in the third degree, and of subtle parts, as Galen saith.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves of Savin boiled in wine and drunk provoke urine, bring down the menses with force, draw away the afterbirth, expel the dead child, and kill the quick: it hath the like virtue received under in a perfume.

B. The leaves stamped with honey and applied, cure ulcers, stay spreading and creeping ulcers, scour and take away all spots and freckles from the face or body of man or woman.

C. The leaves boiled in oil olive, and kept therein, kill the worms in children, if you anoint their bellies therewith: and the leaves powdered and given in milk or muscatel do the same.

D. The leaves dried and beat into fine powder, and strewed upon those kinds of excrescences *sub præputio*, ["under the foreskin"] called caroles, and such like, gotten by dealing with unclean women, take them away perfectly, curing and healing them: but if they be inveterate and old, and have been much tampered withal, it shall be necessary to add unto the same a small quantity of *auripigmentum* in fine powder, and use it with discretion, because the force of the medicine is greatly increased thereby, and made more corrosive.

CHAP. 51. Of Tamarisk.

1 *Tamariscus Narbonensis.*
French Tamariske.



Fig. 1944. French Tamarisk (1)

2 *Tamariscus Germanica.*
Germane Tamariske.



Fig. 1945. German Tamarisk (2)

The Description.

1. The first kind of Tamarisk groweth like a small hedge tree, covered with a reddish bark, having many branches set and bedecked with leaves, much like unto Heath: among which come forth small mossy white flowers declining to purple, which turn into a pappose or downy seed, that flieth away with the wind, as that of Willow doth: the root is woody as the roots of other shrubs be, and groweth divers ways.

2. The German Tamarisk hath many woody branches or shoots rising from the root, with a white bark, having his leaves thicker and grosser than the former, and not so finely jagged or cut: The flowers are reddish, and larger than the former, growing not upon footstalks, many thick clustering together as those of the former, but each a pretty distance from another on the tops of the branches spike fashion, and begin to flower below: which do turn into seed, that is likewise carried away with the wind.

The Place.

Tamarisk groweth by running streams, and many times by rivers that break forth, and not seldom about fenny grounds, commonly in a gravelly soil, for it best prospereth in moist and stony places: it is found in Germany, Vindelicia, Italy, Spain, and also in Greece.

The Tamarisks do also grow in Egypt and Syria, as Dioscorides writeth, and likewise in Tylus an island in Arabia, as Theophrastus noteth: the wood whereof, saith he, is not weak as with us in Greece, but strong like timber, or any other strong thing:

this Tamarisk Dioscorides doth call *emeros*, that is to say, tame, or planted; and saith that it bringeth forth fruit very like to galls, in taste rough and binding.

Petrus Bellonius in his *Second Book of Singularities* reporteth, that he saw in Egypt very high Tamarisks and great like other trees, and that sometimes in moist places by rivers' sides, and many times also in dry and gravelly grounds where no other trees did grow, which now and then did bear hanging on the boughs such a multitude of galls, that the inhabitants call *Chermasel*, as being overladen, they were ready to break. Both these grow and prosper well in gardens with us here in England.

The Time.

These trees or shrubs flower in May, and in the later end of August, their seed is carried away with the wind.

The Names.

They are called in Greek *Myrika*, and in Latin also *Myrica*, and *Tamarix*: in shops, *Tamariscus*: of Octavius Horatianus, *Murica*: Dioscorides maketh that which groweth in Greece and Italy to be *Agria*, or wild Tamarisk: it is named in High Dutch *Tamarischen holk*, and *Þork*: in Low Dutch, *Ibenboom*, *Tamarischboome*: in Italian, *Tamarigo*: in Spanish, *Tamarguira*, and *Tamariz*: in French, *Tamara*: in English, Tamarisk.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Tamarisk hath a cleansing and cutting faculty with a manifest drying; it is also somewhat astringent or binding, and by reason of these qualities it is very good for an hard spleen, being boiled with vinegar or wine, either the root or leaves, or tender branches, as Galen writeth.

B. Moreover Dioscorides teacheth, that the decoction of the leaves made with wine, doth waste the spleen, and that the same is good against the toothache, if the mouth be washed therewith: that it bringeth down the menses, if the patient sit therein; that it killeth lice and nits, if the parts be bathed therewith.

C. The ashes of burnt Tamarisk hath a drying faculty, and greatly scouring withal, and a little binding.

D. The flowers and downy seed of the greater Tamarisk doth greatly bind, infomuch as it cometh very near to the gall named *galla omphacitis*, but that the roughness of taste is more evident in the gall; the which flowers are of an unequal temperature, for there is joined to the nature thereof a great thinness of parts, and cleansing faculty, which the gall hath not, as Galen writeth.

These flowers we fitly use (saith Dioscorides) instead of gall, in medicines for the eyes and mouth.

F. It is good to stanch blood, and to stay the lask and women's whites, it helpeth the yellow jaundice, and also cureth those that are bit of the venomous spider called *Phalangium*; the bark serveth for the same purposes.

G. The leaves and wood of Tamarisk have great power and virtue against the hardness and stopping of the spleen, especially the leaves being boiled in water, and the decoction drunk, or else infused in a small vessel of ale or beer, and continually drunk: and if it be drunk forth of a cup or dish made of the wood or timber of Tamarisk, is of greater efficacy.

CHAP. 51. Of Heath, Heather, or Ling.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of Heath, some greater, some lesser; some with broad leaves, and some narrower: some bringing forth berries, and others nothing but flowers.

1 *Erica vulgaris, sive Pumila.*
Common or dwarfe Heath.



Fig. 1946. Common Heath (1)

2 *Erica vulgaris hirsuta.*
Rough leaved Heath.

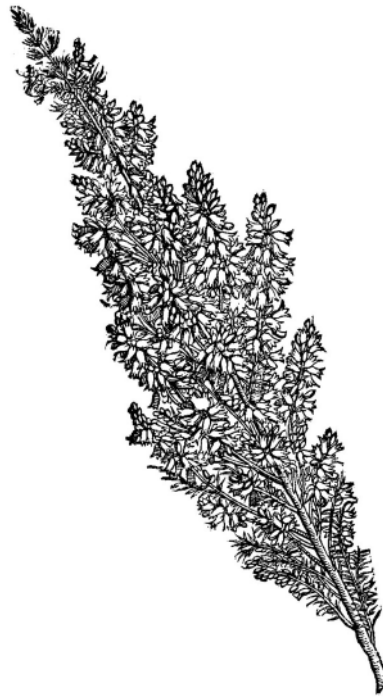


Fig. 1947. Rough-Leaved Heath (2)

The Description.

1. The common Heath is a low plant, but yet woody and shrubby, scarce a cubit high: it bringeth forth many branches, whereupon do grow sundry little leaves somewhat hard and rough, very like to those of Tamarisk, or the Cypress tree: the flowers are orderly placed alongst the branches, small, soft, and of a light red colour tending to purple: the root is also woody, and creepeth under the upper crust of the earth: and this is the Heath which the ancients took to be the right and true Heath.

There is another Heath which differeth not from the precedent, saving that this plant bringeth forth flowers as white as snow, wherein consisteth the difference: wherefore we may call it *Erica pumila alba*, Dwarf Heath with white flowers.

2. The great Heath, (which Carolus Clusius at his being in England found in the barren grounds about Windsor, which in his Spanish travels he maketh the first kind): groweth to the height of two cubits, seldom higher, full of branches, covered with a blackish bark: whereon are set in very good order by couples, small, rough, square leaves finer than those of Tamarisk or Cypress. The flowers enclose the little twiggie branches round about at certain distances from the lower part to the top fashioned like little bottles, consisting of four parts, of a shining purple colour, very beautiful to

behold, and the rather to be esteemed because it flowereth twice in the year: the root is likewise woody.

† 3 *Erica maior flore albo* Clusij.
The great Heath with white floures.



4 *Erica maior flore purpureo.*
Great Heath with purple floures.



† 5 *Erica cruciata.*
Crossed Heath.



6 *Erica Pyramidalis.*
Sceple Heath.



Fig. 1948. Kinds of Heath (3-6)

3. This, saith Clusius, which is the largest that I have seen, sometimes exceeds the height of a man, very shrubby, having a hard and blackish red wood: the leaves are small and short, growing about the branches by fours, of a very astringent taste: it hath plentiful store of flowers growing all alongst the branches, so that sometimes the larger

branches have flowers for a foot in length: this flower is hollow and longish, well smelling, white and beautiful. It grows between Lisbon and the University of Coimbra in Portugal where it flowers in November, December, and January.

4. Of this kind there is another sort with whitish purple flowers, more frequently found than the other sort, which flowers are somewhat greater than the former, but in form like, and flowering at the same time. The leaves also are hairy, and grow commonly by fours: the hollow flowers grow clustering together at the very tops of the branches, and are to be found in July and August; it grows on divers heathy places of this kingdom.

5. Crossed Heath groweth to the height of a cubit and a half, full of branches, commonly lying along upon the ground, of a swart dark colour: whereon do grow small leaves, set at certain spaces by two upon one side, and two on the other, opposite, one answering another, even as do the leaves of Crosswort. The flowers in like manner stand amongst the branches cross fashion, of a dark overworn greenish colour. The root is likewise woody, as is all the rest of the plant.

6. This Steeple Heath hath likewise many woody branches, garnished with small leaves which easily fall off from the dried stalks; among which come forth divers little mossy greenish flowers of small moment. The whole bush for the most part groweth round together like a little cock of hay, broad at the lower part, and sharp above like a pyramid or steeple, whereof it took his name.

7 *Ericatenuifolia.*
Small leaved Heath.

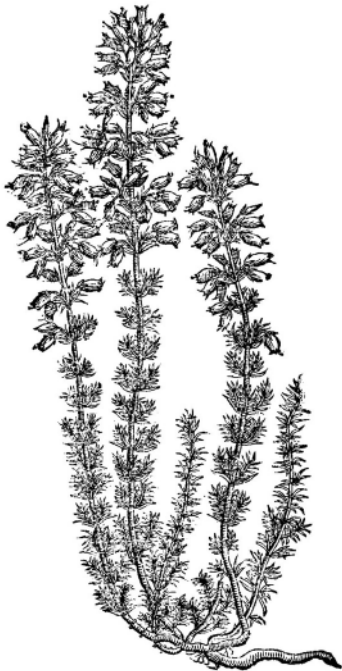


Fig. 1949. Small-Leaved Heath (7)

8 *Erica tenuifolia caliculata.*
Chalice Heath.

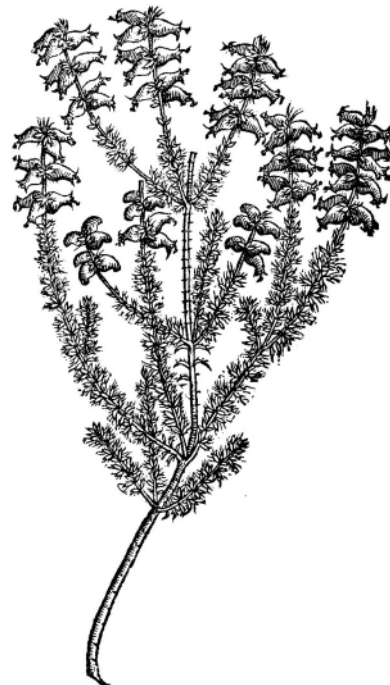


Fig. 1950. Chalice Heath (8)

7. This Small- or Thin-Leaved Heath is also a low and base shrub, having many small and slender shoots coming from the root, of a reddish brown colour; whereupon

do grow very many leaves, not unlike to them of common Thyme, but much smaller and tenderer: the flowers grow in tufts at certain spaces, of a purple colour. The root is long and of a woody substance. The branches of this are commonly whitish, the leaves very green: the flowers are smallest at both ends and biggest in the midst, hollow, and of a fair purple colour, which doth not easily decay: it flowers most part of Summer, and grows in many heathy grounds.

8. Chalice Heath hath also many woody branches growing from the roots, slender, of a reddish brown colour, a foot and a half high, garnished with very little leaves, lesser than those of Thyme: the flowers grow on the tops and upper parts of the branches, and be in number, five, six or more, hanging downwards, in fashion long, hollow within like a little tunnel or open cup or chalice, of a light purplish colour: the root creepeth and putteth forth in divers places new springs or shoots.

‡ 9 *Erica bacciferaprocumbens.*
Heath bearing Berries.



Fig. 1951. Berried Heath (9)

10 *Erica bacciferatenuifolia.*
Small leaved Heath with Berries.



Fig. 1952. Small-Leaved Berried Heath (10)

9. The Heath that bringeth forth berries hath many weak and slender branches of a reddish colour, which trailing upon the ground do take hold thereof in sundry places, whereby it mightily increaseth: the leaves are somewhat broad, of a thick and fleshy substance, in taste something drying at the first, but afterwards somewhat sharp and biting the tongue: among which come forth small flowers of an herby colour: which being faded there succeed small round berries, that at the first are green, and afterward black, being as big as those of Juniper wherein is contained purple juice like that of the Mulberry: within those berries are contained also small three-cornered grains: the root is hard, and of a woody substance. I found this growing in great plenty in Yorkshire on the tops of the hills by Guisborough, between it and RosemaryTopping (a round hill so called) and some of the people thereabouts told me they called the fruit crake berries.

This is the same that Matthiolus calls *Erica baccifera*: and it is the *Erica coris folio 11* Of Clusius.

10. This which our author figured as you see in the tenth place (putting the description of the former thereto) hath brittle branches growing some cubit high, covered with a bark blacker than the rest: the leaves are like those of the former, but blacker and smaller, growing about the stalks by threes, of a hottish taste with some astringtion. In September and October it carries a fruit on the tops of the branches different from the rest, for it is very beautiful, white, transparent, resembling dusky and uneven pearls in form and colour, succulent also, and of an acid taste, commonly containing three little seeds in each berry: in November this fruit becomes dry, and falls away of itself. Clusius only observed this in Portugal, and at the first sight afar off took the white berries to have been grains of manna. He calls it *Erica coris folio 10*.

‡ 11 *Erica pumila*, 3. Dod.
Dodonaus his Dwarfie Heath.



‡ 12 *Erica ternis per intervalla ramis*.
Heath with three branches at a joint.



‡ 13 *Erica perigrina* Lobelij.
Lobel's strange Heath.



‡ 14 *Erica Coris folio* 7. Clusij.
Creeping Dutch Heath.



Fig. 1953. Kinds of Heath (11-14)

11. I remember (saith Dodonæus) that I observed another Heath which grew low; yet sent forth many woody and twiggy branches, having upon them little narrow and longish leaves; on these stalks spike fashion to the tops of them, yet but on one side, grow elegant red flowers, pointed with black. This grows in that tract of Germany which leads from Bohemia to Nuremberg on dry and untilled places, and near woods. It flowers in April.

12. This shrubby Heath is commonly some cubit high, having slender branches which come out of the main stems commonly three together; and the leaves also grow in the same order; the tops of the branches are adorned with many flowers of a dark purple colour, hollow, round, bigger below, and standing upon long footstalks. Clusius found this growing in the untilled places of Portugal above Lisbon, where it flowered in December; he calls it *Erica coris folio* 5. Besides all these (saith Lobel, having first treated of divers plants of this kind) there is a certain rarer species growing like the rest after the manner of a shrub in pots, in the garden of Mr. John Brancion: the leaf is long, and the purple flowers, which as far as I remember consisted of four little leaves apiece, grow on the tops of the branches. I know not whence it was brought, and therefore for the rarity I call it *Erica peregrina*, that is, Strange, or Foreign Heath.

14. This hath many round blackish purple branches some foot or cubit high, lying oft-times along upon the ground: these are beset with many narrow little leaves, almost like those of the third described, yet somewhat longer, commonly growing four, yet sometimes five together, of an astringent taste; the little flowers grow on the top of the branches, longish, hollow, and of a light purple colour, coming out of four little leaves almost of the same colour; when these are ripe and dried they contain a blackish and small seed; the root is hard, woody, and runs divers ways; the weak branches also that lie upon the ground now and then take root again. Clusius found this growing plentifully in divers mountainous places of Germany where it flowered in June and July.

‡ 15 *Erica Coris folio. 9. Clusij.*
Small Austrian Heath.



Fig. 1954. Small Austrian Heath (15)

15. The weak stalks of this are some foot high, which are set with many small green leaves growing commonly together by threes; the tops of the branches are decked with little hollow and longish flowers divided at their ends into four parts, of a flesh colour, together with the four little leaves out of which they grow, having eight blackish little threads in them, with a purplish pointel in the middle. The seed is black and small;

root woody as in other plants of this kind. Clusius found this in some mountainous woods of Austria, where it flowered in April and May.

The Place.

Heath groweth upon dry mountains which are hungry and barren, as upon Hampstead Heath near London, where all the sorts do grow, except that with the white flowers, and that which beareth berries. So saith our author, but there are not above three or four sorts that I could ever observe to grow there.

Heath with the white flowers groweth upon the downs near unto Gravesend.

Heath which beareth berries groweth in the North parts of England, namely, at a place called Crosby Ravenswaith, and in Crag Close also in the same country: from whence I have received the red berries by the gift of a learned gentleman called Mr James Thwaites.

The Time.

These kinds or sorts of Heath do for the most part flower all the summer, even until the last of September.

The Names.

Heath is called in Greek; *Ereika*: in Latin also *Erica*. divers do falsly name it *Myrica*: in high and low Dutch, *Heiden*: in Italian, *Erica*: in Spanish, *Breso Quirro*: in French, *Bruyre*: in English, Heath, Heather, and Ling.

The Temperature.

Heath hath, as Galen saith, a digesting faculty, consuming by vapors: the flowers and leaves are to be used.

The Virtues.

A. The tender tops and flowers, saith Dioscorides, are good to be laid upon the bitings and stinging of any venomous beast: of these flowers the bees do gather bad honey.

B. The bark and leaves of Heath may be used for and in the same causes that Tamarisk is used.

CHAP. 53. Of Heath of Jericho.

1 *Rosa Hiericonta maior.*
The Heath Rose of Ierico.

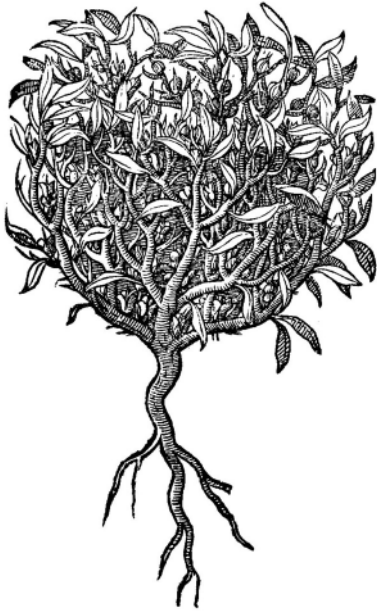


Fig. 1955. Heath Rose of Jericho.

2 *Rosa Hiericonta siccata.* The Heath Rose of Ierico dried.

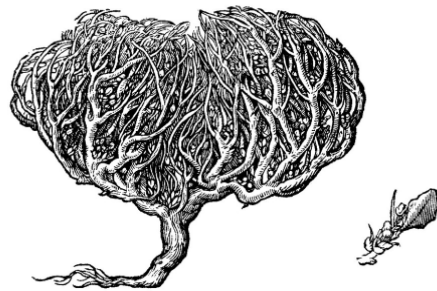


Fig. 1956. Dried Heath Rose of Jericho.

The Description.

This kind of Heath which of the laater writers hath been called by the name *Rosa hiericonta*; the coiner spoiled the name in the mint, for of all plants that have been written of, there is not any more unlike unto the Rose, or any kind thereof than this plant: what moved them thereto I know not: but thus much of my own knowledge, it hath neither shape, nature, nor faculty agreeing with any Rose; the which doubtless is a kind of Heath, as the barren soil, and that among Heath, doth evidently show, as also the heathy matter wherewith the whole plant is possessed, agreeing with the kinds of Heath in very notable points. It riseth up out of the ground, of the height of four inches, or an hand breadth, compact or made of sundry hard sticks, (which are the stalks) clasping or shutting itself together into a round form, intricately weaving itself one stick overthwart another, like a little net: upon which woody sticks do grow leaves not unlike to those of the Olive tree, which maketh the whole plant of a round form, and hollow within; among the leaves on the inside grow small mossy flowers, of a whitish herby colour, which turn into little seed, like the seed of Rocket, but lesser: the whole plant is of the substance of heath, and woody.

The second figure setteth forth the dried plant, as it is brought unto us from beyond the seas: which being set into a dish of warm water, for half an hour; openeth itself in form, as when it did grow, and taken forth until it be dry, returneth shut up again as before.

The Place.

It groweth in the barren grounds of France, and other hot regions, among the Heath and such like plants: it is a stranger in England, yet dried we have them in great plenty. Thus our author: I have not read nor heard that this grows wild in France; but Bellonius saith it grows in Arabia Deserta: Bauhine saith it easily grew and flourished many years in his garden at Basel.

The Time.

The seed being sown in our cold climate, is sown in April; it perisheth when it is sprung up, and bringeth neither flowers nor seed.

The Names.

This kind of Heath is called *Rosa hiericontea*, or *de hiericho*, the Rose of Jericho: of some, the Rose of Jerusalem, and also *Rosa Mariæ*: in English, the Heath Rose.

The Temperature and Virtues.

There is not any of the ancient nor later writers that have set down any certainty of this plant as touching the temperature and faculties, but only a bare picture with a slender description.

CHAP. 54. Of the Chaste Tree.

1 *Vitex, sive Agnus Castus.*
The Chaste tree.



Fig. 1957. Chaste Tree (1)

2 *Vitex latiore serrato folio.*
Chaste tree with cut leaues.



Fig. 1958. Cut-Leaved Chaste Tree (2)

The Description.

Vitex, or the Chaste Tree, groweth after the manner of a bushy shrub or hedge tree, having many twiggy branches, very pliant and easy to be bent without breaking, like to the willow: the leaves are for the most part divided into five or seven sections or divisions, much like the leaves of Hemp, whereof each part is long and narrow, very like unto the willow leaf, but smaller: the flowers do grow at the uppermost parts of the branches, like unto spiky ears, clustering together about the branches, of a light purple or blue colour, and sweet smell: the fruit is small and round, like unto the grains or corns of pepper.

2. Lobel mentions another variety hereof that differs from the former only in that it hath broader leaves, and these also snipped about the edges.

The Place.

Vitex groweth naturally in Italy, and other hot regions, by water courses and running streams: I have it growing in my garden.

The Time.

Vitex beginneth to recover his last leaves in May, and the flowers come forth in August.

The Names.

The Grecians call this shrub *Agnos*, and *Lyzos*: *agnos* i.e. *castus*, chaste: because, saith Pliny in his 24th book, 9th chapter, the Athenian matrons in their feast called Thesmophoria dedicated to the honour of Ceres, desirous to keep themselves chaste, do lay the leaves in their beds under them: the Latins name it *Vitex*, and of divers it is termed, as we find among the bastard and counterfeit names *Agynos*: in Latin, *Salix marina*, or *Salix amerina*, and *Piper agreste*: in High Dutch, **Schaffmulle**, **Keuschbaum**: in Low Dutch, and also of the apothecaries, *Agnus Castus*: the Italians, *Vitice*, *Agno Casto*: in Spanish, *Gattile casto*: in English, Chaste tree, Hemp tree, and of divers *Agnus castus*. The name *Agnus castus* comes by consounding the Greek name *Agnos* with *Castus*, the Latin interpretation thereof.

The Temperature.

The leaves and fruit of *Agnus castus* are hot and dry in the third degree: they are of very thin parts, and waste or consume wind.

The Virtues.

A. *Agnus castus* is a singular medicine and remedy for such as would willingly live chaste, for it withstandeth all uncleanness, or desire to the flesh, confirming and drying up the seed of generation, in what sort soever it be taken, whether in powder only, or the decoction drunk, or whether the leaves be carried about the body; for which cause it was called *Castus*; that is to say, chaste, clean, and pure.

B. The seed of *Agnus castus* drunken, driveth away, and dissolveth all windiness of the stomach; openeth and cureth the stoppings of the liver and spleen; and in the beginning of dropsies, it is good to be drunk in wine in the quantity of a dram.

C. The leaves stamped with butter, dissolve and assuage the swellings of the genitories and cods, being applied thereto.

D. The decoction of the herb and seed is good against pain and inflammations about the matrix; if women be caused to sit and bathe their privy parts therein: the seed being drunk with pennyroyal bringeth down the menses, as it doth also both in a fume and in a pessary: in a poultice it cureth the headache; the frantic, and those that have the lethargy are wont to be bathed herewith, oil and vinegar being added thereto.

E. The leaves used in a fume, and also strewed, drive away serpents; and being laid on do cure their bitings.

F. The seed laid on with water doth heal the clefts or rifts of the fundament; with the leaves, it is a remedy for limbs out of joint, and for wounds.

G. It is reported that if such as journey or travel do carry with them a branch or rod of *Agnus castus* in their hand, it will keep them from merry-galls, and weariness: Dioscorides.

CHAP. 55. Of the Willow Tree.

1 *Salix.*
The common Willow.



Fig. 1959. Common Willow (1)

2 *Salix aquatica.*
The Ozier or water Willow.



Fig. 1960. Osier or Water willow (2)

The Description.

1. The common Willow is an high tree, with a body of a mean thickness, and riseth up as high as other trees do if it be not topped in the beginning, soon after it is planted; the bark thereof is smooth, tough, and flexible: the wood is white, tough and hard to be broken: the leaves are long, lesser and narrower than those of the Peach tree, somewhat green on the upper side and slippery, and on the nether side softer and whiter: the boughs be covered either with a purple, or else with a white bark: the catkins which grow on the tops of the branches come first of all forth, being long and mossy, and quickly turn into white and soft down, that is carried away with the wind.

2. The lesser bringeth forth of the head, which standeth somewhat out, slender wands or twigs, with a reddish or green bark, good to make baskets and such like works of: it is planted by the twigs or rods being thrust into the earth, the upper part whereof when they are grown up, is cut off; so that which is called the head increaseth under them, from whence the slender twigs do grow, which being oftentimes cut, the head waxeth greater: many times also the long rods or wands of the higher withy trees be lopped off and thrust into the ground for plants, but deeper, and above man's height: of which do grow great rods, profitable for many things, and commonly for bands, wherewith tubs and casks are bound.

3 *Salix Caprea rotundi folia.*
The Goat round leaved Willow.



4 *Salix Caprea latifolia.*
The Goat broad leaved Sallow.



Fig. 1961. Round-Leaved Goat Willow (3) Fig. 1962. Broad-Leaved Goat Willow (4)

3. The Sallow tree or Goat's Willow, groweth to a tree of a mean bigness: the trunk or body is soft and hollow timber, covered with a whitish rough bark: the branches are set with leaves somewhat rough, green above, and hoary underneath: among which come forth round catkins, or aglets that turn into down, which is carried away with the wind.

4. This other Sallow tree differeth not from the precedent, but in this one point, that is to say, the leaves are greater and longer, and every part of the tree larger, wherein is the difference. Both those last described have little roundish leaves like little ears growing at the bottoms of the footstalks of the bigger leaves, whereby they may be distinguished from all other plants of this kind.

5 *Salix Roſea Anglica.*
The Engliſh Roſe Willow.



Fig. 1963. English Rose Willow (5)

6 *Salix humilis.*
The low Willow.



Fig. 1964. Low Willow (6)

5. The Rose Willow groweth up likewise to the height and bigness of a shrubby tree, the body whereof is covered with a scabbed rough bark: the branches are many, whereupon do grow very many twigs of a reddish colour, garnished with small long leaves, somewhat amongst which come forth little flowers, or rather a multiplication of leaves, joined together in form of a Rose, of a greenish white colour, which do not only make a gallant show, but also yield a most cooling air in the heat of summer, being set up in houses, for the decking of the same.

6. The low or base Willow groweth but low, & leaneth weakly upon the ground, having many small and narrow leaves, set up on limber and pliant branches, of a dark or blackish green colour: amongst which come forth long slender stems full of mossy flowers, which turn into a light downy substance that flieth away with the wind.

7 *Chamaitea, sine Salix pumila.*
The dwarf Willow.



Fig. 1965. Dwarf Willow (7)

8 *Salix humilis repens.*
Creeping dwarf Willow.



Fig. 1966. Creeping Dwarf Willow (8)

7. The dwarf Willow hath very small and slender branches, seldom times above a foot, but never a cubit high, covered with a duskish bark, with very little and narrow leaves, of a green colour above, and on the upper side, but underneath of a hoary or overworn greenish colour, in bigness and fashion of the leaves of garden Flax: among which come forth little duskish flowers, which do turn into down that is carried away with the wind: the root is small and thready, of the bigness of a finger, and of a blackish colour.

8. There is another kind of willow like to the former, and differeth from it in that, the leaves of this kind are smaller and narrower, as big as the leaves of Myrtle, having small knobby flowers of a duskish colour, which turn into down that flieth away with the wind: the root is small and limber, not growing deep, but running along upon the upper crust of the earth.

The Place.

These Willows grow in divers places of England: the Rose Willow groweth plentifully in Cambridgeshire, by the rivers and ditches there: in Cambridge town they grow abundantly about the places called Paradise and Hell-mouth, in the way from Cambridge to Grantchester: I found the Dwarf Willows growing near to a bog or marsh ground at the further end of Hampstead Heath upon the declining of the hill, in the ditch that encloseth a small cottage there, not half a furlong from the said house or cottage.

The Time.

The willows do flower at the beginning of the spring.

The Names.

The Willow tree is called in Greek, *Itea*: in Latin, *Salix*: in High Dutch, *Wryden*: in Low Dutch, *Wylgen*: in Italian, *Salice*: in French, *Saux*: in Spanish, *Salguiero*, *Salzer*, and *Sauz*: in English, Sallow, Withy, and Willow.

The greater is called in Latin *Salix percialis*, common Withy, Willow, and Sallow, especially that which being often lopped sendeth out from one head many boughs: the kind hereof with the red bark is called of Theophrastus, Black Withy; and the other, White: Pliny calleth the black *Græca* or Greek Withy (the red, being the Greek Withy, saith he, is easy to be cleft) and the whiter, *Amerina*.

Theophrastus writeth, that the Arcadians do call the lesser *Elike*, not *Itea*. Pliny also nameth this *Helice*: both of them do make this to be *Salicis tertia species*, the third kind of Sallow: the same is likewise called in Latin, *Salix pumila*, *Salix viminalis*, *Salix gallica*; and by Columella, *Sabina*, which he saith that many do term *Amerina*: in High Dutch; *Kleyn Wryden*: in Low Dutch, *Wijmen*: in English, Osier, small Withy, Twig Withy: Petrus Crescentius nameth it *Vincus*.

The Temperature.

The leaves, flowers, seed, and bark of Willows are cold and dry in the second degree, and astringent.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves and bark of Withy or Willows do stay the spitting of blood, and all other fluxes of blood whatsoever in man or woman, if the said leaves and bark be boiled in wine and drunk.

B. The green boughs with the leaves may very well be brought into chambers and set about the beds of those that be sick of fevers, for they do mightily cool the heat of the air, which thing is a wonderful refreshing to the sick patients.

C. The bark hath like virtues: Dioscorides writeth, that this being burnt to ashes, and steeped in vinegar, takes away corns and other like risings in the feet and toes: divers, saith Galen, do slit the bark whilst the Withy is in flowering, and gather a certain juice, with which they use to take away things that hinder the sight, and this is when they are constrained to use a cleansing medicine of thin and subtle parts.

CHAP. 56. Of the Olive Tree.

1 *Olea sativa.*
The manured Oliue tree.

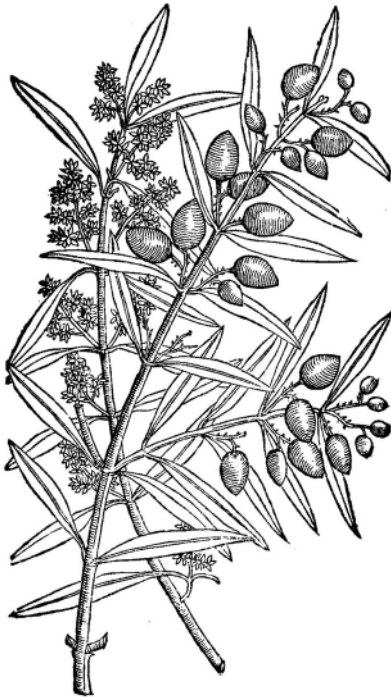


Fig. 1967. Cultivated Olive (1)

2 *Olea sylvestris.*
The wilde Oliue tree.



Fig. 1968. Wild Olive (2)

The Description.

1. The tame or manured Olive tree groweth high and great with many branches, full of long narrow leaves not much unlike the leaves of Willows, but narrower and smaller; the flowers be white and very small, growing upon clusters or bunches: the fruit is long and round, wherein is an hard stone: from which fruit is pressed that liquor which we call oil olive.

2. The wild Olive is like unto the tame or garden Olive tree, saving that the leaves are something smaller: among which sometimes do grow many prickly thorns: the fruit hereof is lesser than of the former, and more in number, which do seldom come to maturity or ripeness in somuch that the oil which is made of those berries continueth ever green, and is called Oil Omphacine, or oil of unripe olives.

The place.

Both the tame and the wild Olive trees grow in very many places of Italy, France, and Spain, and also in the islands adjoining: they are reported to love the sea coasts; for most do think, as Columella writeth, that above sixty miles from the sea they either die, or else bring forth no fruit: but the best, and they that do yield the most pleasant oil are those that grow in the island called Candy.

The Time.

All the Olive trees flower in the month of June: the fruit is gathered in November or December: when they be a little dried and begin to wrinkle they are put into the press, and out of them is squeezed oil, with water added in the pressing: the olives which are to be preserved in salt and pickle must be gathered before they be ripe, and whilst they are green.

The Names.

The tame or garden Olive tree is called in Greek *Elaia*, and *Elaia emerous*: in Latin, *Olea sativa*, and *urbana*: in High Dutch, *Öelbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Öliffboome*: in Italian, *Olivo domestico*: in French, *Olivier*: in Spanish, *Olivo*, and *Olivera*: in English, Olive tree.

The berry is called *Oliva*: in Greek also *Elaia*: in Spanish, *Azeytuna*: in French, Dutch, and English, Olive. Olives preserved in brine or pickle are called *colymbades*.

The wild Olive tree is named in Greek, *Agrielaia*; in Latin, *Olea sylvestris*, *Oleaster*, *Cotinus*, *Olea æthiopica*: in Dutch, *Wald Öelbaum*: in Italian, *Olivo salvatico*: in Spanish, *Azebuche*, *Azambulheyro*: in French, *Olivier sauvage*: in English, wild Olive tree.

The Temperature and virtues.

A. The olives which be so ripe as that either they fall off themselves, or be ready to fall, which are named in Greek, *drupeteis*, be moderately hot and moist, yet being eaten they yield to the body little nourishment.

B. The unripe olives are dry and binding.

C. Those that are preserved in pickle, called *colymbades*, do dry up the overmuch moisture of the stomach, they remove the loathing of meat, stir up an appetite; but there is no nourishment at all that is to be looked for in them, much less good nourishment.

D. The branches, leaves, and tender buds of the Olive tree do cool, dry, and bind, and especially of the wild Olive; for they be of greater force than those of the tame: therefore by reason they be milder they are better for eye medicines, which have need of binding things to be mixed with them.

E. The same do stay St. Anthony's fire, the shingles, epinyctides, night wheals, carbuncles, and eating ulcers: being laid on with honey they take away eschars, cleanse foul and filthy ulcers, and quench the heat of hot swellings, and be good for kernels in the flank: they heal & skin wounds in the head, and being chewed they are a remedy for ulcers in the mouth.

F. The juice and decoction also are of the same effect: moreover, the juice doth stay all manner of bleedings, and also the whites.

G. The juice is pressed forth of the stamped leaves, with wine added thereto (which is better) or with water, and being dried in the sun it is made up into little cakes like perfumes.

H. The sweat or oil which issueth forth of the wood whilst it is burning healeth tetter, scurfs and scabs, if they be anointed therewith.

I. The same which is pressed forth of the unripe olives is as cold as it is binding.

K. The old oil which is made of sweet and ripe olives, being kept long, doth withal become hotter, and is of greater force to digest or waste away; and that oil which was made of the unripe olives, being old, doth as yet retain some part of his former astringency, and is of a mixed faculty, that is to say, partly binding, and partly digesting; for it hath got this digesting or consuming faculty by age, and the other property of binding of his own nature,

L. The oil of ripe olives mollifieth and assuageth pain, dissolveth tumors or swellings, is good for the stiffness of the joints, and against cramps, especially being mingled according to art, with good and wholesome herbs appropriate unto those diseases and griefs, as Hypericum, Camomile, Dill, Lilies, Roses, and many others, which do fortify and increase his virtues.

M. The oil of unripe olives, called *Omphacinum oleum*, doth stay, repress, and drive away the beginning of tumours and inflammations, cooling the heat of burning ulcers and exulcerations.

CHAP. 57. Of Privet or Prim-Print.

Ligustrum.
Priuet, or Prim Print.



Fig. 1969. Privet

The Description.

1. Privet is a shrub growing like a hedge tree, the branches and twigs whereof be straight, and covered with soft glistening leaves of a deep green colour, like those of Periwinkle, but yet longer, greater also than the leaves of the Olive tree: the flowers be white, sweet of smell, very little, growing in clusters; which being faded there succeed clusters of berries, at the first green, and when they be ripe black like a little cluster of grapes, which yield a purple juice: the root groweth every way aslope.

The Place.

The common Privet groweth naturally in every wood, and in the hedgerows of our London gardens: it is not found in the country of Polonia and other parts adjacent.

The Time.

It flowereth in the end of May, or in June: the berries are ripe in autumn or about winter, which now and then continue all the winter long; but in the mean time the leaves fall away, and in the spring new come up in their places.

The Names.

It is called in Latin, *Ligustrum*: in Italian at this day, *Guistrico*, by a corrupt word drawn from *Ligustrum*. It is the Grecians *Phillyria*, and in no wise *Kypros*: for Cyprus is a shrub that groweth naturally in the East, and Privet in the West. They be very like one unto another, as the descriptions do declare, but yet in this they differ, as witnesseth Bellonius, because the leaves of Privet do fall away in winter, and the leaves of Cyprus are always green: moreover, the leaves of Cyprus do make the hair red, as Disocorides saith, and (as Bellonius reporteth) do give a yellow colour: but the leaves of Privet have no use at all in dyeing. And therefore Pliny, *lib. 24. cap. 14*, was

deceived, in that he judged Privet to be the selfsame tree which Cyprus is in the East: which thing notwithstanding he did not write as he himself thought, but as other men suppose; for, *lib. 12. cap. 14*, he writeth thus: Some (saith he) affirm this, viz. Cyprus, to be that tree which is called in Italy, *Ligustrum*; and that *Ligustrum* or Privet is that plant which the Grecians call *Phillyria*, the description doth declare.

Phillyria, saith Dioscorides, is a tree like in bigness to Cyprus, with leaves blacker and broader than those of the Olive tree: it hath fruit like to that of the Mastic tree, black, something sweet, standing in clusters, and such a tree for all the world is Privet, as we have before declared.

Serapio the Arabian, *cap. 44*, doth call Privet *Mahaleb*. There is also another *Mahaleb*, which is a grain or seed of which Avicenna maketh mention, *cap. 478*, that it doth by his warm and comfortable heat dissolve and assuage pain. Serapio seemeth to treat of them both, and to contain divers of the *Mahaleb* under the title of one chapter: it is named in High Dutch, *Beinholtzlein*, *Alundtholtz*, *Rhein oder Schulweiden*: in Low Dutch, *Keelkruyt*, *Alonthout*: in French, *Troesne*: in English Privet, Prim-print, and Print.

Some there be that would have the berries to be called *vaccinia*, and *Vaccinium* to be that of which Vitruvius hath made mention in his seventh book *Of Architecture or the Art of Building*, chap. 24, *Of purple colours*: after the same manner, saith he, they temper *vaccinium*, and putting milk unto it do make a gallant purple: in such brevity of the old writers what can be certainly determined?

The Temperature.

The leaves and fruit of Privet are cold, dry, and astringent.

The Virtues.

The leaves of Privet do cure the swellings, apostumations, and ulcers of the mouth or throat, being gargarised with the juice or decoction thereof, and therefore they be excellent good to be put into lotions, to wash the secret parts, and the scaldings with women, cankers and sores in children's mouths.

CHAP. 58. Of Mock Privet.

1 *Phillyrea angustifolia*.
Narrow leaved Mock-Privet.



2 *Phillyrea latifolia*.
The broader leaved Mock-Privet.



Fig. 1970. Narrow-Leaved Mock Privet (1) Fig. 1971. Broad-Leaved Mock Privet (2)

The Description.

1. Cyprus is a kind of Privet, and is called *Phillyrea*, which name all the sorts or kinds thereof do retain; though for distinctions' sake they pass under sundry titles. This plant groweth like an hedge tree, sometimes as big as a Pomegranate tree, beset with slender twiggy boughs which are garnished with leaves growing by couples, very like the leaves of the Olive tree, but broader, softer, and of a green colour: from the bosoms of these leaves come forth great bunches of small white flowers, of a pleasant sweet smell: which being faded, there succeed clusters of black berries very like the berries of the Alder tree.

2. The second Cyprus, called also *Phillyrea latifolia*, is very like the former in body, branches, leaves, flowers, and fruit; and the difference is this, that the leaves of this plant are broader, but in faculty they are like.

3 *Phillyrea ferrata* 2. *Clusij*.
The second toothed Privet of *Clusius*.



Fig. 1972. Clusius' Second Toothed Privet (3)

3. This kind of Privet riseth up like an hedge bush, of the height of five or six cubits: the branches are long, fragile or brittle, covered with a whitish bark, whereon are set leaves somewhat broad, jagged on the edges like the teeth of a saw, and of a deep green colour: among which come forth the flowers, which neither my author nor myself have seen: the berries grow upon small footstalks, for the most part three together, being round, and of the bigness of pepper grains, or Myrtle berries, of a black colour when they be ripe.

The Place.

These plants do grow in Syria near the city Ascalon, and were found by our industrious Pena in the mountains near Narbonne and Montpellier in France: the which I planted in the garden at Barn Elms near London, belonging to the right Honourable the Earl of Essex: I have them growing in my garden likewise.

The Time.

The leaves shoot forth in the first of the spring: the flowers show themselves in May and June: the fruit is ripe in September.

The Names.

This Privet is called in Greek, *Kypros*, and in Latin also *Cyprus*; and may be named in English, Easterlin Privet, and Mock Privet, for the reason following: they are deceived who taking Pliny for their author, do think that it is *Ligustrum*, or our Western Privet, as we have shewed in the former chapter. It is the Arabians *Alcanna*, or *Henne*: and it is also called of the Turks *Henne* even at this present time.

The Temperature.

The leaves of these kinds of Privet have a binding quality, as Dioscorides writeth.

The Virtues.

A. Being chewed in the mouth they heal the ulcers thereof; and are a remedy against inflammations or hot swellings.

B. The decoction thereof is good against burnings and scaldings.

C. The same being stamped and steeped in the juice of Mullein and laid on, do make the hair red, as Dioscorides noteth. Bellonius writeth, that not only the hair, but also the nether parts of man's body and nails likewise are coloured and dyed herewith, which is counted an ornament among the Turks.

D. The flowers being moistened in vinegar and applied to the temples assuageth headache.

E. There is also made of these an oil called *oleum cyprinum*, sweet of smell, and good to heat and supple the sinews.

CHAP. 59. Of Bastard Privet.

1 *Phillyrea arbor, verior Macaleb.*
Bastard Priuet.



Fig. 1973. Bastard Privet (1)

2 *Macaleb Gesneri.*
Cofall Priuet.



Fig. 1974. Coral Privet (2)

The Description.

1. This shrubby tree, called *Macaleb*, or *Mahaleb*, is also one of the Privets: it riseth up like unto a small hedge tree, not unlike unto the Damson or Bullace tree, having many upright stalks and spreading branches: whereon do grow leaves not unlike those of the *Phillyrea* of Clusius' description: amongst which come forth mossy flowers of a white colour, and of a perfect sweet smell, growing in clusters, many hanging upon one stem, which the graver hath omitted: after which come the berries, green at the first, and black when they be ripe, with a little hard stone within, in which lieth a kernel.

2. Gesner and Matthiolus have set forth another *Macaleb*, being also another bastard Privet. It groweth to a small hedge tree, having many green branches set with round leaves like those of the Elm tree, somewhat snapped about the edges: the flowers are like those of the precedent: The fruit, or rather the kernel thereof, is as hard as a bead of coral, somewhat round, and of a shining black colour; which the cunning French perfumers do bore through, making thereof bracelets, chains, and such like trifling toys, which they send into England, smeared over with some odd sweet compound or other, and they are here sold unto our curious ladies and gentlewomen for rare and strange pomanders, for great sums of money.

The Place.

These trees grow in divers places of France, as about Toulouse, and sundry other places: they are strangers in England.

The Time.

The flowers bud forth in the spring: the fruit is ripe in November and December.

The Names.

This bastard Privet is that tree which divers suspect to be that *Mahaleb* or *Macaleb* of which Avicenna writeth, *cap.* 478. and which also Serapio speaketh of out of Mesue: but it is an hard thing to affirm any certainty thereby, seeing that Avicenna hath described it without marks: notwithstanding this is taken to be the same of most writers, and those of the best: we may call it in English, Bastard Privet, or Coral, or Pomander Privet, being without doubt a kind thereof.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Concerning this bastard Privet we have learned as yet no use thereof in physic. The kernels which are found in the stones or fruit, as they be like in taste to those of Cherries, so be they also answerable to them in temperature; for they are of a temperate heat, and do gently provoke urine, and be therefore good for the stone: more we have not to write than hath been spoken in the description.

CHAP. 60. Of the Fruitless Privet.

1 *Alaternus Plinij.*
Fruitleffe Priuet.



Fig. 1975. Fruitless Privet (1)

2 *Alaternus humilior.*
The lower fruitleffe Priuet.



Fig. 1976. Lesser Fruitless Privet (2)

The Description.

1. This shrubby bush, called of Pliny and Carolus Clusius, *Alaternus*, groweth up to a small hedge tree, in form like unto a Bastard Privet; but the leaves are more like those of *Ilex*, or the French Oak, yet stiffer and rounder than those of *Macaleb*: amongst which come forth tufts of greenish yellow flowers like those of the Lentisk tree: under and among the leaves come forth the berries, like those of *Laurustinus*, in which are contained two kernels like to the acins or stones of the Grape.

2. The second kind of *Alaternus* is likewise a fruitless kind of Privet, having narrow leaves somewhat snipped about the edges: from the bosoms whereof come forth small herby coloured flowers; which being faded, there succeedeth the fruit, whereof Avicenna speaketh, calling it by the name *Fagaras*, being a fruit in bigness and form like those in shops called *cocculus indi*, and may be the same for anything that hath been written to the contrary. This fruit hangeth as it were in a dark ash-coloured skin or husk, which encloseth a slender stiff shell like the shell of a nut, covered with a thin or black film; whether it be the fruit of this plant it is not censured; notwithstanding you shall find the figure hereof among the Indian fruits, by the name *Fagaras*.

This hath shorter branches and rounder leaves than the former: the flowers are larger and greener; to which succeed fruit clustering together, first green, then red, and afterwards black, and consisting of three kernels: it flowers in February and the beginning of March, and grows in sundry places of Spain. The fruit of this is not the

Fagaras, neither doth the *Fagaras* mentioned by our author any way agree with the *cocculus indi* of the shops, as shall be showed hereafter in their fit places.

The Place.

These plants do grow in the shadowy woods of France, and are strangers in England.

The Time.

The time answereth the rest of the Privets.

The Names.

Alaternus of Pliny is the same *Phillyrea* which Theophrastus hath written of by the name *Philyca*, and Bellonius also, *lib. 1. cap. 42* of his *Singularities*, and the people of Candy call it *Elæprinson*: the Portugals, *Casca*: in French, *Dalader*, and *Sangin blanc*: in English, barren or fruitless Privet: notwithstanding some have thought it to bear fruit, which at this day is called *Fagaras*: with us, *Cocculus Indi*, as we have said.

Thus saith our author, but I can by no means approve of the English name here given by him; but judge the name of Evergreen Privet, (given it by Mr. Parkinson) to be much more fitting to the thing.

The Temperature and Virtues.

Whether the plant be used in medicine I cannot as yet learn: the fishermen of Portugal do use to sethe the bark thereof in water, with the which decoction they colour their nets of a reddish colour, being very fit for that purpose: the wood also is used by dyers to dye a dark black withal.

CHAP. 61. Of the White and Blue Pipe Privet.

1 *Syringa alba.*
White Pipe.



Fig. 1977. White Pipe (1)

2 *Syringa carulea.*
Blew Pipe.



Fig. 1978. Blue Pipe (2)

The Description.

1. The White Pipe groweth like an hedge tree, or bushy shrub: from the root whereof arise many shoots, which in short time grow to be equal with the old stock, whereby in little time it increaseth to infinite numbers, like the common English Prim or Privet, whereof doubtless it is a kind; if we consider every circumstance: the branches are covered with a rugged gray bark: the timber is white, with some pith or spongy matter in the middle like Elder, but lesser in quantity. These little branches are garnished with small crumpled leaves of the shape and bigness of Pear tree leaves, and very like in form: among which come forth the flowers, growing in tufts, compact of four small leaves of a white colour, and of a pleasant sweet smell; but in my judgement they are too sweet, troubling and molesting the head in very strange manner. I once gathered the flowers and laid them in my chamber window, which smelled more strongly after they had lain together a few hours, with such an unacquainted savour, that they awaked me out of my sleep, so that I could not take any rest till I had cast them out of my chamber. When the flowers be faded then followeth the fruit, which is small, curled, and as it were compact of many little folds, broad towards the upper part, and narrow towards the stalk, and black when it is ripe, wherin is contained a slender and long seed. The root hereof spreadeth itself abroad in the ground, after the manner of the roots of such shrubby trees.

2. The Blue Pipe groweth likewise in manner of a small hedge tree, with many shoots rising from the root like the former, as our common Privet doth, whereof it is a

kind. The branches have some small quantity of pith in the middle of the wood, and are covered with a dark black greenish bark or rind. The leaves are exceeding green, and crumpled or turned up like the brims of an hat, in shape very like unto the leaves of the Poplar tree: among which come the flowers, of an exceeding fair blue colour, compact of many small flowers in the form of a bunch of grapes: each flower is in show like those of *Valeriana rubra dodonæi*, consisting of four parts like a little star, of an exceeding sweet savour or smell, but not so strong as the former. When these flowers be gone, there succeed flat cods, and somewhat long, which being ripe are of a light colour, with a thin membrane or film in the midst, wherein are seeds almost four square, narrow and ruddy.

‡ 3 *Syringa Arabica.*
Arabian Pipe.



Fig. 1979. Arabian Pipe (3)

4 *Balanus Myrsinica, sive Glans unguentaria.*
The Oylie Acorne.

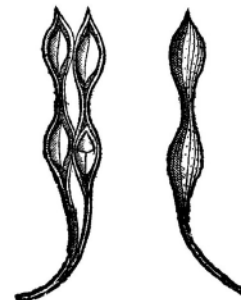


Fig. 1980. The oily acorn (4)

3. This (which Clusius setteth forth by the name of *Iasminum arabicum*, or *Syringa arabica*) groweth some two or three cubits high, divided into many slender branches, whereon by couples at each joint stand leaves like those of the first described, but thinner, and not snipped about the edges: on the tops of the branches grow the flowers, wholly white, consisting of nine, ten, or twelve leaves set in two ranks: these flowers are very sweet, having a scent as it were compounded of the Spanish Jasmine, and Orange flowers. It is a tender plant, and may be grafted upon the common Jasmine, whereon it thrives well; and flowers most part of the summer. It groweth plentifully in Egypt; and Prosper Alpinus is thought to mention this by the name of *Salvac arabum*, sive *Gelseminum arabicum*.

4. *Glans unguentaria*, or the oily acorn, is the fruit of a tree like Tamarisk, of the bigness of an Hazelnut, out of the kernel whereof, no otherwise than out of bitter Almonds, is pressed an oily juice which is used in pretcious ointments, as Dioscorides

affirmeth: neither is it in our time wholly rejected; for the oil of this fruit mixed with sweet odours serveth to perfume gloves and divers other things; and is vulgarly known by the name of Oil of Ben.

The Place.

1, 2. These trees grow not wild in England, but I have them growing in my garden in very great plenty.

The Time.

They flower in April and May, but as yet they have not borne any fruit in my garden, though in Italy and Spain their fruit is ripe in September.

The Names.

The later physicians call the first *Syringa*, or rather *Syrinx*: that is to say, a pipe, because the stalks and branches thereof, when the pith is taken out, are hollow like a pipe: it is also many times surnamed *candida*, or white, or *Syringa candido flore*, or Pipe with a white flower, because it should differ from *Lillach*, which is sometimes named *Syringa cærulea*, or blue Pipe, in English, Pipe.

Blue Pipe the later physicians, as we have said, do name *Lillach*, or *Lilac*: of some, *Syringa cærulea*, or blue Pipe: most do expound the word *Lillach*, and call it *Ben*: Serapio's and the Arabians' *Ben* is *Glans unguentaria*, which the Grecians name *Balanus myrepsica*, from which *Lillach* doth very much differ: among other differences it is very apparent, that *Lillach* bringeth forth no nut, howsoever Matthiolus doth falsely picture it with one; for it hath only a little cod, the seed whereof hath in it no oil at all. The figure of the *Balanus myrepsica* we have thought good to insert in this chapter, for want of a more convenient room.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The *Balanus myrepsica* taken in the quantity of a dram, causeth vomit; drunk with hydromel it purges by stool, but is hurtful to the stomach.

B. The oil pressed out of this fruit, which is usually termed oil of Ben, as it hath no good or pleasing smell, so hath it no ill scent, neither doth it become rancid by age, which is the reason that it is much used by perfumers.

D. The oil smoothes the skin, softens and dissolves hardness, and conduces to the cure of all cold affects of the sinews; and it is good for the pain and noise in the ears, being mixed with Goose-grease, and so dropped in warm in a small quantity.

CHAP. 62. Of Widow-Wail, or Spurge Olive.

Chamaelea Arabum Tricoccus,
Widow-Waile.



Fig. 1981. Widow-Wail

The Description.

Widow-Wail is a small shrub about two cubits high. The stalk is of a woody substance, branched with many small twigs, full of little leaves like Privet, but smaller and blacker, on the ends whereof grow small pale yellow flowers: which being past, there succeedeth a three-cornered berry like the Tithymales, for which cause it was called *Tricoccus*, that is, three-berried *Chamaelea*: these berries are green at the first, red afterward, and brown when they be withered; and contain in them an oily fatness like that of the Olive; being of an hot and biting taste, and that do burn the mouth, as do both the leaves and rind. The root is hard and woody.

The Place.

It is found in most untilled grounds of Italy and Languedoc in France, in rough and desert places. I have it growing in my garden.

The Time.

It is always green: the seed is ripe in autumn.

The Names.

The Grecians call it *Chamaelaia*, as though they should say, low or short Olive tree: the Latins, *Oleago*, and *Oleastellus*, and likewise *Citocacium*: it is also named of divers, *Olivella*, as Matthioli Sylvaticus saith: it is called in English, Widow-Wail, *quia facit viduas* ["which makes widows"].

The fruit is named in Latin, *Coccus cnidicus*: but he is deceived, saith Dioscorides, that nameth the fruit of Spurge-Olive, *Coccus cnidicus*: Avicenna and Serapio call *Chamaelea*, or Spurge Olive, *Mezereon*: under which name notwithstanding

they have also contained both the Chamæleons or Carlines; and so have they confounded *Chamelæa* or Spurge Olive with the Carlines, and likewise *Thymælea*, or Spurge flax.

The Temperature.

Both the leaves and fruit of Spurge Olive, as we have said, are of a burning and extreme hot temperature.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves, saith Dioscorides, purge both phlegm and choler, especially taken in pills, so that two parts of Wormwood be mixed with one of Spurge Olive, and made up into pills with mead or honeyed water. They melt not in the belly, but as many as be taken are voided whole.

B. Mesue likewise hath a description of pills of the leaves of *Mezereon*, that is, *Chamelæa*, or Spurge Olive (yet Sylvius expoundeth it *Thymelæa*, or Spurge-Flax) but instead of Wormwood he taketh the outward substance of the yellow Mirobalans and Cepula Mirobalans, and maketh them up with Tereniabin, that to say, with manna and sour dates, which they call Tamarinds, dissolved in Endive water; and appointeth the same leaves to be first tempered with very strong vinegar, and to be dried.

C. These pills are commended against the dropsy, for they draw forth watery humours, but are violent to nature; therefore we must use them as little as may be. Moreover, Disocorides addeth, that the leaves of Spurge Olive beaten with honey do cleanse filthy or crusted ulcers.

CHAP. 63. Of German Olive Spurge.

Chamelaa Germanica, sive Mezereon.
Spurge Flax, or the dwarf Bay.



Fig. 1982. German Olive Spurge

The Description.

The dwarf Bay tree called of Dutch men *Mezereon*, is a small shrub two cubits high: the branches be tough, limber, & easy to bend, very soft to be cut; whereon grow long leaves like those of Privet, but thicker and fatter. The flowers appear before the leaves, oft-times in January, clustering together about the stalks at certain distances, of a whitish colour rending to purple, and of a most fragrant and pleasant sweet smell: after come the small berries, green at the first, but being ripe, of a shining red colour, and afterward wax of a dark black colour, of a very hot and burning taste, inflaming the mouth and throat, being tasted, with danger of choking. The root is woody.

The Place and Time.

This plant grows naturally in the moist and shadowy woods of most of the East countries, especially about Meluin in Poland, from whence I have had great plenty thereof for my garden, where they flower in the first of the spring, and ripen their fruit in August.

The Names.

It is usually called in High Dutch, *Zeilant*, *Zeidelbast*, *Leuszkrout*, and *Kellerhals*: the apothecaries of our country name it *Mezereon*, but we had rather call it *Chamelaa germanica*: in English, Dutch *Mezereon*, or it may be called German Olive Spurge. We have heard, that divers Italians do name the fruit thereof *piper montanum*, mountain pepper; Some say that *Laureola*, or Spurge Laurel is this plant, but there is another *Laureola*, of which we will hereafter treat: but by what name it is called of the old writers, and whether they knew it or no, it is hard to tell. It is thought to be *Cneoron album theophrasti*, but by reason of his brevity, we can affirm no certainty.

There is, saith he, two kinds of *Cneoron*, the white and the black, the white hath a leaf, long, like in form to Spurge Olive: the black is full of substance like Myrtle; the low one is more white, the same is with smell, and the black without smell. The root of both which groweth deep, is great: the branches be many, thick, woody, immediately growing out of the earth, or little above the earth, tough: wherefore they use these to bind with, as with Osiers. They bud and flower when the autumn equinoctial is past, and a long time after. Thus much Theophrastus.

The German Spurge Olive is not much unlike to the Olive tree in leaf: the flower is sweet of smell: the buds whereof, as we have written, come forth after autumn: the branches are woody and pliable: the root long, growing deep: all which show that it hath great likeness and affinity with *Cneoron*, if it be not the very same.

The Temperature.

This plant is likewise in all parts extreme hot: the fruit, the leaves, and the rind are very sharp and biting: they bite the tongue, and set the throat on fire.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves of Mezereon do purge downward, phlegm, choler, and waterish humours with great violence.

B. Also if a drunkard do eat one grain or berry of this plant, he cannot be allured to drink any drink at that time; such will be the heat of his mouth and choking in the throat.

C. This plant is very dangerous to be taken into the body, & in nature like to the Sea Tithymale, leaving (if it be chewed) such an heat and burning in the throat, that it is hard to be quenched.

D. The shops of Germany and of the Low Countries do when need require use the leaves hereof instead of Spurge Olive, which may be done without errors for this German Spurge Olive is like in virtue and operation to the other, therefore it may be used instead thereof, and prepared after the like and selfsame manner.

CHAP. 64. Of Spurge Flax.

1 *Thymelæa*.
Spurge Flax, or mountaine Widow waile.



Fig. 1983. Spurge Flax

The Description.

Spurge Flax bringeth forth many slender branched sprigs above a cubit high, covered round with long and narrow leaves like those of flax, narrower & lesser than the leaves of Spurge Olive. The flowers are white, small, standing on the upper parts of the sprigs: the fruit is round, green at the first, but red when it is ripe, like almost to the round berries of the Hawthorn, in which is a white kernel covered with a black skin, very hot and burning the mouth like Mezereon: the root is hard and woody.

The Place.

It groweth in rough mountains, and in untoiled places in hot regions. It. groweth in any garden.

The Time.

It is green at any time of the year, but the fruit is perfected in autumn.

The Names.

The Grecians call it *Thymelaia*: the Syrians, as Dioscorides witnesseth, *Apolinon*: divers also *Chamelæa*, but not properly: but as Dioscorides saith, the leaf is properly called *Cneoron*, & the fruit *coccus cnidios*; notwithstanding those which Theophrastus calleth *Cneora* seem to differ from *Thymelæa*, or Spurge Flax, unless *Nigrum Cneoron* be *Thymelæa*, for Theophrastus saith that there be two kinds of *Cneoron*; the one white, the other black: this may be called in English, Spurge Flax, or Mountain Widow-Wail: the seed of *Thymelæa* is called in shops, *Granum Gnidium*.

The Temperature.

Spurge Flax is naturally both in leaves and fruit extreme hot, biting, and of a burning quality.

The Virtues.

A. The grains or berries, as Dioscorides saith, purge by siege choler, phlegm and water, if twenty grains of the inner part be drunk, but it burneth the mouth and throat, wherefore it is to be given with fine flour or barley meal, or in raisins, or covered with clarified honey, that it may be swallowed.

B. The same being stamped with nitre and vinegar, serveth to anoint those with, which can hardly sweat.

C. The leaves must be gathered about harvest, and being dried in the shade, they are to be laid up and reserved.

D. They that would give them must beat them, and take forth the strings: the quantity of two ounces and two drams put into wine tempered with water, purgeth and draweth forth watery humours: but they purge more gently if they be boiled with Lentils, and mixed with pot-herbs chopped.

E. The same leaves beaten to powder and made up into trochisks or flat cakes, with the juice of sour grapes are reserved for use.

F. The herb is an enemy to the stomach, which also destroyeth the birth if it be applied.

CHAP. 65. Of Spurge Laurel.

Laurcola florens.
Laurell, or Spurge Laurell flowering.



Fig. 1984. Spurge Laurel in Flower

Laurcola cum fructu.
Laurell with his fruit.



Fig. 1985. Spurge Laurel with Fruit

The Description.

Spurge Laurel is a shrub of a cubit high, oftentimes also of two, and spreadeth with many little boughs, which are tough and lithy, and covered with a thick rind. The leaves be long, broad, gross, smooth, blackish green, shining, like the leaves of Laurel, but lesser, thicker, and without smell, very many at the top, clustering together. The flowers be long, hollow, of a whitish green, hanging beneath and among the leaves: the berries when they be ripe are black, with a hard kernel within, which is a little longer than the seed of Hemp: the pulp or inner substance is white: the root woody, tough, long, and diversely parted, growing deep: the leaves, fruit and bark, as well of the root as of the little boughs, do with their sharpness and burning quality bite and set on fire the tongue and throat.

The Place.

It is found on mountains, in untilled, rough, shadowy, and woody places, as by the lake of Lausanne or Geneva, and in many places near the river of Rhine and of the Meuse. It grows abundantly also in the woods in the most parts of England.

The Time.

The flowers bud very soon, a little after the Autumn equinoctial: they are full blown in winter, or in the first spring: the fruit is ripe in May and June: the plant is always green, and endureth the cold storms of winter.

The Names.

It is called in Greek *Daphnoides*, of the likeness it hath with the leaves of the Laurel or Bay trees, in Latin likewise *Daphnoides*: the later Latinists for the same cause name it *Laureola*, as though they should say *Laurus minor*, or little Laurel: it is called *Chamædaphne* and *Peplion*, notwithstanding there is another *Chamædaphne*, and another *Peplion*. This shrub is commonly called in English, Spurge Laurel; of others, Laurel or Lowry.

Some say that the Italians name the berries hereof *piper montanum*, or mountain pepper, as also the berries of Dutch *Mezereon*: others affirm them to be called in High Dutch also, *Zeilant*.

It may be Theophrastus his *Cneoron*: for it is much like to a Myrtle in leaf, it is also a branched plant, tough and pliable, having a deep root, without smell, with a black fruit.

The Temperature.

It is like in temperature and faculty to the German Spurge Olive, throughout the whole substance biting and extreme hot.

The Virtues.

A. The dry or green leaves of Spurge Laurel, saith Dioscorides, purgeth by siege phlegmatic humors; procureth vomit and bringeth down menses, and being chewed it draweth water out of the head.

B. It likewise causeth neezing; moreover, fifteen grains of the seed thereof drunk, are a purgation.

CHAP. 66. Of Rose Bay, or Oleander.

1 *Nerium, five Oleander.*
The Rose Bay.



Fig. 1986. Rose Bay (1)

2 *Nerium flore albo.*
The Rose Bay with white floures



Fig. 1987. White Rose Bay (2)

The Description.

1. Rose Bay is a small shrub of a gallant show like the Bay tree, bearing leaves, thicker, greater, longer and rougher than the leaves of the Almond tree: the flowers be of a fair red colour, divided into five leaves, not much unlike a little Rose: the cod or fruit is long, like *Asclepias*, or *Vincetoxicum*, and full of such white down, among which the seed lieth hidden: the root is long, smooth, and woody.

2. The second kind of Rose bay, is like the first, & differeth in that, that this plant hath white flowers; but in other respects it is very like.

The Place.

These grow in Italy and other hot regions, by rivers and the seaside: I have them growing in my garden.

The Time.

In my garden they flower in July and August: the cods be ripe afterwards.

The Names.

This plant is named in Greek *Nerion*, by Nicander, *Nereis*: in Latin likewise *Nerion*, and also *Rhododendron* and *Rhododaphne*, that is to say, *Rosea arbor*, ["Rosy branch"] and *Rosea laurus* ["Rosy Laurel"]: in shops, *Oleander*: in Italian, *Oleandro*:

in Spanish, *Adelfa*, *Eloendro*, and *Alendro*: in French, *Rosagine*: in English, Rose tree, Rose Bay, Rose Bay tree and Oleander.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. This tree being outwardly applied, as Galen saith, hath a digesting faculty: but if it be inwardly taken it is deadly and poisonous, not only to men, but also to most kinds of beasts.

B. The flowers and leaves kill dogs, asses, mules, and very many of other four footed beasts: but if men drink them in wine they are a remedy against the bitings of serpents, and the rather if Rue be added.

C The weaker sort of cattle, as sheep and goats, if they drink the water wherein the leaves have been steeped, are sure to die.

CHAP. 67. Of Dwarf Rose Bay.

1 *Chamaerhododendros Alpigena.*
Dwarfe Rose Bay.



Fig. 1988. Dwarf Rose Bay

The Description.

Dwarf *Nerium*, or Rose Bay, hath leaves which for the most part are always green, rough, and small, of a pale yellow colour like Box, far lesser than Oleander: the whole plant is of a shrub by stature, leaning this way and that way, as not able to stand upright without help; his branches are covered and set full of small flowers, of a shining scarlet or crimson colour; growing upon the hills as ye go from Trent to Verona, which in June and July are as it were covered with a scarlet coloured carpet, of an odoriferous savor, and delectable aspect, which being fallen there cometh seed and fair berries like Asparagus.

The Place.

The place and time are expressed in the description.

The Names.

This may be called in English, Dwarf Rose Bay of the Alps. I find not anything extant of the virtues, so that I am constrained to leave the rest unto your own discretion.

CHAP. 68. Of the Bay or Laurel Tree.

Laurus.
The Bay tree.



Fig. 1989. Bay

The Description.

1. The Bay or Laurel tree cometh oftentimes to the height of a tree of a mean bigness; it is full of boughs, covered with a green bark: the leaves thereof are long, broad, hard, of colour green, sweetly smelling, and in taste somewhat bitter: the flowers amongst the boughs and leaves are of a green colour: the berries are more long than round, and be covered with a black rind or pill: the kernel within is cloven, into two parts, like that of the Peach and Almond, and other such, of a brown yellowish colour, sweet of smell, in taste smewhat bitter, with a little sharp or biting quality.

2. There is also a certain other kind hereof more like to a shrub, sending forth out of the roots many offsprings, which notwithstanding groweth not so high as the former; and the barks of the boughs be somewhat red: the leaves be also tenderer, and not so hard: in other things not unlike.

These two Bay trees Dioscorides was not ignorant of; for he saith, that the one is narrow-leaved, and the other broader-leaved, or rather harder-leaved which is more like.

The Place.

The Laurel or Bay tree groweth naturally in Spain and such hot regions, we plant and set it in gardens, defending it from cold at the beginning of March especially.

I have not seen any one tree thereof growing in Denmark, Sweden, Poland, Livonia, or Russia, or in any of those cold countries where I have travelled.

The Time.

The Bay tree groweth green winter and summer: it flowereth in the spring, and the black fruit is ripe in October.

The Names.

This tree is called in Greek *Daphne*, in Latin, *Laurus*: in Italian, *Lauro*: in High Dutch, *Loeberbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Laurus boome*: in French, *Laurier*: in Spanish, *Laurel*, *Lorel*, and *Loureiro*: in English, Laurel, or Bay tree.

The fruit is named in Greek *Daphnides*: in Latin, *Lauri baccæ*: in High Dutch, *Loeberbeeren*: in Low Dutch, *Bakelcer*: in Spanish, *Vayas*: in English, Bay berries.

The poets feign that it took his name of Daphne, Lado his daughter, with whom Apollo fell in love.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The berries and leaves of the Bay tree, saith Galen, are hot and very dry, and yet the berries more than the leaves.

B. The bark is not biting and hot, but more bitter, and it hath also a certain astringent or binding quality.

C. Bay berries with honey or cute, are good in a licking medicine, saith Dioscorides, against the pthisic or consumption of the lungs, difficulty of breathing, and all kind of fluxes or rheums about the chest.

D. Bay berries taken in wine, are good against the bitings and stings of any venomous beast, and against all venom and poison: they cleanse away the morpew: the juice pressed out hereof is a remedy for pain of the ears, and deafness, if it be dropped in with old wine and oil of roses: this is also mixed with ointments that are good against wearisomness, and that heat and discuss or waste away humours.

E. Bay berries are put into mithridate, treacle, and such-like medicines that are made to refresh such people as are grown sluggish and dull by means of taking opiate medicines, or such as have any venomous or poisoned quality in them.

F. They are good also against cramps and drawing together of sinews.

G. We in our time do not use the berries for the infirmities of the lungs, or chest, but minister them against the diseases of the stomach, liver, spleen, and bladder: they warm a cold stomach, cause concoction of raw humours, stir up a decayed appetite, take away the loathing of meat, open the stopping of the liver and spleen, provoke urine, bring down the menses, and drive forth the secondine.

H. The oil pressed out of these, or drawn forth by decoction, doth in short time take away scabs and such like filth of the skin.

I. It cureth them that are beaten black and blue, and that be bruised by squats and falls, it removeth black and blue spots and congealed blood, and digesteth and wasteth away the humours gathered about the grieved part.

J. Dioscorides saith, that the leaves are good for the diseases of the mother and bladder, if a bath be made thereof to bathe and sit in: that the green leaves do gently bind, that being applied, they are good against the stings of wasps and bees; that with barley meal parched and bread, they assuage all kind of inflammations, and that being taken in drink they mitigate the pain of the stomach, but procure vomit.

L. The berries of the Bay tree stamped with a little Scammony and Saffron, and laboured in a mortar with vinegar and oil of roses to the form of a liniment, and applied to the temples and forepart of the head, do greatly cease the pain of the migraine.

M. It is reported that common drunkards were accustomed to eat in the morning fasting two leaves thereof against drunkenness.

N. The later physicians do oftentimes use to boil the leaves of Laurel with divers meats, especially fishes, and by so doing there happeneth no desire of vomiting: but the meat seasoned herewith becometh more savoury and better for the stomach.

O. The bark of the root of the Bay tree, as Galen writeth, drunken in wine provoketh urine, breaks the stone, and driveth forth gravel: it openeth the stoppings of the liver, the spleen, and all other stoppings of the inward, parts: which thing also Dioscorides affirmeth, who likewise addeth that it killeth the child in the mother's womb.

N. It helpeth the dropsy and the jaundice, and procureth unto women their desired sickness.

CHAP. 69. Of the Wild Bay Tree.

1 *Laurus Tinus*.
The wilde Bay tree.



Fig. 1990. Wild Bay (1)

2 *Laurus Tinus Lusitanica*.
The Portingale wilde Bay tree.



Fig. 1991. Portuguese Wild Bay (2)

The Description.

1. *Laurus tinus*, or the wild Bay tree, groweth like a shrub or hedge bush, having many tough and pliant branches, set full of leaves very like to the Bay leaves, but smaller and more crumpled, of a deep and shining green colour: among which come forth tufts of whitish flowers, turning at the edges into a light purple: after which follow small berries of a blue colour, containing a few grains or seeds like the stones or seeds of grapes: the leaves and all the parts of the plant are altogether without smell or savour.

2. *Tinus lusitanica* groweth very like to *Cornus fœmina*, or the Dog-berry tree, but the branches be thicker, and more stiff, covered with a reddish bark mixed with green: the leaves are like the former, but larger, having many sinews or veins running through the same like as in the leaves of Sage: the flowers hereof grow in tufts like the precedent, but they are of colour more declining to purple: the small branches are likewise of a purple colour: the leaves have no smell at all, either good or bad: the berries are smaller than the former, of a blue colour declining to blackness.

The Place.

The Wild Bay groweth plentifully in every field of Italy, Spain, and other regions, which differ according to the nature and situation of those countries: they grow in my garden and prosper very well.

The Time.

The wild Laurel is evergreen, and may oftentimes be seen most part of the winter, and the beginning of the spring, with the flowers and ripe berries growing both at one season.

The Names.

It is called in Latin *Tinus*, and *Laurus sylvestris*: Cato nameth it *Laurus sylvatica*: in Italian, *Lauro sylvatico*: in Spanish, *Uva de Perro*, otherwise *Follado*; and of divers, *Durillo*: in English Wild Bay.

The Temperature and Virtues.

Pliny nor any other of the ancients have touched the faculties of this Wild Bay, neither have we any understanding thereof by the later writers, or by our own experience.

CHAP. 70. Of the Box Tree.

Buxus.
The Box tree.



Fig. 1992. Box

The Description.

The great Box is a fair tree, bearing a great body or trunk: the wood or timber is yellow and very hard, and fit for sundry works, having many boughs and hard branches, beset with sundry small hard green leaves, both winter and summer like the Bay tree: the flowers are very little, growing among the leaves, of a green colour: which being faded there succeed small black shining berries, of the bigness of the seeds of Coriander, which are enclosed in round greenish husks, having three feet or legs like a brass or boiling pot: the root likewise yellow, and harder than the timber, but of greater beauty, and more fit for dagger hafts, boxes, and such like uses, whereto the trunk or body serveth, than to make medicines; though foolish emperics and women leeches, do minister it against the apoplexy and such diseases: turners and cutlers, if I mistake not the matter, do call this wood dudgeon, wherewith they make dudgeon-hafted daggers.

There is also a certain other kind hereof, growing low, and not above half a yard high, but it spreadeth all abroad: the branches hereof are many and very slender: the leaves the round, and of a light green.

The Place.

Buxus, or the Box tree groweth upon sundry waste and barren hills in England, and in divers gardens.

The Time.

The Box tree groweth green winter and summer: it flowereth in February and March, and the seed is ripe in September.

The Names.

The Grecians call it *Pyxos*: in Latin, *Buxus*: in High Dutch, *Buchsbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Bushoom*: in Italian, *Bosso*: in English, Box tree.

The lesser may be called in Greek *Chamæpyxos*: and in Latin, *Humi Buxus*, or *Humilis Buxus*: in English, Dwarf Box, or Ground Box, and it is commonly called Dutch Box.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The leaves of the Box tree are hot, dry, and astringent, of an evil and loathsome smell, not used in medicine, but only as I said before in the description.

CHAP. 71. Of the Myrtle Tree.

1 *Myrtus Laurea maxima.*
The Myrtle tree.



Fig. 1993. Myrtle (1)

2 *Myrtus Batica latifolia.*
Great Spanish Myrtle.



Fig. 1994. Great Spanish Myrtle (2)

The Description.

The first and greatest *Myrtus* is a small tree, growing to the height of a man, having many fair and pliant branches covered with a brown bark, and set full of leaves much like unto the Laurel or Bay leaf, but thinner and smaller, somewhat resembling the leaves of Periwinkle, which being bruised do yield forth a most fragrant smell, not much inferior unto the smell of Cloves, as all the rest of the kinds do: among these leaves come forth small white flowers, in shape like the flowers of the Cherry tree, but much smaller, and of a pleasant savour, which do turn into small berries, green at the first, and afterwards black.

2. There is also another kind of *Myrtus* called *Myrtus bætica latifolia*, according to Clusius *Myrtus laurea*, that hath leaves also like Bay leaves, growing by couples upon his pleasant green branches, in a double row on both sides of the stalks, of a light green colour, and somewhat thicker than the former, in scent and smell sweet: the flowers and fruit are not much differing from the first kind.

‡ 3 *Myrtus exotica.*
Strange Myrtle.



‡ 4 *Myrtus fructu albo.*
Myrtle with white berries.



‡ 5 *Myrtus minor.*
The little Myrtle.



‡ 6 *Myrtus Batica sylvestris.*
Wilde Spanifh Myrtle.



Fig. 1995. Kinds of Myrtle (3-6)

3. There is likewise another kind of Myrtus called *exotica*, that is strange and not common: it groweth upright unto the height of a man like unto the first before mentioned, but that it is replenished with greater plenty of leaves, which do fold in themselves hollow and almost double, broader pointed, and keeping no order in their growing, but one thrusting within another, and as it were crossing one another confusedly; in all other points agreeing with the precedent.

4. There is another sort like unto the former in flowers and branches, but the leaves are smooth, flat and plain, and not crumpled or folded at all, they are also much smaller than any of the former. The fruit is in shape like the other, but that it is of a white colour, whereas the fruit of the other is black.

5. There is also another kind of Myrtle, called *Myrtus minor*, or noble Myrtle, as being the chief of all the rest (although most common and best known) and it groweth like a little shrub or hedge bush, very like unto the former, but much smaller: the leaves are small and narrow, very much in shape resembling the leaves of Mastic Thyme called *Marum*, but of a fresher green colour: the flowers be white, nothing differing from the former saving in greatness, and that sometimes they are more double.

6. This grows not very high, neither is it so shrubby as the former: the branches are small and brittle: the leaves are of a middle bigness, sharp pointed, standing by couples in two rows, seldom in four as the former, they are blackish also and well-smelling. The flower is like that of the rest: the fruit is round, growing upon long stalks out of the bosoms of the leaves, first green; then whitish, lastly black, of a winy and pleasant taste with some astringency. This grows wild in divers places of Portugal, where Clusius found it flowering in October: he calls it *Myrtus baetica sylvestris*.

The Place.

These kinds of Myrtles grow naturally upon the woody hills and fertile fields of Italy and Spain. The two last are nourished in the garden of Mistress Tuggy in Westminster, and in some other gardens.

The Time.

Where they joy to grow of themselves they flower when the Roses do: the fruit is ripe in autumn: in England they never bear any fruit.

The Names.

It called in Latin, *Myrtus*: in the Arabic tongue, *Alas*: in Italian, *Myrto*: in Spanish, *Arrayhan*: in the Portugal language, *Murta*, and *Murtella*: other nations do almost keep the Latin name, as in English it is called Myrtle, or Myrtle tree.

Among the Myrtles that which hath the fine little leaf is surnamed of Pliny, *tarentina*; & that which is so thick and full of leaves is *exotica*, strange or foreign. *Myrtus nigra* is that which hath the black berries: *candida*, which hath the white berries, and the leaves of this also are of a lighter green: *sativa*, or the tame planted one is cherished in gardens and orchards: *sylvestris*, or the wild Myrtle is that which groweth of itself; the berries of this are oftentimes lesser, and of the other, greater. Pliny doth also set down other kinds; as *patritia*, *plebeia*, and *coniugalis*: but what manner of ones they are he doth not declare: he also placeth among the Myrtles, *Oxymyrsine*, or Kneeholm, which notwithstanding is none of the Myrtles, but a thorny shrub.

Pliny in his 14th book, 16th chap, saith, that the wine which is made of the wild Myrtle tree is called *myrtidanum*, if the copy be true. For Dioscorides and likewise Sotion in his *Geoponikes* report, that wine is made of Myrtle berries when they be thorough ripe, but this is called *vinum myrteum*, or *myrtites*, Myrtle wine.

Moreover, there is also a wine made of the berries and leaves of Myrtle stamped and steeped in must, or wine new pressed from the grape, which is called, as Dioscorides saith, *myrsinite vinum*, or wine of Myrtles.

The Myrtle tree was in times past consecrated to Venus. Pliny in his 15th book, 29th chapter, saith thus, There was an old altar belonging to Venus which they now call *Murtia*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The Myrtle consisteth of contrary substances, a cold earthiness bearing the pre-eminence; it hath also a certain subtle heat, therefore, as Galen saith, it drieth notably.

B. The leaves, fruit, buds, and juice do bind, both outwardly applied and inwardly taken they stay the spitting of blood, and all other issues thereof: they stop both the whites and reds in women, if they sit in a bath made therewith: after which manner and by fomenting also they stay the superfluous course of the hemorrhoides.

C. They are a remedy for lasks, and for the bloody flux, they quench the fiery heat of the eyes, if they be laid on with parched barley meal.

D. They be also with good success outwardly applied to all inflammations newly beginning, and also to new pain upon some fall, stroke or strain.

E. They are wholesome for a moist and watery stomach: the fruit and leaves dried provoke urine: for the green leaves contain in them a certain superfluous and hurtful moisture.

F. It is good with the decoction hereof made with wine, to bathe limbs that are out of joint, and burstings that are hard to be cured, and ulcers also of the outward parts: it helpeth spreading tetter, scoureth away the dandruff and sores of the head, maketh the hairs black, and keepeth them from shedding; withstandeth drunkenness, if it be taken fasting, and prevaileth against poison, and the bitings of any venomous beast.

G. There is drawn out of the green berries thereof a juice, which is dried and reserved for the aforesaid uses.

H. There is likewise pressed out of the leaves a juice, by adding unto them either old wine or rainwater, which must be used when it is new made, for being once dry it putrefieth, and as Dioscorides saith, loseth his virtues.

CHAP. 72. Of Sweet Willow or Gale.

Myrtus Brabantica, sive Elæagnus Cordi.
Gaule, sweet willow, or Dutch Myrtle tree.



Fig. 1996. Gale

The Description.

Gale is a low and little shrub or woody plant, having many brown & hard branches: whereupon do grow leaves somewhat long, hard, thick, and oleous, of an hot savour or smell somewhat like *Myrtus*: among the branches come forth other little ones, whereupon do grow many spoky ears or tufts, full of small flowers, and after them succeed great store of square seeds clustering together, of a strong and bitter taste. The root is hard, and of a woody substance.

The Place.

This Gale groweth plentifully in sundry places of England, as in the Isle of Ely, & in the fenny countries thereabouts, whereof there is such store in that country, that they make faggots of it and sheaves, which they call Gale sheaves, to burn and heat their ovens. It groweth also by Colebrooke, and in sundry other places.

The Time.

The Gale flowereth in May and June, and the seed is ripe in August.

The Names.

This tree is called of divers in Latin, *Myrtus brabantica*, and *Pseudomyrsine*; and Cordus calleth it *Elæagnus*, *Chamæleagnus* and *Myrtus brabantica*. *Elæagnus* is described by Theophrastus to be a shrubby plant like unto the Chaste tree, with a soft and downy leaf, and with the flower of the Poplar tree: and that which we have described is no such plant. It hath no name among the old writers for aught we know, unless it be *Rhus sylvestris plinii*, or Pliny his wild Sumach, of which he hath written in his 24th book, 11th chap. [There is, saith he, a wild herb with short stalks, which is

an enemy to poison, and a killer of moths.] It is called in Low Dutch, **Gage**: in English, Gale.

The Temperature.

Gale or the wild Myrtle, especially the seed, is hot and dry in the third degree: the leaves be hot and dry, but not so much.

The Virtues.

A. The fruit is troublesome to the brain; being put into beer or ale whilst it is in boiling (which many use to do) it maketh the same heady, fit to make a man quickly drunk.

B. The whole shrub, fruit and all, being laid among clothes, keepeth them from moths and worms.

CHAP. 73. Of Worts or Whortleberries.

The Kinds.

Vaccinia, or Worts, of which we treat in this place, differ from Violets, neither are they esteemed for their flowers but berries: of these Worts there be divers sorts found out by the later writers.

1 *Vaccinia nigra*.
Blacke Worts or Wortle berries.



Fig. 1997. Black Whortleberry (1)

2 *Vaccinia rubra*.
Red Worts or Wortle berries.



Fig. 1998. Red Whortleberry (2)

The Description.

1. *Vaccinia nigra*, the black Whortle or Hurtle, is a base and low shrub or woody plant, bringing forth many branches of cubit high, set full of small leaves of a dark green colour not much unlike the leaves of Box or the Myrtle tree: amongst which come forth little hollow flowers turning into small berries, green at the first, afterward red, and at the last of a black colour, and full of a pleasant and sweet juice: in which do lie divers little thin whitish seeds: these berries do colour the mouth and lips of those that eat them, with a black colour: the root is woody, slender, and now and then creeping.

2. *Vaccinia rubra*, or Red Whortle, is like the former in the manner of growing, but that the leaves are greater and harder, almost like the leaves of the Box tree, abiding green all the winter long: among which come forth small carnation flowers, long and round, growing in clusters at the top of the branches: after which succeed small berries, in show and bigness like the former, but that they are of an excellent red colour, and full of juice, of so orient and beautiful a purple to limn withal; that Indian *lacca* is not to be compared thereunto, especially when this juice is prepared and dressed with alum

according to art, as myself have proved by experience: the taste is rough and astringent: the root is of a woody substance.

3 *Vaccinia alba*.
The white Worts or Wortleberries.



5 *Vaccinia Vrsi*, siue *Vua Vrsi* apud *Clusium*.
Beare Wortle berries.



4 *Vaccinia Pannonica*, siue *Vitis Idæa*.
Hungarie Wortleberries.



† 6 *Vitis Idæa folijs subrotundis maior*.
Great round leaved Wortle berries.



Fig. 1999. Kinds of Whortleberry (3-6)

3. *Vaccinia alba*, or the white Whortle, differs from the former in form and bigness; for it sends forth many stalks from the root, and these three, four, or five cubits high, thick, and divided into sundry branches, covered for the most part with a blackish bark: at the beginning of the spring it sends forth, from the buds at the sides of the

branches, leaves all hoary and hairy underneath, and green above: from the midst of these, upon little footstalks stand clustering together many little flowers, consisting of five white leaves apiece without smell; and then the leaves by little and little unfold themselves and cast off their downiness, and become snipped about the edges. The fruit that succeeds the flowers is round, black; somewhat like, but bigger than a haw, full of juice of a very sweet taste; wherein lies ten or more longish smooth blackish seeds. It grows upon the Austrian and Styrian Alps, where the fruit is ripe in August. Clusius calls it *Vitis idæa* 3. Pena and Lobel, *Amelancher*: Gesner by divers names, as *Myrtomalus*, *Petromelis*, *Pyrus cervinus*, &c.

4. Carolus Clusius in his *Pannonic Observations* hath set down another of the Whortleberries, under the name of *Vitis idæa*, which differeth from the other Whortleberries, not only in stature, but in leaves and fruit also. The leaves are long, narrow, sharp pointed, full of veins, a little hairy, and lightly snipped about the edges, greener above than below: the fruit grows from the tops of the branches of the former year, hanging upon long footstalks, and being as big as little cherries, first green, then red, and lastly black, full of juice, and that of no unpleasant taste, containing no kernels, but flat white seeds commonly five in number: the stalks are weak, and commonly lie upon the ground: Clusius found it upon the Austrian mountain Snealben, with the fruit partly ripe, and partly unripe, in August. It is his *Vitis idæa* 1.

5. The same author also setteth forth another of the Whortleberries, under the title of *Uva ursi*, which is likewise a shrubby plant, having many feeble branches, whereon grow long leaves blunt at the points, and of an overworn green colour: among which, at the tops of the stalks come forth clusters of bottle-like flowers of a whitish purple colour: the fruit followeth, growing likewise in clusters, green at the first, and black when they be ripe: the root is of a woody substance. This is always green.

6. This differs from the second, in that the leaves are thinner, more full of veins, and whiter underneath: the flower is like the common kind, whitish purple, hollow, and divided into fine parts; the fruit also is black, and like that of the described. This grows on divers mountainous places of Germany, where Clusius observed it, who made it his *Vitis idæa* 2.

The Place.

These plants prosper best in a lean barren soil, and in untoiled woody places: they are now and then found on high hills subject to the wind, and upon mountains: they grow plentifully in both the Germanies, Bohemia, and in divers places of France and England; namely in Middlesex on Hampstead Heath, and in the woods thereto adjoining, and also upon the hills in Cheshire called Broxen hills, near Beeston castle, seven miles from Nantwich; and in the wood by Highgate called Finchley Wood, and in divers other places.

The red Whortleberry groweth in Westmorland at a place called Crosby Ravenswaith, where also doth grow the Whortle with the white berry, and in Lancashire also upon Pendle hills.

Thus our author: I have seen none of these but only the first described, growing upon Hampstead Heath.

The Time.

The Whortleberries do flower in May, and their fruit is ripe in June.

The Names.

Whortleberries is called in High Dutch, *Heydelbeeren*: in Low Dutch, *Crakeberien*, because they make a certain crack whilst they be broken between the teeth: of divers, *Haberbesien*: the French men, *Airelle*, or *Aurette*, as Iohannes de Choul writeth: and we in England, Worts, Whortleberries, Blackberries, Bilberries, and Bulberries, and in some places, Whimberries.

Most of the shops of Germany do call them *Myrtilli*, but properly *Myrtilli* are the fruit of the Myrtle tree, as the apothecaries name them at this day. This plant hath no name for aught we can learn, either among the Greeks or ancient Latins; for whereas most do take it to be *Vitis idæa*, or the Corinth tree, which Pliny surnameth *Alexandrina*, it is untrue; for *Vitis idæa* is not only like to the common Vine, but is also a kind of Vine: and Theophrastus, who hath made mention hereof doth call it, without an epithet, *Ampelos*, simply, as a little after we will declare; which without doubt he would not have done if he had found it to differ from the common Vine: For what things soever receive a name of some plant, the same are expressed with some epithet added to be known to differ from others. as *Laurus alexandrina*, *Vitis alba*, *Vitis nigra*, *Vitis sylvestris*, and such like.

Moreover, those things which have borrowed a name from some plant are like thereunto, if not wholly, yet either in leaf or fruit, or in some other thing. *Vitis alba & nigra*, that is, the white and black Bryonies, have leaves and clasping tendrils as hath the common Vine, and climb also after the same manner: *Vitis sylvestris*, or the wild Vine, hath such like stalks as the Vine hath, and bringeth forth fruit like to the little Grapes. *Laurus alexandrina*, and *chamædaphne*, and also *daphnoides*, are like in leaves to the Laurel tree: *Sycomorus* is like in fruit to the Fig tree, and in leaves to the Mulberry tree: *Chamædryas* hath the leaf of an Oak; *Peucedanus* of the Pine tree: so of others which have taken their names from some other: but this low shrub is not like the Vine either in any part, or in any other thing.

This *Vitis idæa* groweth not on the uppermost and snowy parts of mount Ida (as some would have it, but about Ida, even the hill Ida, not of Candy, but of Troas in the lesser Asia which Ptolomy in his fifth book *Of Geography*, chap. 3. doth call Alexandri Troas, or Alexander his Troy: whereupon it is also advisedly named of Pliny, *lib. 14. cap. 3. Vita alexandrina*, no otherwise than *Laurus alexandrina* is said of Theophrastus to grow there: *Laurus*, surnamed *alexandrina*, and *Ficus quædam*, or a certain Fig tree, and *Ampelos*, that is to say the Vine, are reported, saith he, to grow properly about Ida. Like unto this Vine are those which Philostratus in the *Life of Apollonius* reporteth to grow in Mæonia, and Lydia, situated not far from Troy, comparing them to those vines which grow in India beyond Caucasus: The Vines there, saith he, be very small, like as be those that do grow in Mæonia and Lydia, yet is the wine which is pressed out of them of a marvellous pleasant taste. This Vine which grows near to Mount Ida is reported to be like a shrub, with little twigs and branches of the length of a cubit, about which are grapes growing aslope, black, of the bigness of a bean, sweet, having within a certain winy substance, soft: the leaf of this is round, uncut, and little.

This is described by Pliny, *lib. 4, cap. 3*, almost in the selfsame words: It is called, saith he, *Vitis alexandrina* and groweth near unto Phalacra: it is short, with branches a cubit long, with a black grape of the bigness of the Latins' Bean, with a soft pulp and very little, with very sweet clusters growing aslope, and a little round leaf without cuts.

And with this description the little shrub which the apothecaries of Germany do call *Myrtillus* doth nothing at all agree, as it is very manifest; for it is low, scarce a cubit high, with a few short branches not growing to a cubit in length: it doth not bring forth clusters or bunches, nor yet fruit like unto grapes, but berries like those of the Yew tree, not sweet, but somewhat sour and astringent; in which also there are many little white flat seeds: the leaf is not round, but more long than round, not like to that of the Vine, but of the Box tree. Moreover, it is thought that this is not found in Italy, Greece, or in the lesser Asia, for that Matthiolus affirmeth the same to grow nowhere but in Germany and Bohemia; so far is it from being called or accounted to be *Vitis idæa* or *alexandrina*.

The fruit of this may be thought not without cause to be named *vaccinia*, sith they are berries; for they may be termed of *baccæ*, berries, *vaccinia*, as though they should be called *baccinia*. Yet this letteth not that there may be also other *vaccinias*: for *vaccinia* is *polysemos dictio*, or a word of divers significations. Virgil in the first book of his *Bucolics*, Eclogue 10, affirmeth, that the written Hyacinth is named of the Latins, *Vaccinium*, translating into Latin Theocritus his verse which is taken out of his tenth Idyll.

Et nigræ Violæ, sunt & Vaccinia nigra.
["and there are Black Violets and Black Hyacinths"]

Vitruvius, lib. 7 of his *Architecture* doth also distinguish *vaccinium* from the Violet, and showeth, that of it is made a gallant purple; which seeing that the written Hyacinth cannot do, it must needs be that this *vaccinium* is another thing than the Hyacinth is, because it serves to give a purple dye.

Pliny also, *lib. 16, cap. 18* hath made mention of *vaccinia*, which are used to dye bond-slaves' garments with, and to give them a purple colour.

But whether these be our *Vaccinia* or Whortleberries it is hard to affirm, especially seeing that Pliny reckoneth up *Vaccinia* amongst those plants which grow in watery places, but ours grow on high places upon mountains subject to winds, neither is it certainly known to grow in Italy. Howsoever it is, these our Whortles may be called *Vaccinia*, and do agree with Pliny's and Vitruvius his *Vaccinia*, because garments and linen cloth may take from these a purple dye.

The red Whortleberries have their name from the black Whortles, to which they be in form very like, and are called in Latin, *Vaccinia rubra*: in High Dutch, **Rooter Heidelbeere**: in Low Dutch, **Roode Crackebessen**: the Frenchmen, *Aurelles Rouges*: they be named in English Red Whorts, or Red Whortleberries. Conradus Gesnerus hath called this plant *Vitis idæa rubris acinis*: but the growing of the berries doth show, that this doth far less agree with *Vitis idæa*, than the black; for they do not hang upon the sides of the branches as do the black (which deceived them that thought it to be *Vitis idæa*) but from the tops of the sprigs in clusters.

As concerning the names of the other they are touched in their several descriptions.

The Temperature.

These *Vaccinia* or Whortleberries are cold even in the latter end of the second degree and dry also, with a manifest astringion or binding quality.

Red Whortleberries are cold and dry, and also binding.

The Virtues.

A. The juice of the black Whortleberries is boiled till it become thick, and is prepared or kept by adding honey and sugar unto it: the apothecaries call it *Rob*, which is preferred in all things before the raw berries themselves for many times whilst they be eaten or taken raw they are offensive to a weak and cold stomach, so far are they from binding the belly, or staying the lask, as that they also trouble the same through their cold and raw quality, which thing the boiled juice called *Rob* doth not any whit at all.

B. They be good for an hot stomach, they quench thirst, they mitigate and allay the heat of hot burning agues, they stop the belly, stay vomiting, stay the bloody flux proceeding of choler, and help the felony, or the purging of choler upwards and downwards.

C. The people of Cheshire do eat the black whorts in cream and milk, as in these South parts we eat strawberries, which stop and bind the belly, putting away also the desire to vomit.

D. The red Whortle is not of such a pleasant taste as the black, and therefore not so much used to be eaten; but (as I said before) they make the fairest carnation colour in the world.

CHAP. 74. Of the Marsh Whortleberries or Fen-Berries.

Vacciniapalustris.
Marsh Worts.



Fig. 2000. Marsh Whortleberry

The Description.

The Marsh Whortleberries grow upon the bogs in marsh or moorish grounds, creeping thereupon like unto wild Thyme, having many small limber and tender stalks laid almost flat upon the ground, beset with small narrow leaves fashioned almost like the leaves of Thyme, but lesser: among which come forth little berries like unto the common black Whortleberry in shape, but somewhat longer, sometimes all red, and sometimes spotted or specked with red spots of a deeper colour: in taste rough and astringent.

The Place.

The Marsh Whortle grows upon bogs and such like waterish and fenny places especially in Cheshire and Staffordshire, where I have found it in great plenty.

The Time.

The Berries are ripe about the end of July, and in August.

The Names.

They are called in High Dutch, *Alosbeeren*, *Veenbesien*: that is to say, Fen-Grapes, or Fen-Berries, and Marsh-whorts, or Marsh-Berries: Valerius Cordus nameth them *Oxycoccon*; we have called them *Vaccinia palustris*, or Marsh Whortleberries, of the likeness they have to the other berries: some also call them Moss-Berries, or Moor-berries.

The Temperature.

These Whortleberries are cold and dry, having withal a certain thinness of parts and substance, with a certain binding quality adjoined.

The Virtues

A. They take away the heat of burning agues, and also the drought, they quench the furious heat of choler, they stay vomiting, restore an appetite to meat which was lost by reason of choleric and corrupt humours, and are good against the pestilent diseases.

B. The juice of these also is boiled till it be thick, with sugar added that it may be kept, which is good for all things that the berries are, yea and far better.

CHAP. 75. Of Cloudberry.

Vaccinia Nubis.
Cloudberries.



Fig. 2001. Cloudberry

The Description.

The Cloudberry hath many small thready roots, creeping far abroad under the upper crust of the earth, and also the moss, like unto Couch-Ggrass, of an overworn reddish colour, set here and there with small tufts of hairy strings: from which rise up two small stalks, hard, tough, and of a woody substance (never more nor less) on which do stand the leaves like those of the wild Mallow, and of the same colour, full of small nerves or sinews running in each part of the same: between the leaves cometh up a stalk likewise of a woody substance, whereon doth grow a small flower consisting of five leaves, of an herby or yellowish green colour like those of the wild Avens. After cometh the fruit, green at the first, after yellow, and the sides next the sun red when they be ripe; in form almost like unto a little heart, made as it were of two, but is no more but one, open above, and closed together in the bottom, of a harsh or sharp taste, wherein is contained three or four little white seeds.

The Place.

This plant groweth naturally upon the tops of two high mountains (among the mossy places) one in Yorkshire called Ingleborough, the other in Lancashire called Pendle, two of the highest mountains in all England, where the clouds are lower than the tops of the same all winter long, whereupon the people of the country have called them Cloudberries, found there by a curious gentleman in the knowledge of plants, called Mr. Hesketh, often remembered.

The Time.

The leaves spring up in May, at which time it flowereth: the fruit is ripe in July.

The Temperature.

The fruit is cold and dry, and very astringent.

The Virtues.

A. The fruit quenbeth thirst, cooleth the stomach, and allayeth inflammations, being eaten as Whorts are, or the decotion made and drunk.

CHAP. 76. Of Shrub Heartwort of Ethiopia.

Seseli Æthiopicum frutex.
Shrub Sesely, or Hart-wort of Ethiopia.



Fig. 2002. Shrub Sesely, or Ethiopian Heartwort

The Description

This kind of Sesely, being the Ethiopian Sesely, hath blackish stalks of a woody substance: this plant divideth itself into sundry other arms or branches, which are beset with thick far and oleous leaves, fashioned somewhat like the Woodbine leaves. but thicker and more gummy, approaching very near unto the leaves of Oleander both in shape and substance, being of a deep or dark green colour, and of a very good savour and smell, and continueth green in my garden both winter and summer, like the Bay or Laurel. The flowers do grow at the tops of the branches in yellow roundels like the flowers of Dill; which being past, there succeedeth a dark or dusky seed resembling the seed of Fennel, and of a bitter taste. The root is thick and of a woody substance.

The Place.

It is found both in stony places, and on the sea coasts not far from Marseilles, and likewise in other places of Languedoc: it also groweth in Ethiopia, in the dark and desert woods: it groweth in my garden.

The Time.

It flourisheth, flowereth and seedeth in July and August.

The Names.

The Grecians and the Latins likewise call it *Seseli æthiopicum*: the Egyptians, Dogs' Horror: in English, Sesely of Ethiopia, or Ethiopian Heartwort.

The Temperature and Virtues.

Sesely of Ethiopia is thought to have the same faculties that the Sesely of Marsilles hath, whereunto I refer it.

CHAP. 77. Of the Elder Tree.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of Elders, some of the land, and some of the water or marsh grounds; some with very jagged leaves, and others with double flowers, as shall be declared.

1 *Sambucus*.
The common Elder tree.



Fig. 2003. Common Elder (1)

‡ 2 *Sambucus fructu albo*.
Elder with white berries.



Fig. 2004. White-Berried Elder (2)

The Description.

The Common Elder groweth up now and then to the bigness of a mean tree, casting his boughs all about, and oftentimes remaineth a shrub: the body is almost all woody, having very little pith within; but the boughs and especially the young ones which be jointed, are full of pith within, and have but little wood without: the bark of the body and great arms is rugged and full of chinks, and of an ill favoured wan colour like ashes: that of the boughs is not very smooth, but in colour almost like; and that is the outward bark, for there is another under it nearer to the wood, of colour green: the substance of the wood is sound, somewhat yellow, and that may be easily cleft: the leaves consist of five or six particular ones fastened to one rib, like those of the Walnut tree, but every particular one is lesser, nicked in the edges, and of a rank and stinking smell. The flowers grow on spoky roundels, which be thin and scattered, of a white colour and sweet smell: after them grow up little berries, green at the first, afterwards black, whereout is pressed a purple juice, which being boiled with alum and such like things, doth serve very well for the painters' use, as also to colour vinegar: the seeds in these are a little flat, and somewhat long. There groweth oftentimes upon the bodies of those old trees or shrubs a certain excrescence called *auricula Iudææ*, or Jew's ear,

which is soft, blackish, covered with a skin, somewhat like now and then to a man's ear, which being plucked off and dried, shrinketh together and becometh hard. This Elder groweth everywhere, and is the common Elder.

2. There is another also which is rare and strange, for the berries of it are not black, but white: this is like in leaves to the former.

3 *Sambucus laciniatis folijs.*
The jagged Elder tree.



Fig. 2005. Jagged Elder (3)

4 *Sambucus racemosa, vel Ceruina.*
Harts Elder, or Cluster Elder.



Fig. 2006. Harts' Elder (4)

3. The Jagged Elder tree groweth like the common Elder in body, branches, shoots, pith, flowers, fruit, and stinking smell, and differeth only in the fashion of the leaves, which doth so much disguise the tree, and put it out of knowledge, that no man would take it for a kind of Elder, until he hath smelt thereunto, which will quickly show from whence he is descended: for these strange Elder leaves are very much jagged, rent or cut even unto the middle rib. From the trunk of this tree as from others of the same kind, proceedeth a certain fleshy excrescence like unto the ear of a man, especially from those trees that are very old.

4. This kind of Elder hath flowers which are white, but the berries red, and both are not contained in spoky roundels, but in clusters, and grow after the manner of a cluster of grapes: in leaves and other things resembleth the common Elder, save that now and then it groweth higher.

The Place.

The common Elder groweth everywhere: it is planted about cony burrows for the shadow of the conies; but that with the white berries is rare: the other kinds grow in

like places; but that with the clustered fruit groweth upon mountains; that with the jagged leaves groweth in my garden.

The Time.

These kinds of Elders do flower in April and May, and their fruit is ripe in September.

The Names.

This tree is called in Latin and of the apothecaries, *Sambucus*: of Giullielmus Salicetus, *Beza*: in High Dutch, *Holunder*, *Holder*: in Low Dutch, *Elter*: in Italian, *Sambuco*: in French, *Hus* and *Suin*: in Spanish, *Sauco*, *Sauch*, *Sambugueyro*: in English, Elder, and Elder tree: that with the white berries divers would have to be called *Sambucus sylvestris*, or wild Elder, but Matthiolus calleth it *montana*, or mountain Elder.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Galen attributeth the like faculty to Elder that he doth to Danewort, and saith that it is of a drying quality, gluing, and moderately digesting: and it hath not only these faculties, but others also; for the bark, leaves, first buds, flowers, and fruit of Elder, do not only dry, but also heat, and have withal a purging quality, but not without trouble and hurt to the stomach.

B. The leaves and tender crops of common Elder taken in some broth or pottage open the belly, purging both thick phlegm and choleric humours: the middle bark is of the same nature, but stronger, and purgeth the said humours more violently.

C. The seeds contained within the berries dried are good for such as have the dropsy, and such as are too fat, and would fain be leaner, if they be taken in a morning to the quantity of a dram with wine for a certain space.

D. The leaves of Elder boiled in water until they be very soft, and when they are almost boiled enough a little oil of sweet Almonds added thereto, or a little Linseed oil; then taken forth and laid upon a red cloth, or a piece of scarlet, and applied to the haemorrhoids or piles as hot as can be suffered, and so let to remain upon the part affected, until it be somewhat cold, having the like in a readiness, applying one after another upon the diseased part, by the space of an hour or more, and in the end some bound to the place, and the patient put warm a-bed; it hath not as yet failed at the first dressing to cure the said disease; but if the patient be dressed twice it must needs do good if the first fail.

E. The green leaves pounded with deer's suet or bull's tallow are good to be laid to hot swellings and tumors, and doth assuage the pain of the gout.

F. The inner and green bark doth more forcibly purge: it draweth forth choler and watery humours; for which cause it is good for those that have the dropsy, being stamped, and the liquor pressed out and drunk with wine or whey.

G. Of like operation are also the fresh flowers mixed with some kind of meat, as fried with eggs, they likewise trouble the belly and move to the stool: being dried they lose as well their purging quality as their moisture, and retain the digesting and attenuating quality.

H. The vinegar in which the dried flowers are steeped are wholesome for the stomach: being used with meat it stirreth up an appetite, it cutteth and attenuateth or maketh thin gross and raw humours.

I. The faculty of the seed is somewhat gentler than that of the other parts: it also moveth the belly, and draweth forth watery humours, being beaten to powder, and given to a dram weight: being new gathered, steeped in vinegar, and afterwards dried, it is taken, and that effectually, in the like weight of the dried lees of wine, and with a few Anise seeds, for so it worketh without any manner of trouble, and helpeth those that have the dropsy. But it must be given for certain days together in a little wine, to those that have need thereof.

K. The jelly of the Elder, otherwise called Jew's ear, hath a binding and drying quality: the infusion thereof, in which it hath been steeped a few hours, taketh away inflammations of the mouth, and almonds of the throat in the beginning, if the mouth and throat be washed therewith, and doth in like manner help the uvula.

L. Dioscorides saith, that the tender and green leaves of the Elder tree, with barley meal parched, do remove hot swellings, and are good for those that are burnt or scalded, and for such as be bitten with a mad dog, and that they glue and heal up hollow ulcers.

M. The pith of the young boughs is without quality: This being dried, and somewhat pressed or quashed together, is good to lay upon the narrow orifices or holes of fistulas and issues, if it be put therein.

CHAP. 78. Of Marsh or Water Elder.

1 *Sambucus aquatilis, sine palustris.*
Marsh or water Elder.



Fig. 2007. Marsh Elder (1)

2 *Sambucus Rosea.*
The Rose Elder.



Fig. 2008. Rose Elder (2)

The Description.

1. Marsh Elder is not like to the common Elder in leaves, but in boughs: it growth after the manner of a little tree: the boughs are covered with a bark of an ill favoured ash colour, as be those of the common Elder they are set with joints by certain distances and have in them great plenty of white pith, therefore they have less wood, which is white and brittle: the leaves be broad, cornered, like almost to Vine leaves, but lesser and softer: among which come forth spoked roundels which bring forth little flowers, the uttermost whereof amongst the borders be greater, of a gallant white colour, every little one consisting of five leaves: the other in the midst and within the borders be smaller, and it flowers by degrees, and the whole tuft is of a most sweet smell: after which come the fruit or berries, that are round like those of the common Elder, but greater, and of a shining red colour, and black when they be withered.

2. *Sambucus rosea*, or the Elder Rose groweth like an hedge tree, having many knotty branches or shoots coming from the root, full of pith like the common Elder; the leaves are like the vine leaves; among which come forth goodly flowers of a white colour, sprinkled and dashed here and there with a light and thin carnation colour, and do grow thick and closely compact together, in quantity and bulk of a man's hand, or rather bigger, of great beauty, and savouring like the flowers of the Hawthorn: but in my garden there groweth not any fruit upon this tree, nor in any other place, for aught that I can understand.

3. This kind is likewise an hedge tree, very like unto the former in stalks and branches, which are jointed and knotted by distances, and it is full of white pith: the leaves likewise cornered: the flowers hereof grow not out of spoky roundels, but stand in a round thick and globed tuft, bigness also and fashion like to the former, saving that they tend to a deeper purple colour, wherein only the difference consists.

The Place.

Sambucus palustris, the water Elder, grows by running streams and water courses, and in hedges by moist ditch sides.

The Rose Elder groweth in gardens, and the flowers are there doubled by art, as it is supposed.

The Time.

These kinds of Elders do flower in April and May, and the fruit of the water Elder is ripe in September.

The Names.

The water Elder is called in Latin, *Sambucus aquatica*, and *Sambucus palustris*: it is called *Opulus* and *Platanus*, and also *Chamaeplatanus*, or the dwarf Plane tree, but not properly: Valerius Cordus maketh it to be *Lycostaphylos*: the Saxons, saith Gelber, do call it *Uva Lupina*;["Wolf's grapes"] from whence Cordus invented the name *Lycostaphylos*: it is named in High Dutch, *Walt holder*, and *Hirsch holder*: in Low Dutch, *Swelken*, and *Swelckenhout*: of certain French men, *Obiere*: in English, Marsh Elder, and Whitten-tree, Ople tree, and Dwarf Plane tree.

The Rose Elder is called in Latin, *Sambucus rosea*, and *Sambucus aquatica*, being doubtless a kind of the former water Elder, the flowers being doubled by art, as we have said: it is called in Dutch, *Gheldersche Rose*: in English, Guelder Rose, and Rose Elder.

The Temperature and Virtues.

Concerning the faculties of these Elders, and the berries of the Water Elder, there is nothing found in any writer, neither can we set down anything hereof of our own knowledge.

CHAP. 79. Of Danewort, Wallwort, or Dwarf Elder.

Ebulus, sine Sambucus humilis.
Dane-wort, or dwarfe Elder.



Fig. 2009. Dwarf Elder

The Description.

Danewort, as it is not a shrub, neither is it altogether an herby plant, but as it were a plant participating of both, being doubtless one of the Elders, as may appear both by the leaves, flowers, and fruit, as also by the smell and taste.

Wallwort is very like unto Elder in leaves, spoky tufts, and fruit, but it hath not a woody stalk; it bringeth forth only green stalks, which wither away in winter: these are edged, and full of joints, like to the young branches and shoots of Elder: the leaves grow by couples, with distances, wide, and consist of many small leaves which stand upon a thick ribbed stalk, of which every one is long, broad, and cut in the edges like a saw, wider and greater than the leaves of the common Elder tree: at the top of the stalks there grow tufts of white flowers tipped with red, with five little chives in them pointed with black, which turn into black berries like the Elder, in the which be little long seed: the root is tough, and of a good and reasonable length, better for physic's use than the leaves of Elder.

The Place.

Danewort grows in untoiled places near common ways, and in the borders of fields: it groweth plentifully in the lane at Kilburn Abbey by London: also in a field by St. John's near Dartford in Kent: and also in the highway at old Branford town's end next London, and in many other places.

The Time.

The flowers are perfected in summer, and the berries in autumn.

The Names.

It is named in Greek, *Chamaeacte*, that is *Sambucus humulis*, or low Elder: It is called in Latin, *Ebulus*, and *Ebulum*: in High Dutch, *Attich*: in Low Dutch, *Hadich*: in Italian, *Ebulo*: in French, *Hieble*: in Spanish, *Yezgos*: in English, Wallwort, Danewort, and Dwarf Elder.

The Temperature.

Wallwort is of temperature hot and dry in the third degree, and of a singular quality, which Galen doth attribute unto it, to waste and consume; and also it hath a strange and special faculty to purge by the stool: the roots be of greatest force, the leaves have the chiefest strength to digest and consume.

The Virtues.

A. The roots of Wallwort boiled in wine and drunken are good against the dropsy, for they purge downwards watery humours.

B. The leaves do consume and waste away hard swellings if they be applied poultice-wise, or in a fomentation or bath.

C. Dioscorides saith, that the roots of Wallwort do soften and open the matrix, and also correct the infirmities thereof, if they be boiled for a bath to sit in; and dissolve the swellings and pains of the belly.

D. The juice of the root of Danewort doth make the hair black.

E. The young and tender leaf quencheth hot inflammations, being applied with barley meal: it is with good success laid upon burnings, scaldings, and upon the bitings of mad dogs; and with bull's tallow or goat's suet it is a remedy for the gout.

F. The seed of Wallwort drunk in the quantity of a dram is the most excellent purger of watery humours in the world, and therefore most singular against the dropsy.

G. If one scruple of the seed be bruised and taken with syrup of Roses and a little sack, it cureth the dropsy, and easeth the gout, mightily purging downwards waterish humours, being once taken in the week.

CHAP. 80. Of Bean Trefoil.

1 *Anagyris.*
Beane Trefoile.



Fig. 2010. Bean Trefoil (1)

2 *Anagyris foetida.*
Stinking Beane Trefoile.



Fig. 2011. Stinking Bean Trefoil (2)

The Description.

1. The first kind of *Anagyris* or *Laburnum* groweth like unto a small tree, garnished with many small branches like the shoots of Osiers, set full of pale green leaves, always three together, like the *Lotus* or Meadow Trefoil, or rather like the leaves of *Vitex*, or the *Cytisus* bush: among which come forth many tufts of flowers of a yellow colour, not much unlike the flowers of Broom: when these flowers be gone there succeed small flat cods, wherein are contained seeds like *Galega* or the *Cytisus* bush: the whole plant hath little or no savour at all the root is soft and gentle, yet of a woody substance.

2. Stinking Trefoil is a shrub like to a little tree, rising up to the height of six or eight cubits, or sometimes higher: it sendeth forth of the stalks very many slender branches; the bark whereof is of a deep green colour: the leaves stand always three together, like those of *Lotus* or Meadow Trefoil, yet of a lighter green on the upper side: the flowers be long, as yellow as gold, very like to those of Broom, two or three also joined together: after them come up broad cods, wherein do lie hard fruit like kidney beans, but lesser; at the first white, afterwards tending to a purple, and last of all of a blackish blue: the leaves and flowers hereof have a filthy smell, like those of the stinking Gladdon, and so rank withal, as even the passers by are annoied therewith.

Of *Anagyris* there are four kinds, two with stinking leaves; the one with longish leaves, the other with rounder. Two other whose leaves do not stink; the one of these

hath sometimes four or five leaves on one stalk, and the leaves are long and large. The other hath them lesser and narrower.

The Place.

These grow of themselves in most places of Languedoc and Spain, and in other countries: also by highways' sides, as in the Isle of Candy, as Bellonius writeth: the first I have in my garden; the other is a stranger in England. Master Tradescant hath two sorts hereof in his garden.

The Time.

They flower in June, and the seed is ripe in September.

The Names.

The Bean Trefoil is called in Greek *Anagyris*, which name remaineth uncorrupt in Candy even to this day: in Latin also *Anagyris* and *Laburnum*: of the people of Anagni in Italy named *Eghelo*, which is referred unto *Laburnum*, of which Pliny writeth in his 16th book, 18th chapter. In English, Bean Trefoil, or the Peascod Tree.

The Temperature.

Bean Trefoil, as Galen writeth, hath a hot and digesting faculty.

The Virtues.

A. The tender leaves, saith Dioscorides, being stamped and laid upon cold swellings, do waste away the same.

B. They are drunk with cute in the weight of a dram against the stuffing of the lungs, and do bring down the menses, the birth, and the afterbirth.

C. They cure the headache being drunk with wine; the juice of the root digesteth and ripeneth, if the seed be eaten it procureth vomit, which thing, as Matthiolus writeth, the seed not only of Stinking Bean Trefoil doth effect, but that also of the other likewise.

CHAP. 81. Of Judas Tree.

Arbor Iudæ.
Iudas Tree.



Fig. 2012. Judas Tree

The Description.

Judas tree is likewise one of the hedge plants: it groweth up unto a tree of a reasonable bigness, covered with a dark coloured bark, whereon do grow many twiggy tough branches of a brown colour, garnished with round leaves, like those of round Birthwort, or Sowbread, but harder, and of a deeper green colour: among which come forth small flowers like those of Peas, of a purple colour mixed with red, which turn into long flat cods, pressed hard together, of a tawny or wan colour, wherein is contained small flat seeds, like the Lentil, or rather like the seed of *Medica*, fashioned like a little kidney: the root is great and woody.

The Place.

This shrub is found in divers provinces of Spain, in hedges, and among briars & brambles: the mountains of Italy, and the fields of Languedoc are not without this shrub; it groweth in my garden.

The Time.

The flowers come forth in the spring, and before the leaves: the fruit or cods be ripe in summer.

The Names.

It is commonly named in Latin *Arbor iudæ*: some have called it *sycomorus*, or Sycamore tree, and that because the flowers and cods hang down from the bigger branches: but the right *Sycamore* tree is like the Fig tree in fruit, & in leaves to the Mulberry tree, whereupon it is so named. Others take it to be *Kerkis*, of which Theophrastus writeth thus: *Cercis* bringeth forth fruit in a cod; which words are all so

few, as that of this no certainty can be gathered for there be more shrubs that bring forth fruit in cods. The Frenchmen call it *Guainier*, as though they should say, *Vaginula*: or a little sheath: most of the Spaniards do name it *Algorovo loco*, that is, *Siliqua sylvestris* or *fatua*, wild or foolish cod: others, *Arbol d'amor*, for the braveness' sake: it may be called in English Judas Tree, for that it is thought to be that whereon Judas did hang himself, and not upon the Elder tree, as it is vulgarly said.

The Temperature and Virtues.

The temperature and virtues of this shrub are unknown, and not found out: for whereas Matthiolus maketh this to be Acacia, by adding falsely thorns unto it, it is but a surmise.

CHAP. 82. Of the Carob Tree, or Saint John's Bread.

Ceratia filiqua, five Ceratonia.
The Carob tree.



Fig. 2013. Carob

The Description.

1. The Carob tree is also one of those that bear cods; it is a tree of a middle bigness, very full of boughs: the leaves long, and consist of many set together upon one middle rib, like those of the Ash, but every particular one of them is broader, harder and rounder: the fruit or long cods in some places are a foot in length, in other places shorter by half, an inch broad, smooth, & thick; in which do lie flat and broad seeds: the cods themselves are of a sweet taste, and are eaten of divers, but not before they be gathered and dried; for being as yet green, though ripe, they are unpleasant to be eaten by reason of their ill-favoured taste.

The Place.

This groweth in Apulia, a province of the kingdom of Naples, and also in divers untoiled places in Spain: it is likewise found in India and other countries eastward, where the cods are so full of sweet juice as that it is used to preserve ginger and other fruits, as Matthiolus showeth. Strabo, *lib.* 15, saith, that Aristobulus reporteth how there is a tree in India of no great bigness, which hath great cods, ten inches long, full of honey; *Quas qui edirent non facile servari* ["those who eat it do not easily survive"]; which thing peradventure is only to be understood of the green cods, & those that are not yet dry: it is very well known in the coasts of Nicea and Liguria in Italy, as also in all the tracts and coasts of the West Indies, and Virginia. It groweth also in sundry places of Palestine, where there is such plenty of it, that it is left unto swine and other wild beasts to feed upon, as our acorns and Beech mast. Moreover, both young and old feed thereon for pleasure and some have eaten thereof to supply and help the necessary nourishment of their bodies. This of some is called Saint John's bread, and thought to be that which is translated Locusts, whereon St. John did feed when he was in the

wildrness, besides the wild honey whereof he did also eat; but there is small certainty of this: but most certain that the people of that country do feed upon these cods, in Greek called *Keratia*, in Latin, *Siliquæ*: but Saint John food is called in Greek *Akrides*: which word is often used in the Revelation written by Saint John, and translated *locusts*. Now we must also remember that this Greek word hath two several interpretations or significations, for taken in the good part, it signifieth a kind of creeping creature, or fly, which hoppeth or skippeth up and down, as doth the grasshopper; of which kind of creatures it was lawful to eat, *Levit.* 11:22, and *Matt.* 3:4. It signifieth also those Locusts which came out of the smoke of the bottomless pit, mentioned *Apoc.* 9:3,4. &c., which were like unto horses prepared for battle. The Hebrew word which the English translators have turned *grasshoppers*, Tremelius dares not give the name *locust* unto it, but calleth it by the Hebrew name *Arbis*, after the letters and Hebrew name, saying thus in the note upon the 22nd verse of the 11th chapter of *Leviticus*. These kinds of creeping things neither the Hebrews nor the historiographers, nor ourselves do know what they mean: wherefore we still retain the Hebrew words, for all the four kinds thereof: but it is certain that the East country grasshoppers and locusts were sometimes used in meat, as *Matth.* 3:4 and *Marc.* 16:1, Pliny *Lib.* 11 *Natur. Histor. cap.* 26 and 29. Thus far Tremulus and Junius. By that which hath been said it appeareth what St. John the Baptist fed of, under the title *locusts*: and that it is nothing like unto this fruit *Ceratia siliqua*: I rather take the husks or shells of the fruit of this tree to be the cods or husks whereof the prodigal child would have fed, but none gave them unto him, though the swine had their fill thereof. These cods being dry are very like bean cods, as I have often seen. I have sown the seeds in my garden, where they have prospered exceeding well.

Thus saith our author, but I say that there is no doubt but the *Keratia* or *Siliqua* mentioned in Saint Luke's Gospel, Chap. 15:16 were the cods or fruit of this tree. I cannot believe that either the fruit of this or the Locusts, were the *Akrides*, mentioned in the third chapter of Saint Matthew v. 4. But I am of the opinion of the Greek Father Isodore Pelusiota, who, lib. 1, *epist.* 132 hath these words: The *Acrides* which John fed upon are not living creatures like to beetles, as some unlearnedly suppose, far be it from us so to think; but they are the tender buds of herbs and plants or trees; neither on the other side is the *Meliagrion* any herb so called, but mountain honey gathered by wild bees, &c.

The Time.

The Carob tree bringeth forth fruit in the beginning of the spring, which is not ripe till autumn.

The Names.

The Carob tree is called in Greek *Keratonia*: in Latin likewise, *Ceratonia*: in Spanish, *Garovo*: in English, Carob tree; and of some, Bean tree, and Saint John's Bread: the fruit or cod is named *keration*: in Latin *Siliqua*, or *Siliqua dulcis*: in divers shops, *Xylocaracta*: in other shops in Italy, *Carobe*, or *Carobole*: of the apothecaries of Apulia, *Salequa*: it is called in Spanish, *Alfarobas*, or *Algarovas* and without an article *Garovas*: in High Dutch, **S. Johans brot**, that is to say, *Sancti Iohanni panis*, or St. John's Bread, neither is it known by any other name in the Low-countries: Some call it in English, Carob.

The Temperature.

The Carob tree is dry and astringent, as is also the fruit, and containeth in it a certain sweetness, as Galen saith.

The Virtues.

A. The fruit of the Carob Tree, being eat when it is green, doth gently loose the belly; but being dry it is hard of digestion, and stoppeth the belly, it provoketh urine, it is good for the stomach, and nourisheth well, and much better than when it is green and fresh.

CHAP. 83. Of *Cassia Fistula*, or Pudding Pipe.

Cassia fistula.
Pudding Pipe tree.



Fig. 2014. Pudding Pipe Tree

The Description.

Cassia purgatrix, or *Cassia fistula*, groweth up to be a fair tree, with a tough bark like leather, of the colour of Box, whereupon some have supposed it to take the name in Latin *Coriaceus*: the arms and branches of this are small and limber, beset with many goodly leaves, like those of the Walnut tree: among which come forth small flowers of a yellow colour, compact or consisting of six little leaves, like the flowers of *Chelidonium minus*, or Pilewort: after these be faded, there succeed goodly black round, long cods, whereof some are two foot long, and of a woody substance: in these cods are contained a black pulp, very sweet and soft, of a pleasant taste, and serving to many uses in physic, in which pulp lieth the seed couched in little cells or partitions: this seed is flat and brownish, not unlike the seed of *Ceratia siliqua*, and in other respects very like unto it also.

The Place.

This tree groweth much in Egypt, especially about Memphis and Alexandria, and most parts of Barbary, and is a stranger in these parts of Europe.

The Time.

The Cassia is tree groweth green winter and summer: it sheddeth his old leaves when new are come, by means whereof it is never void of leaves: it flowereth early in the spring, and the fruit is ripe in autumn.

The Names.

This tree was unknown to the old writers, or so little accounted of, as that they have made no mention of it at all: the Arabians were the first that esteemed of it, by

reason they knew the use of the pulp which is found in the Pipes: and after them the later Grecians, as Actuarius and other of his time, by whom it was named *Kasia melania* that is to say in Latin, *Casia nigra*. The fruit hereof, saith Actuarius in his first book, is like a long pipe, having within a thick humour or moisture, which is not congealed all alike through the pipe, but is separated and, divided with many partitions, being thin woody skins. The apothecaries call it *Casia fistula*, and with a double *s*, *Cassia fistula*: is called in English after the apothecaries' word, *Cassia fistula*, and may also be Englished, Pudding Pipe, because the cod or Pipe is like a pudding: but the old *Cassia fistula*, is that sweet and odorous bark that is rolled together, after the manner of a long and round pipe, now named of the apothecaries *Cassia lignea*, which is a kind of Cinnamon.

The Temperature.

The pulp of this pipe which is chiefly in request, is moist in the later end of the first degree, and little more than temperately hot.

The Virtues.

A. The pulp of *Cassia fistula* extracted with violet water, is a most sweet and pleasant medicine, and may be given without danger to all weak people of what age and sex soever they be, yea it may be ministered to women with child, for it gently purgeth choleric humours and slimy phlegm, if be taken in the weight of an ounce.

B. Cassia is good for such as be vexed with hot agues, pleurisies, jaundice, or any other inflammation of the liver, being taken as afore is showed.

C. Cassia is good for the reins and kidneys, driveth forth gravel and the stone, especially if it be mingled with the decotion of Parsley, and Fennel roots, and drunk.

D. It purgeth and purifieth the blood, making it more clean than before, breaking therewith the acrimony and sharpness of the mixture of blood and choler together.

E. It dissolveth all phlegmons and inflammations of the breast, lungs, and the rough artery called *Trachea arteria*, easing those parts exceeding well.

F. Cassia abateth the vehemency of thirst in agues, or any hot disease whatsoever, especially if it be taken with the juice of *Intybum*, *Cichoreum*, or *Solanum*, depured according to art: it abateth also the intemperate heat of the reins, if it be received with diuretic simples, or with the decoction of Liquorice only, and will not suffer the stone to grow in such persons as do receive and use this medicine.

G. The best *Cassia* for your use is to be taken out of the mot full, most heavy, & fairset cods, or canes, and those which do shine without, and are full of soft pulp within; that pulp which is newly taken forth is better than that which is kept in boxes, by what art soever.

H. *Cassia* being outwardly applied, taketh away the roughness of the skin, and being laid upon hot swellings, it bringeth them to suppuration.

I. Many singular compounded medicines are made with this Cassia, which here to recite belongs not to my purpose or history.

CHAP. 84. Of the Lentisk, or Mastic Tree.

Lentiscus.
The Masticke tree.



Fig. 2015. The Mastic Tree

The Description.

The Mastic tree groweth commonly like a shrub without any great body, rising up with many springs and shoots like the Hazel; and oftentimes it is of the height and bigness of a mean tree: the boughs thereof are tough, and flexible; the bark is of a yellowish red colour, pliable likewise, and hard to be broken: there stand upon one rib for the most part 8 leaves, set upon a middle rib, much like to the leaves of Liquorice, but harder, of a deep green colour, and oftentimes somewhat red in the brims, as also having divers veins running along of a red colour, and something strong of smell: the flowers be mossy, and grow in clusters upon long stems: after them come up the berries, of the bignesse of Vetches, green at the first, afterwards of a purple colour, and last of all black, fat, and oily, with a hard black stone within; the kernel whereof is white, of which also is made oil, as Dioscorides witnesseth: it bringeth forth likewise cods besides the fruit (which may be rather termed an excrescence, than a cod) writhed like a horn; in which lieth at the first a liquor, and afterwards when this waxeth stale, little living things like unto gnats, as in the Turpentine horns, and in the folded leaves of the Elm tree. There cometh forth of the Mastic tree a resin, but dry, called mastic.

The Place.

The Mastic tree groweth in many regions, as in Syria, Candy, Italy, Languedoc, and in most provinces of Spain: but the chiefest is in Chios an island in Greece, in which it is diligently and specially looked unto, and that for the mastic's sake, which is there gathered from the husbanded Mastic trees by the inhabitants every year most carefully, and is sent from thence into all parts of the world.

The Time.

The flowers be in their pride in the spring time, and the berries in autumn: the mastic must be gathered about the time when the Grapes be.

The Names.

This tree is named in Latin, *Lentiscus*: in Italian, *Lentisque*: in Spanish, *Mata*, and *Arcoyra*: in English, Mastic tree; and of some, Lentisk tree.

The Resin is called in Latin, *lentiscina resina*, and likewise *mastiche*: in shops, *mastix*: in Italian, *Mastice*: in high and Low Dutch and French also, *mastic*: in Spanish, *Almastiga*, *Mastech*, and *almecega*: in English, Mastic.

Clusius writeth, that the Spaniards call the oil that is pressed out of the berries, *Azeyte de Mata*.

The Temperature.

The leaves, bark, and gum of the Mastic tree are of a mean and temperate heat, and are dry in the second degree, and somewhat astringent.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves and bark of the Mastic tree stop the lask, the bloody flux, the spitting of blood, the pissing of blood, and all other fluxes of blood: they are also good against the falling sickness, the falling down of the mother, and coming forth of the fundament.

B. The gum mastic hath the same virtue, if it be relented in wine and given to be drunk.

C. Mastic chewed in the mouth is good for the stomach, stayeth vomiting, increaseth appetite, comforteth the brains, stayeth the falling down of the rheums and watery humours, and maketh a sweet breath.

D. The same infused in Rose water is excellent to wash the mouth withal, to fasten loose teeth, and to comfort the jaws, The same spread upon a piece of leather or velvet, and laid plasterwise upon the temples, stayeth the rheum from falling into the jaws and teeth, and easeth the pains thereof.

F. It prevaieth much against ulcers and wounds, being put into digestives and healing unguents.

G. It draweth phlegm forth of the head gently and without trouble.

H. It is also used in waters which serve to cleanse and make fair the face with.

I. The decoction of this filleth up hollow ulcers with flesh if they be bathed therewith.

K. It knitteth broken bones, stayeth eating ulcers, and provoketh urine.

CHAP. 85. Of the Turpentine Tree.

1 *Terebinthus.*
The Turpentine tree.



Fog. 2016. Turpentine Tree (1)

2 *Terebinthus latifolia.*
The broad leaved Turpentine tree.



Fig. 2017. Broad-Leaved Turpentine Tree
(2)

The Description.

1. The first Turpentine Tree groweth to the height of a tall and fair tree, having many long boughs or branches, dispersed abroad, beset with long leaves, consisting of sundry other small leaves, each whereof resembleth the Bay leaf, growing one against another upon a little stem or middle rib, like unto the leaves of the Ash tree: the flowers be small & reddish, growing upon clusters or bunches that turn into round berries, which at their beginning are green, afterwards reddish, but being ripe wax black, or of a dark blue colour, clammy, full of fat and oleous in substance, and of a pleasant savour: this plant beareth an empty cod, or crooked horn somewhat reddish, wherein are found small flies, worms or gnats, bred and engendered of a certain humorous matter, which cleaveth to the inner sides of the said cods or horns, which worms have no physical use at all. The right turpentine issueth out of the branches of these trees, if you do cut or wound them, the which is fair and clear, and better than that which is gathered from the bark of the Fir tree.

2. The second kind of Turpentine tree is very like unto the former, but that it groweth not so great: yet the leaves are greater and broader, and of the same fashion, but very like to the leaves of the *Pistacia* tree. The berries are first of a scarlet colour, and when they be ripe of a sky colour. The great horned cods are sharp pointed, and somewhat cornered, consisting as it were of the substance of gristles. And out of those bladders being broken, do creep and come small flies or gnats, bred of a fuliginous

excrement, and engendered in those bladders. The tree doth also yield his Turpentine by dropping like the former.

The Place.

These trees grow, as Dioscorides saith, in Jewry, Syria, Cyprus, Africa, and in the islands called Cyclades. Bellonius reporteth that there are found great store of them in Syria, and Cilicia, and are brought from thence to Damascus to be sold. Clusius saith, that it grows of itself in Languedoc, and in very many places of Portugal and Spain, but for the most part like a shrub, and without bearing Turpentine.

Theophrastus writeth, that it groweth about the hill Ida, and in Macedonia, short, in manner of a shrub, and writhed; and in Damascus and Syria great, in manner of a small tree: he also setteth down a certain male Turpentine tree, and a female: the male, saith he, is barren, and the female fruitful. And of these he maketh the one with a berry red at the first, of the bigness of a Lentil, which cannot come to ripeness; and the other with the fruit green at the first, afterwards somewhat of a yellowish red, and in the end black, waxing ripe in the spring, of the bigness of the Grecians' Bean, and resinous.

He also writeth of a certain Indian Turpentine tree, that is to say, a tree like in boughs and leaves to the right Turpentine tree, but differing in fruit, which is like unto almonds.

The Time.

The flowers of the Turpentine tree come forth in the spring together with the new buds: the berries are ripe in September and October, in the time of Grape gathering. The horn appear about the same time.

The Names.

This tree is called in Latin, *Terebinthus*: in Italian, *Terebintho*: in Spanish, *Cornicabra*: in French, *Terebinte*: in English, Turpentine tree: the Arabians call it *Botin*, and with an article *Albotin*.

The resin is surnamed in Latin, *Terebinthina*: in High Dutch, *Termintijn*: in English Turpentine, and Right Turpentine: in the Arabian language *Albotin*, who name the fruit *Granum viride*, or green berries.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The bark, leaves, and fruit of the Turpentine tree do somewhat bind, they are hot in the second degree, and being green they dry moderately, but when they are dried they dry in the second degree; and the fruit approacheth more near to those that be dry in the third degree, and also hotter. This is fit to be eaten, as Dioscorides saith, but it hurteth the stomach.

B. It provoketh urine, helpeth those that have bad spleens, and is drunk in wine against the bitings of the poisonous spiders called *Phalangia*.

C. The resin of the Turpentine tree excelleth all other resins according to Dioscorides his opinion: but Galen writeth, that the resin of the mastic tree beareth the pre-eminence, and then the Turpentine.

D. This resin hath also an astringent or binding faculty, and yet not so much as mastic, but it hath withal a certain bitterness joined, by reason whereof it digesteth more than that of the Mastic tree: through the same quality there is likewise in it so great a cleansing, as also it healeth scabs, as Galen saith in his 8th book *Of the Faculties of*

Simple Medicines; but in his book *Of Medicines According to Their Kinds*, he maketh that of the Turpentine tree to be much like the resins of the Larch tree, which he affirmeth to be moister than all the rest, and to be without both sharpness and biting.

E. The fruit of Turpentine provoketh urine and stirreth up fleshly lust.

F. The resin of this tree, which is the right Turpentine, looseth the belly, openeth the stoppings of the liver and spleen, provoketh urine, and driveth forth gravel, being taken the quantity of two or three beans.

G. The like quantity washed in water divers times until it be white, then must be put thereto the like quantity of the yolk of an egg, and laboured together adding thereto by little and little (continually stirring it) a small draught of posset drink made of white wine, and given to drink in the morning fasting, it helpeth most speedily the gonorrhæa, or running of the reins, commonly at the first time, but the medicine never faileth at the second time of the taking of it, which gives stools from four to eight, according to the age and strength of the patient.

CHAP. 86. Of the Frankincense Tree.

Arbor Thurifera.
The Frankincense tree.



Fig. 2018. The Frankincense Tree

Thuris Limpidifolium Lobelij.
The supposed leaf of the Frankincense tree.



Fig. 2019. The supposed leaf of the Frankincense Tree

The Description.

The tree from which frankincense floweth is but low, and hath leaves like the Mastic tree; yet some are of opinion that the leaf is like the leaf of a Pear tree, and of a grassy colour: the rind is like that of the Bay tree, whereof there are two kinds: the one groweth in mountains and rocky places, the other in the plain: but those in the plains are much worse than those of the mountains: the gum hereof is also blacker, fitter to mingle with Pitch, and such other stuff to trim ships, than for other uses.

Thevet in his *Cosmography* saith, that the Frankincense tree doth resemble a gummy or resinous Pine tree, which yieldeth a juice that in time groweth hard, and is called *Thus*, frankincense, in whom is found sometime certain small grains like unto gravel, which they call the Manna of frankincense.

Of this there is in Arabia two other sorts, the one, the gum whereof is gathered in the Dog days when the sun is in Leo, which is white, pure, clear, and shining. Pena writeth that he hath seen the clear frankincense called *Limpidum*, and yielding a very sweet smell when it is burnt, but the leaf hath been seldom seen; which the physician Launanus gave to Pena and Lobel, together with some pieces of the resin, which he had of certain mariners, but he could affirm nothing of certainty whether it were the leaf of the Frankincense, or of some other Pine tree, yielding the like juice or gum. It is, saith he (which doth seldom happen in other leaves) from the lower part or foot of the leaf, to the upper end, as it were doubled, consisting of two thin rinds or coats, with a sheath a span and a half long, at the top gaping open like a hood or fool's coxcomb, and as it were covered with a helmet, which is a thing seldom seen in a leaf, but is proper to the flowers of *Napellus*, or *Lonchitis*, as writers affirm; the other is gathered in the spring, which is reddish, worser than the other in price or value, because it is not so well

concocted in the heat of the Sun. The Arabians wound this tree with a knife, that the liquor may flow out more abundantly, whereof some trees yield threescore pounds of frankincense.

The Place.

Dioscorides saith it groweth in Arabia, and especially in that quarter which is called Thurifera, the best in that country is called *Stagontas*, and is round, and if it be broken, is fat within, and when it is burned doth quickly yield a smell: next to it in goodness is that which groweth in Smilo, lesser than the other, and more yellow.

The Time

The time is already declared in the description.

The Names.

It is called in Greek, *Libanos*: in Latin, *Thus*: in Italian, *Incenso*: In Dutch, *Queirauch*: in Spanish, *Encenso*: in French, *Enceus*: in English, frankincense, and Incense: in the Arabian tongue, *Louan*, and of some few, *Conder*. The resin carries the same name; but in shops it is called Olibanum, of the Greek name and article put before it.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. It hath, as Dioscorides saith, a power to heat and bind.

B. It driveth away the dimness of the eyesight, filleth up hollow ulcers, it closes raw wounds, stayeth all corruptions of blood, although it fall from the head.

C. Galen writeth thus of it; *Thus* doth heat in the second degree, and dry in the first, and hath some small astriction, but in the white there is a manifest astriction; the rind doth manifestly bind and dry exceedingly, and that most certainly in the second degree, for it is of more grosser parts than frankincense, and not so sharp, by reason whereof it is much used in spitting of blood, swellings in the mouth, the colic passion, the flux in the belly rising from the stomach, and bloody fluxes.

D. The fume or smoke of it hath a more drier and hotter quality than the frankincense itself, being dry in the third degree.

E. It doth also cleanse and fill up the ulcers in the eies, like unto Myrrh: thus far Galen.

F. Dioscorides saith, that if it be drunk by a man in health, it driveth him into a frenzy: but there are few Greeks of his mind.

G. Avicenna reporteth that it doth help and strengthen the wit and understanding, but the often taking of it will breed the headache, and if too much of it be drunk with wine it killeth.

CHAP. 87. Of Fistic Nuts.

Pistacia. The Fisticke Nut.



Fig. 2020. Fistic Nut

The Description.

The tree which beareth Fistic Nuts is like to the Turpentine tree: the leaves hereof be greater than those of the Mastic tree, but set after the same manner, and in like order that they are, being of a faint yellow colour out of a green; the fruit or nuts do hang by their stalks in clusters, being greater than the nuts of Pine apples, and much lesser than Almonds: the husk without is of a grayish colour sometimes reddish, the shell brittle and white; the substance of the kernel green; the taste sweet, pleasant to be eaten, and something sweet of smell.

The Place.

Fistic nuts grow in Persia, Arabia, Syria, and in India; now they are made free denizens in Italy, as in Naples and in other Provinces there.

The Time.

This tree doth flower in May, and the fruit is ripe in September.

The Names.

This nut is called in Latin *Pistacion*, *Bistacion*, or *Phistacion*: the Apothecaries, *Fistici*: the Spaniards, *Alhocigos*, and *Fisticos*; in Italian, *Pistacchi*: in English, Fistic nut.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The kernels of the Fistic nuts are oftentimes eaten as be those of the Pine apples; they be of temperature hot and moist; they are not so easily concoted, but much easier than common nuts: the juice is good, yet somewhat thick; they yield to the body no small nourishment, they nourish bodies that are consumed; they recover strength.

B. They are good for those that have the phthisic, or rotting away of the lungs.

C. They concoct, ripen, and cleanse forth raw humours that cleave to the lights and chest.

D. They open the stoppings of the liver, and be good for the infirmities of the kidneys; they also remove out of the kidneys sand and gravel; and assuage their pain: they are also good for ulcers.

E. The kernels of Fistic nuts condited, or made into comfits, with sugar, and eaten, do procure bodily lust, unstop the lungs and the breast, are good against the shortness of breath, and are an excellent preservative medicine being ministered in wine against the bitings of all manner of wild beasts.

CHAP. 88. Of the Bladder Nut.

Nux vesicaria.
The Bladder Nut.

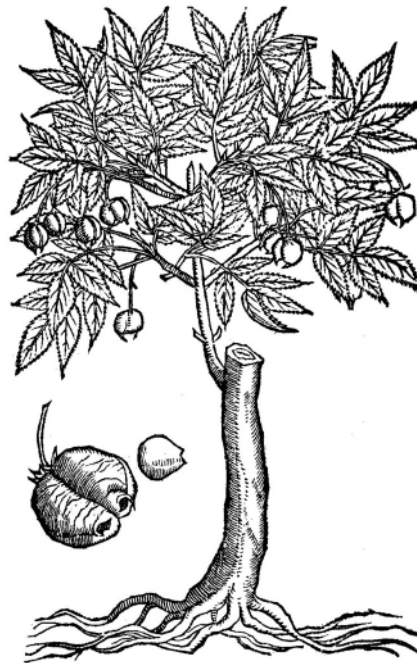


Fig. 2021. Bladder Nut

The Description.

This is a low tree, having divers young springs growing forth of the root: the substance of the wood is white, very hard & sound; the bark is of a light green: the leaves consist of five little ones, which be nicked in the edges like those of the Elder, but lesser, not so green nor rank of smell. It hath the pleasant whitish flowers of Bryony or *Labrusca*, both in smell and shape, which turn into small cornered bladders like those of winter Cherries, called *Alkakengie*, but of an overworn greenish colour: in these bladders are contained two little nuts, and sometimes no more than one, lesser than the Hazel nut, but greater than the Ram Cich, with a woody shell and somewhat red: the kernel within is something green; in taste at the first sweet, but afterwards loathsome, and ready to provoke vomit.

The Place.

It groweth in Italy, Germany and France, it groweth likewise at the house of Sir Walter Culpepper near Flimwell in the Weald of Kent, as also in the Friar-yard without Saint Paul's Gate in Stamford, and about Spalding Abbey, and in the garden of the right honourable the Lord Treasurer my very good Lord and Master, and by his house in the Strand. It groweth also in my garden, and in the garden hedges of Sir Frank Carew near Croydon, seven miles from London.

The Time.

This tree flowereth in May, the nuts be ripe in August and September.

The Names.

It is commonly called in High Dutch, *Ïimpernus*, which signifieth in Low Dutch *Ïimpernoten*: divers call it in Latin *Pistacium germanicum*: we think it best to call it *Nux vesicaria*. Matthiolus in his *Epistles* doth judge the Turks' *Coulcoul* and *Hebulben* to agree with this: Gulielmus Quacelbenus affirmeth, *Coulcoul* to be used of divers in Constantinople for a dainty, especially when they be new brought out of Egypt. This plant hath no old name, unless it be *Staphylo dendron plinii* for which it is taken of the later writers: and Pliny hath written of it in his 16th book, 16th chap. There is also (saith he) beyond the Alps a tree, the timber whereof is very like to that of white Maple, and is called *Staphylo dendron*, it beareth cods, and in those kernels, having the taste of the Hazel nut. It is called in English, St. Anthony's nuts, wilde Pistacia, or Bladder nuts: the Italians call it *Pistachio salvaticke*: the French men call it *Baguenaudes a patre nostres*, for that the friars do use to make beads of the nuts.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. These nuts are moist and full of superfluous raw humours, and therefore they easily procure a readiness to vomit, and trouble the stomach, by reason that withal they be somewhat binding, and therefore they be not to be eaten.

B. They have as yet no use in medicine, yet notwithstanding some have attributed unto them some virtues in provoking of venery.

CHAP. 89. Of the Hazel Tree.

1 *Nux. Avellana, sive Corylus.*
The Filberd Nut.



Fig. 2022. Filbert Hazelnut (1)

2 *Corylus sylvestris.*
The wilde hedge Nut.

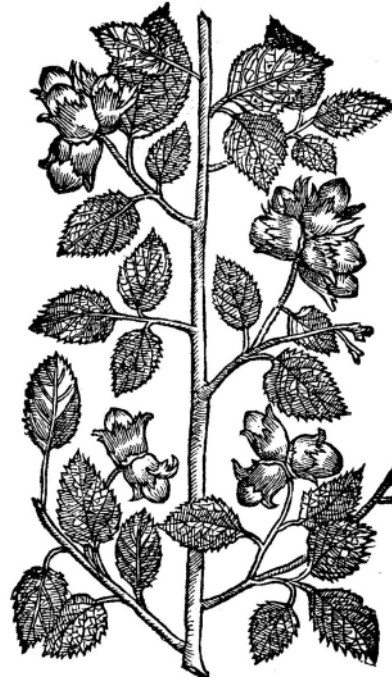


Fig. 2023. Wild Hedge Hazelnut (2)

The Description.

1. The Hazel tree groweth like a shrub or small tree, parted into boughs without joints, tough and pliable: the leaves are broad, greater and fuller of wrinkles than those of the Alder tree, cut in the edges like a saw, of colour green, and on the back side more white, the bark is thin: the root is thick, strong, and growing deep; instead of flowers hang down catkins, aglets, or blowings, slender, and well compact: after which come the nuts standing in a tough cup of green colour, and jagged at the upper end, like almost unto the beards in Roses, The shell is smooth and woody: the kernel within consisteth of a white, hard, and sound pulp, and is covered with a thin skin, oftentimes red, most commonly white; this kernel is sweet and pleasant unto the taste.

2. *Corylus sylvestris* is our hedge nut or Hazelnut tree, which is very well known, and therefore needeth not any description: whereof there are also sundry sorts, some great, some little, some rathe ripe, some later, as also one that is manured in our gardens, which is very great, bigger than any Filbert, and yet a kind of Hedge nut: this then that hath been said shall suffice for Hedge nuts.

3 *Avellana pumila Byzantina cum suo fructu.*
The Filberd Nut of Constantinople.



Fig. 2024. Turkish Hazelnut (3)

3. The small Turkey nut tree grows but low, and the leaves grow without order, upon the twigs, they are in shape like those of the former, but somewhat longer: the chief difference consists in the fruit, which is small, and like an Hazelnut, but shorter: the husk, wherein sometimes one, otherwhiles more nuts are contained, is very large, tough, and hard, divided both above and below into a great many jags, which on every side cover and hold in the nuts, and these cups are very rough without, but smooth on the inside. Clusius first set this forth (having received it from Constantinople) by the name of *Avellana pumila byzantina*.

The Place.

The Hazel trees do commonly grow in woods and in dankish untoiled places: they are also set in orchards, the nuts whereof are better, and of a sweeter taste, and be most commonly red within.

The Time.

The catkins or aglets come forth very timely, before winter be fully past, and fall away in March or April, so soon as the leaves come forth: the nuts be ripe in August.

The Names.

This shrub is called in Latin, *Corylus*: in Greeke, *Karua Pontika*, that is, *Nux Pontica*, or Pontic nut: in High Dutch, *Hasel strauk*: in Low Dutch, *Haseleer*: in English, Hazel tree, and Filbert tree; but the Filbert tree is properly that which groweth in gardens and orchards, and whose fruit is commonly wholly covered over with the husk and the shell is thinner.

The nut is named in Latin, *Nux pontica*, *Nux tenuis*, *Nux parva*: it is also called *Nux prænesti*, *Nux heracleotica*, and commonly *Nux avellana*, by which name it is usually known to the apothecaries: in High Dutch, *Hasel Nus*: in Low Dutch, *Hasel*

Noten: in Italian, *Nocciuole, Avellane, Nocelle*; in French, *Noisettes & Noiselles*: in Spanish, *Avellanas*: in English, Hazelnut, and Filbert.

These nuts that have their skin red are the garden and planted nuts, and the right Pontic nuts or filberts: they are called in High Dutch, **Nhusnus**, and **Kotnus**: in Low Dutch, **Koode Hasel Noten**: in English, filberts, and red filberts.

The other nuts which be white are judged to be wild.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Hazelnuts newly gathered, and not as yet dry, contain in them a certain superfluous moisture, by reason whereof they are windy: not only the new gathered nuts, but the dry also, be very hard of digestion; for they are of an earthy and cold essence, and of an hard and sound substance, for which cause also they very slowly pass through the belly, therefore they are troublesome and clogging to the stomach, cause headache, especially when they be eaten in too great a quantity.

B. The kernels of nuts made into milk like almonds do mightily bind the belly, and are good for the lask and the bloody flux.[Thus our author, but see E below]

C. The same doth cool exceedingly in hot fevers and burning agues.

D. The catkins are cold and dry, and likewise binding: they also stay the lask.

E. The kernels of nuts rather cause than cure the bloody flux and lasks, wherefore they are not to be used in such diseases. [added by Johnson]

CHAP. 90. Of the Walnut Tree.

Nux Juglans.
The Walnut tree.



Fig. 2025. Walnut

The Description.

This is a great tree with a thick and tall body: the bark is somewhat green, and tending to the colour of ashes, and oftentimes full of clefts: the boughs spread themselves far abroad: the leaves consist of five or six fastened to one rib, like those of the Ash tree, and with one standing on the top, which be broader and longer than the particular leaves of the Ash, smooth also, and of a strong smell: the catkins or aglets come forth before the nuts: these nuts do grow hard to the stalk of the leaves, by couples, or by three & three; which at the first when they be yet but tender have a sweet smell, and be covered with a green husk: under that is a woody shell in which the kernel is contained, being covered with a thin skin, parted almost into four parts with a woody skin as it were: the inner pulp whereof is white, sweet and pleasant to the taste; and that is when it is new gathered, for after it is dry it becometh oily and rank.

The Place.

The Walnut tree groweth in fields near common highways, in a fat and fruitful ground, and in orchards: it prospereth on high fruitful banks, it loveth not to grow in watery places.

The Time.

The leaves together with the catkins come forth in the Spring: the nuts are gathered in August.

The Names.

The tree is called in Greek, *Carya*: in Latin, *Nux*, which name doth signify both the tree and the fruit: in High Dutch, *Nusbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Notte boom*, and

Nootelaer: in French, *Noisier:* in Spanish, *Nogueyra:* in English, Walnut tree, and of some, Walsh nut tree.

The nut is called in Greek, *caryon basilikon*, that is to say, *nux regia*, or the kingly nut: it is likewise named *nux inglans*, as though you should say *Iovis glans*, Jupiter's acorn; or *iuvans glans*, the helping acorn: and of divers, *persica nux*, or the Persian nut: in High Dutch, *Welsch Nusz*, and *Baumnus*; in Low Dutch, *Dokernoten*, *Walsch Noten*: in Italian, *nocci*: in French, *noix*: in Spanish, *nuezes* and *nous*: in English, walnut; and of some, walsh nut.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The fresh kernels of the nuts newly gathered are pleasant to the taste: they are a little cold, and have no small moisture, which is not perfectly concocted: they be hard of digestion, and nourish little: they slowly descend.

B. The dry nuts are hot and dry, and those more which become oily and rank: these be very hurtful to the stomach, and besides that they be hardly concocted, they increase choler, cause headache, and be hurtful for the chest, and for those that be troubled with the cough.

C. Dry nuts taken fasting with a fig and a little Rue withstand poison, prevent and preserve the body from the infection of the plague, and being plentifully eaten they drive worms forth of the belly.

D. The green and tender nuts boiled in sugar and eaten as succade, are a most pleasant and delectable meat, comfort the stomach, and expel poison.

E. The oil of walnuts made in such manner as oil of almonds, maketh smooth the hands and face, and taketh away scales or scurf, black and blue marks that come of stripes or bruises.

F. Milk made of the kernels, as almond milk is made, cooleth and pleaseth the appetite of the languishing sick body.

G. With onions, salt, and honey, they are good against the biting of a mad dog or man, if they be laid upon the wound.

H. Being both eaten, and also applied, they heal in short time, as Dioscorides saith, gangrenes, carbuncles, ægilops, and the pilling away of the hair: this also is effectually done by the oil that is pressed out of them, which is of thin parts, digesting and heating.

I. The outward green husk of the nuts hath a notable binding faculty.

K. Galen devised and taught to make of the juice thereof a medicine for the mouth, singular good against all inflammations thereof.

L. The leaves and first buds have a certain binding quality, as the same author showeth; yet there doth abound in them an hot and dry temperature.

M. Some of the later physicians use these for baths and lotions for the body, in which they have a force to digest and also to procure sweat.

CHAP. 91. Of the Chestnut Tree.



Fig. 2026. Chestnut (1)

The Description.

1. The Chestnut tree is a very great and high tree: it casteth forth very many boughs: the body is thick, and sometimes of so great a compass as that two men can hardly fathom it: the timber or substance of the wood is sound and durable: the leaves be great, rough, wrinkled, nicked in the edges, and greater than the particular leaves of the Walnut tree. The blowings or catkins be slender, long, and green: the fruit is enclosed in round a rough and prickly husk like to an hedgehog or urchin, which opening itself doth let fall the ripe fruit or nut. This nut is not round, but flat on the one side, smooth, and sharp pointed: it is covered with a hard shell, which is tough and very smooth, of a dark brown colour: the meat or inner substance of the nut is hard and white, and covered with a thin skin which is under the shell.

2 *Castanea Equina cum flore.*
Horse Chestnut tree in floure,



Castanea Equina fructus.

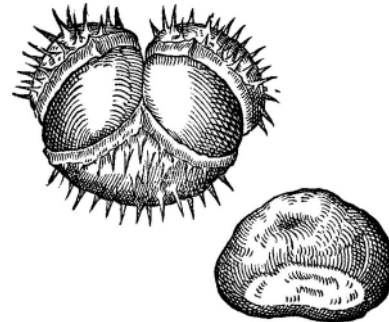


Fig. 2027. Horse Chestnut (2)

Fig. 2028. Horse Chestnut Fruit (2)

2. The Horse Chestnut groweth likewise to be a very great tree, spreading his great and large arms or branches far abroad, by which means it maketh a very good cool shadow. These branches are garnished with many beautiful leaves, cut or divided into five, six, or seven sections or divisions, like to the Cinquefoil, or rather like the leaves of *Ricinus*, but bigger. The flowers grow at the top of the stalks, consisting of four small leaves like the Cherry blossom, which turn into round rough prickly heads like the former, but more sharp and harder: the nuts are also rounder. The flowers of this, saith Clusius (whose figure of them I here give you) come out of the bosom of the leaf which is the uppermost of the branch, and they are many in number growing upon pretty long footstalks, consisting each of them of four white leaves of no great bigness; the two uppermost area little larger than the rest, having round purple spots in their middles: our of the middle of the flower come forth many yellowish threads with golden pendants. The fruit is contained in a prickly husk that opens in three parts, and it is rounder and not so sharp pointed as the ordinary Chestnut, neither under the outter coat hath it any peeling within as the other hath, neither is it of so good a taste.

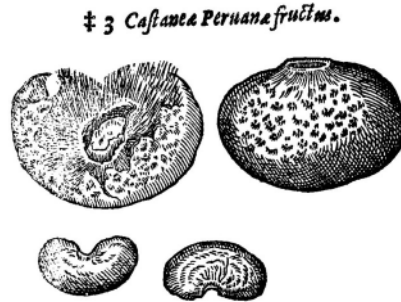


Fig. 2029. American Chestnut Fruit (3)

3. This American Chestnut is almost round, but that it is a little flatted on the sides, especially whereas it is fastened to the stalk: the outer coat is sufficiently thick, yet brittle, and as it were fungous, of a brownish yellow colour: under this are abundance of small yet stiff prickles, fast sticking to the shell that contains the kernel: the shell itself is brownish, not thick, but tough and hard to break, smooth and shining on the inside, wherein is contained a kernel of the bigness and colour of an hare's kidney, white within, and sweet in taste like an almond or the common Chestnut. Clusius calls this *Castanea peruana*, or Chestnut of Peru; and he saith he had it from the famous Geographer Abraham Ortelius, who had it sent him by Benedictus Arias Montanus.

The Place.

The first grows on mountains and shadowy places, and many times in the valleys: they love a soft and black soil. There be sundry woods of Chestnuts in England, as a mile and a half from Feversham in Kent, and in sundry other places: in some countries they be greater and pleasanter: in others smaller, and of worse taste.

The Horse Chestnut groweth in Italy, and in sundry places of the East countries. It is now growing with Mr. Tradescant at South Lambeth.

The Time.

The blowings or aglets come forth with the leaves in April; but the nuts later, and be not ripe till autumn.

The Names.

The Chestnut tree bears the name of the nut both in Greek and Latin: in High Dutch *Kestenbaum*, and *Kastanibaum*: in Low Dutch, *Castaniboom*: in French, *Castagnier*: in English, Chestnut tree.

The nut is called in Greek, *Kastenon*: in Latin, *Castanea*, *Iovis glans*, *Sardinia glans*: in High Dutch, *Kesten*: in Low Dutch, *Castanien*: in Italian, *Castagne*: in French, *Chastaigne*: in Spanish, *Marones*, *Castanas*: in English, Chestnut: the greater nuts be named of the Italians, *Marroni*: of the French men and of divers base Almaines, *Marons*.

The Horse Chestnut is called in Latin, *Castanea equina*: in English, Horse Chestnut, for that the people of the East countries do with the fruit thereof cure their horses of the cough, shortness of breath, and such like diseases.

The Temperature and Virtues

A. Our common chestnuts are very dry and binding, and be neither hot nor cold, but in a mean between both: yet have they in them a certain windiness, and by reason of this, unless the shell be first cut, they skip suddenly with a crack out of the fire whilst they be roasting.

B. Of all the acorns, saith Galen, the chestnuts are the chiefest, and do only of all the wild fruits yield to the body commendable nourishment; but they slowly descend, they be hardly concocted, they make a thick blood, and engender wind: they also stay the belly, especially if they be eaten raw.

C. Being boiled or roasted they are not of so hard digestion, they more easily descend, and are less windy, yet they also make the body costive.

D. Some affirm, that of raw chestnuts dried, and afterwards turned into meal, there is made a kind of bread: yet it must needs be, that this should be dry and brittle, hardly concocted, and very slow in passing through the belly; but this bread may be good against the lask and bloody flux.

E. An electuary of the meal of Chestnuts and honey is very good against the cough and spitting of blood.

F. The bark of the Chestnut tree boiled in wine and drunk, stops the lask, the bloody flux, and all other issues of blood.

CHAP. 92. Of the Beech Tree.



Fig. 2030. Beech

The Description

The Beech is an high tree, with boughs spreading oftentimes in manner of a circle, and with a thick body having many arms: the bark is smooth: the timber is white, hard, and very profitable: the leaves be smooth, thin, broad, and lesser than those of the black Poplar: the catkins or blowings be also lesser and shorter than those of the Birch tree, and yellow: the fruit or mast is contained in a husk or cup that is prickly, and rough bristled, yet not so much as that of the Chestnut: which fruit being taken forth of the shells or urchin husks, be covered with a soft and smooth skin like in colour and smoothness to the chestnuts, but they be much lesser, and of another form, that is to say, triangled or three-cornered: the kernel within is sweet, with a certain astriction or binding quality: the roots be few, and grow not deep, and little lower than under the turf.

The Place.

The Beech tree loveth a plain and open country, and groweth very plentifully in many forests and desert places of Sussex, Kent, and sundry other countries.

The Time.

The Beech flowereth in April and May, and the fruit is ripe in September, at what time the deer do eat the same very greedily, as greatly delighting therein; which hath caused foresters and huntsmen to call it Buck-mast.

The Names.

The tree is called in Latin, *Fagus*: in High Dutch, *Buchbaum*, or *Buch*: in Low Dutch, *Bukenboom*: in Italian, *Faggi*: in Spanish, *Haia*, *Faia*, and *Fax*: in French, *Fau*, or *Hestre*: in English, Beech tree, Beech-mast, and Buck-mast.

The fruit is called in Latin, *Nuces Fagi*: in Low Dutch, *Bueken nootkens*: in French, *Faine*: in English, Beech-mast. Dioscorides reckons the Beech among the acorn trees; and yet is the mast nothing at all like to an acorn. Of Theophrastus it is called *Oxya*: of Gala, *Siscina*.

Pliny also makes mention of this tree, but under the name of *Ostrya* (if so be instead of *Ostrya* we must not read *Oxya*) *lib. 13 cap. 21*. It bringeth forth (saith he, meaning Greece) the tree *Ostrys*, which they likewise call *Ostrya*, firm, growing alone among watery stones, like to the Ash tree in bark and boughs, with leaves like those of the Pear tree, but some what longer and thicker, and with wrinkled cuts which run quite through, with a seed like in colour to a Chestnut, and not unto barley: the wood is hard and firm, which being brought into the house there follows hard travail of child, and miserable deaths; as it is reported; and therefore it is to be forborne, and not used as firewood, if Pliny's copies be not corrupted.

The Temperature.

The leaves of Beech do cool: the kernel of the nut is somewhat moist.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves of Beech are very profitably applied unto hot swellings, blisters, and excoriations; and being chewed they are good for chapped lips, and pain of the gums.

B. The kernels or mast within are reported to ease the pain of the kidneys proceeding of the stone, if they be eaten, and to cause the gravel and sand the easier to come forth. With these, mice and squirrels are greatly delighted, who do mightily increase by feeding thereon: swine also be fattened herewith, and certain other beasts also. Deer do feed thereon very greedily: they be likewise pleasant to thrushes and pigeons.

C. Petrus Crescentius writeth, That the ashes of the wood is good to make glass with.

D. The water that is found in the hollowness of Beeches cureth the naughty scurf, tetter, and scabs of men, horses, kine, and sheep, if they be wasled therewith.

CHAP. 93. Of the Almond Tree.

Amygdalus.
The Almond tree.



Fig. 2031. The Almond Tree

The Description.

The Almond tree is like to the Peach tree, yet is it higher, bigger, of longer continuance: the leaves be very long, sharp pointed, snipped about the edges like those of the Peach tree: the flowers be alike: the fruit is also like a peach, having on one side a cleft, with a soft skin without, and covered with a thin cotton; but under this there is none, or very little pulp, which is hard like a gristle not eaten: the nut or stone within is longer than that of the peach, not so rugged, but smooth; in which is contained the kernel, in taste sweet, and many times bitter: the root of the tree groweth deep: the gum which soaketh out hereof is like that of the Peach tree.

There are divers sorts of Almonds, differing in largeness and taste: we commonly have three or four sorts brought to us, a large sweet Almond, vulgarly termed a Jordan almond and a lesser, called a Valence almond: a bitter almond of the bigness of the Valence almond, and sometimes, another bitter one less than it.

The Place.

The natural place of the Almond is in the hot regions, yet we have them in our London gardens and orchards in great plenty.

The Time

The Almond flowereth betimes with the Peach: the fruit is ripe in August.

The Names.

The tree is called in Latin, *Amygdalus*: in French, *Amandier*: in English, Almond tree.

The fruit is called in Latin, *Amygdalum*: in shops, *Amygdala*: in High Dutch, *Amandel*: in Low Dutch, *Amandelen*: in Italian, *Mandole*: in Spanish, *Almendras*, *Amelles*, and *Amendoas*: in French, *Amandes*: in English, Almond.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Sweet almonds when they be dry be moderately hot; but the bitter ones are hot and dry in the second degree. There is in both of them a certain fat and oily substance, which is drawn out by pressing.

B. Sweet almonds being new gathered are pleasant to the taste, they yield some kind of nourishment, but the same gross and earthy, and grosser than those that be dry, and not as yet withered. These do likewise slowly descend, especially being eaten without their skins; for even as the husks or branny parts of corn do serve to drive down the gross excrements of the belly, so do likewise the skins or husks of the almonds: therefore those that be blanched do so slowly descend, as that they do withal bind the belly; whereupon they are given with good success to those that have the lask or the bloody flux.

C. There is drawn out of sweet almonds, with liquor added, a white juice like milk, which over and besides that it nourisheth, and is good for those that are troubled with the lask and bloody flux, it is profitable for those that have the pleurisy and spit up filthy matter, as Alexander Trallianus witnesseth: for there is likewise in the almonds an opening and concocting quality, with a certain cleansing faculty, by which they are medicinable to the chest and lungs, or lights, and serve for the raising up of phlegm and rotten humours.

D. Almonds taken before meat do stop the belly, and nourish but little; notwithstanding many excellent meats and medicines are therewith made for sundry griefs, yea very delicate and wholesome meats, as almond butter, cream of almonds, marchpane, and such like, which dry and stay the belly more than the extracted juice or milk; and they are also as good for the chest and lungs.

E. They do serve also to make the physical barley water, and barley cream, which are given in hot fevers, as also for other sick and feeble persons, for their further refreshing and nourishments.

F. The oil which is newly pressed out of the sweet almonds is a mitigator of pain and all manner of aches. It is given to those that have the pleurisy, being first let blood; but especially to those that are troubled with the stone of the kidneys; it slackens the passages of the urine, and maketh them glib or slippery, and more ready to suffer the stone to have free passage: it maketh the belly soluble, and therefore it is likewise used for the colic.

G. It is good for women that are newly delivered; for it quickly removeth the throes which remain after their delivery.

H. The oil of almonds makes smooth the hands and face of delicate persons, and cleanseth the skin from all spots, pimples, and lentils.

I. Bitter Almonds do make thin and open, they remove stoppings out of the liver and spleen, therefore they be good against pain in the sides: they make the body soluble, provoke urine, bring down the menses, help the strangury, and cleanse forth of the chest and lungs clammy humours: if they be mixed with some kind of lohoch or medicine to lick on: with starch they stay the spitting of blood.

L. And it is reported that five or six being taken fasting do keep a man from being drunk.

M. These also cleanse and take away spots and blemishes in the face, and in other parts of the body; they mundify and make clean foul eating ulcers.

N. With honey they are laid upon the biting of mad dogs; being applied to the temples with vinegar or oil of roses, they take away the headache, as Dioscorides writeth.

O. They are also good against the cough and shortness of wind.

P. They are likewise good for those that spit blood, if they be taken with the fine flour of *Amylum*.

Q. There is also pressed out of these an oil which provoketh urine, but especially if a few scorpions be drowned, and steeped therein.

R. With oil it is singular good for those that have the stone, and cannot easily make water: but with extremity of pain, if the share and place between the cods and fundament be anointed therewith.

S. Dioscorides saith, that the gum doth heat and bind, which qualities notwithstanding are not perceived in it.

T. It helpeth them that spit blood, not by a binding faculty, but through the clamminess of his substance, and that is by closing up of the passages and pores, and so may it also cure old coughs, and mitigate extreme pains that proceed of the stone, and especially take away the sharpness of urine, if it be drunk with bastard, or with any other sweet potion, as with the decoction of Liquorice, or of raisins of the sun. The same doth likewise kill tetter in the outward parts of the body (as Dioscorides addeth) if it be dissolved in vinegar.

CHAP. 94. Of the Peach Tree.

The Kinds.

There are divers sorts of Peaches besides the four here set forth by our author, but the trees do not much differ in shape, but the difference chiefly consists in the fruit, whereof I will give you the names of the choice ones and such as are to be had from my friend Mr. Millen in Old Street, which are these; two sorts of nutmeg Peaches; The Queen's Peach; The Newington Peach; The grand Carnation Peach; The Carnation Peach; The Black Peach; the Melocotone; the White; The Romane; The Alberza; The Island Peach; Peach du Troy. These are all good ones. He hath also of that kind of Peach which some call *Nucipersica* or Nectarines, these following kinds; the Roman red, the best of fruits; the bastard Red; the little dainty green; the yellow; the white; the russet, which is not so good as the rest. Those that would see any fuller discourse of these may have recourse to the late work of Mr. John Parkinson, where they may find more varieties, and more largely handled, and therefore not necessary for me in this place to insist upon them.

Persica alba.
The white Peach.



Fig. 2032. The Peach Tree (1)

The Description.

1. The Peach tree is a tree of no great bigness: it sendeth forth divers boughs, which be so brittle, as oftentimes they are broken with the weight of the fruit or with the wind. The leaves be long, nicked in the edges, like almost to those of the Walnut tree, and in taste bitter: the flowers be of a light purple colour. The fruit or peaches be round, and have as it were a chink or cleft on the one side; they are covered with a soft and thin down or hairy cotton, being white without, and of a pleasant taste; in the middle whereof is a rough or rugged stone, wherein is contained a kernel like unto the Almond; the meat about the stone is of a white colour. The root is tough and yellowish.

2. The Red Peach tree is likewise a tree of no great bigness: it also sendeth forth divers boughs or branches, which be very brittle. The leaves be long, and nicked in the edges like to the precedent. The flowers be also like unto the former; the fruit or peaches be round, of a red colour on the outside; the meat likewise about the stone is of a gallant red colour. These kinds of peaches are very like to wine in taste, and therefore marvellous pleasant.

3. *Persica præcocia*, or the Avant-Peach tree is like unto the former, but his leaves are greater and larger. The fruit or peaches be of a russet colour on the one side, and on the other side next unto the sun of a red colour, but much greater than the Red Peach: the stones whereof are like unto the former: the pulp or meat within is of a golden yellow colour, and of a pleasant taste.

4. *Persica lutea*, or the Yellow Peach tree, is like unto the former in leaves and flowers: his fruit is of a yellow colour on the outside, and likewise on the inside, harder than the rest: in the middle of the peach is a woody, hard, and rough stone, full of crests and gutters, in which doth lie a kernel much like to that of the Almond, and with such a like skin: the substance within is white, and in taste something bitter. The fruit hereof is of greatest pleasure, and best taste of all the other of his kind; although there be found at this day divers other sorts that are of very good taste, not remembered of the ancients, or set down by the later writers, whereof to speak particularly, would not be greatly to our pretended purpose, considering we hasten to an end.

5. There is also kept in some of our choice gardens a kind of Peach which hath a very double and beautiful flower, but it is seldom succeeded by any fruit; they call this, *Persica flore pleno*, The Double-Blossomed Peach.

The Place.

They are set and planted in gardens and vineyards: I have them all in my garden, with many other sorts.

The Time.

The Peach tree soon cometh up: it bears fruit the third or fourth year after it is planted, and it soon decayeth, and is not of long continuance; it flowereth in April, or a little while after that the leaves appear, and hath his fruit ripe in September.

The Names.

The Peach tree is called in Latin, *Malus persica*, and *Persica*: in High Dutch, *Persichboom*: In Low Dutch, *Perse boom*: in French, *Perscher*: in English, Peach tree.

The fruit, is named in Latin, *Malum persicum*, and *Persicum*: in High Dutch, *Pfersing*: in Low Dutch, *Persen*: in Italy, *Pesche*: in Spanish, *Pexegos*: in French, *Pisches*: in English, Peach.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Peaches be cold and moist, and that in the second degree, they have a juice and also a substance, that doth easily putrefy, which yieldeth no nourishment, but bringeth hurt, especially if they be eaten after other meats; for then they cause the other meats to putrefy. But they are less hurtful if they be taken first; for by reason that they are moist and slippery, they easily and quickly descend; and by making the belly slippery, they cause other meats to slip down the sooner.

B. The kernels of the peaches be hot and dry, they open and cleanse; they are good for the stoppings of the liver and spleen.

C. Peaches before they be ripe do stop the lask, but being ripe they loose the belly, and engender naughty humour, for they are soon corrupted in the stomach.

D. The leaves of the Peach tree do open the stopping of the liver, and do gently loosen the belly: and being applied plasterwise unto the navel of young children, they kill the worms, and drive them forth.

E. The same leaves boiled in milk, do kill the worms in children very speedily.

F. The same being dried, and cast upon green wounds, cure them.

G. The flowers of the Peach tree infused in warm water for the space of ten or twelve hours, and strained, and more flowers put to the said liquor to infuse after the same manner, and so iterated six or eight times, and strained again, then as much sugar as it will require added to the same liquor and boiled unto the consistence or thickness of a syrup, and two spoonfuls hereof taken, doth so singularly well purge the belly, that there is neither Rhubarb, Agaric, nor any other purger comparable unto it; for this purgeth down waterish humours mightily, and yet without grief or trouble, either to the stomach, or lower parts of the body.

H. The kernel within the peach stone stamped small, and boiled with vinegar until it be brought to the form of an ointment, is good to restore and bring again the hair of such as be troubled with the alopecia.

I. There is drawn forth of the kernels of peaches with Pennyroyal water, a juice like unto milk; which is good for those that have the apoplexy: if the same be oftentimes held in the mouth it draweth forth water and recovereth the speech.

K. The gum is of a mean temperature, but the substance thereof is tough and clammy, by reason whereof it dulleth the sharpness of thin humours: it serveth in a lohoch or licking medicine for those that be troubled with the cough, and have rotten lungs, and stoppeth the spitting and raising up of blood, and also stayeth other fluxes.

CHAP. 95. Of the Apricot Tree.



Fig. 2033. Greater Apricot Tree (1)

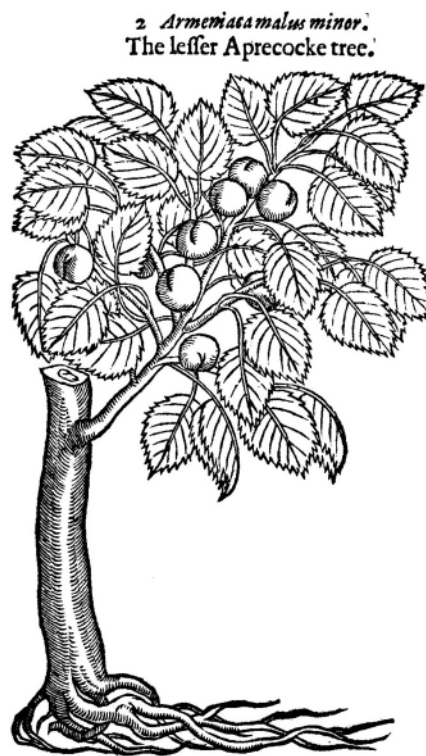


Fig. 2034. Lesser Apricot Tree (2)

The Description.

1. This tree is greater than the Peach tree, and hath a bigger body, it lasteth longer, especially if it be grafted or inoculated: the leaves hereof are broad, and sharp pointed, like those of black Poplar, but lesser, and coming more near to the leaves of birch, nicked in the edges: the flowers are somewhat white: the fruit round like a peach, yellow within and without, in which doth lie a brown stone, nothing rough at all as is that of the Peach, shorter also, and lesser, in which is included a sweet kernel.

2. We have another sort of Apricot, whose trunk or body is equal with the other in greatness, it is like also in leaves and brittle branches: his time of flowering, flourishing, and manner of growing accordeth: the only point wherein they differ is, that this tree bringeth forth less fruit, and not so good in taste; in every other respect it is like.

Of this also Mr Parkinson hath set forth divers varieties; and my forementioned friend Mr Millen hath these five sorts; the common, the long and great, the Musk, the Barbary and the early Apricot.

The Place.

These trees do grow in my garden, and nowadays in many other gentlemen's gardens throughout all England.

The Time.

They flower and flourish in April, and their fruit is ripe in July.

The Names.

This tree is called in Greek, *Melea Armeniake*: in Latin, *Malus Armeniaca*: in English, Apricot, Aprecock tree.

The fruit is named, *Melon Armeniakon*, and of divers *Prekokkia* or *Berikokkia*, which be words corrupted from the Latin; for *Præcox* in Latin is divers times called *Præcoquum*: it is named *Malum Armeniacum*, and commonly *Armeniacum*: it is called in High Dutch, *Molletteu Mollelin*, *S. Johans Pfersing*: in Low Dutch, *Vroege Persen*, *Avnt Persen*: in Italian, *Armeniache*, *Bacoche*, *Grifomele*, *Moniache*: in French, *Abricoz*: in Spanish, *Alvarcoques*, *Alvarchigas*, and *Albercocs*: in English, Apricot, Abrecock, and of some, *Aprecox*.

Galen seemeth to make a difference between *Precocia* and *Armeniaca*, in his book *Of the Faculties of Nourishments*, preferring *Precocia* before *Armeniaca*; yet he doth confess that both of them be called *Armeniaca*: others pronounce them Armenia with four syllables. And in his book *Of the Faculties of Simple Medicines* he affirmeth, that both the fruit and the tree are called *prekokkion*: divers of the later physicians do between these also make a difference, saying, that the greater ones and those that are grafted be *Armeniaca* (which the French men call *Avant Perses*) and the lesser *Precocia*: in French, *Abricoz*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Aprecocks are cold and moist in the second degree, but yet not so moist as peaches, for which cause they do not so soon or easily putrefy; and they are also more wholesome for the stomach, and pleasant to the taste; yet do they likewise putrefy, and yield but little nourishment, and the same cold, moist, and full of excrements: being taken after meat they corrupt and putrefy in the stomach; being first eaten before other meat they easily descend, and cause the other meats to pass down the sooner, like as also the peaches do.

B. The kernel within the same is sweet, and nothing at all like in faculty to that of the Peach.

C. The virtues of the leaves of this tree are not as yet found out.

CHAP. 96. Of the Pomegranate Tree.

The Kinds.

As there be sundry sorts of Apples, Pears, Plums, and such like fruits; so there are two sorts of Pomegranates, the garden and the wild, and a third sort which is barren and fruitless: the fruit of the garden Pomegranate is of three sorts; one having a sour juice or liquor; another having a very sweet and pleasant liquor, and the third the taste of wine: of the wild also there be two sorts, and the difference between them is no more than betwixt crabs and wildings, which are both wild kinds of Apples: therefore the description of the garden Pomegranate shall suffice for the rest.

1 *Malus Granata, sine Punica.*
The Pomegranat tree.



Fig. 2035. Pomegranate (1)

The Description.

1. The manured Pomegranate tree groweth up to the height of a hedge tree, being seven or eight cubits high, having many pliant and twiggy branches, very limber, tough, and of a brown colour: whereon are set very many leaves in shape like those of the Privet, but more like those of the Myrtle tree, of a bright shining green colour tending to yellowness: amongst which there stand certain sharp thorns confusedly set, and likewise hollow flowers like unto the hedge Rose, indented on the edges like a star, of a carnation colour, and very single: after which cometh the fruit, covered with a hard bark, of an overworn purplish colour, full of grains and kernels, which after they be ripe are of a gallant crimson colour, and full of juice, which differereth in taste according to the soil, climate, and country where they grow; some be sweet, others sour, and the third are in a middle between them both, having the taste of wine.

2 *Malus Punica sylvestris.*
The wilde Pomegranat.



Fig. 2036. Wild Pomegranate (2)

Balustia, sine Pleni flores Gran. syl.
The double floures of wild Pomegranat.



Fig. 2037. Double Flowers of Wild Pomegranate.

2. The wild Pomegranate tree is like the other in leaves and twiggy branches, but it is more prickly and horrid: of this there are two sorts, the one having such flowers & fruit as the tame Pomegranate; the other bearing flowers very double, as may appear by the figure, which wither and fall away, leaving no fruit behind them, as the double flowered Cherry doth, and divers other herbs and trees also; & it is altogether barren of fruit: of this Dioscorides makes sundry sorts, differing in colour: one is white, saith he; another yellowish red, and a third sort of the colour of the Rose: this with red flowers is best known among the apothecaries.

The Place.

Pomegranates grow in hot countries toward the South, in Italy, Spain, and chiefly in the kingdom of Granada, which is thought to be so named of the great multitude of Pomegranates, which be commonly called *Granata*: they grow in a number of places also without manuring: yet being manured they prosper better; for in gardens, vineyards, orchards, and other like husbanded grounds they come up more cheerfully: I have recovered divers young trees hereof, by sowing of the seed or grains, of the height of three or four cubits, attending God's leisure for flowers and fruit.

The Time.

The Pomegranate flowereth in the months of May and June: the fruit is ripe in the end of August.

The Names.

The Pomegranate tree is called in Latin, *Malus punica*: in Greek, of the Athenians, *Roa*, and *Roia*, as Galen saith: in English, Pomegranate tree: the fruit is also

named *Roa*, or *Roia*, in Latin, *Malum Punicum*; in shops, *Malum*, or *Pomum Granatum*; in High Dutch, *Granatopffel*: in Low Dutch *Gratappel*: in Italian, *Melagrano*, and *Pomo Granato*: in Spanish, *Granadas*, and *Romanas*: in French, *Pommes Granades*: in English, Pomegranate.

The flower of the fruitful Pomegranate tree is called of the Grecians, *Kytinos*: which is notwithstanding properly the cup of the flower: the Latins name it also *Cytinus*.

The flower of the wild and barren Pomegranate tree is called *Balaystion*: the apothecaries do likewise term it *Balaustium*.

The peel or rind of the Pomegranate which is so much in use, is named in Greek *Sidion*: in Latin; *Malicorium*, and *Sidium*: in shops it is called *Cortex granatorum*, or Pomegranate Peel.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The juicy grains of the Pomegranate are good to be eaten, having in them a meetly good juice: they are wholesome for the stomach, but they all contain in them a thin and small nourishment, or none at all.

B. The sweet ones be not so cold as the rest, but they easily cause hot swellings to arise, and they are not so much commended for agues..

C. The sour ones, and especially if they be withal something harsh, do evidently cool, dry, and something bind.

D. They are good for the heartburn, they repress and stay the overmuch vomiting of choler, called the felony: they are a remedy against the bloody flux, aptness to vomit, and vomit itself.

E. There is made of the juice of these sour Pomegranates a syrup, which serveth for the same purposes, and is also many times very profitable against the longing of women with child, unless the coldness of the stomach be a hindrance thereunto.

F. The seeds of the grains, and especially of the sour Pomegranate, being dried, do likewise cool and bind.

G. They stop the flux, stay vomiting, and stanch the spitting up of blood, they strengthen the stomach.

H. Of the same effect be the flowers, both of the tame and wild Pomegranate tree, being like to the seeds in temperature and virtues.

I. They fasten the teeth, and strengthen the gums, if the same be washed therewith.

K. They are good against burstings that come by falling down of the guts, if they be used in plasters and applied.

L. The rind or peel is not only like in faculty to the seeds, and both the sorts of flowers, but also more available; for it cooleth and bindeth more forceably; it bringeth down the hot swellings of the almonds in the throat, being used in a gargarism or a lotion for the throat, and it is a singular remedy for all things that need cooling and binding.

M. Dioscorides writeth, that there is also gathered a juice out of both those sorts of flowers, which is very like in faculty and virtue to *Hypocistis*, as the same author affirmeth.

N. The blossoms of the tame and wild Pomegranates, as also the rind or shell thereof made into powder, and drunk in red wine, or boiled in red wine, and the decoction drunk, is good against the bloody flux, and all other issues of blood; yea it is good for women to sit over, & bathe themselves in the decoction hereof: these foresaid blossoms and shells are good also to put into restraining powders, for the stanching of blood in wounds.

O. The seeds or stones of pomegranates dried in the sun, and beaten to powder, are of like operation with the flowers: they stop the lask and all issues of blood in man or woman, being taken in the manner aforesaid.

CHAP. 97. Of the Quince Tree.

The Kinds

Columella maketh three kinds of Quinces, *Struthia*, *Chrysomeliana*, and *Mustela*, but what manner ones they be he doth not declare, notwithstanding we find divers sorts differing as well in form, as taste and substance of the fruit, whereof some have much core and many kernels, and others fewer.

Malus Cotonea.
The Quince tree.



Fig. 2038. Quince

The Description.

The Quince tree is not great, but groweth low, and many times in manner of a shrub: it is covered with a rugged bark, which hath on it now and then certain scales: it spreadeth his boughs in compass like other trees; about which stand leaves somewhat round, like those of the common Apple tree, green and smooth above, and underneath soft and white: the flowers be of a white purple colour: the fruit is like an apple, save that many times it hath certain embowed and dwelling divisions: it differeth in fashion and bigness; for some quinces are lesser and round thrust up together at the top with wrinkles, others longer and greater: the third sort be after a middle manner between both; they are all of them set with a thin cotton or frieze, and be of the colour of gold, and hurtful to the head by reason of their strong smell; they all likewise have a kind of choking taste: the pulp within is yellow, and the seed blackish, lying in hard skins, as do the kernels of other apples.

The Place.

The Quince tree groweth in gardens and orchards, and is planted oftentimes in hedges and fences belonging to gardens & vineyards: it delighteth to grow on plain and even grounds, and somewhat moist withal.

The Time.

These apples be ripe in the fall of the leaf, and chiefly in October.

The Names.

The tree is called in Latin, *Malus cotonea*: in English, Quince tree.

The fruit is named *Malum cotoneum*, *Pomum cydonium*, and many times *Cydonium*, without any addition; by which name it is made known to the apothecaries: it is called in High Dutch, *Quitten*, *Quittenopffel*, or *Kuttentopffel*: in Low Dutch, *Queappel*: in Italian, *Mele cotogne*: in Spanish, *Codoyons*, *Miembrilhos*, and *Marmellos*: in French, *Pomme de coing*, in English, Quince.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Quinces be cold and dry in the second degree, and also very much binding, especially when they be raw: they have likewise in them a certain superfluous and excremental moisture, which will not suffer them to lie long without rotting: they are seldom eaten raw: being roasted or baked they be more pleasant.

B. They strengthen the stomach, stay vomiting, stop lasks, and also the bloody flux.

C. They are good for those that spit up blood, or that vomit blood; and for women also that have too great plenty of their monthly courses.

D. Simeon Sethi writeth, that the woman with child, which eateth many quinces during the time of her breeding, shall bring forth wise children, and of good understanding.

E. The marmalade, or cotiniate, made of quinces and sugar, is good and profitable for the strengthening of the stomach, that it may retain and keep the meat therein until it be perfectly digested: it likewise stayeth all kinds of fluxes, both of the belly and other parts, and also of blood: which cotiniate is made in this manner:

F. Take fair quinces, pare them, cut them in pieces, and cast away the core, then put unto every pound of quinces a pound of sugar, and to every pound of sugar a pint of water: these must be boiled together over a still fire till they be very soft, then let it be strained or rather rubbed through a strainer, or an hairy sieve, which is better, and then set it over the fire to boil again, until it be stiff, and so box it up, and as it cooleth put thereto a little Rose water, and a few grains of Musk, well mingled together, which will give a goodly taste unto the cotiniate. This is the way to make marmalade:

G. Take whole quinces and boil them in water until they be as soft as a scalded codling or apple, then peel off the skin, and cut off the flesh, and stamp it in a stone mortar; then strain it as you did the cotiniate; afterward put it into a pan to dry, but not to seethe at all: and unto every pound of the flesh of quinces, put three quarters of a pound of sugar, and in the cooling you may put in rose water and a little Musk, as was said before.

H. There is boiled with quinces oil which therefore is called in Greek melinon, or oil of quinces, which we use, saith Dioscorides, so oft as we have need of a binding thing.

I. The seed of quinces tempered with water, doth make a mucilage, or a thing like jelly, which being held in the mouth, is marvellous good to takeaway the roughness of the tongue in hot burning fevers.

K. The same is good to be laid upon burnings or scaldings, and to be put into clysters against the bloody flux; for it easeth the pain of the guts, and allayeth the sharpness of biting humours.

L. Many other excellent, dainty and wholesome confections are to be made of quinces, as jelly of quinces, and such odd conceits, which for brevity sake I do now let pass.

CHAP. 98. Of the Medlar Tree.

The Kinds.

There are divers sorts of Medlars, some greater, others lesser: some sweet, and others of a more harsh taste: some with much core, and many great stony kernels, others fewer: and likewise one of Naples called *Aronia*.

1 *Mespilus sativa.*
The manured Medlar.



Fig. 2039. Garden Medlar (1)

2 *Mespilus sativa altera.*
The other Garden Medlar.



Fig. 2040. The other Garden Medlar (2)

The Description.

The manured Medlar tree is not great, the body whereof is writhed, the boughs hard, not easy to be broken: the leaves be longer, yet narrower than those of the apple tree, dark green above, and somewhat whiter and hairy below: the flowers are white and great, having five leaves apiece: the fruit is small, round, and hath a broad compassed navel or crown at the top: the pulp or meat is at the first white, and so harsh or choking, that it cannot be eaten before it become soft; in which are contained five seeds or stones, which be flat and hard.

2. There is another which differeth from the last described, in that the leaves are longer and narrower, the stock hath no prickles upon it: the fruit also is larger and better tasted: in other respects it is like to the last described. This is the *Mespilus fructu prestantiore* of Tragus, and *Mespilus domestica* of Lobel.

3 *Mespilus Aronia.*
The Neapolitane Medlar.



Fig. 2041. Neapolitan Medlar (3)

‡ 4 *Chamaespilus.*
Dwarfe Medlar.



Fig. 2042. Dwarf Medlar (4)

3. The Neapolitan Medlar tree groweth to the height and greatness of an Apple tree, having many tough and hard boughs or branches, set with sharp thorns like the Whitethorn, or Hawthorn: the leaves are very much cut or jagged like the Hawthorn leaves, but greater, and more like Smallage or Parsley, which leaves before they fall from the tree do wax red: among these leaves come forth great tufts of flowers of a pale herby colour: which being past, there succeed small long fruit, lesser than the smallest Medlar, which at the first are hard, and green of colour, but when they be ripe, they are both soft and red, of a sweet and pleasant taste: wherein is contained three small hard stones, as in the former, which be the kernels or seeds thereof.

4. There is a dwarf kind of Medlar growing naturally upon the Alps, and hills of Narbonne, and on the rocks of Mount Baldus nigh Verona, which hath been by some of the best learned esteemed for a kind of Medlar: others, whose judgements cannot stand with truth or probability, have supposed it to be *Euonymus*, of the Alps: this dwarf Medlar groweth like a small hedge tree, of four or five cubits high, bearing many small twiggy wands or crops, beset with many slender leaves green above, and of a sky colour underneath, in show like to a dwarf Apple tree, but the fruit is very like the Haw, or fruit of the Whitethorn, and of a red colour. The flowers come forth in the spring three or four together, hollow, and of an herby colour, it grows in divers places of the Alps: it is the *Chamaespilum* of the *Adversaria* and the *Chamaespilus gesneri*, of Clusius.

The Place.

The Medlar trees do grow in orchards, and oftentimes in hedges among Briers and Brambles; being grafted in a Whitethorn it prospereth wonderful well, and bringeth

forth fruit twice or thrice bigger than those that are not grafted at all, almost as great as little apples: we have divers sorts of them in our orchards.

The Time.

It is very late before Medlars be ripe, which is in the end of October, but the flowers come forth timely enough.

The Names.

The first is called in Greek by Theophrastus *Mespilē*, in Latin, *Mespilus*: in High Dutch, *Mespelbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Mispelboome*: in French, *Nefflier*: in English, Medlar tree.

The apple or fruit is named in Greek, *Mespilon*: in Latin, *Mespilum*: in High Dutch, *Mespel*, in Low Dutch, *Mispele*: in Italian, *Nespolo*: in French, *Neffle*: in Spanish, *Nesperas*: in English, Medlar.

Dioscorides affirmeth, that this Medlar tree is called *Epimelis*, and of divers, *Sitanion*: Galen also in his book *Of the Faculties of Simple Medicines* nameth this *Epimelis*, which is called, as he saith, by the country men in Italy, *Unedo*, and groweth plentifully in Calabria; for under the name of *Mespilus*, or Medlar tree, he meaneth no other than *Tricoccus*, which is also named *Aronia*.

The Neapolitans' Medlar tree is called by Galen *Epimelis*.

The fruit hereof is called *Tricoccus*, of the three grains or stones that it hath: they of Naples call it *Azarolo*: and we may name it in English, three grain Medlar, or Neapolitan Medlar, or Medlar of Naples.

The Temperature.

The Medlars are cold, dry, and astringent; the leaves are of the same nature: the dwarf Medlar is dry, sharp, and astringent.

The Virtues.

A. Medlars do stop the belly, especially when they be green and hard, for after that they have been kept a while, so that they become soft and tender, they do not bind or stop so much, but are then more fit to be eaten.

B. The fruit of the three grain Medlar, is eaten both raw and boiled, and is more wholesome for the stomach.

C. These Medlars be oftentimes preserved with sugar or honey: and being so prepared they are pleasant and delightful to the taste.

D. Moreover, they are singular good for women with child: for they strengthen the stomach, and stay the loathsomeness thereof.

E. The stones or kernels of the medlars, made into powder and drunk, do break the stone, expel gravel, and procure urine.

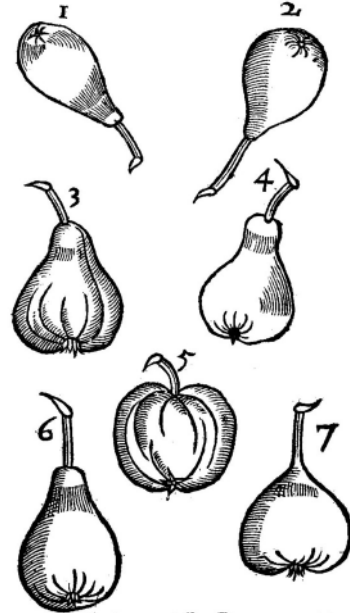
CHAP. 99. Of the Pear Tree.

Pirus superba, sive Katherina.
The Katherine Peare tree.



Fig. 2043. The Pear Tree

1 *Pyra Pracocia.* The Ienneting Peare.
2 *Pyra Iacobaa.* Saint Iames Peare.
3 *Pyrum regalē.* The Peare royall.



4 *Pyrum Palatinum.* The Burgomor Peare.
5 *Pyrum Cydonium.* The Quince peare.
6 *Pyrum Episcopatum.* The Bishops peare.
7 *Pyrum byemale.* The Winter peare.

Fig. 2044. Kinds of Pear(1-7)

The Description.

To write of Pears and Apples in particular, would require a particular volume: the stock or kindred of Pears are not to be numbered: every country hath his peculiar fruit: myself knows one curious in grafting and planting of fruits who hath in one piece of ground, at the point of three score sundry sorts of Pears, and those exceeding good, not doubting but if his mind had been to seek after multitudes, he might have gotten together the like number of those of worse kinds: besides the diversities of those that be wild, experience showeth sundry sorts: and therefore I think it not amiss to set down the figures of some few with their several titles, as well in Latin as English, and one general description for that, that might be said of many, which to describe apart, were to send an owl to Athens, or to number those things that are without number.

The General Description.

The Pear tree is for the most part higher than the Apple tree, having boughs not spread abroad, but growing up in height: the body is many times great: the timber or wood itself is very tractable or easy to be wrought upon, exceeding fit to make moulds or prints to be graven on, of colour tending to yellowness: the leaf is somewhat broad, finely nicked in the edges, green above, and somewhat whiter underneath: the flowers are white: the Pears, that is to say, the fruit, are for the most part long, and in form like a top; but in greatness, colour, form, and taste very much differing among themselves; they be also covered with skins or coats of sundry colours: the pulp or meat differeth,

as well in colour as taste: there is contained in them kernels, black when they be ripe: the root groweth straight down with some branches running aslope.

The Place.

The tame Pear trees are planted in orchards, as be the Apple trees, and by grafting, though upon wild stocks, come much variety of good and pleasant fruits. All these before specified, and many sorts more, and those most rare and good, are growing in the ground of Master Richard Pointer, a most cunning and curious grafter and planter of all manner of rare fruits, dwelling in a small village near London called Twickenham; and also in the ground of an excellent grafter and painful planter, Mr Henry Banbury, of Tothill Street near Westminster, and likewise in the ground of a diligent and most affectionate lover of plants Mr Warner near Hornsey down by London, and in divers other grounds about London. Most of the best Pears are at this time to be had with Mr John Millen in Old Street, in whose nursery are to be found the choicest fruits this kingdom yields.

The Time.

The flowers do for the most part come forth in April, the leaves afterward: all pears are not ripe at one time: some be ripe in July, others in August, and divers in September and later.

The Names.

The tame or orchard Pear tree is called in Latin, *Pyrus urbana*, or *cultiva*: in High Dutch, *Birbaum*, in Low Dutch, *Peerboom*: in French, *Porrier*.

The pear or fruit itself is called in Latin, *Pyrum*: in High Dutch, *Birn*: in Low Dutch, *Peere*: in Italian, *Pere*: in French, *Poyre*: in Spanish, *Peras*: in English, Pear.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Leaving the divers and sundry surnames of pears, let us come to the faculties which the physicians ought to know; which also vary according to the differences of their uses: for some pears are sweet, divers fat and unctuous, others sour, and most are harsh, especially the wild pears, and some consist of divers mixtures of tastes, and some having no taste at all, but as it were a waterish taste.

B. All pears are cold, and all have a binding quality and an earthy substance: but the choke pears and those that are harsh be more earthy, and the sweet ones less: which substance is so full of superfluous moisture in some, as that they cannot be eaten raw. All manner of pears do bind and stop the belly, especially the choke and harsh ones, which are good to be eaten of those that have the lask and the bloody flux.

C. The harsh and austere pears may with good success be laid upon hot swellings in the beginning, as may be the leaves of the tree, which do both bind and cool.

D. Wine made of the juice of pears called in English, perry, is soluble, purgeth those that are not accustomed to drink thereof, especially when it is new; notwithstanding it is as wholesome a drink being taken in small quantity as wine; it comforteth and warmeth the stomach, and causeth good digestion.

CHAP. 100. Of the Wild Pear Tree.

The Kinds.

As there be sundry kinds of the manured Pears, so are there sundry wild; whereof to write apart were to small purpose: therefore one description with their several titles shall be sufficient for their distinctions.



Fig. 2045. The Wild or Choke Pear (1)

¶ *Pyrus strangularium maius.*
The great Choke peare:

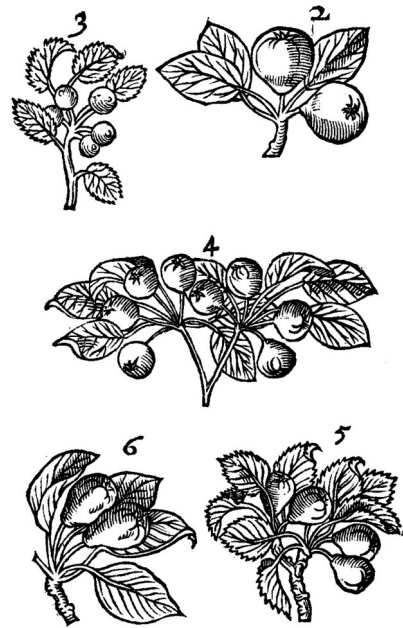


Fig. 2046. Kinds of Wild Pear (2-6)

The General Description

The Wild Pear tree grows likewise great, upright, full of branches, for the most part pyramid-like, or of the fashion of a steeple, not spread abroad as is the Apple or Crab tree: the timber of the trunk or body of the tree is very firm and solid, and likewise smooth, a wood very fit to make divers sorts of instruments of, as also the hafts of sundry tools to work withal; and likewise serveth to be cut into many kinds of moulds, not only such prints as these figures are made of, but also many sorts of pretty toys, for coifs, breast-plates, and such like, used among our English gentlewomen: the branches are smooth, covered with a blackish bark, very fragile or easy to break, whereon do grow leaves, in some greater, in other lesser; the flowers are like those of the manured Pear tree, yet some whiter than others: the fruit differ not in shape, yet some greater than others; but in taste they differ among themselves in divers points, some are sharp, sour, and of an austere taste; some more pleasant, others harsh and bitter, and some of such a choking taste, that they are not to be eaten of hogs & wild beasts, much less of men: they also differ in colour, every circumstance whereof to distinguish apart would greatly enlarge our volume, and bring to the reader small profit or commodity.

2. The Small Choke Pear; *Pyrus strangulorum minus*.
3. The Wild Hedge Pear; *Pyrus sylvestris*.
4. The Wild Crab Pear Tree; *Pyrus sylvestris minima*.
5. The Lousy Wild Pear; *Pyrus pedicularia*.
6. The Crow Pear Tree; *Pyrus corvina*.

The Place.

The wild Pears grow of themselves without manuring in most places, as woods, or in the borders of fields, and near to highways.

The Time.

The time of wild Pears answereth the tame or manured Pear, notwithstanding for the most part they are not ripe much before winter.

The Names.

The wild Pear tree is called in Latin, *Pyrus sylvestris* and *Pyraster*; by which name both the fruit and tree are known. Pears have divers surnames among the ancient writers, and especially in Pliny, in his 15th book, 15th chapter, none of which are known to the later writers (or not desired:) every city or every country have names of themselves, and Pears have also divers names according to the places.

The Temperature

All pears are of a cold temperature, and the moist part of them of a binding quality and an earthy substance.

The Virtues.

The virtues of the wild pears are referred unto the garden pears as touching their binding faculty, but are not to be eaten, because their nourishment is little and bad.

CHAP. 101. Of the Apple Tree.

The Kinds.

The Latin name *Malus* reacheth far among the old writers, and is common to many trees, but we will briefly first entreat of *Mali*, properly called Apple trees, whose stock or kindred is so infinite, that we have thought it not amiss, to use the same order or method with Apples that we have done with Pears. that is, to give them several titles in Latin and English, and one general description for the whole.

1 *Malus Carbonaria.*
The Pome Water tree.



Fig. 2047. Pome Water Apple Tree (1)

2 *Malus Carbonaria longifolia.*
The Bakers ditch Apple tree.

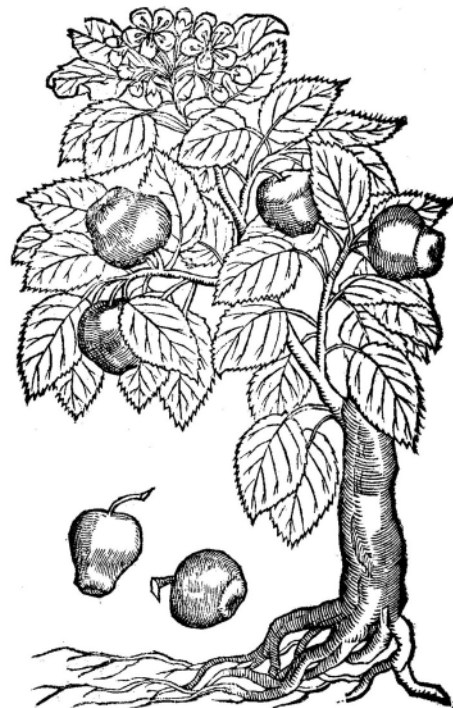


Fig. 2048. Bakers' Ditch Apple Tree (2)

The Description.

1, 2. The Apple tree hath a body or trunk commonly of a mean bigness, not very high, having long arms or branches, and the same disordered: the bark somewhat plain, and not very rugged: the leaves tbe also broad, more long than round, and finely nicked in the edges. The flowers are whitish tending unto a blush colour. The fruit or Apples do differ in greatness, form, colour, and taste; some covered with a red skin, others yellow or green, varying infinitely according to the soil and climate, some very great, some little, and many of a middle sort; some are sweet of taste, or something sour; most be of a middle taste between sweet and sour, the which to distinguish I think it impossible; notwithstanding I hear of one that intendeth to write a peculiar volume of Apples, and the use of them; yet when he hath done what he can do, he hath done nothing touching their several kinds to distinguish them. This that hath been said shall suffice for our History.

Our author gave four figures more out of Tabernamontanus, with these titles.

3. *Malum reginale*: the Queening or Queen of Apples.
5. *Platomela sive pyra æstiuā*: The Summer Pearmain.
6. *Platurchapia sive pyra hyemalia*: The Winter Pearmain.

The Place.

The tame and grafted Apple trees are planted and set in gardens and orchards made for that purpose: they delight to grow in good and fertile grounds: Kent doth abound with Apples of most sorts. But I have seen in the pastures and hedgerows about the grounds of a worshipful gentleman dwelling two miles from Hereford called Master Roger Bodnome, so many trees of all sorts, that the servants drink for the most part no other drink but that which is made of apples; The quantity is such, that by the report of the gentleman himself, the parson hath for tithes many hogsheads of cider. The hogs are fed with the fallings of them, which are so many, that they make choice of those apples they do eat, who will not taste of any but of the best. An example doubtless to be followed of gentlemen that have land and living: but envy saith, the poor will break down our hedges and we shall have the least part of the fruit. But forward in the name of God, graft, set, plant and nourish up trees in every corner of your grounds, the labour is small, the cost is nothing, the commodity is great, yourselves shall have plenty, the poor shall have somewhat in time of want to relieve their necessity, and God shall reward your good minds and diligence.

The Time.

They bloom about the end of April, or in the beginning of May. The forward apples be ripe about the Calends of July, others in September.

The Names.

The Apple tree is called in Latin, *Malus* and *Pomus*: in High Dutch, **Opffelbaum**: in Low Dutcha, **Appelboom**: in French, *Pommier*: in English, Apple tree.

The Latins name the fruit, *Malum* or *Pomum*: in High Dutch, **Opffel**: in Low Dutch, **Appel**: in French and Spanish, *Mansanas*, in English, Apple.

The Temperature.

All apples be of temperature cold and moist, and have joined with them a certain excremental or superfluous moisture: but as they be not all of like coldness, so neither have they like quantity of superfluous moisture. They are soonest rotten that have greatest store of moisture, and they may be longer kept in which there is less store: for the abundance of excremental moisture is the cause why they rot.

Sweet apples are not so cold and moist, which being roasted or boiled, or otherwise kept, retain or keep the soundness of their pulp.

They yield more nourishment and not so moist a nourishment as do the other apples, and do not so easily pass through the belly.

Sour apples are colder and also moister: the substance or pulp of these when they be boiled doth run abroad, and retaineth not his soundness: they yield a lesser nourishment, and the same raw and cold.

They do easily and speedily pass through the belly, and therefore they do mollify the belly, especially being taken before meat.

Harsh or austere apples being unripe, are cold; they engender gross blood, and great store of wind, and often bring the colic.

Those apples which be of a middle taste contain in them oftentimes two or three sorts of tastes, and yet do they retain the faculties of the other.

The Virtues.

A. Roasted apples are always better than the raw, the harm whereof is both mended by the fire, and may also be corrected by adding unto them seeds or spices.

B. Apples be good for an hot stomach: those that are austere or somewhat harsh do strengthen a weak and feeble stomach proceeding of heat.

C. Apples are also good for all inflammations or hot swellings, but especially for such as are in their beginning, if the same be outwardly applied.

D. The juice of apples which be sweet and of a middle taste, is mixed in compositions of divers medicines, and also for the tempering of melancholy humours, and likewise to mend the qualities of medicines that are dry: as are *Serapium ex pomis Regis Saporis*, *Confectio Alkermes*, and such like compositions

E. There is likewise made an ointment with the pulp of apples and swines' grease and Rose-water, which is used to beautify the face, and to take away the roughness of the skin, which is called in shops *Pomatum*: of the apples whereof it is made.

F. The pulp of the roasted apples, in number four or five, according to the greatness of the apples, especially of the Pome Water, mixed in a wine quart of fair water, laboured together until it come to be as apples and ale, which we call lambs' wool, and the whole quart drunk last at night within the space of an hour, doth in one night cure those that piss by drops with great anguish and dolour; the strangury, and all other diseases proceeding of the difficulty of making water; but in twice taking it, it never faileth in any: oftentimes there happeneth with the foresaid diseases the gonorrhæa, or running of the reins, which it likewise healeth in those persons, but not generally in all; which myself have often proved, and gained thereby both crowns and credit.

G. The leaves of the tree do cool and bind, and be also counted good for inflammations, in the beginning.

H. Apples cut in pieces, and distilled with a quantity of camphor and buttermilk, take away the marks and scars gotten by the smallpox, being washed therewith when they grow unto their state and ripeness: provided that you give unto the patient a little milk and saffron, or milk and mithridate to drink, to expel to the extreme parts that venom which may lie hid, and as yet not seen.

CHAP. 102. Of the Wilding or Crab Tree.

The Kinds.

Like as there be divers manured Apples, so are there sundry wild Apples, or Crabs, whereof to write apart were to small purpose, and therefore one description shall suffice for the rest.

Malus sylvestris.
The wilding or Crab tree.



Fig. 2049. Crab Apple (1)

The General Description

There be divers wild Apple trees not husbanded, that is to say, not grafted; the fruit whereof is harsh and binding: for by grafting both Apples and Pears become more mild and pleasant. The Crab or Wilding Tree grows oftentimes to a reasonable greatness, equal with the Apple tree: the wood is hard, firm, and solid; the bark rough; the branches or boughs many; the flowers and fruit like those of the Apple tree, some red, others white: some greater, others lesser: the difference is known to all, therefore it shall suffice what hath been said for their several distinctions: we have in our London gardens a dwarf kind of sweet Apple, called *Chamæmalus*, the Dwarf Apple Tree, or Paradise Apple, which beareth apples very timely without grafting.

1. *Malus sylvestris rubens*: The great wilding or red Crab tree.
2. *Malus sylvestris alba*: The white wilding or Crab tree.
3. *Malus sylvestris minor*: The smaller Crab tree.
4. *Malus duracina sylvestris*: The choking lean Crab tree.

The Place.

The Crab tree groweth wild in woods and hedgerows almost everywhere.

The Time.

The time answereth those of the garden.

The Names.

Their titles doth set forth their names in Latin and English.

The Temperature.

Of the temperature of wild apples hath been sufficiently spoken in the former Chapter.

The Virtues.

A. The juice of wild Apples or crabs taketh away the heat of burnings, scaldings, and all inflammations: and being laid on in short time after it is scalded, it keepeth it from blistering.

B. The juice of crabs or verjuice is astringent or binding, and hath withal an abstersive or cleansing quality, being mixed with hard yeast of ale or beer, and applied in manner of a cold ointment, that is, spread upon a cloth first wet in the verjuice and wrung out, and then laid to, taketh away the heat of Saint Anthony's fire, all inflammations whatsoever, healeth scabbed legs, burnings and scaldings wheresoever it be.

CHAP. 103. Of the Citron, Lemon, Orange, and Assyrian Apple trees.

The Kinds.

The Citron tree is of kindred with the Lemon tree, the Orange is of the same house or stock, and the Assyrian Apple tree claimeth a place as nearest in kindred and neighbourhood: wherefore I intend to comprehend them all in this one chapter.

1 *Malus medica.*
The Pome Citron tree.



Fig. 2050. The Citron Tree (1)

2 *Malus Limonia.*
The Limon tree.



Fig. 2051. The Lemon Tree (2)

The Description.

1. The Citron tree is not very great, having many boughs or branches, tough and pliable, covered with a green bark: whereon do grow green leaves, long, somewhat broad, very smooth, and sweet of smell like those of the Bay tree: among which come forth here and there certain prickles, set far in sunder: from the bosom whereof come forth small flowers, consisting of five little leaves, of a white colour tending to purple, with certain threads like hairs growing in the middle: the fruit is long, greater many times than the Cucumber, often lesser, and not much greater than the Lemon: the bark or rind is of a light golden colour, set with divers knobs or bumps, and of a very pleasant smell: the pulp or substance next unto it is thick, white, hard, having a kind of aromatical or spicy smell, almost without any taste at all: the softer pulp within that is not so firm or solid, but more spongy, and full of a sour juice, in which the seed lieth hid, greater and thicker than a grain of Barley.

2. The Lemon tree is like unto the Pome Citron tree in growth, thorny branches, and leaves of a pleasant sweet smell, like those of the Bay tree: the flowers hereof are

whiter than those of the Citron tree, and of a most sweet smell: the fruit is long and thick, lesser than the Pome Citron: the rind is yellow, somewhat bitter in taste, and sweet of smell: the pulp is white, more in quantity than that of the Citron, respecting the bigness; in the middle part whereof is contained more soft spongy pulp; and fuller of sour juice: the seeds are like those of the Pome Citron.

3 *Malus arantia.*
The Orange tree.



Fig. 2052. The Orange Tree (3)

4 *Malus Assyria.*
The Assyrian Apple tree.



Fig. 2053. The Assyrian Apple Tree (4)

3. The Orange tree groweth up to the height of a small Pear tree, having many thorny boughs or branches, like those of the Citron tree: the leaves are also like those of the Bay tree, but that they differ in this, that at the lower end next the stalk there is a lesser leaf made almost after the vulgar figure of an heart, whereon the bigger leaf doth stand, or is fastened: & they are of a sweet smell: the flowers are white, of a most pleasant sweet smell also: the fruit is round like a ball, every circumstance belonging to the form is very well known to all; the taste is sour, sometimes sweet, and often of a taste between both: the seeds are like those of the Lemon.

4. The Assyrian Apple tree is like unto the Orange tree: the branches are like: the leaves are greater: the flowers are like those of the Citron tree: the fruit is round, three times as big as the orange: the bark or peeling is thick, rough, and of a pale yellow colour, wherein appear often as it were small clefts or cracks: the pulp or inner substance is full o juice, in taste sharp, as that of the Lemon, but not so pleasant: the seeds are like those of the Citron.

The Place.

The Citron, Lemon, and Orange trees do grow especially on the sea coasts of Italy, and on the islands of the Adriatic, Tyrrhenian, and also Ægæan Seas, & likewise

on the mainland, near unto meres and great lakes: there is also great store of them in Spain, but in places especially joining to the sea, or not far off: they are also found in certain provinces of France which lie upon the Midland Sea. They were first brought out of Media, as not only Pliny writeth, but also the poet Virgil affirmeth in the second book of his Georgics, writing of the Citron tree after this manner:

*Media fert tristis sucos, tardumque saporem
 Felicis mali, quo non presentius ullum,
 Pocula si quando sævæ infecere novercæ,
 Miscueruntque herbas & non innoxia verba,
 Auxilium venit ac membris agit atra venena.
 Ipsa ingens arbor faciemque simillima lauro;
 Et, si non alium late iactaret odorem,
 Laurus erit; folia haud ullis labentia ventis;
 Flos ad prima tenax; animas & olentia Medi
 Ora foveat illo, & senibus medicantur anhelis.*

[Virgil, *Georgics*, Book II l.126-135.]

The Country Media beareth juices sad,
 And dulling talks of happy citron fruit,
 Than which, no help more present can be had,
 If any time stepmothers worse than brute
 Have poison'd pots, and mingled herbs of suit
 With hurtful charms: this Citron fruit doth chase
 Black venom from the body in every place.
 The tree itself in growth is large and big,
 And very like in show to the Laurel tree;
 And would be thought a Laurel, leaf and twig,
 But that the smell it casts doth disagree:
 The flower it holds as fast as flower may be:
 Therewith the Medes a remedy do find
 For stinking breaths and mouths a cure most kind,
 And help old men which hardly fetch their wind.

The Time.

These trees be always green, and do, as Pliny saith, bear fruit at all times of the year, some falling off, others waxing ripe, and others newly coming forth.

The Names.

The first is called in Latin, *Malus medica*, and *Malus citria*: in English, Citron tree, and Pomecitron tree.

The fruit is named in Latin, *Malum medicum*, and *Malum citrium*: and *Citromalum*. Æmilianus in *Athenæus* showeth, that Iuba, King of Mauretania, hath made mention of the Citron, who saith that this Apple is named among them, *Malum hespericum*: Galen denieth it to be called any longer *Malum medicum*, but *citrium*; and saith, that they who call it *medicum* do it to the end that no man should understand what they say: the apothecaries call these apples *Citrones*: in High Dutch, **Citrinopfell**, **Citrinaten**: in Low Dutch, **Citroenen**: in Italian, *Citroni*, and *Cedri*: in Spanish, *Cidras*: in French, *Citrons*: in English, Citron Apple, and Citron.

The second kind of Citron is called in Latin, *Limonium malum*; in shops, *Limones*: in French, *Limons*: in Low Dutch, **Limonen**: in English, Lemon, and Limon.

The third is named in Latin, *Malum anerantium* or *anerantium*: and of some *aurantium*: of others, *aurengium*, of the yellow colour of gold: some would have them called *arantia*, of *Arantium*, a town in Achaia or *arania*, of a country bearing that name in Persia: it is termed in Italian *Arancio*: in High Dutch, *Þomeranken*: in Low Dutch, *Araengie Appelen*: in French, *Pommes d'Oranges*: in Spanish, *Naransas*: in English, Oranges.

The fourth is named of divers, *Pomum assyrium*, or the Citron of Assyria, and may be Englished Adam's Apple, after the Italian name; and among the vulgar sort of Italians, *Lomie*, of whom it is at so called *Pomum Adami*, or Adam's Apple; and that came by the opinion of the common rude people, who think it to be the same apple which Adam did eat of in Paradise, when he transgressed God's commandment; whereupon also the prints of the biting appear therein, as they say: but others say that this is nor the apple, but that which the Arabians do call *Musa* or *Mosa*, whereof Avicenna, *cap.* 39, maketh mention: for divers of the Jews take this for that through which by eating, Adam offended, as Andrew Thevet showeth.

The Temperature and Virtues.

- A. All these fruits consist of unlike parts, and much differing in faculty.
- B. The rinds are sweet of smell, bitter, hot, and dry.
- C. The white pulp is cold, and containeth in it a gross juice, especially the citron.
- D. The inner substance or pap is sour, as of the citrons and lemons, cold and dry, with thinness of parts.
- E. The seed because it is bitter is hot and dry.
- F. The rind of the pomecitron is good against all poisons, for which cause it is put into treacles and such like confections.
- G. It is good to be eaten against a stinking breath, for it maketh the breath sweet; and being so taken it comforteth the cold stomach exceedingly.
- H. The white, sound, and hard pulp is now and then eaten, but very hardly concocted, and engendereth a gross, cold, and phlegmatic juice; but being condite with sugar, it is both pleasant in taste and easy to be digested, more nourishing, and less apt to obstruction and binding or stopping.
- I. Galen reporteth, that the inner juice of the Pomecitron was not wont to be eaten, but it is now used for sauce; and being often used, it represseth choler which is in the stomach, and procures appetite: it is excellent good also to be given in vehement and burning fevers, and against all pestilent and venomous or infectious diseases: it comforteth the heart, cooleth the inward parts, cutteth, divideth, and maketh thin, gross, tough, and slimy humours. Of this foresaid sharp juice there is a syrup prepared, which is called in shops, *Syrupus de acetositate citri*, very good against the foresaid infirmities.
- L. Such a syrup is also prepared of the sharp juice of lemons, of the same quality and operation, so that instead of the one, the other will serve very well.
- M. A dozen of oranges cut in slices and put into a gallon of water, adding thereto an ounce of mercury sublimate, and boiled to the consumption of the half, cureth the itch and manginess of the body.

N. Men in old time (as Theophrastus writeth in his fourth book) did not eat citrons, but were contented with the smell, and to lay them amongst clothes, to preserve them from moths.

O. As often as need required they used them against deadly poisons; for which thing they were especially commended even by Virgil's verses, which we have before alleged.

P. Athenæus, *lib.* 3. hath extant a story of some that for certain notorious offences were condemned to be destroyed of serpents, who were preserved and kept in health and safety by the eating of citrons.

Q. The distilled water of the whole lemons, rind and all, drawn out by a glass still, takes away tetter and blemishes of the skin, and maketh the face fair and smooth.

R. The same being drunk provoketh urine, dissolveth the stone, breaketh and expelleth it.

S. The rind of oranges is much like in faculty to that of the citrons and lemons, yet it is so much the more hot as it is more biting and bitter.

T. The inner substance or sour pap which is full of juice is of like faculty, or not much inferior to the faculty of the pap of citrons or lemons; but the sweet pap doth not much cool or dry, but doth temperately heat and moisten, being pleasant to the taste: it also nourisheth more than doth the sour pap, but the same nourishment is thin and little; and that which is of a middle taste, having the smack of wine, is after a middle sort more cold than sweet, and lesser cold than sour: the sweet and odoriferous flowers of oranges be used of the perfumers in their sweet smelling ointments.

V. Two ounces of the juice of lemons, mixed with the like quantity of the spirit of wine, or the best *Aqua vitæ* (but the spirit of wine rectified is much better) and drunk at the first approach of the fit of an ague, taketh away the shaking presently: the medicine seldom faileth at the second time of the taking thereof perfectly to cure the same; but never at the third time, provided that the patient be covered warm in a bed, and caused to sweat.

X. There is also distilled out of them in a glass still, a water of a marvellous sweet smell, which being inwardly taken in the weight of an ounce and a half, moveth sweat, and healeth the ague.

Y. The seed of all these doth kill worms in the belly, and driveth them forth: it doth also mightily resist poison, and is good for the stinging of scorpions, if it be inwardly taken.

Z. Those which be called Adam's apples are thought to be like in faculties to the sour juice, especially of the lemons, but yet they be not so effectual.

CHAP. 104. Of the Cornel Tree.

Cornus mas.
The male Cornel tree.



Fig. 2054. The Cornel Tree

The Description.

The tame Cornel tree groweth sometime of the height and bigness of a small tree, with a great number of springs: it is covered with a rugged bark: the wood or timber is very hard and dry, without any great quantity of sap therein: the leaves are like unto the Dogberry leaves, crumpled, rugged, and of an overworn colour: the flowers grow in small bunches before any leaves do appear, of colour yellow, and of no great value (they are so small) in show like the flowers of the Olive tree: which being faded, there come small long berries, which at the first be green, and red when they be ripe; of an austere and harsh taste, with a certain sourness: within this berry is a small stone, exceeding hard, white within like that of the Olive, wherunto it is like both in the fashion and oftentimes in the bigness of the fruit.

The Place.

This groweth in most places of Germany without manuring: it grows not wild in England. But yet there be sundry trees of them growing in the gardens of such as love rare and dainty plants, whereof I have a tree or two in my garden.

The Time.

The tame Cornel tree flowereth sometime in February, & commonly in March, and afterwards the leaves come forth as an untimely birth: the berries or fruit are ripe in August.

The Names.

The Latins call it *Cornus*: in High Dutch, *Cornelbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Cornoele boom*: the Italians, *Corniolo*: in French, *Cornillier*: in Spanish, *Cornizolos*: in English, the Cornel tree, and the Cornelia tree; of some, long Cherry tree.

The fruit is named in Latin, *Cornum*: in High Dutch, **Cornel**: in Low Dutch, **Cornoel**: in Italian, *Cornole*: in English, Cornel berries and Cornelian cherries.

This is *Cornus mas theophrasti*, or Theophrastus his male Cornel tree; for he setteth down two sorts of the Cornel trees, the male and the female: he maketh the wood of the male to be sound, as in this Cornel tree; which we both for this cause and for others also have made to be the male. The female is that which is commonly called *Virga sanguinea*, or Dogberry tree, and *Cornus sylvestris*, or the wild Cornel tree, of which we will treat in the next chapter following.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The fruit of the Cornel tree hath a very harsh or choking taste: it cooleth, drieth, and bindeth, yet may it also be eaten, as it is oftentimes.

B. It is a remedy against the lask and bloody flux, it is hurtful to a cold stomach and increaseth the rawness thereof: the leaves and tender crops of the tree are likewise of an harsh and choking taste, and do mightily dry.

C. They heal green wounds that are great and deep, especially in hard bodies, but they are not so good for small wounds and tender bodies, as Galen writeth.

CHAP. 105. Of the Female Cornel or Dogberry Tree.

Cornus fœmina.
The Dog-berry tree.



Fig. 2055. The Dogberry Tree

The Description.

That which the Italians call *Virga sanguinea*, or the Bloody Rod, is like to the Cornel tree, yet it groweth not into a tree, but remaineth a shrub: the young branches thereof are jointed, and be of an obscure red purple: they have within a white spongy pith like that of Elder, but the old stalks are hard and stiff, the substance of the which is also white, and answerable to those of the Cornel tree: the leaves are also like, the middle rib whereof as also the brittle footstalks are somewhat reddish: at the top whereof stand white flowers in spoky roundels, which turn into berries, green at the first, and of a shining black colour when they be ripe, in taste unpleasant, and not cared for of the birds.

The Place.

This shrub groweth in hedges and bushes in every country of England.

The Time.

The flowers come forth in the spring in the month of April: the berries are ripe in autumn.

The Names.

The Italians do commonly call it *Sanguino*, and *Sanguinello*; Petrus Crescentius terms it *Sanguinus*; and Matthiolus, *Virga sanguinea*: Pliny, *lib. 24. cap. 10*, hath written a little of *Virga sanguinea*: Neither is *Virga sanguinea*, saith he, counted more happy; the inner bark whereof doth break open the scars which they before have healed. It is an hard thing, or peradventure a rash part, to affirm by these few words, that Pliny his *Virga sanguinea* is the same that the Italian *Sanguino* is. This is called in High

Dutch, *Hartriegel*: in Low Dutch, *Wilde Cornoelle*, that is to say, *Cornus sylvestris*, or wild Cornel tree: and in French, *Cornellier sauvage*: in English, Hound's tree, Hound's berry, Dogberry tree, Prick-Timber: in the North country they call it Gaten tree, or Gater tree; the berries whereof seem to be those which Chaucer calleth Gater berries: Valerius Cordus nameth it *Pseudokrania*; that is to say, *Falsa* or *Spuria Cornus*, false or bastard Cornel tree: this seemeth also to be Theophrastus his *Cornus fœmina*, female Cornel tree. This hath little branches having pith within, neither be they hard nor sound, like those of the male: the fruit is not fit to be eaten, and a late fruit which is not ripe till after the autumn equinoctial; and such is the wild Cornel tree or Gater tree, the young and tender branches whereof be red, and have (as we have written) a pith within: the fruit or berries be unpleasant, and require a long time before they can be ripe.

The Temperature.

The berries hereof are of unlike parts; for they have some hot, bitter, and cleansing, and very many cold, dry, harsh, and binding, yet they have no use in medicine.

The Virtues.

A. Matthiolus writeth, that out of the berries first boiled, and afterwards pressed, there issueth an oil which the Anagnian country people do use in lamps: but it is not certain, nor very like, that the bark of this wild Cornel tree hath that operation which Pliny reporteth of *Virga sanguinea* for he saith, as we have already set down, that the inner bark thereof doth break and lay open the scars which they before have healed.

CHAP. 106. Of Spindle Tree or Prickwood.

1 *Euonymus Theophrasti.*
English Prick-rimber tree.



Fig. 2056. Spindle Tree (1)

2 *Euonymus latifolius.*
Broad leaved Spindle tree.



Fig. 2057. Broad-Leaved Spindle tree (2)

The Description.

1. Prickwood is no high shrub, of the bigness of the Pomegranate tree: it spreadeth far with his branches: the old stalks have their bark somewhat white; the new and those that be lately grown be green, and four-square: the substance of the wood is hard, and mixed with a light yellow: the leaves be long, broad, slender, and soft: the flowers be white, many standing upon one footstalk, like almost to a spoked roundel: the fruit is four-square, red, and containing four white seeds, every one whereof is covered with a yellow coat, which being taken off giveth a yellow dye.

2. This other sort of *Euonymus* groweth to the form of an hedge tree, of a mean bigness; the trunk or body whereof is of the thickness of a man's leg, covered with a rough or scabbed bark of an overworn russet colour. The branches thereof are many, slender, and very even, covered with a green bark whilst they be yet young and tender; they are also very brittle, with sour pith in the middle like that of the Elder. The leaves are few in number, full of nerves or sinews dispersed like those of Plantain, in shape like those of the Pome Citron tree, of a loathsome smell and bitter taste: amongst which come forth slender footstalks very long and naked, whereon do grow small flowers consisting of four small leaves like those of the Cherry tree, but lesser, of a white colour tending to a blush, with some yellowness in the middle: after cometh the fruit, which is larger than the former, and as it were winged, parted commonly into four, yet sometimes into five parts; and opening when it is ripe, it showeth the white grains filled with a yellow pulp. The root is tough and woody, dispersing itself far abroad under the upper crust of the earth.

3 *Myrtus Pannonicus.*
Hungarie Spindle tree.



Fig. 2058. Hungarian Spindle Tree (3)

3. The same author setteth forth another sort which he found in the mountains of Moravia and Hungary, having a trunk or stock of the height of three or four cubits, covered with a bark green at the first, afterward sprinkled over with many black spots: the boughs are divided toward the top into divers small branches, very brittle and easy to break, whereon are placed leaves by couples also, one opposite to another, somewhat snipped about the edges, in shape like those of the great Myrtle, of an astringent taste at the beginning, after somewhat hot and bitter: amongst which come forth small flowers standing upon long naked footstalks consisting of four little leaves of a bright shining purple colour, having in the middle some few spots of yellow: after cometh the fruit, four-cornered, not unlike to the common kind, of a spongy substance, and a gold yellow colour: wherein is contained not red berries like the other, but black, very like to those of *Fraxinella*, of a shining black colour like unto burnished horn; which are devoured of birds when they be ripe, and the rather because they fall of themselves out of their husks, otherwise the bitterness of the husks would take away the delight.

The Place.

The first cometh up in untoiled places, and among shrubs, upon rough banks and heaps of earth. It serveth also oftentimes for hedges in fields, growing amongst brambles and such other thorns.

The other sorts Carolus Clusius found in a wood of Hungary beyond the river Dravus, and also upon the mountains of Moravia and other places adjacent.

The Time.

The flowers appear in April: the fruit is ripe in the end of August, or in the month of September.

The Names.

Theophrastus calleth this shrub *Euonymos*, and describeth it in his third book Of the History of Plants: divers also falsly read it *Anonymos*: Petrus Crescentius calleth it *Fusanum*, because spindles be made of the wood hereof and for that cause it is called in High Dutch, *Spindelbaum*, yet most of them *Hantjodlin*: in Low Dutch, *Spaenhout*: in Italian, *Fusano*: in French, *Fusin*, and *Bonnet de prestre*: in English, Spindle tree, Prickwood, and Prick-timber.

The Temperature and Virtues.

This shrub is hurtful to all things, as Theophrastus writeth, and namely to goats: he saith the fruit hereof killeth; so doth the leaves and fruit destroy goats especially, unless they scour as well upwards as downwards: if three or four of these fruits be given to a man they purge both by vomit and stool.

CHAP. 107. Of the Black Alder Tree.

Alnus nigra, sive Frangula.
The blacke Aller tree.



Fig. 2059. Black Alder

The Description.

The Black Alder tree bringeth forth from the root straight stalks divided into divers branches: the outward bark whereof is black, and that next to the wood yellow, and giveth a colour as yellow as saffron: the substance of the wood is white and brittle, with a reddish pith in the midst: the leaves be like those of the Alder tree, or of the Cherry tree, yet blacker, and a little rounder: the flowers be somewhat white: the fruit are round berries, in which appear a certain rift or chink, as though two were joined together, at the first green, afterwards red, and last of all black: in this there be two little stones: the root runneth along in the earth.

The Place.

The Alder tree groweth in moist woods and copses: I found great plenty of it in a wood a mile from Islington, in the way from thence toward a small village called Hornsey, lying upon the right hand of the way; and in the woods at Hampstead near London, and in most woods in the parts about London.

The Time.

The leaves and flowers appear in the beginning of the spring; and the berries in autumn.

The Names.

This shrub is called *Alnus nigra*, or black Alder: and by others, *Frangula*: Petrus Crescentius nameth it *Avornus*: in Low Dutch, *Sparkenhout*, and oftentimes *Pijlhout*, because boys make for themselves arrows hereof: in High Dutch, *Faulbaum*; it is called in English, Black Alder tree; and of divers Butchers' Prick tree.

The Temperature.

The inner bark of the black Alder tree is of a purging and dry quality.

The Virtues.

A. The inner bark hereof is used of divers countrymen, who drink the infusion thereof when they would be purged: it purgeth thick phlegmatic humours, and also choleric, and not only by the stool, but many times also by vomit, not without great trouble and pain to the stomach: it is therefore a medicine more fit for clowns than for civil people, and rather for those that feed grossly, than for dainty people.

B. There be others who affirm that the dried bark is more gentle, and causeth lesser pain: for the green bark (say they) which is not yet dried containeth in it a certain superfluous moisture which causeth gripings and vomitings, and troubles the stomach.

C. The same bark being boiled in wine or vinegar makes a lotion for the toothache; and is commended against scabs and filthiness of the skin.

D. The leaves are reported to be good fodder for cattle, especially for kine, and to cause them to yield good store of milk.

CHAP. 108. Of the Service Tree.



Fig. 2060. Service Tree (1)



Fig.2061. Common Service Tree (2)

The Description.

1. The Service tree groweth to the height and bigness of a great tree, charged with many great arms or boughs which are set with sundry small branches, garnished with many great leaves somewhat long like those of the Ash: the flowers are white, and stand in clusters, which turn into small brown berries somewhat long, which are not good to be eaten until they have lain a while, and until they be soft like the Medlar, whereto it is like in taste and operation.

2. The Common Service tree groweth likewise to the height of a great tree, with a straight body of a brownish colour, full of branches, set with large displayed leaves like the Maple or the Whitethorn, saving that they are broader and longer: the flowers are white, and grow in tufts; which being fallen, there come in place thereof small round berries, brown upon one side and reddish toward the sun, of an unpleasant taste in respect of the former: in which are contained little blackish kernels.

The Place.

These trees are found in woods and groves in most places of England: there be many small trees thereof in a little wood a mile beyond Islington from London: in Kent it groweth in great abundance, especially about Southfleet and Gravesend. Thus our author: the latter of these I have seen growing wild in divers places, but not the former in any place as yet.

The Time.

They flower in March, and their fruit is ripe in September.

The Names.

The first is called in *On*, and *Oin*: in Latin, *Sorbus*: in High Dutch, *Sperwerbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Sorbedboom*: in French, *Cormier*: in English, Service tree, and of some after the Latins, Sorbe tree.

The common Service tree is named of Pliny, *Sorbus torminalis*: in High Dutch, *Aressel*, *Eschrossel*, and *Wilder Sperwerbaum*: in English, Common Service tree.

The berries or fruit of the Service tree is called *Oin* or *Oyon*: in Latin, *Sorbum*: in High Dutch, *Speierling*, *Sporopffel* in Low Dutch, *Sorben*: in Italian, *Sorbe*, and *Sorbole*: in French, *Corne*: in Spanish, *Servas*, and *Sorbas*: in English, service; of some, sorb-apple.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Service berries are cold and binding, and much more when they be hard, than when they are mild and soft: in some places they are quickly soft, either hanged in a place which is not altogether cold, or laid in hay or chaff: those services are eaten when the belly is too soluble, for they stay the same; and if they yield any nourishment at all, the same is very little, gross, and cold; and therefore it is not expedient to eat of these or other like fruits, nor to use them otherwise than in medicines.

B. These do stay all manner of fluxes of the belly, and likewise the bloody flux; as also vomiting: they stanch bleeding if they be cut and dried in the sun before they be ripe, and so reserved for use: these we may use divers ways according to the manner of the grief and grieved part.

CHAP. 109. Of the Ash Tree.

Fraxinus.
The Ash tree.



Fig. 2062. The Ash Tree

The Description.

The Ash also is an high and tall tree: it riseth up with a straight body, now and then of no small bigness, now and then of a middle size, and is covered with a smooth bark: the wood is white, smooth, hard, and somewhat rough grained: the tender branches hereof and such as be new grown up are set with certain joints, and have within a white and spongy pith: but the old boughs are woody throughout, and be without either joints or much pith: the leaves are long and winged, consisting of many standing by couples, one right against another upon one rib or stalk, the upermost of all excepted, which standeth alone; of which every particular one is long, broad, like to a Bay leaf, but softer, and of a lighter green, without any sweet smell, and nicked round about the edges: out of the younger sort of the boughs, hard to the setting on of the leaves, grow forth hanging together many long narrow and flat cods, as it were like almost to divers birds' tongues, where the seed is perfected, which is of a bitter taste: the roots be many, and grow deep in the ground.

The Place.

The Ash doth better prosper in moist places, as about the borders of meadows and riversides, than in dry grounds.

The Time.

The leaves and keys come forth in April and May, yet is not the seed ripe before the fall of the leaf.

The Names.

This tree is called in Greek, *Melia*, and of divers, *Milea*: in Latin, *Fraxinus*: in High Dutch, *Eschernbaum*, *Eschernholtz*, and *Steynschern*: in Low Dutch, *Essthen*, and *Essthenboom*: in Italian, *Frassino*: in French, *Fresne*: in Spanish, *Fresno*, *Fraxino*, and *Freixo*: in English, Ash tree.

The fruit like unto cods is called of the apothecaries, *Lingua Avis*,["Bird's tongue"] and *Lingua Passerina*["Sparrow's tongue"]: it may be named in Greek, *Ornithoglosson*: yet some would have it called *Orneoglossum*; others make *Ornus* or the wild Ash to be called *Orneoglossum*: it is termed in English, Ash keys, and of some, Kite keys.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The leaves and bark of the Ash tree are dry and moderately hot: the seed is hot and dry in the second degree.

B. The juice of the leaves or the leaves themselves being applied, or taken with wine, cure the bitings of vipers, as Dioscorides saith.

C. The leaves of this tree are of so great virtue against serpents, as that they dare not so much as touch the morning and evening shadows of the tree, but shun them afar off, as Pliny reports, *lib. 16. cap. 13*. He also affirmeth, that the serpent being penned in with boughs laid round about, will sooner run into the fire, if any be there, than come near the boughs of the Ash: and that the Ash doth flower before the serpents appear, and doth not cast his leaves before they be gone again.

D. We write (saith he) upon experience, that if the serpent be set within the circle of a fire and the boughs, the serpent will sooner run into the fire than into the boughs. It is a wonderful courtesy in nature, that the Ash should flower before these serpents appear, and not cast his leaves before they be on again.

E. Both of them, that is to say the leaves and the bark, are reported to stop the belly: and being boiled with vinegar and water, do stay vomiting, if they be laid upon the stomach.

F. The leaves and bark of the Ash tree boiled in wine and drunk, do open the stoppings of the liver and spleen, and do greatly comfort them.

G. Three or four leaves of the Ash tree taken in wine each morning from time to time do make those lean that are fat, and keepeth them from feeding which do begin to wax fat.

H. The seed or kite-keys of the Ash tree provoke urine, increase natural seed, and stir up bodily lust, especially being powdered with nutmegs and drunk.

I. The wood is profitable for many things, being exalted by Homer's commendations, and Achilles' spear, as Pliny writeth. The shavings or small pieces thereof being drunk are said to be pernicious and deadly, as Dioscorides affirmeth.

K. The lye which is made with the ashes of the bark cureth the white scurf, and such other like roughness of the skin, as Pliny testifieth.

CHAP. 110. Of the Wild Ash, otherwise called Quickbeam or Quicken Tree.

Sorbus sylvestris, sive Fraxinus Bubula.
The Quicken tree, wilde Ash, or wilde Service tree.



Fig. 2063. Wild Ash or Quicken Tree

The Description.

The wild Ash or Quicken Tree Penes setteth forth for the wild Service: this tree groweth seldom or never to the stature and height of the Ash tree, notwithstanding it grows to the bigness of a large tree: the leaves be great and long, and scarcely be discerned from the leaves of the Service tree: the flowers be white, and sweet of smell, and grow in tufts, which do turn into round berries, green at the first, but when they be ripe of a deep red colour and of an unpleasant taste: the branches are as full of juice as the Osier, which is the cause that boys do make pipes of the bark thereof as they do of Willows.

The Place.

The wild Ash or Quicken tree groweth on high mountains, and in thick high woods in most places of England, especially about Nantwich in Cheshire, in the Wealds of Kent, in Sussex and divers other places.

The Time.

The wild Ash flowers in May, and the berries are ripe in September.

The Names.

The Latins call this tree *Ornus*, and oftentimes *Fraxinus sylvestris*, or wild Ash: and it is also *Fraxini species*, or a kind of Ash; for the Grecians (as not only Pliny writeth, but also Theophrastus) hath made two kinds of Ash, the one high and tall, the other lower: the high and tall one is *Fraxinis vulgaris*, or the common Ash; and the lower *Ornus*, which also is named *Oreinumelia*, or *Fraxinus montana*, mountain Ash;

as the other, *Pedeine*, or field Ash; which is also named *Buomelia*, or as Gaza translath it, *Fraxinus bubula*, but more truly *Fraxinus magna*, or great Ash; for the syllable *Bou* is a sign of bigness: this *Ornus* or great Ash is named in High Dutch, *Albaum*: in Low Dutch, *Haveresthen*, or *Quereschen*, of divers, *Qualster*: in French, *Fresne Sauvage*: in English, Wild Ash, Quicken tree, Quick-beam tree, and Wicken tree. Matthiolus makes this to be *Sorbus sylvestris*, or wild Service tree.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Touching the faculties of the leaves, bark, or berries, as there is nothing found among the old, so is there nothing noted among the later writers: but Pliny seemeth to make this wild Ash like in faculties to the common Ash; for *lib. 16. cap. 13*, where he writes of both the Ashes, he saith, that the common Ash is *Crispa*,["having a wavy grain"] and the mountain Ash *Spissa*["close-grained"]: and forthwith he addeth this: The Grecians write, that the leaves of them do kill cattle, and yet hurt not those that chew their cud; which the old writers have noted of the Yew tree, and not of the Ash tree. Pliny was deceived by the nearness of the words *milos* and *melia*, for *milos* is the Yew tree, and *melia* the Ash tree: so that he hath falsely attributed that deadly faculty to the Ash tree, which doth belong to the Yew tree.

B. The leaves of the wild Ash tree boiled in wine are good against the pain in the sides, and the stopping of the liver, and assuage the bellies of those that have the tympany and dropsy.

C. Benedictus Curtius Symphoryanus is deceived in the history of *Ornus*, when he thinketh out of Virgil's *Georgics*, that *Ornus* hath the flower of the Pear tree; for out of Virgil's verses no such thing at all can be gathered: for he intreateth not of the forms of trees, but of the grafting of divers into others, unlike and differing in nature; as of the grafting of the nut tree into the Strawberry tree; the Apple into the Plane tree, the Beech into the Chestnut tree; the Pear into the wild Ash or Quick-beam tree, the Oak into the Elm tree: and in this respect he writeth, that the Plane tree bringeth forth an Apple, the Beech tree a Chestnut; the wild Ash tree bringeth forth the white flower of the Pear tree, as is most manifest out of Virgil's own words, after this manner, in the second book of his *Georgics*:

*Inferitur vero ex fœtu nucis Arbutus horrida
Et steriles Platani malos gessere valentes,
Castaneæ Fagos: Ornus incanuit albo
Flore Pyri, glandemque sues fregere sub Ulmis.*

The Tree Straw'ry on Walnut's stock doth grow,
And barren Planes fair Apples oft have borne;
Chestnuts, Beech-Mast; the Quicken tree doth show
The Pears white flower; and swine oft-times th' acorn
Have gathered under Elms.

Virgil, *Georgics* Bk. II l. 69-72.

CHAP. 111. Of Curriers' Sumach.

1 *Rhus Coriaria.*
Coriar Sumach.



Fig.2064. Curriers' Sumach (1)

2 *Rhus Myrtifolia.*
Wil de or Myrtle Sumach.



Fig. 2065. Myrtle Sumach (2)

The Description.

1. Curriers' Sumach groweth up unto the height of a hedge tree, after the manner of the Elder tree, bigger than Dioscorides reporteth it to be, or others, who affirm that *Rhus* groweth two cubits high: whose errors are the greater: but this *Rhus* is so like to the Service tree in shape and manner of growing, that it is hard to know one from the other; but that the leaves are soft and hairy, having a red sinew or rib through the midst of the leaf: the flowers grow with the leaves upon long stems clustering together like Cat's Tail, or the catkins of the nut tree, but greater, and of a whitish green colour: after which come clusters of round berries, growing in bunches like grapes.

2. Pliny his Sumach, or the Sumach of Pliny's description, groweth like a small hedge tree, having many slender twiggy branches, garnished with little leaves like *Myrtus*, or rather like the leaves of the Jujube tree; among which come forth slender mossy flowers, of no great account or value, which bring forth small seeds, enclosed within a cornered case or husk, fashioned like a spoon: the trunk or body of both these kinds of Sumach being wounded with some iron instrument, yieldeth a gum or liquor.

The Place.

Sumach groweth, as Dioscorides saith, in stony places: it is found in divers mountains & woods in Spain, and in many places on the mount Apennine in Italy, and also near unto Pontus. Archigenes in Galen, in the 8th book *Of Medicines According to the Places Affected*, showeth, that it groweth in Syria, making choice of that of Syria.

The Time.

The flowers of Sumach come forth in July, the seed with the berries are ripe in autumn.

The Names.

This is called in Greek *Rous*: *Rous*, saith Pliny, hath no Latin name; yet Gaza after the signification of the Greek word, feigneth a name, calling it *Fluida*: the Arabians name it *Sumach*: the Italians, *Sumacho*: the Spaniards, *Sumagre*: in Low Dutch, by contracting of the word they call it *Smack* or *Sumatj*: in English, Sumach, Curriers' Sumach, and Leather Sumach: the leaves of the shrub be called in Greek *Rous burodepsike*: in Latin, *Rhus coriaria*, or *Rhoe*.

The seed is named *Erythros*: in Latin, *Rhus culinaria*, and *Rhus obsoniorum*: in English, Meat Sumach, and Sauce Sumach.

The Temperature.

The fruit, leaves, and seed hereof do very much bind, they also cool and dry; dry they are in the third degree, and cold in the second, as Galen teacheth.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves of Sumach boiled in wine and drunken, do stop the lask, the inordinate course of women's sicknesses, and all other inordinate issues of blood.

B. The seed of Sumach eaten in sauces with meat, stoppeth all manner of fluxes of the belly, the bloody flux, and all other issues, especially the white issues of women.

C. The decoction of the leaves maketh hairs black, and is put into stools to fume upward into the bodies of those that have the dysentery, and is to be given them also to drink.

D. The leaves made into an ointment or plaster with honey and vinegar, stayeth the spreading nature of gangrenes and pterygia.

E. The dry leaves sodden in water until the decoction be as thick as honey, yield forth a certain oiliness, which performeth all the effects of *Licium*.

F. The seed is no less effectual to be strewed in powder upon their meats which are *Cæliaci* or *Dysenterici*. [Suffereing from colic or dysentery]

G. The seeds pounded, mixed with honey and the powder of oaken coals, healeth the hæmorrhoids.

H. There isseth out of the shrub a gum, which being put into the hollowness of the teeth, taketh away the pain, as Dioscorides writeth.

CHAP. 112. Of Red Sumach.

1 *Coggygia Theophrasti.*
Venice Sumach.



Cotinus Coviarius Pliny.
Red Sumach.



Fig. 2066. Red or Venice Sumach in flower Fig. 2067. Red or Venice Sumach with fruit

The Description.

These two figures are of one and the selfsame plant; the first showeth the shrub being in flower: the other when it is full flowered with the fruit grown to ripeness, notwithstanding some have deemed them to be of two kinds, wherein they were deceived.

This excellent and most beautiful plant *Coggygia* (being reputed of the Italians and the Venetians for a kind of *Rhus* or Sumach, because it is used for the same purposes whereto *Rhus* serveth and therein doth far excel it) is an hedge plant growing not above the height of four or five cubits, having tough and pliant stalks and twiggy branches like to Osiers, of a brown colour. The leaves be round, thick, and stiff like the leaves of *Capparis*, in colour and savor of *Pistacia* leaves or *Terebinthus*; among which ariseth a small upright sprig, bearing many small clustering little greenish yellow flowers, upon long and red stalks. After which follow small reddish Lentil-like seeds that carry at the tops a most fine woolly or flocky tuft, crisped and curled like a curious wrought fleece, which curleth and foldeth itself abroad like a large bush of hairs.

The Place.

Coggygia groweth in Orleans near Avignon, and in divers places of Italy, upon the Alps of Styria, and many other places. It groweth on most of the hills of France, in the high woods of the upper Pannonia or Austria, and also of Hungary and Bohemia.

The Time.

They flower and flourish for the most part in July.

The Names.

The first is called *Coggygia*, and *Coccygia*: in English, Venice Sumach, or Silken Sumach; of Pliny, *Cotinus*, in his 16th book, 18th chapter. There is, saith he, on mount Apennine a shrub which is called *Cotinus, ad lineamenta modo conchylii colore insignis*,["which dyes cloth a colour like that got from shells (i.e.Tyrian purple)"] and yet *Cotinus* is *Oleaster*, or *Olea sylvestris*, the wild Olive tree, from which this shrub doth much differ; and therefore it may rightly be called *Cotinus coriaria*. Divers would have named it *Scotinus*, which name is not found in any of the old writers. The Pannonians do call it *Farblauff*: it is also thought that this shrub is *Coggygia plinii*, of which in his 13th book, 22nd chapter, he writeth in these words: *Coggygia* is also like to *Unedo* in leaf, not so great; it hath a property to loose the fruit with down, which thing happeneth unto no other tree.

The Temperature.

The leaves and slender branches together with the seeds are very much binding, cold and dry as the other kinds of Sumach are.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves of *Coggygia*, or Silken Sumach, are sold in the markets of Spain and Italy for great sums of money, unto those that dress Spanish skins, for which purpose they are very excellent.

B. The root of *Cotinus*, as Anguillara noteth, serveth to dye with, giving to wool and cloth a reddish colour, which Pliny knew, showing that this shrub (that is to say the root) is *ad lineamenta modo conchylii colore insignis*.

CHAP. 113. Of the Alder Tree.

1 *Alnus.*
The Alder tree.

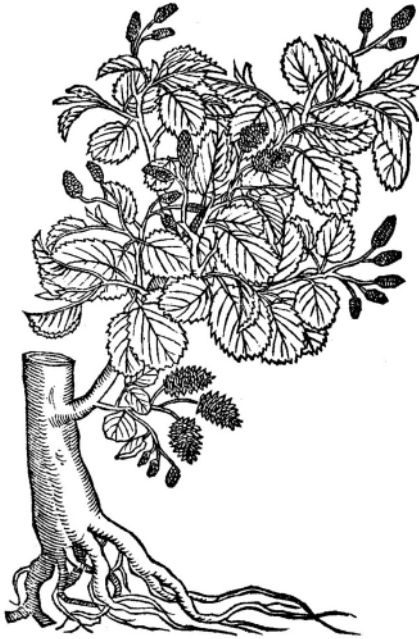


Fig. 2068. Alder (1)

‡ 2 *Alnus hirsuta.*
Rough leaved Alder.

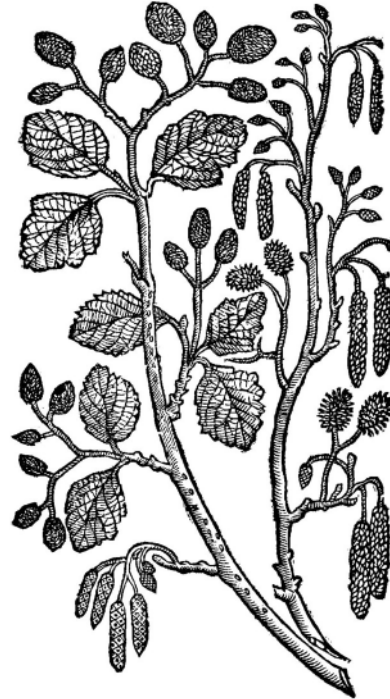


Fig. 2069. Rough-Leaved Alder (2)

The Description.

1. The Alder tree or Aller, is a great high tree having many brittle branches, the bark is of a brown colour, the wood or timber is not hard, and yet it will last and endure very long under the water, yea longer than any other timber whatsoever: wherefore in the fenny and soft marsh grounds they do use to make piles and posts thereof, for the strengthening of the walls and such like. This timber doth also serve very well to make troughs to convey water instead of pipes of lead. The leaves of this tree are in shape somewhat like the Hazel, but they are blacker & more wrinkled, very clammy to handle, as though they were sprinkled with honey. The blossom or flowers are like the aglets of the Birch tree: which being faded, there followeth a scaly fruit closely growing together, as big as a pigeon's egg, which toward autumn doth open, and the seed falleth out and is lost.

2. Clusius and Bauhine have observed another kind of this which differs from the ordinary, in that it hath larger and more cut leaves, and these not shining above, but hoary underneath: the catkins, as also the rough heads are not so large as those of the former: the bark also is whiter. Clusius makes it his *Alnus altera*; and Bauhine, his *Alnus hirsutus*, or *folio incano*.

The Place.

The Alder or Aller tree delighteth to grow in low and moist waterish places.

The Time.

The Alder bringeth forth new leaves in April, the fruit whereof is ripe in September.

The Names.

This tree is called in Latin, *Alnus*: Petrus Crescentius nameth it *Amedanus*: it is called in High Dutch, *Erlenbaum* and *Ellernbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Elsen* and *Elsenboom*: in Italian, *Alno*: in French, *Aulne*; in English, Alder and Aller.

The Temperature.

The leaves and bark of the Alder tree are cold, dry, and astringent.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves of Alder are much used against hot swellings, ulcers, and all inward inflammations, especially of the almonds and kernels of the throat.

B. The bark is much used of poor country dyers, for the dying of coarse cloth, caps, hose, and such like into a black colour, whereunto it serveth very well.

CHAP. 114. Of the Birch Tree.

Betula.
The Birch tree.



Fig. 2070. Birch

The Description.

The common Birch tree waxeth likewise a great tree, having many boughs beset with many small rods or twigs, very limber and pliant: the bark of the young twigs and branches is plain, smooth, and full of sap, in colour like the Chestnut; but the rind of the body or trunk is hard without, white, rough, and uneven, full of chinks or crevices: under which is found another fine bark, plain, smooth, and as thin as paper, which heretofore was used instead of paper, to write upon, before the making of paper was known: in Russia and these cold regions it serveth instead of tiles and slate to cover their houses withal: this tree beareth for his flowers certain aglets like the Hazel tree, but smaller, wherein the seed is contained.

The Place.

This common Birch tree grows in woods, fenny grounds, and mountains, in most places of England.

The Time.

The catkins or aglets do first appear, and then the leaves, in April or a little later.

The Names.

This tree is named in Latin, *Betula*: divers also write it with a double *ll* *Betulla*, as some of Pliny's copies have it: it is called in High Dutch, *Birkenbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Berkenboom*: in Italian, *Betula*: by them of Trent, *Bedallo*: in French, *Bouleau*: in English, Birch tree.

The Temperature and Virtues.

Concerning the medicinable use of the Birch tree, or his parts, there is nothing extant either in the old or new writers.

This tree, saith Pliny in his 16th book, 18th chapter, *Mirabili candore & tenuitate terribilis magistratum virgis*:["Wonderfully white, and striking fear as the flogging-canes of the magistrates"] for in times past the magistrates' rods were made hereof: and in our time also the schoolmasters and parents do terrify their children with rods made of Birch.

It serveth well to the decking up of houses, and banquetting rooms, for places of pleasure, and beautifying of streets in the cross or gang week, and such like.

CHAP. 115. Of the Hornbeam, or Hardbeam Tree.

Betulus, sive Carpinus.
The Hornebeame tree.



Fig. 2071. Hornbeam

The Description.

Betulus, or the Hornbeam tree, grows great, and very like unto the Elm, or Witch Hazel tree, having a great body: the wood or timber whereof is better for arrows and shafts, pulleys for mills, and such like devices, than Elm or Witch Hazel; for in time it waxeth so hard, that the toughness and hardness of it may be rather compared unto horn than unto wood, and therefore it was called Hornbeam, or Hardbeam: the leaves hereof are like the Elm, saving that they be tenderer: among those hang certain triangled things, upon which be round knops, or little heads of the bigness of Ciches, in which is contained the fruit or seed: the root is strong and thick.

The Place.

Betulus or the Hornbeam tree grows plentifully in Northamptonshire, also in Kent by Gravesend, where it is commonly taken for a kind of Elm.

The Time.

This tree doth spring in April, and the seed is ripe in September.

The Names.

The Hornbeam tree is called in Greek *Zygia*, which is as if you should say *Coniugalis*, or belonging to the yoke, because it serveth well to make *Zygia* of, in Latin, *Iuga*, yokes wherewith oxen are yoked together, which are also even at this time made thereof, as witnesseth Benedictus Curtius Symphorianus, and ourselves have sufficient knowledge thereof in our own country; and therefore it may be Englished Yoke Elm. It is called of some, *Carpinus* and *Zugia*: it is also called *Betulus*, as if it were a kind of Birch, but myself better like that it should be one of the Elms: in High Dutch, *Ahorne*:

in French, *Carne*: in Italian, *Carpino*: in English, Hornbeam, Hardbeam, Yoke Elm, and in some places, Witch Hazel.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. This tree is not used in medicine, the virtues are not expressed of the ancients, neither have we any certain experiments of our own knowledge more than hath been said for the use of husbandry.

CHAP. 116. Of the Elm Tree.

Our author only described two Elms, and those not so accurately but that I think I shall give the Reader content, in exchanging them for better received from Mr Goodyer; which are these.

1 *Ulmus vulgatiff. folio lato scabro.*
The common Elme tree.



Fig. 2072. Common Elm (1)

2 *Ulmus minor folio angusto scabro.*
The narrow leaved Elme.



Fig. 2073. Narrow-Leaved Elm (2)

1. *Ulmus vulgatissima a folio lato scabro.* The common Elm.

This Elm is a very great high tree, the bark of the young trees, and boughs of the elder, which are usually lopped or shred, is smooth and very tough, and will strip or peel from the wood a great length without breaking: the bark of the body of the old trees as the trees grow in bigness, tears or rents, which makes it very rough. The innermost wood of the tree is of reddish yellow or brownish colour, and curled, and after it is dry, very tough, hard to cleave or rent, whereof naves of carts are most commonly made: the wood next the bark, which is called the sap, is white. Before the leaves come forth the flowers appear, about the end of March, which grow on the twigs or branches, closely compacted or thrust together, and are like to the chives growing in the middle of most flowers, of a reddish colour: after which come flat seed, more long than broad, not much unlike the garden *Arach* seed in form and bigness, and do for the most part fall away before or shortly after the leaves spring forth, and some hang on a great part of the summer: the leaves grow on the twigs, of a dark green colour; the middle size whereof are two inches broad, and three inches long, some are longer and broader, some narrower and shorter, rough or harsh in handling on both sides, nicked or indented about the edges, and many times crumpled, having a nerve in the middle, and many smaller nerves growing from him: the leaf on one side of the nerve is always longer than on the

other. On these leaves oftentimes grow blisters or small bladders, in which at the spring are little worms, about the bigness of bed-fleas. This Elm is common in all parts of England, where I have travelled.

2. *Ulmus minor folio angusto scabro*. The Narrow-Leaved Elm.

This tree is like the other, but much lesser and lower, the leaves are usually about two inches and a half long, and an inch or an inch and a quarter broad, nicked or indented about the edges, and hath one side longer than the other, as the first hath, and are also harsh or rough on both sides, the bark or rind will also strip as the first doth: hitherto I have not observed either the flowers or seed, or blisters on the leaves, nor have I had any sight of the timber, or heard of any use thereof, This kind I have seen growing but once, and that in the hedges by the highway as I rode between Christchurch and Lymington in the New Forest in Hampshire, about the middle of September 1624, from whence I brought some small plants of it, not a foot in length, which now, 1633, are risen up ten or twelve foot high, and grow with me by the first kind, but are easily to be discerned apart, by any that will look on both.

‡ 3 *Ulmus folio latissimo scabro*.
Witch Hafell, or the broadest leaved Elme.



Fig. 2074. Witch Hazel, or Broad-Leaved Elm (3)

4 *Ulmus folio glabro*.
Witch Elme, or smooth leaved Elme.



Fig. 2075. Wych Elm (4)

3. *Ulmus folio latissimo scabro*. Witch Hazel, or the Broad-Leaved Elm.

This groweth to be a very great tree, and also very high, especially when he groweth in woods amongst other trees: the bark on the outside is blacker than that of the first, and is also very tough, so that when there is plenty of sap it will strip or peel from the wood of the boughs from the one end to the other, a dozen foot in length or more, without breaking, whereof are often made cords or ropes: the timber hereof is in

colour near like the first; it is nothing so firm or strong for naves of carts as the first is, but will more easily cleave; this timber is also covered with a white sap next the bark: the branches or young boughs are grosser and bigger, and do spread themselves broader, and hang more downwards than those of the first; the flowers are nothing but chives, very like those of the first kind: the seed is also like, but something bigger: the leaves are much broader and longer than any of the kinds of Elm, usually three or four inches broad, and five or six inches long, also rough or harsh in handling on both sides, snipped or indented about the edges, near resembling the leaves of the Hazel: the one side of the leaves are also most commonly longer than the other, also on the leaves of this Elm are sometimes blisters or bladders like those on the first kind. This prospereth and naturally groweth in any soil moist or dry, on high hills, and in low valleys in good plenty in most places in Hampshire, where it is commonly called Witch Hazel. Old men affirm, that when longbows were in great use, there were very many made of the wood of this tree, for which purpose it is mentioned in the statutes of England by the name of Witch Hazel, as 8. *El.* 10. This hath little affinity with *Carpinus*, which in Essex is called Witch Hazel.

4. *Ulmus folio glabro.* Wych Elm, or smooth leaved Elm.

This kind is in bigness and height like the first, the boughs grow as those of the Witch Hazel do, that is hanged more downwards than those of the common Elm, the bark is blacker than that of the first kind, it will also peel from the boughs: the flowers are like the first, and so are the seeds: the leaves in form are like those of the first kind, but are smooth in handling on both sides. My worthy friend and excellent herbarist of happy memory Mr William Coys of Stubbers in the parish of Northokington in Essex told me, that the wood of this kind was more desired for naves of carts than the wood of the first. I observed it growing very plentifully as I rode between Romford and the said Stubbers, in the year 1620, intermixed with the first kind; but easily to be discerned apart, and is in those parts usually called Wych Elm.

The Place.

The first kind of Elm groweth plentifully in all places of England. The rest are set forth in their descriptions.

The Time.

The seeds of the Elm showeth itself first, and before the leaves; it falleth in the end of April, at what time the leaves begin to spring.

The Names.

The first is called in Latin, *Ulmus*: in High Dutch, *Rust holtz*, *Rustbaum*, *Vimbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Oimen*: in French, *Orme*, and *Omeau*: in Italian, *Olmo*: in Spanish, *Ulmo*: in English, Elm tree. The seed is named by Pliny and Columella, *Samera*. The little worms which are found with the liquor within the small bladders be named in Latin, *Culices*, and *Muliones*.

The other Elm is called by Gaza *Montiulmus* or mountain Elm. Columella nameth it Vernacula, or *Ulmus nostras*, that is to say, *Italica*, or Italian Elm: it is called in Low Dutch, *Herseleer*; and in some places, *Heerenteer*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The leaves and bark of the Elm be moderately hot, with an evident cleansing faculty; they have in the chewing a certain clammy and gluing quality.

B. The leaves of Elm glue and heal up green wounds, so doth the bark wrapped and swaddled about the wound like a bandage.

C. The leaves being stamped with vinegar do take away scurf.

D. Dioscorides writeth, that one ounce weight of the thicker bark drunk with wine or water purgeth phlegm.

E. The decoction of Elm leaves, as also of the bark or root, healeth broken bones very speedily, if they be fomented or bathed therewith.

F. The liquor that is found in the blisters doth beautify the face, and scoureth away all spots, freckles, pimples, spreading tetter, and such like, being applied thereto.

G. It healeth green wounds, and cureth ruptures newly made, being laid on with Spleenwort and the truss closely set unto it.

CHAP. 117. Of the Lime or Linden Tree.

1 *Tilia femina.*
The female Line tree.



Fig. 2076. Female Lime (1)

2 *Tilia mas.*
The male Line tree.



Fig. 2077. Male Lime (2)

The Description.

1. The Female Lime or Linden tree waxeth very great and thick, spreading forth his branches wide and far abroad, being a tree which yieldeth a most pleasant shadow, under and within whose boughs may be made brave summer houses and banqueting arbors, because the more that it is surcharged with weight of timber and such like, the better it doth flourish. The bark is brownish, very smooth, and plain on the outside, but that which is next to the timber is white, moist and tough, serving very well for ropes, traces, and halters. The timber is whitish, plain and without knots, yet very soft and gentle in the cutting or handling. Better gunpowder is made of the coals of this wood than of Willow coals. The leaves are green, smooth, shining and large, somewhat snipped or toothed about the edges: the flowers are little, whitish, of a good savour, and very many in number, growing clustering together from out of the middle of the leaf: out of which proceedeth a small whitish long narrow leaf: after the flowers succeed cornered sharp pointed nuts, of the bigness of Hazel nuts. This tree seemeth to be a kind of Elm, and the people of Essex about Hedingham (wheras great plenty groweth by the waysides) do call it broad-Leaved Elm.

2. The Female *Tilia* or Lime tree groweth also very great and thick, spreading itself far abroad like the other Linden tree: his bark is very tough and pliant, and serveth to make cords and halters of. The timber of this tree is much harder, more knotty, and more yellow than the timber of the other, not much differing from the timber of the Elm tree: the leaves hereof are not much unlike Ivy leaves, not very green, somewhat

snipped about the edges: from the middle whereof come forth clusters of little white flowers like the former: which being faded, there succeed small round pellets, growing clustering together, like Ivy berries, within which is contained a little round blackish seed, which falleth out when the berry is ripe.

The Place.

The Female Linden tree groweth in some woods in Northamptonshire; also near Colchester, and in many places amongst the high way leading from London to Hedingham, in the county of Essex.

The male Linden tree groweth in my Lord Treasurer's garden at the Strand, and in sundry other places, as at Barn Elms, and in a garden at Saint Katherine's near London. Thus our author: the female grows in the places here named, but I have not yet observed the male.

The Time

These trees flower in May, and their fruit is ripe in August.

The Names.

The Linden tree is called in Greek *Philyra*: in Latin, *Tilia*, in High Dutch, *Linden*, and *Lindenbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Linde*, and *Lindenboom*: the Italians, *Tilia*: the Spaniards, *Teia*: in French, *Tilet* and *Tilieul*: in English, Linden tree, and Lime tree.

The Temperature.

The bark and leaves of the Linden or Lime tree, are of a temperate heat, somewhat drying and astringent.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves of *Tilia* boiled in smith's water with a piece of alum and a little honey, cure the sores in children's mouths.

B. The leaves boiled until they be tender, and pounded very small with hog's grease, and the powder of fenugreek and linseed, take away hot swellings and bring impostumes to maturation, being applied thereto very hot.

C. The flowers are commended by divers against pain of the head proceeding of a cold cause: against dizziness, the apoplexy, and also the falling sickness, and not only the flowers, but the distilled water thereof.

D. The leaves of the Linden (saith Theophrastus) are very sweet, and be a fodder for most kind of cattle: the fruit can be eaten of none.

CHAP. 118. Of the Maple Tree.

‡ 1 *Acer maius.*
The great Maple.



Fig. 2078. Great Maple (1)

‡ 2 *Acer minus.*
The lesser Maple.



Fig. 2079. Lesser Maple (2)

The Description.

1. The Great Maple is a beautiful and high tree, with a bark of a mean smoothness: the substance of the wood is tender and easy to work on; it sendeth forth on every side very many goodly boughs and branches, which make an excellent shadow against the heat of the sun; upon which are great, broad, and cornered leaves, much like to those of the Vine, hanging by long reddish stalks: the flowers hang by clusters, of a whitish green colour; after them cometh up long fruit fastened together by couples, one right against another, with kernels bumping out near to the place in which they are combined: in all the other parts flat and thin like unto parchment, or resembling the innermost wings of grasshoppers: the kernels be white and little.

2. There is a small Maple which doth oftentimes come to the bigness of a tree, but most commonly it groweth low after the manner of a shrub: the bark of the young shoots hereof is likewise smooth; the substance of the wood is white, and easy to be wrought on: the leaves are cornered like those of the former, slippery, and fastened with a reddish stalk, but much lesser, very like in bigness and smoothness to the leaf of Sanicle, but that the cuts are deeper: the flowers be as those of the former, green, yet not growing in clusters, but upon spoked roundels: the fruit standeth by two and two upon a stem or footstalk.

The Place

The small or hedge Maple groweth almost everywhere in hedges and low woods.

The great Maple is a stranger in England, only it groweth in the walks and places of pleasure of noblemen, where it especially is planted for the shadow's sake, and under the name of Sycamore tree.

The Time.

These trees flower about the end of March, and their fruit is ripe in September.

The Names.

This tree is called in Greek, *Sphendamnos*: in Latin, *Acer*: in English, Maple, or Maple tree.

The great Maple is called in High Dutch, *Ahorne*, and *Waldescherne*: the French men, *Grand Erable*, and *Plasne* abusively, and this is thought to be properly called *Sphendamnos*: but they are far deceived that take this for *Platanus*, or the Plane tree, being drawn into this error by the nearness of the French word; for the Plane tree doth much differ from this. This is now commonly (yet not rightly) called the Sycamore tree. And seeing use will have it so, I think it were not unfit to call it the bastard Sycamore.

The other is called in Latin, *Acer minor*: in High Dutch, *Wassholder*: in Low Dutch, *Booghout*: in French, *Erable*: in English, small Maple, and common Maple.

The Temperature and Virtues

A. What use the Maple hath in medicine we find nothing written of the Grecians, but Pliny in his 14th book, 8th chapter affirmeth, that the root pounded and applied, is a singular remedy for the pain of the liver. Serenus Sammonicus writeth, that it is drunk with wine against the pains of the side:

*Si latus immeritum morbo tentatur acuto,
Accensum tinges lapidem stridentibus undis.
Hinc bibis: aut Aceris radicem tundis, & una
Cum vino capis: hoc præsens medicamen habetur.*

Thy harmless side if sharp disease invade,
In hissing water quench a heated stone:
This drink. Or Maple root in powder made,
Take off in wine, a present med'cine known.

CHAP. 119. Of the Poplar Tree.

The Kinds.

There be divers trees under the title of Poplar, yet differing very notably, as shall be declared in the descriptions, whereof one is the white, another the black, and a third sort set down by Pliny, which is the Aspen, named by him *Lybica*, and by Theophrastus, *Kerkis*: likewise there is another of America, or of the Indies, which is not to be found in these regions of Europe.

1 *Populus alba.*
The white Poplar tree.

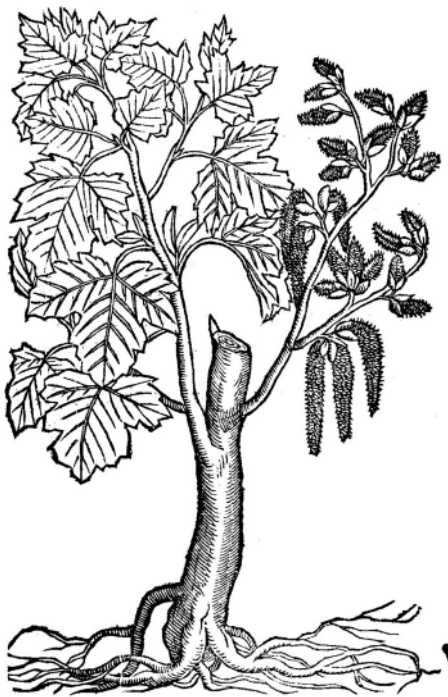


Fig. 2080. White Poplar (1)

2 *Populus nigra.*
The blacke Poplar tree.



Fig. 2081. Black Poplar (2)

The Description.

1. The White Poplar tree cometh soon to perfection, and groweth high in short time, full of boughs at the top: the bark of the body is smooth, and that of the boughs is likewise white withal: the wood is white, easy to be cleft: the leaves are broad, deeply gashed, & cornered like almost to those of the Vine, but much lesser, smooth on the upper side, glib, and somewhat green; and on the nether side white and woolly: the catkins are long, downy, at the first of a purplish colour: the roots spread many ways, lying under the turf, and not growing deep, and therefore it happeneth that these trees be oftentimes blown down with the wind.

2. The Black Poplar tree is as high as the white, and now and then higher, oftentimes fuller of boughs, and with a thicker body: the bark thereof is likewise smooth, but the substance of the wood is harder, yellower, and not so white, fuller of veins, and not so easily cleft: the leaves be somewhat long, and broad below towards the stem, sharp at the point, and a little snipped about the edges, neither white nor

woolly, like the leaves of the former, but of a pleasant green colour: amongst which come forth long aglets or catkins, which do turn into clusters: the buds which show themselves before the leaves spring out, are of a reasonable good savour, of the which is made that profitable ointment called *unguentum populeon*.

3 *Populus Libyca.*
The Aspen tree.

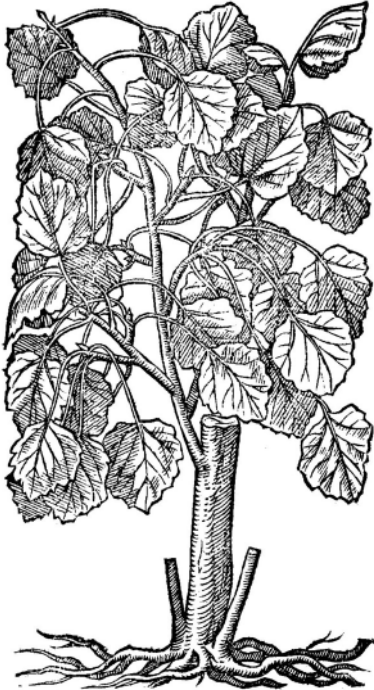


Fig. 2082. Aspen (3)

4 *Populus Americana.*
The Indian Poplar tree.

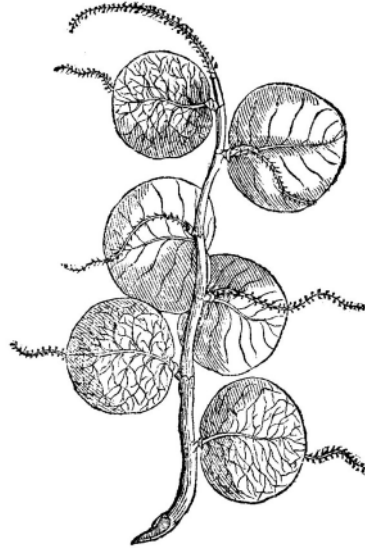


Fig. 2083. Indian Poplar (4)

3. The third kind of Poplar is also a great tree: the bark and substance of the wood is somewhat like that of the former: this tree is garnished with many brittle and tender branches, set full of leaves, in a manner round, much blacker and harder than the Black Poplar, hanging upon long and slender stems, which are for the most part still wavering, and make a great noise by being beaten one to another, yea though the weather be calm, and scarce any wind blowing; and it is known by the name of the Aspen tree: the roots hereof are stronger, and grow deeper into the ground than those of the White Poplar.

4. This strange Poplar, which some do call *Populus rotundifolia*, in English, the Round-Leaved Poplar of India, waxeth a great tree, bedecked with many goodly twiggy branches, tough and limber like the Willow, full of joints where the leaves do grow, of a perfect roundness, save where it cleaveth or groweth to the stalk: from the bosoms or corners of these leaves come forth small aglets, like unto our Poplar, but smaller: the leaf is thick, and very like the leaves of *Arbor Indæ*, but broader, of an astringent taste, somewhat heating the mouth, and saltish.

‡ 5 *Populus alba folijs minoribus.*
The leffer leaued white Poplar.

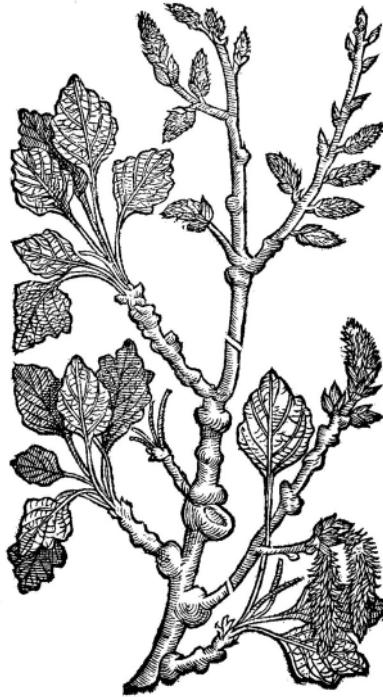


Fig. 2085. Small-Leaved White Poplar (5)

5. There is also another sort of Poplar which groweth likewise unto a great tree, the branches whereof are knotty and bunched forth as though it were full of scabs or sores: the leaves come forth in tufts most commonly at the end of the boughs, not cut or jagged, but resembling the leaves of that *Atriplex* called *Pes Anserinus*; in colour like the former, but the aglets are not so closely packed together, otherwise it is like.

The Place.

These trees do grow in low moist places, as in meadows near unto ditches, standing waters and rivers.

The first kind of white Poplar groweth not very common in England, but in some places here and there a tree: I found many both small & great growing in a low meadow turning up a lane at the farther end of a village called Blackwall, from London; and in Essex at a place called Ovenden, and in divers other places.

The Indian Poplar groweth in most parts of the islands of the West Indies.

The Time.

These trees do bud forth in the end of March and beginning of April, at which time the buds must be gathered to serve for *unguentum populeon*.

The Names.

The white Poplar is called in Latin, *Populus alba*: of divers, *Farfarus*, as of Plautus in his comedy *Penulus*, as you may see by his words set down in the chapter of Coltsfoot.

It is called in High Dutch, *Doppelbaum*, *Weisz*; *Alberbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Abeel*, of his hoary or aged colour, and also *Abeelboome*; which the grammarians do falsely

interpret *Abies*, the Fir tree: in Italian, *Popolo albo*: in French, *Peuplier blanc*, *Aubel*, *Obel*, or *Aubeau*: in English, White Poplar tree, and Abeell, after the Dutch name.

The second is called in Latin, *Populus nigra*: by Petrus Crescentius, *Albarus*: in High Dutch, *Aspen*: in Low Dutch, *Populier*: in Italian, *Popolo nero*: in French, *Peuplier noir*: in Spanish, *Alamo nigailho*: in English, Poplar tree, Black Poplar, and Pepler. The first or new sprung buds whereof are called of the apothecaries, *oculi populi*, Poplar buds: others choose rather to call it *gemma populi*: some of the Grecians name it *Sperma*: whereupon they grounded their error, who rashly supposed that those resinous or clammy buds are not to be put or used in the composition of the ointment bearing the name of the Poplar, and commonly called in English, Popilion and Pompillion, but the berries that grow in clusters, in which there is no clamminess at all.

They are also as far deceived, who giving credit to poets' fables, do believe that amber cometh of the clammy resin falling into the river Po.

The third is called of divers, *Populus tremula*, which word is borrowed of the Frenchmen, who name it *Tremble*: it also received a name amongst the Low Country men, from the noise and rattling of the leaves, viz. *Rateeler*: this is that which is named of Pliny, *Libyca* and by Theophrastus *Kerkis*, which Gaza calleth *Populus montana*: in English, Aspe, and Aspen tree, and may also be called Tremble, after the French name, considering it is the matter whereof women's tongues were made, (as the poets and some others report) which seldom cease wagging.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The White Poplar hath a cleansing faculty, saith Galen, and a mixed temperature, consisting of a watery warm essence, and also a thin earthy substance.

B. The bark, as Dioscorides writeth, to the weight of an ounce (or as others say, and that more truly, of little more than a dram) is a good remedy for the sciatica or ache in the huckle bones, and for the strangury.

C. That this bark is good for the sciatica, Serenus Sammonicus doth also write:

*Sæpius occultus victa coxendice morbus
Perfurit, & gressus diro languore moratur:
Populus alba dabit medicos de cortice potus.*

An hidden disease doth oft rage and reign,
The hip overcome and vex with the pain,
It makes with vile aching one tread slow and shrink;
The bark of white Poplar is help had in drink.

D. The same bark is also reported to make a woman barren, if it be drunk with the kidney of a mule, which thing the leaves likewise are thought to perform, being taken after the flowers or reds be ended.

E. The warm juice of the leaves being dropped into the ears doth take away the pain thereof.

F. The resin or clammy substance of the black Poplar buds is hot and dry, and of thin parts, attenuating and mollifying: it is also fitly mixed *acopis & malagmatis* ["into a salve used to ease fatigue or pain, or as a poultice"]: the leaves have in a manner the like operation for all these things, yet weaker, and not so effectual, as Galen teacheth.

G. The leaves and young buds of black Poplar do assuage the pain of the gout in the hands or feet, being made into an ointment with May butter.

H. The ointment made of the buds is good against all inflammations, bruises, squats, falls, and such like: this ointment is very well known to the apothecaries.

I. Paulus Ægineta teacheth to make an oil also hereof, called *Ægyrinum*, or oil of black Poplar.

CHAP. 120. Of the Plane Tree.

Platanus.
The Plane tree.



Fig. 2085. Plane

The Description.

The Plane is a great tree, having very long and far spreading boughs casting a wonderful broad shadow, by reason whereof it was highly commended and esteemed of among the old Romans: the leaves are cornered like those of *Palma Christi*, greater than Vine leaves, and hanging upon little red footstalks: the flowers are small and mossy, and of a pale yellowish colour: the fruit is round like a ball, rugged, and somewhat hairy; but in Asia more hairy and greater, almost as big as a walnut: the root is great, dispersing itself far abroad.

The Place.

The Plane tree delighteth to grow by springs or rivers: Pliny reports that they were wont to be cherished with wine: they grew afterward (saith he) to be of so great honour (meaning the Plane trees) as that they were cherished and watered with wine: and it is found by experience that the same is very comfortable to the roots, and we have already taught, that trees desire to drink wine. This tree is stange in Italy, it is nowhere seen in Germany, nor in the Low Countries: in Asia it groweth plentifully: it is found also in Candy, growing in valleys, and near unto the hill Athos, as Petrus Bellonius in his *Singularities* doth declare: it groweth in many places of Greece, and is found planted in some places of Italy, for pleasure rather than for profit. My servant William Marshall (whom I sent into the Mediterranean sea as surgeon unto the *Hercules* of London) found divers trees hereof growing in Lepanto, hard by the seaside, at the entrance into the town, a port of Morea, being a part of Greece, and from thence brought one of those rough buttons, being the fruit thereof. There are one or two young ones at this time growing with Mr Tradescant.

The Plane trees cast their leaves in winter, as Bellonius testifieth, and therefore it is no marvel that they keep away the sun in summer, and not at all in winter: there is, saith Pliny, no greater commendation of the tree, than that it keepeth away the sun in summer, and entertaineth it in winter.

The Names.

This tree is called in Greek, *Platanos*: and likewise in Latin *Platanus*: it beareth his name of the breadth: the French men's *Plasne* doth far differ from this, which is a kind of Maple: this tree is named in English, Plane tree.

The Temperature and virtues.

A. The Plane tree is of a cold and moist essence, as Galen saith: the green leaves are good to be laid upon hot swellings and inflammations in the beginning.

B. Being boiled in wine they are a remedy for the running and the watering of the eyes, if they be applied.

C. The bark and balls do dry: the bark boiled in vinegar helpeth the toothache.

D. The fruit of the Plane tree drunk with wine helpeth the bitings of mad dogs and serpents, and mixed with hog's grease it maketh a good ointment against burning and scalding.

E. The burned bark doth mightily dry, and scoureth withal; it removeth the white scurf, and cureth moist ulcers

F. The dust or down, saith Galen, that lieth on the leaves of the tree is to be taken heed of, for if it be drawn in with the breath, it is offensive to the windpipe by his extreme dryness, and making the same rough, and hurting the voice, as it doth also the sight and hearing, if it fall into the eyes or ears. Dioscorides doth not attribute this to the dust or down of the leaves only, but also to that of the balls.

CHAP. 121. Of the Wayfaring Tree.

Lantana, sive Viburnum.
The Wayfaringtree.



Fig. 2086. Wayfaring Tree

The Description.

The Wayfaring man's tree grows up to the height of an hedge tree, of a mean bigness: the trunk or body thereof is covered with a russet bark: the branches are long, tough, and easy to be bowed, and hard to be broken, as are those of the Willow, covered with a soft whitish bark, whereon are broad leaves thick and rough, slightly indented about the edges, of a white colour, and somewhat hairy whilst they be fresh and green; but when they begin to wither and fall away, they are reddish, and set together by couples one opposite to another. The flowers are white, and grow in clusters: after which come clusters of fruit of the bigness of a pea, somewhat flat on both sides, at the first green, after red, and black when they be ripe: the root disperseth itself far abroad under the upper crust of the earth.

The Place.

This tree groweth in most hedges in rough and stony places, upon hills and low woods, especially in the chalky grounds of Kent about Cobham, Southfleet, and Gravesend, and in all the tract to Canterbury.

The Time.

The flowers appear in summer: the berries are ripe in the end of autumn, and new leaves come forth in the spring.

This hedge tree is called *Viurna* of Ruellius: in French, *Viorne*, and *Viorna*: in Italian, *Lantana*: it is reputed for the tree *Viburnum*, of which Virgil maketh mention in the first *Eclogue*, where he commendeth the city Rome for the loftiness and stateliness thereof, above other cities, saying, that as the tall Cypress trees do show themselves

above the low and shrubby Viorn, so doth Rome above other cities lift up her head very high; in these verses:

*Verum hæc tantum alias inter caput exulit urbes,
Quantum lenta solent inter viburna cupressi.*

But this all other cities so excels,
As Cypress, which 'mongst bending Viornes dwells.

[Virgil, *Eclogues* I. l. 24-25]

I judge *Viburnum* not to be a name to any particular plant, but a general name to all low and bending shrubs; amongst which this here described may take place as one. I enquired of a countryman in Essex, if he knew any name of this: he answered, it was called the Cotton tree, by reason of the softness of the leaves.

The Temperature.

The leaves and berries of *Lantana* are cold and dry, and of a binding quality.

The Virtues.

A. The decoction of the leaves of *Lantana* is very good to be gargled in the mouth against all swellings and inflammations thereof, against the scurvy and other diseases of the gums, and fasteneth loose teeth.

B. The same boiled in lye doth make the hairs black if they be bathed or washed therewith, and suffered to dry of itself.

C. The berries are of the like faculty, the powder whereof when they be dried stay the lask, all issues of blood, and also the whites.

D. It is reported, that the bark of the root of the tree buried a certain time in the earth, and afterwards boiled and stamped according to art, maketh good bird-lime for fowlers to catch birds with.

CHAP. 122. Of the Bead Tree.

1 *Zizypha candida.*
The Beade tree.



Fig. 2087. Bead Tree (1)

‡ 2 *Zizypha Cappadocica.*
The Beade tree of Cappadocia.



Fig. 2088. Cappadocian Bead Tree (2)

The Description.

1. This tree was called *Zizypha candida* by the herbarists of Montpellier; and by the Venetians and Italians, *Sycomorus*, but untruly: the Portugals have termed it *Arbor Paradizo*: all which and each whereof have erred together, both in respect of the fruit and of the whole tree: some have called it *Zizypha*, though in faculty it is nothing like; for the taste of this fruit is very unpleasant, virulent, and bitter. But deciding all controversies, this is the tree which Avicenna calleth *Azederach*, which is very great, charged with many large arms, that are garnished with twiggy branches, set full of great leaves consisting of sundry small leaves, one growing right opposite to another like the leaves of the Ash tree or Wicken tree, but more deeply cut about the edges like the teeth of a saw: among which come the flowers, consisting of five small blue leaves laid abroad in manner of a star: from the midst whereof groweth forth a small hollow cup resembling a chalice: after which succeedeth the fruit, covered with a brownish yellow shell, very like unto the fruit of Jujubes (whereof Dodonæus in his last edition maketh it a kind) of a rank, bitter, and unpleasant taste, with a six-cornered stone within, which being drawn on a string, serveth to make beads of, for want of other things.

2. *Zizyphus Cappadocica* groweth not so great as the former, but is of a mean stature, and full of boughs: the bark is smooth and even, and that which groweth upon the trunk and great boughs is of a shining scarlet colour: out of these great arms or boughs grow slender twigs, white and soft, which are set full of whitish leaves, but more white on the contrary or back part, and are like to the leaves of Willow, but narrower

and whiter: amongst these leaves come forth small hollow yellowish flowers, growing at the joints of the branches, most commonly three together, and of a pleasant savour, with some few threads or chives in the middle thereof. After which succeedeth the fruit, of the bigness and fashion of the smallest Olive, white both within and without, wherein is contained a small stone which yieldeth a kernel of a pleasant taste, and very sweet.

The Place.

Matthiolus writeth, that *Zizyphus candida* is found in the cloisters of many monasteries in Italy; Lobel saith that it groweth in many places in Venice and Narbonne; and it is wont now of late to be planted and cherished in the goodliest orchards of all the Low Countries.

Zizyphus Cappadocica groweth likewise in many places of Italy, and specially in Spain: it is also cherished in gardens both in Germany and in the Low Countries. It groweth also here in the garden of Mr John Parkinson.

The Time.

These trees flower in June in Italy and Spain; their fruit is ripe in September; but in Germany and the Low Countries there doth no fruit follow the flowers.

The Names.

Zizyphus candida Avicenna calleth *Azederach*, or as divers read it, *Azederaeth*: and they name it, saith he, in Rechi, *Arbor mirobalanorum*, or the Mirobalan tree, but not properly, and in Tabrasten, and Kien, and Thihich. The later writers are far deceived in taking it to be the Sycomore tree; and they as much, that would have it to be the Lotus or Nettle tree: it may be named in English, Bead tree, for the cause before alleged.

The other is *Zizyphi altera species*, or the second kind of Jujube tree, which Columella in his ninth book and fourth chap. doth call *Zizyphus alba*, or white Jujube tree, for difference from the other that is surnamed *rutila*, or glittering red. Pliny calleth this *Zizyphus cappadocica*, in his 21st book; ninth chapter, where he entreateth of the honour of garlands, of which he saith there be two sorts, whereof some be made of flowers, and others of leaves: I would call the flowers (saith he) brooms, for of those is gathered a yellow flower, and *Rhododendron*, also *Zizypha*, which is called *cappadocica*. The flowers of these are sweet of smell, and like to Olive flowers. Neither doth Columella or Pliny unadvisedly take this for *Zizyphus*, for both the leaves and flowers grow out of the tender and young sprung twigs, as they likewise do out of the former: the flowers are very sweet of smell, and cast their savour far abroad: the fruit also is like that of the former.

The Temperature.

Avicenna writing and entreating of *Azadaraeth*, saith, that the flowers thereof be hot in the third degree, and dry in the end of the first.

Zizyphus cappadocica is cold and dry of complexion.

The Virtues.

- A. The flowers of *Zizyphus*, or *Azadaraeth* open the obstructions of the brain.
- B. The distilled water thereof killeth nits and lice, preserveth the hair of the head from falling, especially being mixed with white wine, and the head bathed with it.
- C. The fruit is very hurtful to the chest, and a troublesome enemy to the stomach; it is dangerous, and peradventure deadly.

D. Moreover, it is reported, that the decoction of the bark and of Fumitory, with mirobalans added, is good for agues proceeding of phlegm.

E. The juice of the uppermost leaves with honey is a remedy against poison.

F. The like also hath Rhasis: the Bead tree, saith he, is hot and dry: it is good for stoppings of the head, it maketh the hair long; yet is the fruit thereof very offensive to the stomach, and oftentimes found to be pernicious and deadly.

G. Matthiolus writeth, that the leaves and wood bringeth death even unto beasts, and that the poison thereof is resisted by the same remedies that Oleander is.

H. *Ziziphus cappadocica* prevaieth against the diseases aforesaid, but the decoction thereof is very good for those whose water scaldeth them with the continual issuing thereof, as also for such as have the running of the reins and the exulcerations of the bladder and privy parts.

I. A lohoch or licking medicine made thereof, or the syrup, is excellent good against spitting of blood proceeding of the distillations of sharp or salt humours.

CHAP. 123. Of the Lotus, or Nettle Tree.

Lotus arbor.
The Nettle tree.



Fig. 2089. Lotus or Nettle Tree

The Description.

The Lotus whereof we write is a tree as big as a Pear tree, or bigger and higher: the body and arms are very thick; the bark whereof is smooth, of a gallant green colour tending to blueness: the boughs are long, and spread themselves all about: the leaves be like those of the Nettle, sharp pointed, and nicked in the edges like a saw, and dashed here and there with stripes of a yellowish white colour: the berries be round, and hang upon long stalks like cherries, of a yellowish white colour at the first, and afterwards red, but when they be ripe they be somewhat black.

The Place.

This is a rare and strange tree in both the Germanies: it was brought out of Italy, where there is found store thereof, as Matthioli testifieth: I have a small tree thereof in my garden. There is likewise a tree thereof in the garden under London wall, sometime belonging to Mr Gray, an apothecary of London; and another great tree in a garden near Coleman street in London, being the garden of the Queen's apothecary at the impression hereof, called Mr Hugh Morgan, a curious conserver of rare simples. The Lotus tree doth also grow in Africa, but it somewhat differeth from the Italian Lotus in fruit, as Pliny in plain words doth show in his thirteenth book, seventeenth chapter. That part of Africa, saith he, that lieth towards us, bringeth forth the famous Lotus tree, which they call *Celtis*, and the same well known in Italy, but altered by the soil: it is as big as the Pear tree, although Nepos Cornelius reporteth it to be shorter: the leaves are full of fine cuts, otherwise they be thought to be like those of the Holm tree. There be many differences, but the same are made especially by the fruit: the fruit is as big as a bean, and of the colour of saffron, but before it is through ripe, it changeth his color as doth the Grape. It grows thick among the boughs after the manner of the Myrtle, not as

in Italy, after the manner of the Cherry; the fruit of it is there so sweet, as it hath also given a name to that country and land, too hospitable to strangers, and forgetful of their own country.

It is reported that they are troubled with no diseases of the belly that eat it. The better is that which hath no kernel, which in the other kind is stony: there is also pressed out of it a wine, like to a sweet wine :which the same Nepos denieth to endure above ten days, and the berries stamped with *Alica* are reserved in vessels for food. Moreover we have heard say, that armies have been fed therewith, as they have passed to and fro through Africa. The colour of the wood is black: they use to make flutes and pipes of it: the root serveth for knives' hafts, and other short works: this is there the nature of the tree: thus far Pliny. In the same place he saith, that this renowned tree doth grow about Syrtis and Nasaimonæ: and in his 5th book, 7th chapter he showeth that there is not far from the lesser Syrtis, the island Menynx, surnamed *Lotophagitis*, of the plenty of Lotus trees.

Strabo in his 17th book affirmeth, that not only Menynx, but also the lesser Syrtis is said to be *Lotophagitis*: first, saith he, lieth Syrtis a certain long island by the name Cercinna, and another lesser, called Circinnitis; next to this is the lesser Syrtis, which they call Lotophagitis Syrtis: the compass of this gulf is almost 1600 furlongs; the breadth of the mouth 600. By both the capes there be islands joined to the mainland, that is, Cercinna and Menynx, of like bigness: they think that Menynx is the country of the *Lotophagi*, or those that feed of the Lotus trees; of which country Homer maketh mention, and there are certain monuments to be seen, and Ulysses' altar, and the fruit itself; for there be in it great plenty of Lotus trees, whose fruit is wonderful sweet: thus saith Strabo.

This Lotus is also described by Theophrastus, in his fourth book he saith, that there be very many kinds, which be severed by the fruit: the fruit is of the bigness of a bean, which when it waxeth ripe doth alter his colour as grapes do: the fruit of which the Lotophagi do eat is sweet, pleasant, harmless, and wholesome for the belly, but that is pleasanter which is without kernels, and of this they make their wine.

This Lotus tree, as the same author affirmeth, is by nature everlasting: as for example, the Lotus trees whereof Pliny hath written in his 16th book, 44th chapter. At Rome, saith he, the Lotus tree in Lucinas court, how much elder it was than the church of the city, built in the year which was without magistrates, 469, it is uncertain: there is no doubt but that it was elder; because *Lucina* bare the name of that *Lucus* or grove. This is now about 450 years old. That is elder which is surnamed *Capillata*, or hairy; because the hair of the vestal virgins was brought unto it: but the other Lotus tree in Vulcan's church, which Romulus built by the victory of tenths, is taken to be as old as the city, as Massurius witnesseth.

The Time.

They lose their leaves at the first approach of winter and recover them again in April: the fruit is ripe in September.

The Names.

This tree is called in Greek, *Lotos*: in *Latin* by Pliny, *Celtis*: in Italian, *Perlaro*: by those of Trent, *Bagolaro*; and in English, Lotus tree, and Nettle tree.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The Lotus tree is not greatly binding as Galen saith, but of thin parts, and of a drying nature.

B. The decoction of the wood beaten small, being either drunk or used clysterwise, is a remedy for the bloody flux; and for the whites and reds.

C. It stoppeth the lask, and maketh the hair yellow, and as Galen addeth, keepeth hairs from falling.

D. The shivers or small pieces thereof, as the same author allegeth, are boiled sometimes in water, sometimes in wine, as need shall require.

CHAP. 124. Of Italian Wood of Life, or Pockwood, vulgarly called *Lignum vitæ*.

1 *Guaiacum Patavinum latifolium*.
Broad leaved Italian Wood of life.



2 *Guaiacum Patavinum angustifol.*
Narrow leaved Italian Guaiacum.



Fig. 2090. Broad-Leaved Italian Tree of Life (1)

Fig. 2091. Narrow-Leaved Italian Tree of Life (2)

The Description.

1. Italian *Lignum vitæ*, or Wood of Life, groweth to a fair and beautiful tree, having a straight and upright body, covered over with a smooth and dark green bark, yielding forth many twiggy branches, set forth of goodly leaves, like those of the Pear tree, but of greater beauty and somewhat broader: among which cometh forth the fruit, growing close to the branches, almost without stalks: this fruit is round, and at the first green, but black when it is ripe, as big as cherries, of an excellent sweet taste when it is dried: but this is not the Indian *Lignum sanctum*, or *Guaiacum*, whereof our bowls and physical drinks be made, but it is a bastard kind thereof, first planted in the common garden at Padua, by the learned Fallopius, who supposed it to be the right *Guaiacum*.

2. The leaves of this are longer and narrower than the former, but firm also and nervous like as they are; the fruit is in shape like Sebestens, but much less, of a bluish colour when it is ripe, with many little stones within; the taste hereof is not unpleasant. Matthiolus calls this *Pseudolotus*; and Tabernamontanus, *Lotus Africana*.

The Place.

Guaiacum patavinum groweth plentifully about Lugdunum, or Lyons in France: I planted it in the garden of Barn Elms near London two trees: besides, there groweth another in the garden of Mr Gray an apothecary of London, and in my garden likewise.

The Time.

It flowereth in May, and the fruit is ripe in September.

The Names.

Guaiacum patavinum hath been reputed for the *Lotus* of Theophrastus: in English it is called the Bastard Mevynwood.

This hath no affinity with the true Indian *Guaiacum* which is frequently used in medicine.

The Temperature and Virtues.

The fruit of this is thought to be of the same temper and quality with that of the Nettle tree.

CHAP. 125. Of the Strawberry Tree.

Arbutus.
The Strawberry tree.



Fig. 2092. Strawberry Tree

The Description.

The Strawberry tree groweth for the most part low, very like in bigness to the Quince tree (whereunto Dioscorides compareth it.) The body is covered with a reddish bark, both rough and scaly: the boughs stand thick on the top, somewhat reddish: the leaves be broad, long, and smooth, like those of Bay, somewhat nicked in the edges, and of a pale green colour: the flowers grow in clusters, being hollow and white, and now and then on the one side somewhat of a purple colour: in their places come forth certain berries hanging down upon little long stems like unto Strawberries, but greater, without a stone within, but only with little seeds, at the first green, and when they be ripe they are of a gallant red colour, in taste somewhat harsh, and in a manner without any relish; of which thrushes and blackbirds do feed in winter.

The Place.

The Strawberry tree groweth in most countries of Greece, in Candy, Italy, and Spain, also in the valleys of the mountain Athos, where, being in other places but little, they become great huge trees, as P. Bellonius writeth. Iuba also reporteth, that there be in Arabia of them fifty cubits high. They grow only in some few gardens with us.

The Time.

The Strawberry tree flowereth in July and August, and the fruit is ripe in September, after it hath remained upon the tree by the space of an whole year.

The Names.

This tree is called in Greek, *Komaros*, in Latin, *Arbutus*: in English, Strawberry tree, and of some, Arbuté tree.

The fruit is named in Greek, *Memaikylon*, or as others read it, *Memakylon*: in Latin, *Memæcylum*, and *Arbutus*; and Pliny calleth it *Unedo*: Ground Strawberries (saith he) have one body, and *Unedo* much like unto them, another body, which only in appearance is like to the fruit of the earth: The Italians call this Strawberry *Albatro*: the Spaniards, *Madrono*, *Medronheyro*, and *Medronho*: the French, *Arboutes*, *Arbous*: It may be termed in English, Tree Strawberry.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The fruit of the Strawberry tree is of a cold temperature, hurting the stomach, and causing headache; wherefore no wholesome food, though it be eaten in some places by the poorer sort of people.

CHAP. 126. Of the Plum Tree.

The Kinds.

To write of Plums particularly would require a peculiar volume, and yet the end not to be attained unto, nor the stock or kindred perfectly known, neither to be distinguished apart: the number of the sorts or kinds are not known to any one country: every climate hath his own fruit, far different from that of other countries: myself have three score sorts in my garden, and all strange and rare: there be in other places many more common, and yet yearly cometh to our hands others not before known, therefore a few figures shall serve for the rest. Let such as require a larger history of these varieties have recourse to the oft mentioned work of Mr Parkinson: and such as desire the things themselves may find most of the best with Mr John Millen in Old Street.

1 *Prunus Domestica.*
The Damson tree.



2 *Prunus Mirobalana.*
The Mirobalane Plum tree.



3 *Prunus Amygdalina.*
The Almond Plum tree.



5 *Prunus sylvestris.*
The Sloe tree.



Fig. 2093. Kinds of Plum Tree (1-3, 5)

The Description.

1. The Plum or Damson tree is of a mean bigness: it is covered with a smooth bark: the branches are long, whereon do grow broad leaves, more long than round, nicked in the edges: the flowers are white: the plums do differ in colour, fashion, and bigness, they all consist of pulp and skin, and also of kernel, which is shut up in a shell or stone. Some plums are of a blackish blue, of which some be longer, others rounder,

others of the colour of yellow wax, divers of a crimson red, greater for the most part than the rest. There be also green plums, and withal very long, of a sweet and pleasant taste: moreover, the pulp or meat of some is drier, and easilier separated from the stone: of other some it is moister, and cleaveth faster: our common Damson is known to all, and therefore not to be stood upon.

2. The Mirobalan Plum tree groweth to the height of a great tree, charged with many great arms or boughs, which divide themselves into small twiggy branches, by means whereof it yieldeth a goodly and pleasant shadow: the trunk or body is covered with a finer and thinner bark than any of the other Plum trees: the leaves do somewhat resemble those of the Cherry tree, they are very tender, indented about the edges: the flowers be white: the fruit is round, hanging upon long footstalks pleasant to behold, green in the beginning, red when it is almost ripe, and being full ripe it glistereth like purple mixed with black: the flesh or meat is full of juice pleasant in taste: the stone is small, or of a mean bigness: the tree bringeth forth plenty of fruit every other year.

3. The Almond Plum groweth up to the height of a tree of a mean bigness: the branches are long, smooth, and even: the leaves are broad, something long, and ribbed in divers places, with small nerves running through the same: the flowers are white, sprinkled with a little dash of purple scarcely to be perceived: the fruit is long, having a cleft down the middle, of a brown red colour, and of a pleasant taste.

4. The Damascene Plum tree groweth likewise to a mean height, the branches very brittle; the leaves of a deep green colour: the fruit is round, of a bluish black colour: the stone is like unto that of the Cherry, wherein it differeth from all other Plums.

5. The Bullace and the Sloe tree are wild kinds of Plums, which do vary in their kind, even as the greater and manured Plums do. Of the Bullace, some are greater and of better taste than others. Sloes are some of one taste, and some of others, more sharp; some greater, and others lesser; the which to distinguish with long descriptions were to small purpose, considering they be all and every of them known even unto the simplest: therefore this shall suffice for their several descriptions.

The Place.

The Plum trees grow in all known countries of the world: they require a loose ground, they also receive a difference from the regions where they grow, not only of the form or fashion, but especially of the faculties, as we will forthwith declare.

The Plum trees are also many times grafted into trees of other kinds, and being so ingrafted, they *faciem parentis, succum adoptionis, ut Plinius dicit, exhibent.*["As Pliny says, they exhibit the appearance of the parent, and the juiciness of the child"]

The greatest variety of these rare Plums are to be found in the grounds of Mr Vincent Pointer of Twickenham, before remembered in the chapter Of Apples: although myself am not without some, and those rare and delicate.

The wild Plums grow in most hedges through England.

The Time.

The common and garden Plum trees do bloom in April: the leaves come forth presently with them: the fruit is ripe in summer, some sooner, some later.

The Names.

The Plum tree is called in Latin, *Prunus*: in High Dutch, *Plfäumenbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Prumen*: in Spanish, *Ciruelo*: in French, *Prunier*: in English, Plum tree.

The fruit is called in Latin, *Prunum*: in High Dutch, *Plfäumen*: in Low Dutch, *Prumen*: in Italian and French, *Prune*: in Spanish, *Prunas*: in English, prune, and plum. These have also names from the regions and countries where they grow.

The old writers have called those that grow in Syria near unto Damascus, *Damascena Pruna*: in English, Damsons, or Damask Prunes: and those that grow in Spain, *Hispanica*, Spanish Prunes or Plums. So in our age we use to call those that grow in Hungary, *Hungarica*, or *Pannonica*, Plums of Hungary: some, *gallica Pruna*, or French Prunes, of the country of France. Clearcus Peripateticus saith, that they of Rhodes and Sicilia do call the Damask Prunes *Brabula*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Plums that be ripe and new gathered from the tree, what sort soever they are of; do moisten and cool, and yield unto the body very little nourishment, and the same nothing good at all: for as Plums do very quickly rot, so is also the juice of them apt to putrefy in the body, and likewise to cause the meat to putrefy which is taken with them: only they are good for those that would keep their bodies soluble and cool; for by their moisture and slipperiness they do mollify the belly.

B. Dried plums, commonly called prunes, are wholesomer, and more pleasant to the stomach, they yield more nourishment, and better, and such as cannot easily putrefy. It is reported, saith Galen in his book Of the Faculties of Nourishments, that the best do grow in Damascus a city of Syria; and next to those, they that grow in Spain: but these do nothing at all bind, yet divers of the damask damson prunes very much; for damask damson prunes are more astringent, but they of Spain be sweeter. Dioscorides saith, that damask prunes dried do stay the belly; but Galen affirmeth, in his books of the faculties of simple medicines, that they do manifestly loose the belly yet lesser than they that be brought out of Spain; being boiled with mead or honeyed water, which hath a good quantity of honey in it, they loose the belly very much (as the same author saith) although a man take them alone by themselves, and much more if the mead be supped after them. We most commend those of Hungary being long and sweet; yet more those of Moravia the chief and principal city in times past of the Province of the Marcomans: for these after they be dried, that the watery humour may be consumed away, be most pleasant to the taste, and do easily without any trouble so mollify the belly, as that in that respect they go beyond Cassia and Manna, as Thomas Iordanus affirmeth.

C. The leaves of the Plum tree are good against the swelling of the uvula, the throat, gums, & kernels under the throat and jaws; they stop the rheum and falling down of humours, if the decoction thereof be made in wine, and gargled in the mouth and throat.

D. The gum which cometh out of the Plum tree doth glue and fasten together, as Dioscorides saith.

E. Being drunk in wine it wasteth away the stone, and healeth lichens in infants and young children; if it be laid on with vinegar, it worketh the same effects that the gum of the Peach and Cherry tree doth.

F. The wild plums do stay and bind the belly, and so do the unripe plums of what sort soever, whiles they are sharp and sour, for then are they astringent.

G. The juice of sloes doth stop the belly, the lask and bloody flux, the inordinate course of women's terms, and all other issues of blood in man or woman, and may very well be used instead of *Acatia*, which is a thorny tree growing in Egypt, very hard to be gotten, and of a dear price, and therefore the better for wantons; albeit our plums of this country are equal unto it in virtues.

CHAP. 127. Of Sebesten, or the Assyrian Plum.

Sebestena, Myxa, five Myxara.
Assyrian Plums.



Fig. 2094. Senesten or Assyrian Plum

The Description.

Sebestens are also a kind of plums: the tree whereof is not unlike to the Plum tree, saving it groweth lower than the most of the manured Plum trees; The leaves be harder and rounder; the flowers grow at the tops of the branches, consisting of five small white leaves, with pale yellowish threads in the middle, like those of the Plum tree: after followeth the fruit like to little plums, fastened in little skinny cups, which when they be ripe are of greenish black colour, wherein is contained a small hard stone. The fruit sweet in taste, the pulp or meat is very tough and clammy.

The Place.

The Sebesten trees grow plentifully in Syria and Egypt, they were in times past foreign and strange in Italy, now they grow almost in every garden, being first brought thither in Pliny his time. Now do the Sebesten trees, saith he, in his 15th book, 18th chapter, begin to grow in Rome, among the Service trees.

The Time.

The time answereth the common Plums.

The Names.

Pliny calleth the tree *Myxa*, it may be suspected that this is the tree which Matron Paradus in his *Attic Banquet* in Athenæus doth call *Amamelis*, but we cannot certainly affirm it, and especially because divers have diversely deemed thereof. The berry or fruit is named *Myxon* and *Myxarion*, neither have the Latins any other name. The Arabians and the Apothecaries do call it Sebesten: which is also made an English name: we may call it the Assyrian Plum.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Sebestens be very temperately cold and moist, and have a thick and clammy substance; therefore they nourish more than most fruits do, but withal they easily stop the entrails, and stuff up the narrow passages, and breed inflammations.

B. They take away the ruggedness of the throat and lungs, and also quench thirst, being taken in lohoch or licking medicine, or prepared any other kind of way, or else taken by themselves.

C. The weight of ten drams, or of an ounce and a half of the pap or pulp hereof being inwardly taken, doth loose the belly.

D. There is also made of this fruit a purging electuary, but such an one as quickly mouldeth, and therefore it is not to be used but when it is new made.

CHAP. 128. Of the Indian Plum, or Mirobalans.

The Kinds.

There be divers kinds of Mirobalans, as *Chebulæ*, *Belliricæ*, *Emblicæ*, &c. They likewise grow upon divers trees, and in countries far distant one from another, and Garcias the Portugal physician is of opinion, that the five kinds grow upon five divers trees.



Fig. 2095. Kinds of Mirobalan

The Description.

1. The first of the Mirobalan trees, called *Chebulæ*, is a shrubby tree altogether wild (which the Indians do call *Aretca*;) in stature not unlike to the Plum tree; the branches are many, and grow thick together, whereon are set leaves like those of the Peach tree. The fruit is greater than any of the rest, somewhat long, fashioned like a Pear.

2. This second kind of Mirobalan, called *Flava*, or *Citrina*, which some do call *Aritiqui*, but the common people of India, *Arare*, groweth upon a tree of mean stature, having many boughs standing finely in order, and set full of leaves like unto the Service tree.

3. The third kind of Mirobalans, called *Emblicæ*, the Indians do call *Amiale*, which grow upon a tree of mean stature, like the former, but the leaves are very much jagged, in shape like the leaves of Fern, but that they be somewhat thicker: the Indians do not put the fruit hereof unto physical uses, but occupy it for the thickening and tanning of their leather instead of *Rhus*, or Currier's Sumach, as also to make ink and bletch for other purposes.

4. *Mirobalani Belliricæ*, called of the savages *Gotni*, and *Guti*, groweth up to a mean stature, garnished with leaves like unto Laurel or the Bay tree, but somewhat lesser, thinner, and of a pale green colour.

5. The fifth kind of Mirobalans is called *Indica*, which the Indians do call *Rezannale*; it groweth upon a tree of mean stature, or rather upon a shrub or hedge plant, bearing leaves like the Willow, and a fruit eight square.

There is a sixth kind, the tree whereof is not mentioned in the authors.

The Place and Time.

The first four kinds of Mirobalans do grow in the kingdom of Cambaia: they grow likewise in Goa, Batkhal, Malanor, and Dabhol: the *Kebula* in Visnagar, Deccan, Gujerat, and Bengal, & many other places of the East Indies. The time agreeth with other fruits in those countries.

The Names.

Those which we have said to be yellow, the inhabitants of those countries where they grow do call them *Arare*; those that be black they call *Rezemale*; the *Bellericæ*, *Gotim*; the *Chebulæ*, *Aretca*: the *Emblicæ* are called *Aretiqui*.

The Temperature.

All the kinds of Mirobalans are in taste astringent and sharp like unto the unripe *Sorbus* or Service berries, and therefore they are of complexion cold and dry.

The Virtues.

A. The Indians use them rather to bind than purge, but if they do use them for a purge, they use the decoction of them, and use them much conserved in sugar, and especially the *Chebulæ*; the yellow and black be good that way likewise.

B. The yellow and *Bellericæ* taken before meat, are good against a lask, or weak stomach, as Garcia writeth.

C. The yellow and black, or *Indicæ*, and the *Chebulæ*, purge lightly, if two or three drams be taken, and draw superfluous humours from the head.

D. The yellow, as some write, purge choler, *Chebulæ* phlegm, *Indicæ* melancholy, and strengthen the inward parts, but roasted in the embers, or otherwise wasted, they dry more than they purge.

E. There are two sorts especially brought into these parts of the world conserved, the *Chebulæ*, and of them the best are somewhat long like a small lemon, with a hard rind and black pith, of the taste of a conserved walnut; and the *Bellericæ*, which are round and lesser, and tenderer in eating.

F. Lobel writeth, that of them the *Emblicæ* do meanly cool, some do dry in the first degree, they purge the stomach of rotten phlegm, they comfort the brain, the sinews, the heart, and liver, procure appetite, stay vomit, and cool the heat of choler, help the understanding, quench thirst, and the heat of the entrails: the greatest and heaviest be the best.

G. They purge best, and with lesser pain if they be laid in water in the sun until they swell, & sod on a soft fire, & after they have sod and be cold, preserved in four times so much white honey, put to them.

H. Garcias found the distilled water to be right profitable against the French disease, and such-like infections.

I. The *Bellericæ* are also of a mild operation, and do comfort, and are cold in the first degree, and dry in the second: the others come near to the *Emblicæ* in operation.

CHAP. 129. Of the Jujube Tree.

Juiube Arabum, sine Ziziphus Dodonai.
The Iuiube tree.

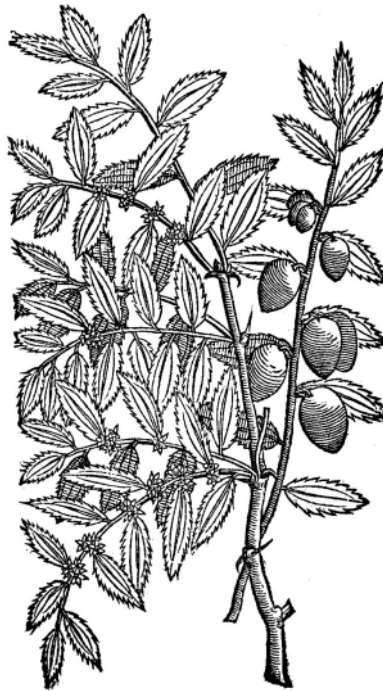


Fig. 2096. The Jujube Tree

The Description.

The Jujube tree is not much lesser than *Ziziphus candida*, having a wreathed trunk or body, and a rough bark full of rifts or crannies, and stiff branches, beset with strong and hard prickles; from whence grow out many long twigs, or little stalks, half a foot or more in length, in show like Rushes, limber, and easily bowing themselves, and very slender like the twigs of *Spartum*: about which come forth leaves one above another, which are somewhat long, not very great, but hard and tough like to the leaves of *Peruinca* or Periwinkle; & among these leaves come forth pale and mossy little flowers: after which succeed long red well-tasted sweet berries as big as olives (of a mean quantity) or little prunes, or small plums, wherein there are hard round stones, or in which a small kernel is contained.

The Place.

There be now at this day Jujube trees growing in very many places of Italy, which in times past were newly brought thither out of Syria, and that about Pliny his time, as he himself hath written in his 17th book, 10th chapter.

The Time.

It flowereth in April, at which time the seeds or stones are to be let or sown for increase.

The Names

This tree is called in Greek *Zizyphos* and *Ziziphos*, with iota in the second syllable: in Latin likewise, *Zizyphus*; and of Petrus Crescentius, *Zezulus*: in English, Jujube tree.

The fruit or plums are named in Greek *Zizypha* or *Zizipha*: Galen calleth them *Serica*, as Avicenna plainly showeth in his 369th chapter, in treating of the Jujube, in which he set down those things that are mentioned concerning *Serica* in Galen's books *Of the Faculties of Nourishments*: in Latin likewise *Zizypha* and *Serica*: in shops, *Iuiuba*: in English, Jujubes.

The Temperature.

Jujubes are temperate in heat and moisture.

The Virtues.

A. The fruit of the Jujube tree eaten is of hard digestion, and nourisheth very little; but being taken in syrups, electuaries, and such like confections, it appeaseth and mollifieth the roughness of the throat, the breast and lungs, and is good against the cough, but exceeding good for the reins of the back, and kidneys and bladder.

CHAP. 130. Of the Cherry Tree.

The Kinds.

The ancient herbarists have set down four kinds of Cherry trees, the first is great and wild, the second tame or of the garden: the third, whose fruit is sour: the fourth is that which is called in Latin *Chamaecerasus*, or the dwarf Cherry tree. The later writers have sound divers sorts more, some bringing forth great fruit, others lesser; some with white fruit, some with black, others of the colour of black blood, varying infinitely according to the climate and country where they grow.

1 *Cerasus vulgaris*.
The common English Cherrie tree.



Fig. 2097. Common English Cherry (1)

3 *Cerasus Hispanica*.
The Spanish Cherrie tree.



Fig. 2098. Spanish Cherry (3)

The Description

1. The English Cherry tree groweth to an high and great tree, the body whereof is of a mean bigness, which is parted above into very many boughs, with a bark somewhat smooth, and of a brown crimson colour, tough and pliable: the substance or timber is also brown in the middle, and the outward part is somewhat white. The leaves be great, broad, long, set with veins or nerves, and slightly nicked about the edges: the flowers are white, of a mean bigness, consisting of five leaves, and having certain threads in the middle, of the like colour: the cherries be round, hanging upon long stems or footstalks, with a stone in the midst which is covered with a pulp or soft meat; the kernel thereof is not unpleasant to the taste, though somewhat bitter.

2. The Flanders Cherry tree differeth not from our English Cherry tree in stature or form of leaves or flowers; the difference consisteth in this, that this tree bringeth

forth his fruit sooner, and greater than the other: wherefore it may be called in Latin, *Cerasus precox, sive belgica*.

3. The Spanish Cherry tree groweth up to the height of our common Cherry tree: the wood or timber is soft and loose, covered with a whitish scaly bark: the branches are knotty, greater, fuller of substance than any other Cherry tree: the leaves are likewise greater and longer than any of the rest, in shape like those of the Chestnut tree: the flowers are like the others in form, but whiter of colour: the fruit is greater and longer than any, white for the most part all over, except those that stand in the hottest place where the sun hath some reflection against a wall: they are also white within, and of a pleasant taste.

4. The Gascon Cherry tree groweth very like to the Spanish Cherry tree in stature, flowers, and leaves: it differeth in that it bringeth forth very great cherries, long, sharp pointed, with a certain hollowness upon one side, and spotted here and there with certain prickles of purple colour as small as sand: the taste is most pleasant, and excelleth in beauty.

5 *Cerasus Serotina.*
Late ripe Cherrie tree:



Fig. 2099. Late-Ripe Cherry (5)

6 *Cerasus uno pediculo plura.*
The Cluster Cherrie tree.



Fig. 2100. Cluster Cherry (6)

5. The Late-Ripe Cherry tree groweth up like unto our wild English Cherry tree, with the like leaves, branches, and flowers, saving that they are sometimes once doubled: the fruit is small, round, and of a dark bloody colour when they be ripe, which the Frenchmen gather with their stalks, and hang them up in their houses in bunches or handfuls against winter, which the physicians do give unto their patients in hot and burning fevers, being first steeped in a little warm water, that causeth them to swell and plump up as full and fresh as when they did grow upon the tree.

6. The Cluster Cherry tree differeth not from the last described either in leaves, branches, or stature: the flowers are also like, but never cometh any one of them to be double. The fruit is round, red when they be ripe, and many growing upon one stem or footstalk in clusters, like as grapes do. The taste is not unpleasant, although somewhat sour.

7 *Cerasus multiflora fructus edens.*
The double floured Cherry tree bearing fruit.



8 *Cerasus multiflora pauciores fructus edens.*
The double floured barren Cherry tree.



9 *Cerasus avium nigra & racemosa.*
Birds Cherry, and blacke Grape Cherry tree.



10 *Cerasus racemosa rubra.*
Red Grape Cherry tree.



Fig. 2101. Kinds of Cherry (7-10)

7. This Cherry tree with double flowers grows up unto a small tree, not unlike to the common Cherry tree in each respect, saving that the flowers are somewhat doubled, that is to say, three or four times double; after which cometh fruit (though in small quantity) like the other common Cherry.

8. The Double-Flowered Cherry tree grows up like unto an hedge bush, but not so great nor high as any of the others; the leaves and branches differ not from the rest of the Cherry trees. The flowers hereof are exceeding double, as are the flowers of Marigolds, but of a white colour, and smelling somewhat like the Hawthorn flowers; after which come seldom or never any fruit, although some authors have said that it beareth sometimes fruit, which myself have not at any time seen; notwithstanding the tree hath grown in my garden many years, and that in an excellent good place by a brick wall, where it hath the reflection of the South sun, fit for a tree that is not willing to bear fruit in our cold climate.

9. The Bird Cherry tree, or the Black Cherry tree, that bringeth forth very much fruit upon one branch (which better may be understood, by sight of the figure, than by words) springeth up like an hedge tree of small stature, it groweth in the wild woods of Kent, and are there used for stocks to graft other Cherries upon, of better taste, and more profit, as especially those called the Flanders Cherries: this wild tree grows very plentifully in the North of England, especially at a place called Heggdale, neer unto Rosgill in Westmorland, and in divers other places about Crosby Ravenswaithe, and there called Hegberry tree: it groweth likewise in Martome Park, four miles from Blackburn, and in Harward near thereunto; in Lancashire almost in every hedge: the leaves and branches differ not from those of the wild Cherry tree: the flowers grow amongst the small branches, consisting of five small white leaves, with some greenish and yellow thrums in the middle: after which come the fruit, green at the first, black when they be ripe, and of the bigness of sloes; of an harsh and unpleasant taste.

10. The other Bird Cherry tree differeth not from the former in any respect, but in the colour of the berries; for as they are black; so on the contrary, these are red when they be ripe, wherein they differ.

11 *Cerasus nigra.*
The common blacke Cherry-tree



Fig. 2102. Common Black Cherry (11)

12 *Chamaecerasus.*
The dwarfe Cherry-tree.



Fig. 2103. Dwarf Cherry (12)

11. The common Black Cherry tree grows up in some places to a great stature: there is no difference between it and our common Cherry tree, saving that the fruit hereof is very little in respect of other Cherries, and of a black colour.

12. The dwarf Cherry tree grows very seldom to the height of three cubits: the trunk or body small, covered with a dark coloured black: whereupon do grow very limber and pliant twiggy branches: the leaves are very small, not much unlike to those of the Privet bush: the flowers are small and white: after which come cherries of a deep red colour when they be ripe, of taste somewhat sharp, but not greatly unpleasant: the branches laid down in the earth, quickly take root, whereby it is greatly increased.

Myself with divers others have sundry other sorts in our gardens, one called the Hart Cherry, the greater and the lesser one of a great bigness, and most pleasant in taste, which we call Luke Ward's Cherry, because he was the first that brought the same out of Italy; another we have called the Naples Cherry, because it was first brought into these parts from Naples: the fruit is very great, sharp pointed, somewhat like a man's heart in shape, of a pleasant taste, and of a deep blackish colour when it is ripe as it were of the colour of dried blood.

We have another that bringeth forth cherries also very great, bigger than any Flanders cherry, of the colour of jet, or burnished horn, and of a most pleasant taste, as witnesseth Mr Bull, the Queen's Majesty's Clockmaker, who did taste of the fruit (the tree bearing only one Cherry, which he did eat; but myself never tasted of it) at the impression hereof. We have also another, called the Agriot Cherry, of a reasonable good taste. Another we have with fruit of a dun colour, tending to a watchet. We have one of the dwarf Cherries, that bringeth forth fruit as great as most of our Flanders Cherries,

whereas the common sort hath very small cherries, and those of an harsh taste. These and many sorts more we have in our London gardens, whereof to write particularly would greatly enlarge our volume, and to small purpose: therefore what hath been said shall suffice. I must here (as I have formerly done, in pears, apples and other such fruits) refer you to my two friends Mr John Parkinson, and Mr John Millen, the one to furnish you with the history, and the other with the things themselves, if you desire them.

The Time.

The Cherry trees bloom in April; some bring forth their fruit sooner; some later: the red cherries be always better than the black of their own kind.

The Names.

The Cherry tree is called in Greek, *Kerasos*: and also in Latin, *Cerasus*: in High Dutch, *Kirschenbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Kersemboome*, and *Crietkenboom*: in French, *Cerisier*: in English, Cherry tree.

The fruit or cherries be called in Greek *Kerasa*: and in Latin likewise, *Cerasa*: in English, cherries: the Latin and English names in their several titles shall suffice for the rest that might be said.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The best and principal cherries be those that are somewhat sour: those little sweet ones which be wild and soonest ripe be the worst: they contain bad juice, they very soon putrefy, and do engender ill blood, by reason whereof they do not only breed worms in the belly, but troublesome agues, and often pestilent fevers: and therefore in well governed commonwealths it is carefully provided, that they should not be sold in the markets in the plague time.

B. Spanish cherries are like to these in faculties, but they do not so soon putrefy: they be likewise cold, and the juice they make is not good.

C. The Flanders or Kentish cherries that are thorough ripe, have a better juice, but watery, cold and moist: they quench thirst, they are good for an hot stomach, and profitable for those that have the ague: they easily descend and make the body soluble: they nourish nothing at all.

D. The late ripe cherries which the Frenchmen keep dried against winter, and are by them called *Morelle*, and we after the same name call them Morell cherries, are dry, and do somewhat bind; these being dried are pleasant to the taste, and wholesome for the stomach, like as prunes be, and do stop the belly.

E. Generally all the kinds of cherries are cold and moist of temperature, although some more cold and moist than others: the which being eaten before meat do soften the belly very gently, they are unwholesome either unto moist and rheumatic bodies, or for unhealthy and cold stomachs.

F. The common black cherries do strengthen the stomach, and are wholesomer than the red cherries, the which being dried do stop the lask.

G. The distilled water of cherries is good for those that are troubled with heat and inflammations in their stomachs, and prevaieth against the falling sickness given mixed with wine.

H. Many excellent Tarts and other pleasant meats are made with cherries, sugar, and other delicate spices, whereof to write were to small purpose.

I. The gum of the Cherry tree taken with wine and water, is reported to help the stone; it may do good by making the passages slippery, and by tempering & allaying the sharpness of the humours; and in this manner it is a remedy also for an old cough. Dioscorides addeth, that it maketh one well coloured, cleareth the sight, and causeth a good appetite to meat.

CHAP. 131. Of the Mulberry Tree.

1 *Morus.*
The Mulberrie tree.



Fig. 2104. Mulberry Tree (1)

2 *Morus alba.*
The white Mulberrie tree.



Fig. 2105. White Mulberry Tree (2)

The Description.

1. The common Mulberry tree is high, and full of boughs: the body whereof is many times great, the bark rugged; & that of the root yellow: the leaves are broad and sharp pointed, something hard, and nicked on the edges; instead of flowers, are blowings or catkins, which are downy: the fruit is long, made up of a number of little grains, like unto a blackberry, but thicker, longer, and much greater, at the first green, and when it is ripe black, yet is the juice (whereof it is full) red: the root is parted many ways.

2. The White Mulberry tree groweth until it be come unto a great and goodly stature, almost as big as the former: the leaves are rounder, not so sharp pointed, nor so deeply snipped about the edges, yet sometimes sinuated or deeply cut in on the sides, the fruit is like the former, but that it is white and somewhat more tasting like wine.

The Place.

The Mulberry trees grow plentifully in Italy and other hot regions, where they do maintain great woods and groves of them, that their silkworms may feed thereon. The Mulberry tree is fitly set by the slip; it may also be grafted or inoculated into many trees, being grafted in a white Poplar, it bringeth forth white Mulberries, as Berytius in his *Geoponics* reporteth. These grow in sundry gardens in England.

The Time.

Of all the trees in the orchard the Mulberry doth last bloom, and not before the cold weather is gone in May (therefore the old writers were wont to call it the wisest tree) at which time the silkworms do seem to revive, as having then wherewith to feed and nourish themselves, which all the winter before do lie like small grains or seeds, or rather like the dunging of a flesh fly upon a glass, or some such thing, as knowing their proper time both to perform their duties for which they were created, and also when they may have wherewith to maintain and preserve their own bodies unto their business aforesaid.

The berries are ripe in August and September. Hegesander in *Athenæus* affirmeth, that the Mulberry trees in his time did not bring forth fruit in twenty years together, and that so great a plague of the gout then reigned and raged so generally, as not only men, but boys, wenches, eunuchs, and women were troubled with that disease.

The Names

This tree is named in Greek *Moria*, and in Latin, *Morus*: in shops, *Morus Celsi*: in high Dutch, *Maulberbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Mloerbessboom*: in French, *Meurier*: in English, Mulberry tree.

The fruit is called in Greek *Moron*: and in Latin, *Morum*: in shops, *Morum Celsi*: in High Dutch, *Mloerbessie*: in Italian, *Moro*: in French, *Meure*: in Spanish, *Moro* and *Mores*: in English, Mulberry.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Mulberries being gathered before they be ripe, are cold and dry almost in the third degree, and do mightily bind; being dried they are good for the lask and bloody flux, the powder is used in meat, and is drunk with wine and water

B. They stay bleedings, and also the reds; they are good against inflammations or hot swellings of the mouth and jaws, and for other inflammations newly beginning.

C. The ripe and new gathered Mulberries are likewise cold and be full of juice, which hath the taste of wine, and is something drying, and not without a binding quality: and therefore it is also mixed with medicines for the mouth, and such as help the hot swellings of the mouth, and almonds of the throat; for which infirmities it is singular good.

D. Of the juice of the ripe berries is made a confection with sugar, called *Diamorum*: that is, after the manner of a syrup, which is exceeding good for the ulcers and hot swellings of the tongue, throat, and almonds, or uvula of the throat, or any other malady arising in those parts.

E. These Mulberries taken in meat, and also before meat, do very speedily pass through the belly, by reason of the moisture and slipperiness of their substance, and make a passage for other meats, as Galen saith.

F. They are good to quench thirst, they stir up an appetite to meat, they are not hurtful to the stomach, but they nourish the body very little, being taken in the second place, or after meat, for although they be less hurtful than other like fruits, yet are they corrupted and putrefied, unless they speedily descend.

G. The bark of the root is bitter, hot and dry, and hath a scouring faculty: the decoction hereof doth open the stoppings of the liver and spleen, it purgeth the belly, and driveth forth worms.

H. The same bark being steeped in vinegar helpeth the toothache: of the same effect is also the decoction of the leaves and bark, saith Dioscorides, who showeth that about harvest time there issueth out of the root a juice, which the next day after is found to be hard, and that the same is very good against the toothache; that it wasteth away *Phyma*, and purgeth the belly.

I. Galen saith, that there is in the leaves and first buds of this tree a certain middle faculty, both to bind and scour.

CHAP. 132. Of the Sycomore Tree.

Sycomorus.
The Sycomore tree.

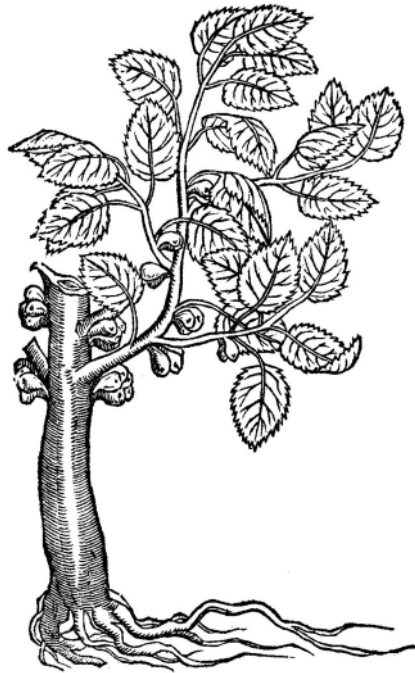


Fig. 2106. Sycomore

The Description.

The Sycomore tree is of no small height, being very like to the Mulberry tree in bigness & show, as also in leaf: the fruit is as great as a fig, and of the same fashion, very like in juice and taste to the wild fig, but sweeter, and without any grains or seeds within, which groweth not forth of the tender boughs, but out of the body and great old arms very fruitfully: this tree hath in it plenty of milky juice, which so soon as any part is broken or cut, doth issue forth.

The Place.

It growth, as Dioscorides writeth, very plentifully in Caria and Rhodes, and in sundry places of Egypt, as at the great Cairo or Alkaire, and in places that do not bring forth much wheat, in which it is an help, and sufficeth instead of bread & corn when there is scarcity of victuals. Galen writeth, that he saw a plant of the Sycomore tree like to the wild Fig tree, fruit and all.

The Time.

It bringeth forth fruit three or four times in one year, and oftener if it be scraped with an iron knife, or other like instrument.

The Names

This tree is called in Greek *Sykomoros*, of the Fig tree and the Mulberry tree: in Latin, *Sycomorus*: Cornelius Celsus nameth it backward *Morosycos*: the Egyptians of our time do call it *Ficus pharaonis*, or Pharaoh his Fig tree, as witnesseth Bellonius: and it is likewise termed *Ficus ægyptia*, Egyptian Fig tree, and also *Morus ægyptia*, or Egyptian Mulberry tree. We call it in English, Sycomore tree after the Greek and Latin,

and also Mulberry Fig Tree, which is the right Sycomore tree, and not the great Maple, as we have said in the chapter of the Maple.

The fruit is named in Greek *Sycomoron*, and in Italian, *Sycomoro* and *Fico d'Egitto*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The fruit of the Sycomore tree hath no sharpness in it at all, as Galen saith. It is somewhat sweet in taste, and is of temperature moist after a sort, and cold as be Mulberries.

B. It is good, saith Dioscorides, for the belly; but it is *arophos*, that is, without any nourishment, and troublesome to the stomach.

C. There issueth forth of the bark of this tree in the beginning of the spring, before the fruit appeareth, a liquor, which being taken up with a sponge, or a little wool, is dried, made up into fine cakes, and kept in gallipots: this mollifieth, closeth wounds together, and dissolveth gross humours.

D. It is both inwardly taken and outwardly applied against the bitings of serpents, hardness of the milt or spleen, and pain of the stomach proceeding of a cold cause: this liquor doth very quickly putrefy.

CHAP. 133. Of the Fig Tree.

1 *Ficus.*
The Fig tree.



Fig. 2107. Fig Tree (1)

‡ 2 *Chamaeficus.*
The dwarfe Fig tree.



Fig. 2108. Dwarf Fig Tree (2)

The Description.

1. The garden Fig tree becometh a tree of a mean stature, having many branches full of white pith within, like Elder pith, and large leaves of a dark green colour, divided into sundry sections or divisions. The fruit cometh out of the branches without any flower at all that ever I could perceive, which fruit is in shape like unto Pears, of colour either whitish, or somewhat red or of a deep blue, full of small grains within, of a sweet and pleasant taste; which being broken before it be ripe, doth yield most white milk, like unto the kinds of Spurge, and the leaves also being broken do yield the like liquor; but when the figs be ripe, the juice thereof is like honey.

2. The Dwarf Fig tree is like unto the former in leaves and fruit, but it never groweth above the height of a man, and hath many small shoots coming from the roots, whereby it greatly increaseth.

There is also another wild kind, whose fruit is never ripe; Theophrastus nameth it *Erineos*; Pliny *Caprificus*.

The Place.

The Fig trees do grow plentifully in Spain and Italy, and many other countries, as in England; where they bear fruit, but it never cometh to kindly maturity, except the tree be planted under an hot wall, whereto neither North, nor Northeast winds can come.

The Time.

The Dwarf Fig tree groweth in my garden, and bringeth forth ripe and very great fruit in the month of August, of which figs sundry persons have eaten at pleasure.

In England the Fig trees put not forth their leaves until the end of May, where oftentimes the fruit cometh forth before the leaves appear.

The Names

The Fig tree is called in Greek, *Sykos*, and of divers, for difference sake between it and the wild Fig tree, *Sykos emeros*: in Latin, *Ficus*, and *Ficus sativa*, and *urbana*: in High Dutch, *Feygenbaum*: in Low Dutch, *Vijgheboom*: in French, *Figuier*: in Italian, *Feco*: in Spanish, *Higuera*: in English, Fig tree

The fruit is named in Greek, *Sykon*: in Latin, *Ficus*: and the unripe fruit *Grossus*: that which is dried is called in Latin, *Carica*: in High Dutch, *Feygen*: in Low Dutch, *Vijghen*: in French, *Figues*: in Italian, *Fiche*: in Spanish, *Higos*: in English, Fig: the little seeds which are found in them are named by Galen *Cechramides*.

The Temperature.

The green figs new gathered are somewhat warm and moist: the dry and ripe figs are hot almost in the third degree, and withal sharp and biting.

The leaves also have some sharpness, with an opening power, but not so strong as the juice.

The Virtues.

A. The dry figs do nourish better than the green or new figs; notwithstanding they engender not very good blood, for such people as do feed much thereon do become lousy.

B. Figs be good for the throat and lungs, they mitigate the cough, and are good for them that be short winded: they ripen phlegm, causing the same to be easily spat out, especially when they be sodden with Hyssop, and the decoction drunk.

C. Figs stamped with salt, Rue, and the kernels of nuts withstand all poison and corruption of the air. The King of Pontus, called Mithridates, used this preservative against all venom and poison.

D. Figs stamped and made into the form of a plaster with wheat meal, the powder of Fenugreek, and linseed, and the roots of Marsh Mallows, applied warm, do soften and ripen impostumes, phlegmons, all hot and angry swellings and tumors behind the ears: and if you add thereto the roots of Lilies, it ripeneth and breaketh venereous impostumes that come in the flank, which impostume is called *Bubo*, by reason of his lurking in such secret places: in plain English terms they are called botches.

E. Figs boiled in Wormwood wine with some barley meal are very good to be applied as an emplaster upon the bellies of such as have the dropsy.

F. Dry figs have power to soften, consume, and make thin, and may be used both outwardly and inwardly, whether it be to ripen or soften impostumes, or to scatter, dissolve, and consume them.

G. The leaves of the Fig tree do waste and consume the King's Evil, or swelling kernels in the throat, and do mollify, waste, and consume all other tumours, being finely

pounded and laid thereon: but after my practise, being boiled with the roots of marsh Mallows until they be soft, and so incorporated together, and applied in form of a plaster.

H. The milky juice either of the figs or leaves is good against all roughness of the skin, lepries, spreading sores, tetters, smallpox, measles, pushes, wheals, freckles, lentils, and all other spots, scurviness, and deformity of the body and face, being mixed with barley meal and applied: it doth also take away warts and such like excrescences, if it be mingled with some fatty or greasy thing.

I. The milk doth also cure the toothache, if a little lint or cotton be wet therein, and put into the hollowness of the tooth.

K. It openeth the veins of the hemorrhoids, and looseneth the belly, being applied to the fundament.

L. Figs stamped with the powder of Fenugreek, and vinegar, and applied plasterwise, do ease the intolerable pain of the hot gout, especially the gout of the feet.

M. The milk thereof put into the wound proceeding of the biting of a mad dog, or any other venomous beast, preserveth the parts adjoining, taketh away the pain presently, and cureth the hurt.

N. The green and ripe figs are good for those that be troubled with the stone of the kidneys, for they make the conduits slippery, and open them, and do also somewhat cleanse: whereupon after the eating of the same, it happeneth that much gravel and sand is conveyed forth.

O. Dry or barrel figs, called in Latin *Caricæ*, are a remedy for the belly, the cough, and for old infirmities of the chest and lungs: they scour the kidneys, and cleanse forth the sand, they mitigate the pain of the bladder, and cause women with child to have the easier deliverance, if they feed thereof for certain days together before their time.

P. Dioscorides saith, that the white liquor of the Fig tree, and juice of the leaves, do curdle milk as rennet doth, and dissolve the milk that is cluttered in the stomach, as doth vinegar.

Q. It bringeth down the menses, if it be applied with the yolk of an egg, or with yellow wax.

CHAP. 134. Of the Prickly Indian Fig Tree.

Ficus Indica.
The Indian Fig tree.

Fructus.
The fruit.

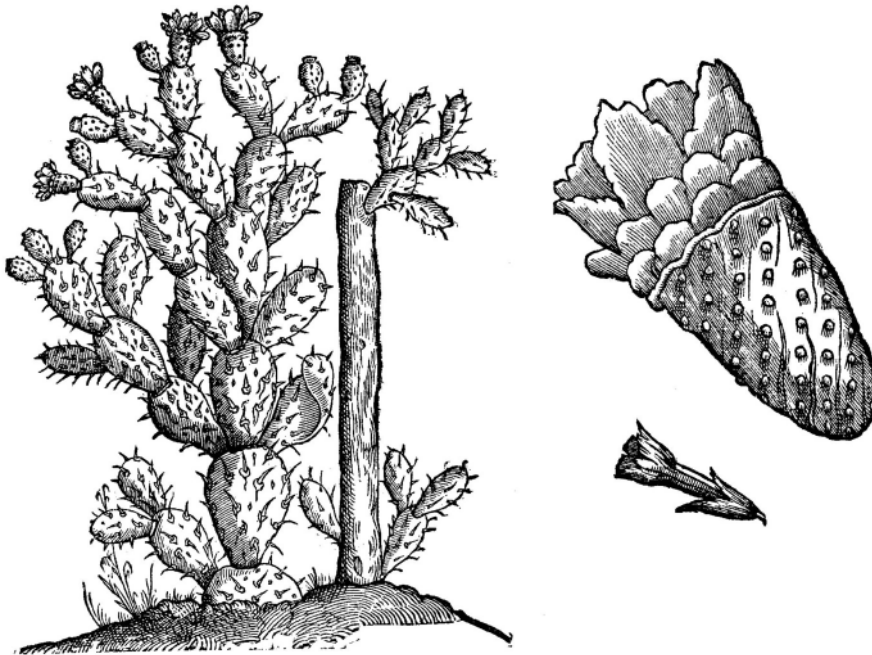


Fig. 2109. Indian Fig

The Description.

This strange and admirable plant, called *Ficus indica*, seems to be no other thing than a multiplication of leaves, that is, a tree made of leaves, without body or boughs; for the leaf set in the ground doth in short space take root, and bringeth out of itself other leaves, from which do grow others one after another, till such time as they come to the height of a tree, having also in the mean season boughs as it were coming from those leaves, sometimes more, otherwhiles fewer, as Nature list to bestow, adding leaf unto leaf, whereby it occupieth a great piece of ground: these leaves are long and broad, as thick as a man's thumb, of a deep green colour, set full of long, slender, sharp, and whitish prickles: on the tops of which leaves come forth long flowers not unlike to those of the manured Pomegranate tree, of a yellow colour: after which cometh the fruit like unto the common fig, narrow below, and bigger above, of a green colour, and stuffed full of a red pulp and juice, staining the hands of them that touch it, as do the mulberries, with a bloody or sanguine colour: the top of which figs are environed with certain scaly leaves like a crown, wherein are also contained small grains that are the seeds: the which being sown, do bring forth plants round bodied, like unto the trunk of other trees, with leaves placed thereon like the other; which being set in the ground bring forth trees of leaves, as we have showed.

Upon this plant in some parts of the West Indies grow certain excrescences, which in continuance of time turn into insects; and these outgrowings are that high prized cochineal wherwith they dye colours in grain.

The Place.

This plant groweth in all the tract of the East and West Indies, and also in the country Noremberga, now called Virginia, from whence it hath been brought into Italy,

Spain, England, and other countries: in Italy it sometimes beareth fruit, but more often in Spain, and never as yet in England, although I have bestowed great pains and cost in keeping it from the injury of our cold climate.

It groweth also at S. Crux and other places of Barbary, and also in an island of the Mediterranean sea, called Zante, about a day and night's sailing with a mean wind from Patras a port in Morea, where my servant William Marshall (before remembered) did see not only great store of those trees made of leaves, but also divers other round bodied plants of a woody substance: from whence he brought me divers plants thereof in tubs of earth, very fresh and green, which flourished in my garden at the impression hereof.

The Time.

These plants do grow green and fresh both winter and summer, by the relation of my foresaid servant: notwithstanding they must be very carefully kept in these countries from the extremity of winter.

The Names.

This is thought to be the plant called of Pliny, *Opuntium*; whereof he hath written, *lib. 21. cap. 17*, in this manner: About Opuns is the herb *Opuntia*, to man's taste sweet, and it is to be marvelled, that the root should be made of the leaves, and that it should so grow. Opuns is a city near unto Phocis in Greece, as Pausanias, Strabo, and Pliny testify: but it is commonly called in Latin, *Ficus indica*: of the Indians, *Tune*, and *Tuna*, and also *Anapallus*, as testifieth Bellonius: in English, Indian Fig tree.

There is a certain other described for the Indian Fig tree, by Theophrastus, *lib. 4*, which Pliny, *lib. 12. cap. 5*. doth eloquently express almost in the same words, but turned into Latin, whereof we intend to speak in the next chapter.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. We have no certain instruction from the ancients, of the temperature or faculty of this plant, or of the fruit thereof: neither have we anything whereof to write of our own knowledge, more than that we have heard reported of such as have eaten liberally of the fruit hereof, that it changed their urine to the colour of blood; who at the first sight thereof stood in great doubt of their life, thinking it had been blood, whereas it proved afterwards by experience to be nothing but the tincture or colour the urine had taken from the juice of the fruit, and that without all hurt or grief at all.

B. It is reported of some, that the juice of the fruit is excellent good against ulcers of long continuance.

C. Cochineal is given alone, and mixed with other things, in malign diseases, as pestilent fevers and the like, but with what success I know not.

CHAP. 135. Of the Arched Indian Fig Tree.

Arbor ex Goa, sine Indica.
The arched Indian Fig tree.



Fig. 2110. Arched Indian Fig Tree

The Description.

This rare and admirable tree is very great, straight, and covered with a yellowish bark tending to tawny: the boughs and branches are many, very long, tough, and flexible, growing very long in short space, as do the twigs of Osiers, and those so long and weak, that the ends thereof hang down and touch the ground, where they take root and grow in such sort, that those twigs become great trees: and these being grown up unto the like greatness, do cast their branches or twiggy tendrils unto the earth, where they likewise take hold and root; by means whereof it cometh to pass, that of one tree is made a great wood or desert of trees, which the Indians do use for coverture against the extreme heat of the sun, wherewith they are grievously vexed: some likewise use them for pleasure, cutting down by a direct line a long walk, or as it were a vault, through the thickest part, from which also they cut certain loopholes or windows in some places, to the end to receive thereby the fresh cool air that entereth thereat, as also for light, that they may see their cattle that feed thereby, to avoid any danger that might happen unto them either by the enemy or wild beasts: from which vault or close walk doth rebound such an admirable echo or answering voice, if one of them speak unto another aloud, that it doth resound or answer again four or five times, according to the height of the voice, to which it doth answer, and that so plainly, that it cannot be known from the voice itself: the first or mother of this wood or desert of trees is hard to be known from the children, but by the greatness of the body, which three men can scarcely fathom about: upon the branches whereof grow leaves hard and wrinkled, in shape like those of the Quince tree, green above, and of a whitish hoary colour underneath, whereupon the elephants delight to feed: among which leaves come forth the fruit, of the bigness of a man's thumb, in shape like a small fig, but of a sanguine or bloody

colour and of a sweet taste, but not so pleasant as the figs of Spain; notwithstanding they are good to be eaten, and withal very wholesome.

The Place.

This wondrous tree groweth in divers places of the East Indies, especially near unto Goa, and also in Malacca: it is a stranger in most parts of the world.

The Time.

This tree keepeth his leaves green winter and summer.

The Names.

This tree is called of those that have travelled, *Ficus indica*, the Indian Fig; and *Arbor goa*, of the place where it groweth in greatest plenty: we may call it in English, the Arched Fig tree.

Such as desire to see more of this Fig tree, may have recourse to Clusius his *Exotics*, *Lib. 1. cap. 1*, where he shows it was mentioned by divers ancient writers, as Q. Curtius, *lib. 9*: Pliny, *lib. 12. cap. 5*: Strabo, *lib. 5*, and Theophrastus. *Hist. Plant. lib. 4. cap. 5*, by the name of *Ficus indica*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

We have nothing to write of the temperature or virtues of this tree, of our own knowledge: neither have we received from others more, than that the fruit hereof is generally eaten, and that without any hurt at all but rather good, and also nourishing.

CHAP. 136. Of Adam's-Apple Tree, or the West-Indian Plantain.

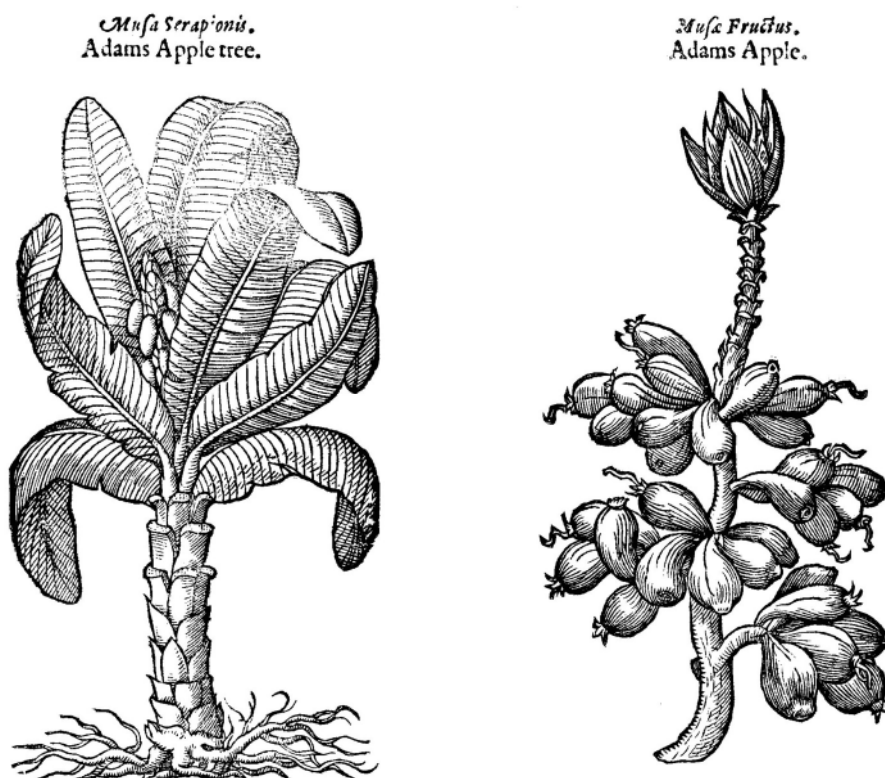


Fig. 2111. Adam's-Apple tree and Fruit

The Description.

Whether this plant may be reckoned for a tree properly, or for an herby plant, it is disputable, considering the soft and herby substance whereof it is made; that is to say, when it hath attained to the height of six or seven cubits, and of the bigness of a man's thigh, notwithstanding it may be cut down with one stroke of a sword, or two or three cuts with a knife, even with as much ease as the root of a Radish or Carrot of the like bigness: from a thick fat thready root rise immediately divers great leaves, of the length of three cubits and a half, sometimes more, according to the soil where it groweth, and of a cubit and more broad, of bigness sufficient to wrap a child in of two years old, in shape like those of Mandrake, of an overworn green colour, having a broad rib running through the middle thereof: which leaves, whether by reason of the extreme hot scorching sun, or of their own nature, in September are so dry and withered, that there is nothing thereof left or to be seen but only the middle rib. From the midst of these leaves riseth up a thick trunk, whereon doth grow the like leaves, which the people do cut off, as also those next the ground, by means whereof it riseth up to the height of a tree, which otherwise would remain a low and base plant. This manner of cutting they use from time to time, until it come to a certain height, above the reach of the elephant, which greedily seeketh after the fruit. In the midst of the top among the leaves cometh forth a soft and fungous stump, whereon do grow divers apples in form like a small cucumber, and of the same bigness, covered with a thin rind like that of the fig, of a yellow colour when they be ripe: the pulp or substance of the meat is like that of the Pumpkin, without either seeds, stones, or kernels, in taste not greatly perceived at the first, but presently after it pleaseth, and enticeth a man to eat liberally thereof; by a

certain enticing sweetness it yields: in which fruit, if it be cut according to the length (saith mine author) oblique, transverse, or any other way whatsoever, may be seen the shape and form of a cross, with a man fastened thereto. Myself have seen the fruit, and cut it in pieces, which was brought me from Aleppo in pickle; the cross I might perceive, as the form of a spread eagle in the root of Fern; but the man I leave to be sought for by those that have better eyes and judgment than myself.

Musa fructus exactior Icon.
An exacter figure of the Plantaine fruit.

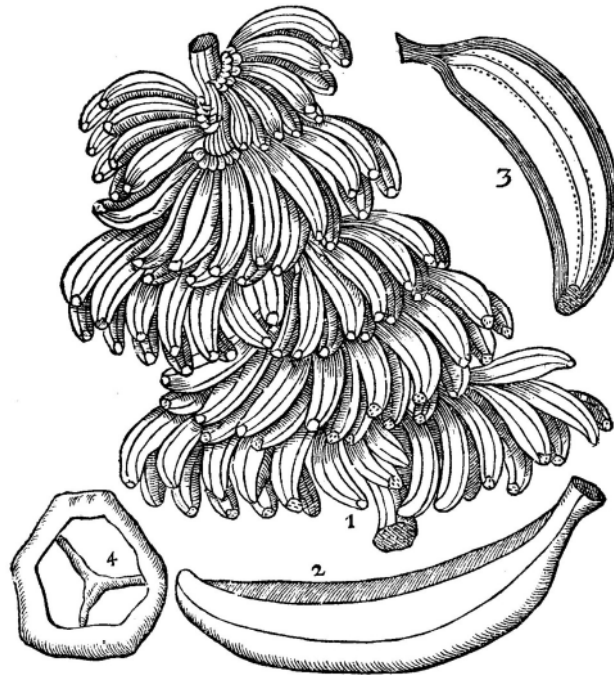


Fig. 2112. A Better Illustration of Adam's-Apple Fruit

April 10 1633. My much honoured friend Dr. Argent (now President of the College of Physicians of London) gave me a plant he received from the Bermudas: the length of the stalk was some two foot; the thickness thereof some seven inches about, being crested, and full of a soft pith, so rhat one might easily with a knife cut it asunder. It was crooked a little or indented; so that each two or three inches space it put forth a knot of some half inch thickness, and some inch in length, which incompassed it more than half about; and upon each of these joints or knots, in two ranks one above another, grew the fruit, some twenty, nineteen, eighteen, &c. more or less, at each knot: for the branch I had, contained nine knots or divisions, and upon the lowest knot grew twenty, and upon the uppermost fifteen. The fruit which I received was not ripe, but green, each of them was about the bigness of a large bean; the length of them some five inches, and the breadth some inch and half: they all hang their heads downwards, have rough or uneven ends, and are five-cornered; and if you turn the upper side downward, they somewhat resemble a boat, as you may see by one of them expressed by itself: the husk is as thick as a bean's, and will easily shell off it: the pulp is white and soft: the stalk whereby it is fastened to the knot is very short, and almost as thick as one's little finger. This stalk with the fruit thereon I hanged up in my shop, where it became ripe about the beginning of May, and lasted until June: the pulp or meat was very soft and tender, and it did eat somewhat like a Musk-Melon. I have given you the figure of the whole branch, with the fruit thereon, which I drew as soon as I received it, and it is marked with this

figure 1. The figure 2 showeth the shape of one particular fruit, with the lower side upwards. 3. The same cut through the middle longways. 4. The same cut sideways. I have been told (but how certain it is I know not) that the flowers which precede the fruit are bell-fashioned, and of a blue colour. I could observe no seed in the fruit; it may be it was because it had been cut from the stock so long before it came to maturity. This plant is found in many places of Asia, Africa, and America, especially in the hot regions: you may find frequent mention of it amongst the sea voyages to the East and West Indies, by the name of Plantain, or *Platanus*, *Bananas*, *Bonanas*, *Bovanas*, *Davanas*, *Poco*, &c. Some (as our author hath said) have judged it the forbidden fruit; other some, the grapes brought to Moses out of the Holy Land.

The Place.

This admirable tree groweth in Egypt, Cyprus, and Syria, near unto a chief city there called Alep, which we call Aleppo; and also by Tripolis, not far from thence: it groweth also in Canara, Deccan, Gujerat, and Bengal, places of the East Indies.

The Time.

From the root of this tree shooteth forth young springs or shoots, which the people take up and plant for the increase in the spring of the year. The leaves wither away in September, as is above said.

The Names.

It is called *Musa* by such as travel to Aleppo: by the Arabians, *Musa Maum*: in Syria, *Mose*: the Grecians and Christians which inhabit Syria, and the Jews also, suppose it to be that tree of whose fruit Adam did taste; which others think to be a ridiculous fable: of Pliny, *Opuntia*.

It is called in the East Indies (as at Malabar where it also groweth) *Palan*: in Malay, *Pican*: and in that part of Africa which we call Guinea, *Bananas*: in English, Adam's-Apple tree.

The Temperature.

Dioscorides and Sergio judge, that it heateth in the end of the first degree, and moisteneth in the end of the same.

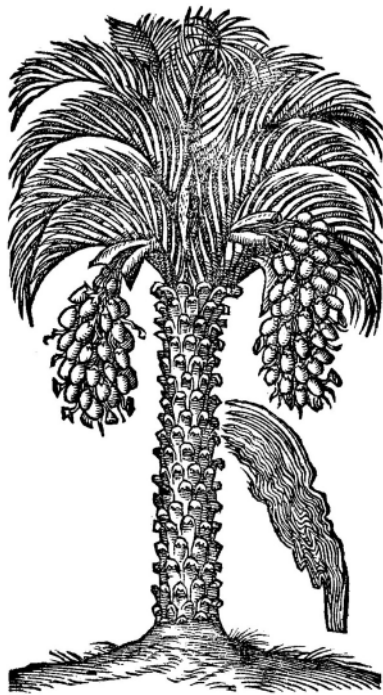
The Virtues.

A. The fruit hereof yieldeth but little nourishment: it is good for the heat of the breast, lungs, and bladder: it stoppeth the liver, and hurteth the stomach if too much of it be eaten, and procureth looseness in the belly: whereupon it is requisite for such as are of a cold constitution, in the eating thereof to put unto it a little ginger or other spice.

B. It is also good for the reins, or kidneys, and to provoke urine: it nourisheth the child in the mothers womb, and stirreth to generation.

CHAP. 137. Of the Date Tree.

Palma.
The Date tree.



Palmarum fructus & flores cum Elate.
The fruit and floures of the Date tree.

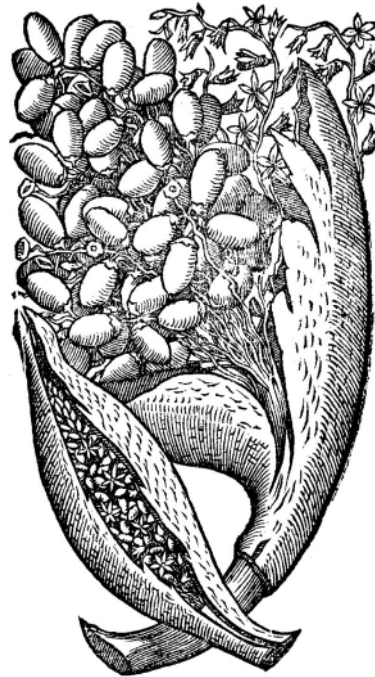


Fig. 2113. Date Tree with Flowers and Fruit

The Description.

The Date tree groweth very great and high: the body or trunk thereof is thick, and covered with a scaly rugged bark, caused by the falling away of the leaves: the boughs grow only on the top, consisting of leaves set upon a woody middle rib like those of Reeds or Flags: the inner part of which rib or stalk is soft, light, hollow, and spongy. Among the leaves come forth the flowers included in a long skinny membrane, as it were a sheath or hose, like that which covereth the Fleur-de-Lys before it be blown, which being opened of itself, white flowers start forth, standing upon short and slender footstalks, which are fastened with certain small filaments or thready strings like unto little branches: after which spring out from the same branches the fruit or dates, which be in fashion long and round, in taste sweet, and many times somewhat harsh, of a yellowish red colour; wherein is contained a long hard stone, which is instead of kernel and seed; the which I have planted many times in my Garden, and have grown to the height of three foot: but the first frost hath nipped them in such sort, that soon after they perished, notwithstanding my industry by covering them, or what else I could do for their succour.

The Place.

The Date trees grow plentifully in Africa and Egypt; but those which are in Palestine and Syria be the best: they grow likewise in most places of the East and West Indies, where there be divers sorts, as well wild, as tame or manured.

The Time.

The Date tree is always green, and flowereth in the spring time: the fruit is ripe in September, and being then gathered they are dried in the sun, that they may be the

better both transported into other countries far distant, as also preserved from rotting at home.

The Names.

The tree is called in Greek, *Phoinix*: in Latin, *Palma*: in English, Date tree.

The fruit is named in Greek, *Balanos Phoinikos*: that is to say, *Glans Palmarum*, or the fruit of the Date trees: and by one word, *Phoinikobalanos*: in Latin, *Palmula*: in shops, *Dactylus*: in High Dutch *Dattelen*: in Low Dutch, *Dadelen*: in Italian, *Dattoli*: in French, *Dattes*: in Spanish, *Tamaras*, and *Dattiles*: in English, Date.

The cod or sheath wherein the flowers and dates are wrapped, is called *Elate*: and of some, *Birassos*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. All manner of dates whatsoever are hard of digestion, and cause headache: the worser sort be those that be dry and binding, as the Egyptian dates; but the soft, moist, and sweet ones are less hurtful.

B. The blood which is engendered of dates in man's body is altogether gross, and somewhat clammy: by these the liver is very quickly stopped, especially being inflamed and troubled with some hard swelling: so is the spleen likewise.

C. The dates which grow in colder regions, when they cannot come to perfect ripeness, if they be eaten too plentifully, do fill the body full of raw humours, engender wind, and oft-times cause the leprosy.

D. The drier sorts of dates, as Dioscorides saith, be good for those that spit blood, for such as have bad stomachs, and for those also that be troubled with the bloody flux.

E. The best dates, called in Latin *Caryotæ*, are good for the roughness of the throat and lungs.

F. There is made hereof both by the cunning confectioners and cooks, divers excellent cordial, comfortable, and nourishing medicines, and that procure lust of the body very mightily.

G. They do also refresh and restore such unto strength as are entering into a consumption, for they strengthen the feebleness of the liver and spleen, being made into convenient broths, and physical medicines directed by a learned physician.

H. Dry dates do stop the belly, and stay vomiting, and the wambling of women's stomachs that are with child, if they be either eaten in meats or otherwise, or stamped and applied unto the stomach as a pectoral plaster.

I. The ashes of the date stones have a binding quality, and emplastic faculty, they heal pushes in the eyes, *Staphylomata*, and falling away of the hair of the eyelids, being applied together with Spikenard: with wine it keepeth proud flesh from growing in wounds.

K. The boughs and leaves do evidently bind, but especially the hose, that is to say, the sheath or case of the flowers: and therefore it is good to use these so oft as there is need of binding.

L. The leaves and branches of the Date tree do heal green wounds and ulcers, refresh and cool hot inflammations.

M. Galen in his book *Of Medicines According to the Kinds* mentioneth a composition called *Diapalma*, which is to be stirred with the bough of a Date tree instead of a spatule or a thing to stir with, for no other cause than that it may receive thereby some kind of astringion or binding force.

CHAP. 138. Of the Wild Date Tree.

1. *Palmites, sive Chamarriphes.*
The little wilde Date tree.

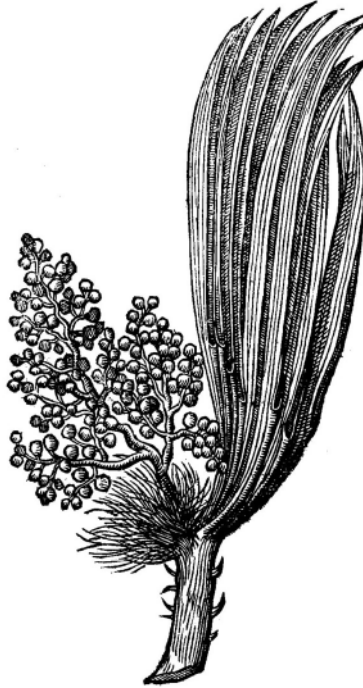


Fig. 2114. Small Wild Date (1)

The Description.

1. Theophrastus maketh this plant to be a kind of Date tree, but low and of small growth, seldom attaining above the height of a cubit: on the top whereof shoot forth for the most part long leaves like those of the Date tree, but lesser and shorter; from the sides whereof breaks forth a bush of thready strings: among which riseth up small branches garnished with clusters of white flowers, in which before they be opened are to be seen unperfect shapes of leaves, closely compassed about with an innumerable sort of thin skinny hulls; which rude shapes with the flowers are served up and eaten at the second course among other junkets, with a little salt and pepper, being pleasant to the taste. The stalk is about the thickness of one's little finger, here and there set with a few crooked pricks: the leaves within some handful or two of the stalk are cut up and made into little besoms, which are sold in many glass shops here in London.

2 *Palmapius, sive Palma conifera.*
The wilde Date tree bearing cones.



Fig. 2115. Cone-Bearing Wild Date (2)

‡ *Fruſus Palmapii.*
The fruit of the Cone-Date.



Fig. 2116. The Fruit of the Cone Date

2. The wild Date tree that brings forth cones or key-clogs, is of most travellers into the Indies thought to be barren of dates, except sometimes it yieldeth forth some small berries like unto dates, but dry, and nothing worth. This tree groweth to the height and bigness of a low tree; the trunk or body whereof is soft, of a fungous or pithy substance, unfit for building, as is the manured Date tree: the branch itself was brought unto us from the Indies, dry & void of leaves, wherefore we must describe the leaves by report of the bringer. The branches (saith my author) are covered over with long flaggy leaves, hanging down of a great length like those of the Date tree: the branches are also covered with a scaly or scabbed bark, very rough, one scale or plate lying over another, as tiles upon a house: the fruit grows at the end of the branches, not unlike a great Pine apple cone, covered over with a skin like the Indian nut: wherein is contained a shell, within which shell lieth hid an acorn or long kernel of an inch long, and sometimes longer, very hard to be broken, in taste like the Chestnut; which the savage people do grate and stamp to powder to make them bread.

The Place.

Theophrastus saith the first grows in Candy, but much more plentifully in Cilicia, and are now found in certain places of Italy by the seaside, and also in divers parts of Spain.

The other hath been found by travellers into the West Indies, from whence have been brought the naked branches with the fruit.

The Time.

The time answereth that of the manured Date tree.

The Names.

The little Date tree or wild Date tree is named in Naples, *Cephaglione*: in Latin commonly *Palmites*. That which is found in the midst of the young springs, and is used to be eaten in banquets, is called in Latin, *Palmae cerebrum*, the brain of the Date tree.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Galen supposeth that the brain of the Date tree consisteth of sundry parts, that is to say, of a certain watery and warm substance, and of an earthy and cold; therefore it is moist and cold, with a certain astringion or binding quality.

B. Being taken as a meat it engendereth raw humours and wind, and therefore it is good to be eaten with pepper and salt.

CHAP. 139. Of the Drunken Date Tree.

Areca, sive Faufel.
The drunken Date tree.

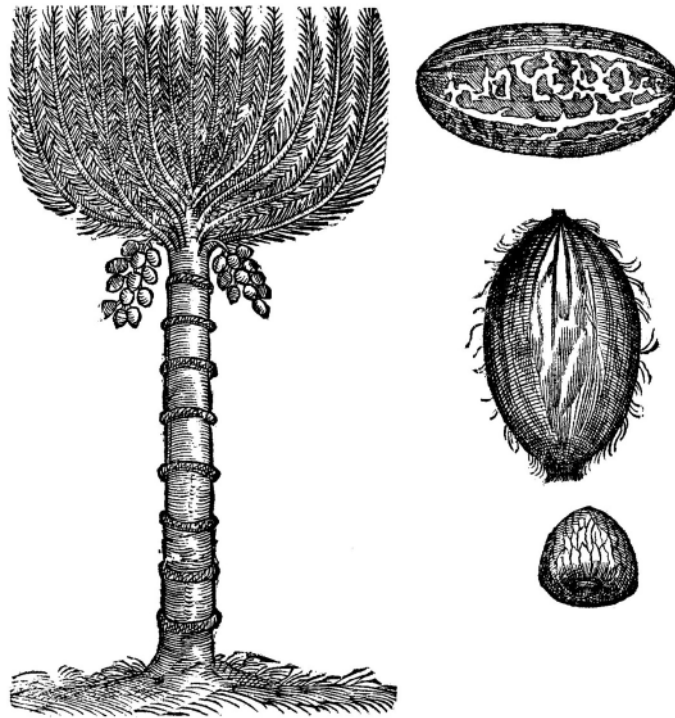


Fig. 2117. The Drunken Date Tree

The Description.

The drunken Date tree, which Carolus Clusius calleth *Faufel*, is an Indian tree of a great bigness, the timber whereof is very soft and spongy, exceeding smooth and plain unto a great height, not possible to be climbed up; and therefore the Indians for their easier ascending up, at some distances do tie round about the tree certain withes or ropes made of the barks of trees, as may be perceived by the figure, whereby very easily they go up and down to gather the fruit at their pleasure. The top of the tree is divided into sundry branches, in substance like to the great cane; whereupon do grow fair flaggy leaves like those of the Palm or Date tree, whereof doubtless this is a wild kind: from the bottom of which branches cometh forth fruit in long bunches like traces of Onions, covered with a soft pulp like unto the walnut, rough, and very full of hair of a yellowish colour, and like the dried Date when it is ripe: within which husk is contained fruit like unto the nutmeg, but greater, very hard, and striped over with red and white veins, or sinews.

The Place, Time, and Names.

This Date tree, which the Arabians call *Faufel*, that is by interpretation, *Avellana indica*, the Indian nut or filbert, Avicenna and Serapio call *Filfel*, and *Fufel*. It groweth in the East Indies in divers and sundry places, as in Malabar, where vulgarly it is called *Pac* and of the nobles and gentlemen, *Areca*: which name is used amongst the Portugals which dwell in those Indies: in Gujerat and Deccan it is called *Cupare*: in Ceylon, *Poaz*: in Malacca, *Pinan*: in Cochin, *Chacani*: in English, the drunken Date tree, which name we have coined from his quality, because the fruit maketh those drunk that eat thereof.

The Temperature.

It is cold and dry in the second degree.

The Virtues.

A. The fruit of *Areca* before it be ripe is reckoned amongst the stupefactive or astonishing medicines; for whosoever eateth thereof waxeth drunk, because it doth exceedingly amaze and astonish the senses.

B. When the Indians are vexed with some intolerable ache or pain, or must of necessity endure some great torment or torture, then do they take of this fruit, whereby the rigor of that pain which otherwise they should feel, is very much mitigated.

C. The juice of the fruit of *Areca* doth strengthen the gums, fasten the teeth, comfort the stomach, stay vomiting and looseness of the belly: it doth also purge the body from congealed or clotted blood gathered within the same.

CHAP. 140. Of the Indian Nut Tree.

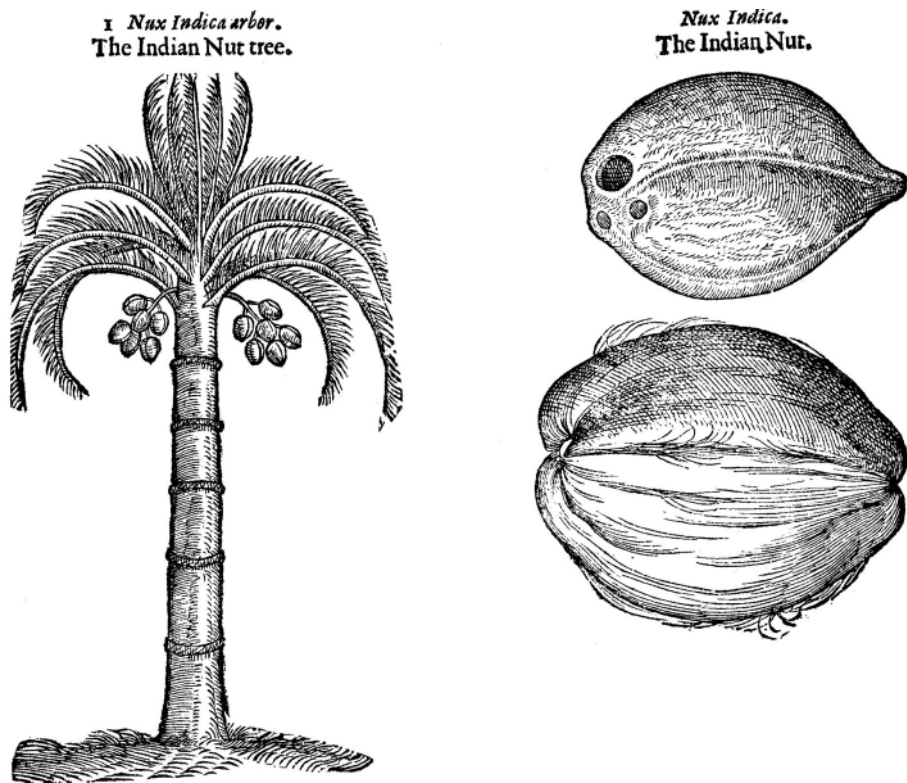


Fig. 2118. The Indian Nut (1)

The Description.

1. The Grecians have not known, but the Arabians have mentioned this Indian Nut tree, the body whereof is very great, smooth and plain, void of boughs or branches, of great height; wherefore the Indians do wrap ropes about the body thereof, as they do upon the tree last described, for their more ease in gathering the fruit: the timber whereof is very spongy within, but hard without, a matter fit to make their canoes and boats of: on the top of the tree grow the leaves like those of the Date tree, but broad, and sharp at the point as thorns, whereof they use to make needles, bodkins, and such like instruments, wherewith they sew the sails of their ships and do such like business: among these leaves come forth clusters of flowers like those of the Chestnut tree, which turn into great fruit of a round form, and somewhat sharp at one end; in that end next unto the tree is one hole, sometimes two bored through: this nut or fruit is wrapped in a coverture, consisting of a substance not unlike to hemp before it be beaten soft: there is also a finer and gentler stuff next unto the shell, like unto Flax before it be made soft: in the middle whereof is contained a great nut covered with a very hard shell, of a brown colour before it be polished, afterward of a black shining colour like burnished horn: next into the shell upon the inside there cleaveth a white kernelly substance firm and solid, of the colour and taste of a blanched almond: within the cavity or hollowness thereof is contained a most delectable liquor like unto milk; and of a most pleasant taste.

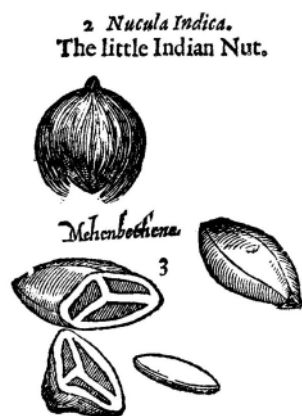


Fig. 2119. The Little Indian Nut & Mehenbethene (2 & 3)

2. We have no certain knowledge from those that have travelled into the Indies, of the tree which beareth this little Indian nut; neither have we anything of our own knowledge, more than that we see by experience, that the fruit hereof is lesser, wherein consisteth the difference.

3. The other, expressed in the same table with the former, by the name of *Mehenbethene*, Clusius received it by the same name from Cortusus of Padua: yet it doth not (as he saith) well agree with the description; and he rather approves of their opinion who refer it to the *Nux unguentaria*, or *Ben*. It is some inch long, of a triangular figure, with a hard and woody shell: which broken, shows three cells or partitions, in each whereof is contained a long kernel white and sweet.

The Place.

This Indian Nut groweth in some places of Africa, and in the East Indies, and in all the islands of the West Indies, especially in Hispaniola, Cuba, and Saint John's Island, and also upon the continent by Carthagena, Nombre de Dios, and Panama, and in Virginia, otherwise called Norembega, part of the same continent, for the most part near unto the seaside, and in moist places, but it is seldom found in the uplandish countries.

The Time.

It groweth green winter and summer.

The Names.

The fruit is called in Latin, *Nux indica*: of the Indians, *Cocus*: of the Portugals that dwell in the East Indies, *Cocco*, taken from the end, wherein are three holes representing the head of a monkey: Serapio and Rhasis do call this tree *Iaralnare*, *id est, arborem nuciferam*, the tree bearing nuts: of Avicenna, *Glauci al hend*: of the vulgar people, *Maro*, and the fruit *Narel*; which name *Narel* is common among the Persians and Arabians: it is called in Malabar, *Tengamaran*: the ripe fruit, *Tenga*; and the green fruit, *Eleri*: in Goa it is called *Lanhan*: in Malaya, *Triccan*: and the nut, *Nihor*.

The distilled liquor is called Sula; and the oil that is made thereof, *Copra*.

The Temperature.

It is of a mean temper betwixt hot and cold.

The Virtues and use.

A. The Indians do use to cut the twigs and tender branches toward the evening, at the ends whereof they have bottle gourds, hollow canes, and such like things, fit to receive the water that droppeth from the branches thereof, which pleasant liquor they drink instead of wine; from the which is drawn a strong and comfortable *Aqua Vitæ*, which they use in time of need against all manner of sicknesses; of the branches and boughs they make their houses; of the trunk or body of the tree, ships and boats; of the hemp on the outward part of the fruit, they make ropes and cables; and of the finer stuff, sails for their ships.

B. Likewise they make of the shell of the nut, cups to drink in, which we likewise use in England, garnished with silver for the same purposes. The kernel serveth them for bread and meat: the milky juice doth serve to cool and refresh their wearied spirits: out of the kernel when it is stamped, is pressed a most precious oil, not only good for meat, but also for medicine, wherewith they anoint their feeble limbs after their tedious travail, by means whereof the ache and pain is mitigated, and other infirmities quite taken away proceeding of other causes.

CHAP. 141. Of the Dragon Tree.

1 *Draco arbor.*
The Dragon tree.

Draconis fructus.
The Dragon tree fruit.

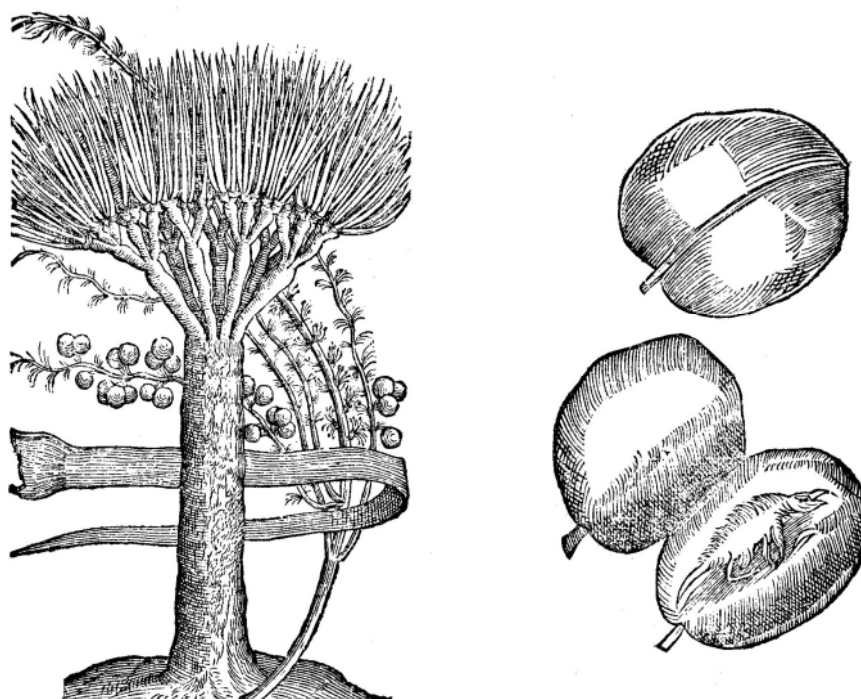


Fig. 2120. Dragon Tree and Fruit

The Description.

This strange and admirable tree groweth very great, resembling the Pine tree, by reason it doth always flourish, and hath his boughs or branches of equal length and bigness, which are bare and naked, of eight or nine cubits long, and of the bigness of a man's arm: from the ends of which do shoot out leaves of a cubit and a half long, and full two inches broad, somewhat thick, and raised up in the middle, then thinner and thinner like a two edged sword: among which come forth little mossy flowers, of small moment, and turn into berries, of the bigness of cherries, of a yellowish colour, round, light and bitter, covered with a threefold skin or film, wherein is to be seen, as Monardus and divers other report, the form of a Dragon, having a long neck or gaping mouth; the ridge or back armed with sharp prickles, like the porcupine; it hath also a long tail, & four feet, very easy to be discerned: the figure of it we have set forth unto you according to the greatness thereof, because our words and meaning may be the better understood, and also the leaf of the tree in his full bigness, because it is impossible to be expressed in the figure: the trunk or body of the tree is covered with a rough bark, very thin, and easy to be opened or wounded with any small tool or instrument; which being so wounded in the dog days, bruised or bored, doth yield forth drops of a thick red liquor, which of the name of the tree are called Dragon's tears, or *Sanguis Draconis*, Dragon's blood: divers have doubted whether the liquor or gummy juice were all one with *Cinnabaris* of Dioscorides (not meaning that cinnibar made of quicksilver) but the received opinion is, they differ not, by reason their quality and temperature work the like effect.

The Place.

This tree groweth in an ilsand which the Portugals call Madeira, and in one of the Canary Islands, called *Insula Portus Sancti*; and as it seemeth it was first brought

out of Africa, although some are of a contrary opinion, and say, that it was first brought from Cartagena, in America, by the Bishop of the same province.

The Time

The time of his growing we have touched in the description, where we said that it flourisheth and groweth green all the year.

The Names.

The names have been sufficiently spoken of in the description and in their several titles.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The *Sanguis Draconis* which is thought to proceed from this tree hath an astringent faculty; and is with good success used in the overmuch flowing of the courses, in fluxes, dysenteries, spitting of blood, fastening loose teeth, and such other affects which require astringent.

B. Smiths also use it to varnish over their works to give them a sanguine colour, and keep them from rust.

CHAP. 142. Of the Sassafras or Ague Tree.

Sassafras.
The Sassafras tree.



Fig. 2121. Sassafras

The Description.

The Sassafras tree grows very great much like to the Pine tree: the trunk or body is straight, smooth, and void of boughs, of a great height: it is covered with a twofold gross rind, the uppermost of the colour of ashes, that next the wood of a tawny colour: on the top come forth many goodly branches like those of the Palm tree, whereon grow green leaves somewhat like those of the Fig tree, of a sweet smell when they be green, but much sweeter when they be dry, declining to the smell of fennel, with much sweetness in taste: they are green winter and summer, neither bearing fruit nor flowers, but is altogether barren as it is said: the roots are gross, conformable to the greatness of the tree, of a tawny colour, dispersing themselves far abroad under the upper crust of the earth, by means whereof they are often cast down with mean blasts of wind. The wood of the tree is very strong, hard, and brittle, it hath not so strong & pleasant a smell as that of the root; neither is it in such use. The leaves are of two sorts, some long and smooth, and not snipped about the edges; other some, and those chiefly on the end of the branches, are deeply gashed in, as it were divided into three several parts. I have given the figure of a branch taken from a little tree, which grew in the garden of Mr Wilmot at Bow; who died some few years ago.

The Place.

This tree groweth in most parts of the West Indies, specially about the cape of Florida, Wingandacoa, and Virginia, otherwise named Norembega.

The Time.

It flourisheth and keepeth green winter and summer.

The Name.

The Spaniards and French men have named this tree, *Sassafras*: the Indians in their tongue, *Pavame*: for want of an English name we are contented to call it the Ague tree, of his virtue in healing the Ague.

The Temperature.

The boughs and branches hereof are hot & dry in the second degree; the rind is hotter, for that it entereth into the third degree of heat and dryness, as is manifestly perceived in the decoction.

The Virtues.

A. The best of all the tree is the root, and that worketh the best effect, the which hath the rind cleaving very fast to the inner part, and is of colour tawny, and much more sweet of smell than all the tree and his branches.

B. The rind tasteth of a more sweet smell than the tree; and the water being sod with the root is of greater and better effects than any other part of the tree, and is of a more sweet smell, and therefore the Spaniards use it, for that it worketh better and greater effects.

C. It is a tree that groweth near unto the sea, and in temperate places that have not much drouth, nor moisture. There be mountains growing full of them, and they cast forth a most sweet smell, so that at the beginning when they saw them first, they thought they had been trees of Cinnamon, & in part they were not deceived: for that the rind of this tree hath as sweet a smell as cinnamon hath, and doth imitate it in colour and sharpness of taste, and pleasantness of smell: and so the water that is made of it is of a most sweet smell and taste, as the cinnamon is, and procureth the same works and effects as cinnamon doth.

D. The wood hereof cut in small pieces and boiled in water, to the colour of claret wine, and drunk, for certain days together, helpeth the dropsy, removeth oppilation or stopping of the liver, cureth quotidian and tertian agues, and long fevers.

E. The root of *Sassafras* hath power to comfort the liver, and to free from oppilations, to comfort the weak and feeble stomach, to cause good appetite, to consume windiness, the chiefest cause of crudity and indigestion, stay vomiting, and make sweet a stinking breath.

F. It provoketh urine, removeth the impediments that do cause barrenness, and maketh women apt to conceive.

CHAP. 143. Of the Storax Tree.

Styrax arbor.
The Storax tree.



Fig. 2122. Storax

The Description.

The Storax tree groweth to the height and bigness of the Quince tree: the trunk or body is covered with a bark or rind like unto the Birch tree: the branches are small and limber, whereon do grow leaves like those of the Quince tree, greenish above, and whitish underneath: among which come forth white flowers, like those of the Orange tree, of an unpleasant smell: after cometh the fruit or berries, standing upon long and slender footstalks, covered over with a little woolliness, of the bigness of a bladder nut, and of the same colour wherein is contained small seed, whereunto also cleave certain gummy tears, bearing the name of the tree, and which issue from the trunk or body when it is wounded.

The Place.

This tree groweth in divers places of France, Italy and Spain, where it bringeth forth little or no gum at all: it groweth in Judæa, Pamphylia, Syria, Pisidia, Sidon, and many other places of Jewry or Palestine, as also in divers islands in the Mediterranean sea, namely Cyprus, Candy, Zante, and other places, where it bringeth forth his gummy liquor in full perfection of sweetness, and also in great plenty, where it is gathered and put into great canes or reeds, whereof as some deem it took the name *Calamita*; others deem of the leaves of reeds wherein they wrap it: hereof I have two small trees in my garden, the which I raised of seed.

The Time.

It flowereth in May, and the fruit is ripe in September.

The Names.

This tree, as may be gathered by some, was called *Styrax*, by reason of that gum or liquor which droppeth out of the same, being like unto the hollow pipes of ice, that hang at the eaves of houses in winter, called *Styria*, or of the canes or the leaves of reeds spoken of before: in Latin, *Storax calamitæ*: in English, Storax, which is kept in canes or the leaves of reeds: there floweth from some of these trees a certain gummy liquor, which never groweth naturally hard, but remaineth always thin, which is called liquid *Styrax*, or Storax.

The Temperature.

The gum of this tree is of an heating, mollifying, and concocting quality.

The Virtues.

A. It helpeth the cough, the falling down of rheums and humours into the chest, and hoarseness of the voice: it also helpeth the noise and sounding of the ears, prevaieth against *strumas*, or the King's evil, nodes on the nerves, and hard swellings proceeding of a cold cause: it prevaieth also against all cold poisons, as Hemlocks and such like.

B. Of this gum there are made sundry excellent perfumes, pomanders, sweet waters, sweet bags, and sweet washing balls, and divers other sweet chains & bracelets, whereof to write were impertinent to this history.

CHAP. 144. Of the Sorrowful Tree or Indian Mourner.

Arbor tristis.
The sorrowfull tree.



Fig. 2123. Sorrowful Tree

The Description.

Arbor tristis, the sad or sorrowful tree waxeth as big as an Olive tree, garnished with many goodly branches, set full of leaves like those of the Plum tree: among which come forth most odoriferous and sweet smelling flowers, whose stalks are of the colour of saffron, which flourish and show themselves only in the night-time, and in the day-time look withered and with a mourning cheer: the leaves also at that time shrink in themselves together, much like a tender plant that is frost-bitten, very sadly lumping, lowering, and hanging down the head, as though it loathed the light, and could not abide the heat of the sun. I should but in vain lose labour in repeating a foolish fancy of the poetical Indians, who would make fools believe, that this tree was once a fair daughter of a great lord or king, and that the sun was in love with her, with other toys which I omit. The flowers are white, somewhat like those of Jasmine, but more double, and they are of a very sweet smell: there succeed them many little cods, containing some six seeds apiece somewhat like those of *Stramonium*.

The Place, Time, and Names.

This tree groweth in the East Indies, especially in Goa, and Malaya: in Goa is called *Parizataco*: in Malaya, *Singadi*: in Deccan, *Pul*: of the Arabians, *Guart*: and of the Persians and Turks, *Gul*: in English, the Sad or Sorrowful tree, or the Indian Mourner. The time is specied in the description.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. We have no certain knowledge of the temperature hereof; nevertheless we read that the Indians do colour their broths and meats with the stalks of the flowers hereof instead of saffron, or whatsoever that they desire to have of a yellow colour.

B. It is reported, that if a linen cloth be steeped in the distilled water of the flowers; and the eyes bathed and washed therewith, helpeth the itching and pain thereof, and stayeth the humours that fall down to the same.

C. There is made of the splinters of the wood certain tooth-picks, and many pretty toys for pleasure.

CHAP. 145. Of the Balsam Tree.

1 *Balsami fructus.*
The fruit of the Balsam tree.

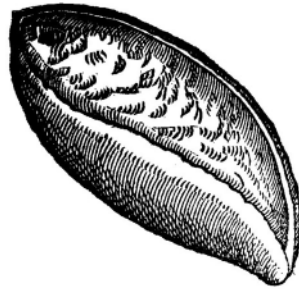


Fig. 2124. Balsam fruit (1)

3 *Balsamum Alpini cum Carbalsamo.*
The Balsam tree with the fruit.



Fig. 2125. Alpinus' Balsam (3)

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of trees from which do flow Balsams, very different one from another, not only in form, but also in fruit, liquor, and place of growing; the which to distinguish would require more time and travail than either our small time will afford, or riches for our maintenance to discover the same in their natural countries: which otherwise by report to set down certain matter by uncertainties, would discredit the author, and no profit shall arise thereby to the reader: notwithstanding we will set down so much as we have found in the works of some travellers, which best agree with the truth of the history.

The Description.

1. There be divers trees growing in the Indies, whose fruits are called by the name of the fruit of the Balsam tree: among the rest this whose figure we have set forth unto your view, we ourselves have seen and handled; and therefore the better able to describe it. It is a fruit very crooked, and hollowed like the palm of a hand, two inches long, half an inch thick, covered with a thick smooth rind, of the colour of a dry Oaken leaf; wherein is contained a kernel (of the same length and thickness, apt to fill the said shell or rind) of the substance of an almond; of the colour of ashes, fat, and oily; of a good smell, and very unpleasant in taste.

2. The wood we have dry brought unto us from the Indies for our use in physic (a small description may serve for a dry stick) nevertheless we have other fruits brought

from the Indies, whose figures are not set forth, by reason they are not so well known as desired; whereof one is of the bigness of a walnut, somewhat broad on the upper side, with a rough or rugged shell, uneven, black of colour, and full of a white kernel, with much juice in it; of a pleasant taste and shell, like the oil of Mace: the whole fruit is exceeding light, in respect of the quantity or bigness, even as it were a piece of cork; which notwithstanding sinketh to the bottom when it falleth into the water, like as doth a stone.

3. This tree, saith Garcias, that beareth the fruit *Carpobalsamum*, is also one of the Balsam trees: it groweth to the height and bigness of the Pomegranate tree, garnished with very many branches whereon do grow leaves like those of Rue, but of colour whiter, always growing green: amongst which come forth flowers, whereof we have no certainty: after which cometh forth fruit like that of the Turpentine tree, which in shops is called *Carpobalsamum*, of a pleasant smell; but the liquor which floweth from the wounded tree is much sweeter: which liquor of some is called *Opobalsamum*.

Prosper Alpinus hath writ a large *Dialogue of the Balsam of the Ancients*, and also figured and delivered the history thereof in his book *De Plant. Ægypti, cap. 14*, whither I refer the curious. I have presented you with a slip from his tree, and the *Carpobalsamum* set forth by our author, which seems to be of the same plant. The leaves of this are like to those of *Lentiscus*, always green, and winged, growing three, five, or seven fastened to one footstalk; the wood is gummy, reddish, and well smelling: the flowers are small and white like those of *Acatia*, growing usually three nigh together: the fruit is of the shape and bigness of that of the Turpentine tree, containing yellow and well smelling seeds, filled with a yellowish moisture like honey, their taste is bitterish, & somewhat biting the tongue.

4. Of these Balsam trees there is yet another sort: the fruit whereof is as it were a kernel without shell, covered with a thin skin streaked with many veins, of a brown colour: the meat is firm and solid, like the kernel of the Indian Nut, of a white colour, and without smell, but of a grateful taste; and it is thought to be hot in the first degree, or in the beginning of the second.

5. There be divers sorts more, which might be omitted because of tediousness: nevertheless I will trouble you with two special trees worthy the noting: there is, saith my author, in America a great tree of monstrous hugeness, beset with leaves and boughs even to the ground; the trunk whereof is covered with a twofold bark, the one thick like unto cork, & another thin next to the tree: from between which barks doth flow (the upper bark being wounded) a white Balsam like unto tears or drops, of a most sweet savour, and singular effects, for one drop of this which thus distilleth out of the tree, is worth a pound of that which is made by decoction: the fruit hereof is small in respect of the others; it seldom exceedeth the bigness of a pea, of a bitter taste, enclosed in a narrow husk of the length of a finger, something thin, and of a white colour; which the Indians do use against headache: which fruit of most is that we have before described, called *Carpobalsamum*.

6. It is also written, that in the island called Hispaniola, there groweth a small tree, of the height of two men, without the industry of man, having stalks or stems of the colour of ashes; whereon do grow green leaves, sharp at both ends, but more green on the upper side than on the lower; having a middle rib somewhat thick and standing out; the footstalks whereon they grow are somewhat reddish: among which leaves cometh fruit growing by clusters, as long as a man's hand, fingers and all: the stones or grains in the fruit be few, and green; but growing to redness more and more as the fruit

waxeth ripe. From the which is gathered a juice after this manner: they take the young shoots and buds of the tree, and also the clusters of the fruit, which they bruise, and boil in water to the thickness of honey, which being strained, they keep it for their uses.

They use it against wounds and ulcers; it stoppeth and stancheth the blood; maketh them clean; bringeth up the flesh, and healeth them mightily, and with better success than true Balsam. The branches of the tree being cut, do cast forth by drops a certain clear water, more worth than *Aqua vitæ*, most wholesome against wounds, and all other diseases proceeding from cold causes, if it be drunken some few days together.

The Place.

These trees grow in divers parts of the world, some in Egypt, and most of those countries adjacent: there groweth of them in the East and West Indies; as travellers in those parts report.

The Time.

These trees for the most part keep green winter and summer.

The Names.

Balsam is called in Greek, *Balsamon*: in Latin also *Balsamum*: of the Arabians *Balseni*, *Balesina*, and *Belsan*: in Italian, *Balsamo*: in Erench, *Baume*.

The liquor that floweth out of the tree when is wounded, is called *Opobalsamum*: the wood *Xylobalsamum*: the fruit *Carpobalsamum*, and the liquor which naturally floweth from the tree in Egypt *Balsamum*.

The Temperature.

Balsam is hot and dry in the second degree, with astriction.

The Virtues.

A. Natural Balsam taken in a morning fasting, with a little Rose water or wine, to the quantity of five or six drops, helpeth those that be asthmatic, or short of wind: it prevaieth against the pains of the bladder, and stomach, and comforteth the same mightily; and also amendeth a stinking breath; & takes away the shaking fits of the quotidian ague, if it be taken two or three times.

B. It helpeth consumptions, cleanseth the barren womb, especially being anointed upon a pessary, or mother suppository, and used.

C. The stomach being anointed therewith, digestion is helped thereby; it also preserveth the stomach from obstructions and windiness; it helpeth the hardness of the spleen; easeth the griefs of the reins and belly, proceeding of cold causes.

D. It also taketh away all manner of aches, proceeding of cold causes, if they be anointed therewith; but more speedily, if a linen cloth be wet therein, and laid thereon: used in the same manner, it dissolveth hard tumors, called *ædemata*; and strengtheneth the weak members.

E. The same refresheth the brain, and comforteth the parts adjoining, it helpeth the palsy, convulsions, and all griefs of the sinews, if they be anointed therewith.

F. The marvellous effects that it worketh in new and green wounds, were here too long to set down, and also superfluous; considering the skilfull surgeon whom it most concerneth, doth know the use thereof, and as for the beggerly quacksalvers,

runnagates, and knavish mountebanks, we are not willing to instruct them in things so far above their reach, capacity and worthiness.

CHAP. 146. Of a kind of Balm, or Balsam Tree.

⌘ *Molli, sine Molli Clusij, & Lobelij.*
The Balm tree of Clusius and Lobels description.



Fig. 2126. Lobel's and Clusius' Balsam.

‡ ⌘ *Molle arboris adulta ramus.*
A branch of the old tree of Molle.



Fig. 2127. The same Balsam tree, an older specimen

The Description.

This tree which the people of the Indies do call *Molli*, groweth to the bigness of a great tree, having a trunk or body of a dark green colour, sprinkled over with many ash-coloured spots: the branches are many, and of very great beauty; whereupon do grow leaves not unlike to those of the Ash tree, consisting of many small leaves, set upon a middle rib; growing narrower ever towards the point, every particular one jagged on the sides like the teeth of a saw; which being plucked from the stem, yieldeth forth a milky juice, tough and clammy, savouring like the bruised leaves of Fennel, and as it seemeth in taste somewhat astringent: the flowers grow in clusters upon the twiggy branches, like those of the Vine a little before the grapes be formed: after followeth the fruit or berries, somewhat greater than peppercorns, of an oily substance, green at the first, and of a dark reddish colour when they be ripe.

The first of the figures was taken from a tree, only of three years growth, but the latter from a tree come to his full growth, as it is affirmed in Clusius his *Cur. Poster.* It differs only in that the leaves of the old trees are not at all snipped or divided on the edges.

The Place.

This tree, saith a learned physician called Iohannes Fragosus, doth grow in the King of Spain his garden at Madrid, which was the first that ever he did see: since which

time, John Ferdinando Secretary unto the foresaid king did show unto the said Fragosus in his own garden a tree so large, and of such beauty, that he was never satisfied with looking on it, and meditating upon the virtues thereof. Which words I have received from the hands of a famous learned man, called Mr Lancelot Brown, doctor in physic, and physician to the Queen's Majesty, at the impression hereof; faithfully translated out of the Spanish tongue, without adding or taking anything away.

They grow plentifully in the vales and low grounds of Peru, as all affirm that have travelled to the West Indies; as also those that have described the singularities thereof. Myself with divers others, as namely Mr Nicholas Lete, a worshipful merchant of the City of London; and also a most skilful apothecary, Mr James Garret, who have received seeds hereof from the right Honourable the Lord Hunsdon, Lord High Chamberlain of England, worthy of triple honour for his care in getting, as also for his curious keeping rare and strange things brought from the farthest parts of the world; which seeds we have sown in our gardens, where they have brought forth plants of a foot high; and also their beautiful leaves notwithstanding our care, diligence, and industry, they have perished at the first approach of winter, as not being able by reason of their tenderness to endure the cold of our winter blasts.

The Time.

As touching the time of his flourishing, and bringing his fruit to maturity, we have as yet no certain knowledge, but is thought to be green both winter and summer.

The Names.

This most notable tree is called by the Indian name *Molle*: of some, *Molly*, and *Muelle*, taken from his tender softnes, as some have deemed: it may be called the Fennel tree, or one of the Balm, or Balsam trees.

The Temperature,

This tree is thought to be of an a stringent or binding quality; whereby it appears besides the hot temperature it hath, to be compounded of divers other faculties.

The Virtues.

A. The Indians use to seethe the fruit or berries hereof in water, and by a special skill they have in the boiling, do make a most wholesome wine or drink, as also a kind of vinegar, and sometimes honey; which are very strange effects, these three things being so contrary in taste.

B. The leaves boiled, and the decoction drunk, helpeth them of any disease proceeding of a cold cause.

C. The gum which issueth from the tree, being white like unto manna, dissolved in milk, taketh away the web of the eyes, and cleareth the sight, being wiped over with it.

D. The bark of this tree boiled, and the legs that be swollen and full of pain, bathed and washed with the decoction divers times, taketh away both infirmities in short space.

E. This tree is of such estimation among the Indians, that they worship it as a god, according unto their savage rites and ceremonies: much like as Pliny reporteth of Homer's Moly, the most renowned of all plants, which they had in old time in such

estimation and reverence, that as it is recorded, the gods gave it the name of Moly, and so writeth Ovid:

*Pacifer huic dederat florem Cyllenius album,
Moly voocant Superi, nigra radice tenetur.*

["Cyllenius the peacemaker gave him a white flower which comes from a black root, which the gods call Moly"]

Ovid, *Metamorphoses*, Bk. XIV, 1.291-2]

If any be desirous to see more hereof, they may read a learned discourse of it set forth in the Latin tongue, by the learned Lobel, who hath at large written the history thereof, dedicated unto the Right Honourable, the Lord Chamberlain, at the impression hereof; faithfully overseen and examined by the learned physician before remembered, Mr Doctor Brown, and his censure upon the same. Together with Lobel's reply, who judged this plant (and not without good reason) to be a kind of the true Balsam of the ancients, and not much different from that set forth by Prosper Alpinus, whereof I have made mention in the foregoing chapter.

CHAP. 147. Of the Canel, or Cinnamon Tree.

Canelæ folium, Bacillus, & Cortex.
The leafe, barke, and trunk of the Cin-
namon tree.

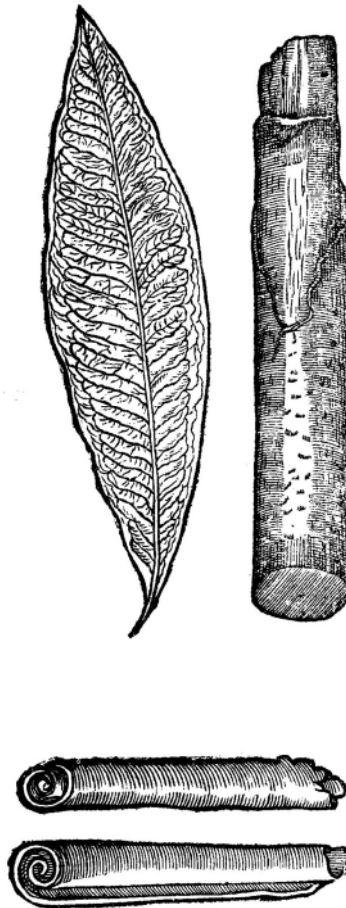


Fig. 2128. Cinnamon Leaf, Bark & Trunk (1)

The Description.

1. The tree which hath the cinnamon for his bark is of the stature of an Olive tree: having a body as thick as a man's thigh, from which the cinnamon is taken; but that taken from the smaller branches is much better: which branches or boughs are many, and very straight; whereon do grow beautiful leaves, in shape like those of the Orange tree, and of the colour of the Bay leaf (not as it hath been reported) like unto the leaves of flags or Fleur-de-Lys: among these pleasant leaves and branches come forth many fair white flowers, which turn into round black fruit or berries, of the bigness of an hazelnut, or the olive berry, and of a black colour; out of which is pressed an oil, that hath no smell at all until it be rubbed and chafed between the hands: the trunk or body with the greater arms or boughs of the tree are covered with a double or twofold bark, like that of *Suber*, the Cork tree: the innermost whereof is the true and pleasant Cinnamon, which is taken from the tree, and cast upon the ground in the heat of the sun; through the heat thereof it turneth and foldeth itself round together, as we daily see by viewing the thing itself: this tree being thus peeled, recovereth a new bark in the space of three years, and is then ready to be disbarked as before. That Cinnamon which is of a pale colour hath not been well dried in the sun: that of a fair brown colour is best; &

that which is blackish, hath been too much dried, and also hath taken some wet in the time of drying.

2. Besides the cinnamon vulgarly known and used, there is another sort which also is commonly received for the *Cassia* of Dioscorides and the ancients. Now this differs from the former in that it is of a redder colour, of a more hard, solid, and compact substance, commonly also thicker, & if you chew it, more clammy and viscous: the taste and smell are much like cinnamon, yet not altogether so strong as that of the best cinnamon. There is much controversy in late writers concerning both the true Cinnamon, and Cassia of the ancients: the which I have not time nor space here to mention, much less to insist upon: I have observed that both the Cinnamon and Cassia that we have are covered over with a rough grayish bark, like that of an Oak or other such tree, which is clean scraped off, and taken away before it be brought to us.

The Place.

The chiefest places where the trees do grow that bear Cinnamon, are Ceylon and Malabar: but those of Ceylon are the best: they grow in other of the Molucca islands, as Java, the greater and the less, and also in Mindanao, for the most part upon mountains.

The Time.

The Cinnamon tree groweth green winter and summer, as do all the other trees of the Moluccas, and East Indies for the most part: the boughs whereof are cut off at seasonable times, by the express commandment of the king of the country; and not before he have appointed the time.

There hath been some controversy among writers concerning the tree whose bark is *Cassia*, and that tree that beareth Cinnamon, making them both one tree: but that opinion is not to be received: for there is a great difference between them, as there is betwixt an Oak, and a Chestnut tree; for the tree whose bark is *Cassia* is doubtless a bastard kind of Canel, or Cinnamon: in show it is very like, but in sweetness or smell and other circumstances belonging to Cinnamon, far inferior.

The Names.

Cinnamon is called in Italian *Canella*: in Spanish, *Canola*: in French, *Canelle*: in High Dutch, *Zimmet rœzlin*: the Grecians, *Kinnamomon*: the Latins likewise *Cinnamomum*: the Arabians, *Darseni*, and as some say, *Quarfaa*, others, *Querfe*: in Ceylon, *Cuurde*: in the island Java they name it *Cameaa*: in Ormus, *Darchine* (i.e.) *lignum Chinense*, the wood of China: in Malabar, *Caismains*, which in their tongue signifieth *Dulce lignum*, Sweet wood: in English, Cinnamome, Cinnamon, and Canel. The other is called *Cassia*, and *Cassia lignea*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. Dioscorides writeth, that Cinnamon hath power to warm, and is of thin parts: it is also dry and astringent, it provoketh urine, cleareth the eyes, and maketh sweet breath.

B. The decoction bringeth down the menses, prevaieth against the bitings of venomous beasts, the inflammation of the intestines and reins.

C. The distilled water hereof is profitable to many, and for divers infirmities, it comforteth the weak, cold, and feeble stomach, easeth the pains and frettings of the guts and entrails proceeding of cold causes, it amendeth the evil colour of the face, maketh

sweet breath, & giveth a most pleasant taste unto divers sorts of meats, and maketh the same not only more pleasant, but also more wholesome for any bodies of what constitution soever they be, notwithstanding the binding quality.

D. The oil drawn chemically prevaieth against the pains of the breast, comforteth the stomach, breaketh windiness, causeth good digestion, and being mixed with some honey, taketh away spots from the face, being anointed therewith.

E. The distilled water of the flowers of the tree, as Garcias the Lusitanian physician writeth, excelleth far in sweetness all other waters whatsoever, which is profitable for such things as the bark itself is.

F. Out of the berries of this tree is drawn by expression, as out of the berries of the Olive tree, a certain oil, or rather a kind of fat like butter, without any smell at all, except it be made warm, and then it smelleth as the Cinnamon doth, and is much used against the coldness of the sinews, all pains of the joints, and also the pains and distemperature of the stomach and breast.

G. To write as the worthiness of the subject requireth, would ask more time than we have to bestow upon any one plant; therefore these few shall suffice, knowing that the thing is of great use among many, and known to most.

H. Cassia used in a larger quantity serveth well for the same purposes which Cinnamon doth.

CHAP. 148. Of Gum Lac, and his Rotten Tree.

Lacca cum suis bacillis.
Gum Lacke with his staffe or sticke.

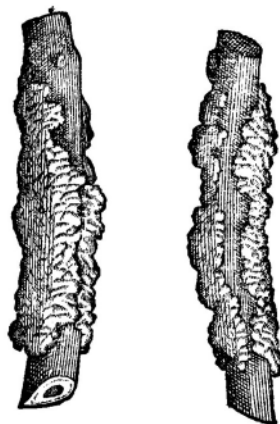


Fig. 2129. Gum Lac and its stick

The Description.

The tree that bringeth forth that excremental substance called *Lacca*, bothin the shops of Europe and elsewhere, is called of the Arabians, Persians and Turks, *Loc Sumatri*, as who should say, *Lacca* of Sumutra: some which have so termed it, have thought that the first plenty thereof came from Sumutra, but herein they have erred, for the abundant store thereof came from Pegu, where the inhabitants thereof do call it *Lac*, & others of the same province, *Trec*: the history of which tree, according to that famous herbarist Clusius is as followeth. "There is in the country of Pegu and Malabar, a great tree, whose leaves are like them of the Plum tree, having many small twiggy branches; when the trunk or body of the tree waxeth old, it rotteth in sundry places, wherein do breed certain great ants or pismires, which continually work and labour in the time of harvest and summer, against the penury of winter: such is the diligence of those ants, or such is the nature of the tree wherein they harbour, or both, that they provide for their winter food, a lump or mass of substance, which is of a crimson colour, so beautiful and so fair, as in the whole world the like is not seen, which serveth not only to physical uses but is a perfect and costly colour for painters, called by us, Indian Lac. The pismires (as I said) work out this colour, by sucking the substance or matter of *Lacca* from the tree, as bees do make honey and wax, by sucking the matter thereof from all herbs, trees, and flowers, and the inhabitants or that country, do as diligently seek for this *Lacca*, as we in England and other countries seek in the woods for honey; which *Lacca* after they have found, they take from the tree, and dry it into a lump; among which sometimes there come over some sticks and pieces of the tree with the wings of the ants, which have fallen among it, as we daily see."

The Indian Lac or Lake which is the rich colour used by painters, is none of that which is used in shops, nor here figured or described by Clusius, wherefore our author was much mistaken in that he here confounds together things so different; for this is of a resinous substance, and a faint red colour, and wholly unfit for painters, but used alone and in composition to make the best hard sealing wax. The other seems to be an artificial

thing, and is of an exquisite crimson colour, but of what it is, or how made, I have not as yet found anything that carries any probability of truth.

The Place

The tree which beareth *Lacca* groweth in Ceylon and Malabar, and in other parts of the East Indies.

The Time.

Of the time we have no certain knowledge.

The Names.

Indian Lac is called in shops *Lacca*: in Italian, *Lachetta*: Avicenna calleth it *Luch*: Paulus and Dioscorides, as some have thought, *Cancamum*: the other names are expressed in the description.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. *Lac* or *Lacca* is hot in the second degree, it comforteth the heart and liver, openeth obstructions, expelleth urine and prevaileth against the dropsy.

B. There is an artificial Lac made of the scrapings of Brazil and saffron, which is used of painters, and not to be used in physic as the other natural *Lacca*.

CHAP. 149. Of the Indian Leaf.

Tamalapatra.
The Indian leafe.



Fig. 2130. Indian Leaf

The Description.

Tamalapatra, or the Indian Leaf grows upon a great tree like the Orange tree, with like leaves also, but broader, a little sharp pointed, of a green glistering colour, and three small ribs running through each leaf, after the manner of Ribwort, whereby it is easy to be known: it smelleth somewhat like unto cloves, but not so strong as spikenard or mace (as some have deemed) nor yet of so subtle and quick a scent as cinnamon. There was sent or added unto this figure by Cortusus a certain fruit like unto a small acorn, with this inscription, *Fructus Canellæ*, the fruit of the Canel tree, which may be doubted of, considering the description of the forenamed tree holden generally of most to be perfect.

The Place.

The Indian leaf groweth not fleeting upon the water like unto *Lens palustris*, as Dioscorides and Pliny do set down, (though learned and painful writers) but is the leaf of a great tree, a branch whereof we have set forth unto your view, which groweth in Arabia and Cambay, far from the water side.

The Time.

Of the time we have no certain knowledge, but it is supposed to be green winter and summer.

The Names.

Tamalapatra is called of the Indians in their mother tongue, especially of the Arabians, *Cadegi Indi*, or *Ladegi Indi*, that is, *Folium indicum*, or *indum*, the Indian

leaf: but the Mauritians do call it *Tembul*. The Latins and Grecians following some of the Arabians, have called it *Malabathrum*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The Indian leaf is hot and dry in the second degree, agreeing with Nardus in temperature, or as others report with mace: it provoketh urine mightily, warmeth and comforteth the stomach, and helpeth digestion.

B. It prevaieth against the pin and web in the eyes, the inflamed and watery eyes, and all other infirmities of the same.

C. It is laid among clothes, as well to keep them from moths and other vermin, as also to give unto them a sweet smell.

CHAP. 150. Of the Clove Tree.

Caryophylli veri Clusij.
The true forme of the Cloue tree.



Fig. 2131. The Clove Tree

The Description.

The Clove tree groweth great in form like unto the Bay tree, the trunk or body whereof is covered with a russet bark: the branches are many, long, and very brittle, whereupon do grow leaves like those of the Bay tree, but somewhat narrower: amongst which come the flowers, white at the first, after of a greenish colour, waxing of a dark red colour in the end: which flowers are the very cloves when they grow hard: after when they be dried in the sun they become of that dusky black colour which we daily see, wherein they continue. For those that we have in estimation are beaten down to the ground before they be ripe, and are suffered there to lie upon the ground until they be dried thoroughly, where there is neither grass, weeds, nor any other herbs growing to hinder the same, by reason the tree draweth unto itself for his nourishment all the moisture of the earth a great circuit round about, so that nothing can there grow for want of moisture, and therefore the more convenient for the drying of the cloves. Contrariwise, that gross kind of cloves which hath been supposed to be the male, are nothing else than fruit of the same tree tarrying there until it fall down of itself unto the ground, where by reason of his long lying, and meeting with some rain in the mean season, it loseth the quick taste that those others have. Some have called these *Fusti*, whereof we may English them Fusses. Some affirm that the flowers hereof surpass all other flowers in sweetness when they are green; and hold the opinion, that the hardened flowers are not the cloves themselves, (as we have written) but think them rather to be the seat or husk wherein the flowers do grow: the greater number hold the former opinion. And further, that the trees are increased without labour, grafting, planting, or other industry, but by the falling of the fruit, which bear fruit within eight years after they be risen up, and so continue bearing for an hundred years together, as the inhabitants of that country do affirm.

The Place.

The Clove tree groweth in some few places of the Molucca islands, as in Ceylon, Java the greater and the less, and in divers other places.

The Time.

The Cloves are gathered from the fifteenth of September unto the end of February, not with hands, as we gather apples, cherries, and such like fruit, but by beating the tree, as Walnuts are gotten, as we have written in the description.

The Names.

The fruit hereof was unknown to the ancient Grecians: of the later writers called *Karyophyllon*: in Latin also *Caryophyllus*, and *Clavus*: in French, *Clou de Gyrofle*: the Mauritanians, *Charhumfel*: in Italian, *Carofano*: in High Dutch, *Paegel*: in Spanish, *Clavo de especia*: of the Indians, *Calafur*: in the Moluccas, *Changue*: of the Pandets, *Arumfel*, and *Charumfel*: in English, Clove tree, & Cloves.

The Temperature.

Cloves are hot and dry in the third degree.

The Virtues.

A. Cloves strengthen the stomach, liver, and heart, help digestion, and provoke urine.

B. The Portugal women that dwell in the East Indies draw from the cloves when they be yet green, a certain liquor by distillation, of a most fragrant smell, which comforteth the heart, and is of all cordials the most effectual.

C. Cloves stop the belly: the oil or water thereof dropped into the eyes, sharpens the sight, and cleanseth away the cloud or web in the same.

D. The weight of four drams of the powder of cloves taken in milk procureth the act of generation.

E. There is extracted from the cloves a certain oil or rather thick butter of a yellow colour; which being chafed in the hands smelleth like the cloves themselves, wherewith the Indians do cure their wounds and other hurts, as we do with Balsam.

F. The use of cloves, not only in meat and medicine, but also in sweet powder and such like, is sufficiently known: therefore this shall suffice.

CHAP. 151. Of the Nutmeg Tree.

1 *Nux Muscata rotunda, sine femina.*
The round or female Nutmeg.

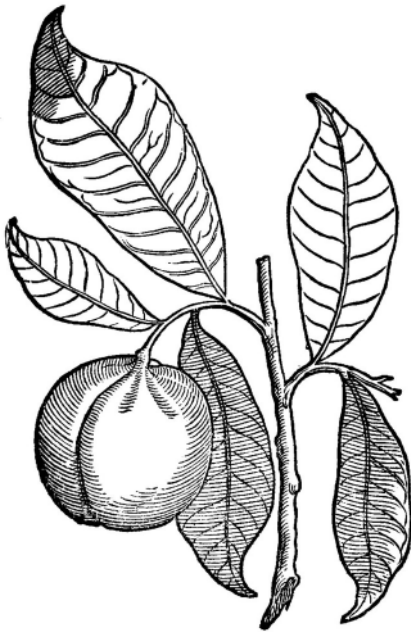


Fig. 2132. Female Nutmeg (1)

2 *Nux Myristica oblonga, sine mas.*
The longish or male Nutmeg.



Fig. 2133. Male Nutmeg (2)

The Description.

1. The tree that beareth the nutmeg and the mace is in form like to the Pear tree, but the leaves of it are like those of the Bay or Orange tree, always green on the upper side, and more whitish underneath; among which come forth the nut and mace as it were the flowers. The nut appeareth first, compassed about with the mace, as it were in the middle of a single rose, which in process of time doth wrap and enclose the nut round on every side: after cometh a husk like that of the walnut, but of an harder substance, which encloseth the nut with his mace as the walnut husk doth cover the nut, which in time of ripeness doth cleave of itself as the walnut husk doth, and showeth his mace, which then is of a perfect crimson colour, and maketh a most goodly show, especially when the tree is well laden with fruit: after the nut becometh dry, the mace likewise gapeth and forsaketh the nut, even as the first husk or coverture, and leaves it bare and naked, as we all do know; at which time it getteth to itself a kind of dark yellow colour, and loseth that brave crimson dye which it had at the first.

2. The tree which carrieth the male nutmeg (according to Clusius) thus differs from the last described: the leaves are like those of the former in shape, but much bigger, being sometimes a foot long, and three or four inches broad; their common length is seven or eight inches, and breadth two and a half: they are of a whitish colour underneath, and green and shining above. The nuts also grow at the very ends of the branches, sometimes two or three together, and not only one, as in the common kind.

The nut itself is also larger and longer: the mace that encompasses it is of a more elegant colour, but not so strong as that of the former.

Nux Moschata, cum sua Maci.
The Nutmeg with his Mace about him.

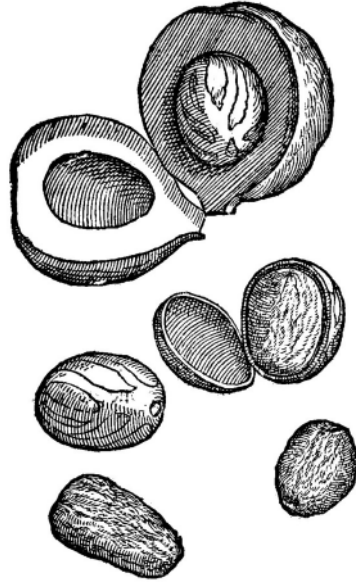


Fig. 2134. Nutmeg fruit with nut and mace.

I can scarce believe our author's assertion in the foregoing description, that the nut appeareth first, compassed about with the mace as were in the midst of single rose, &c. But I rather think they all come forth together, the nutmeg, mace, the green outward husk and all, just we see walnuts do, and only open themselves when they come to full maturity. In the third figure you may see expressed the whole manner of the growing of the nutmeg, together with both the sorts of nutmegs taken forth of their shells.

The Place.

The nutmeg tree groweth in the Indies, in an island especially called Banda, and in the islands of Molucca, and in Ceylon, though not so good as the first.

The Time.

The fruit is gathered in September in great abundance, all things being common in those countries.

The Names.

The Nutmeg tree is called of the Grecians, *Karyon myristikon*: of the Latins, *Nux moschata*, and *Nux myristica*: in Italian, *Noce Moscada*: in Spanish, *Nuez de escetie*: in French, *Noix Muscade*: in High Dutch, *flöschat nus*: of the Arabians, *Leuzbane*, or *Gianziban*: of the country people where they grow, *Palla*: The maces, *Bunapalla*. In Deccan the nut is called *Iapatri*, and the maces, *Iaifol*: of Avicenna, *Iausiband*, (i.e.) *Nux Bandensis* ["Nut of Banda"]. The maces he calleth *Befbase*: in English, Nutmeg.

The Temperature.

The nutmeg, as the Mauritanians write, is hot and dry in the second degree complete, and somewhat astringent.

The Virtues.

A. Nutmegs cause a sweet breath, and amend those that do stink, if they be much chewed and holden in the mouth.

B. The nutmeg is good against freckles in the face, quickeneth the sight, strengthens the belly and feeble liver; it taketh away the swelling in the spleen, stayeth the lask, breaketh wind, and is good against all cold diseases in the body.

C. Nutmegs bruised and boiled in *Aqua vitae* until they have wasted and consumed the moisture, adding thereto of *Rhodomel* (that is, honey of Roses) gently boiling them, being strained to the form of a syrup, cure all pains proceeding of windy and cold causes, if three spoonfuls be given fasting for certain days together.

D. The same bruised and boiled in strong white wine until three parts be sodden away, with the roots of Motherwort added thereto in the boiling, and strained: this liquor drunk with some sugar cureth all gripings of the belly proceeding of windiness.

E. As touching the choice, there is not any so simple but knoweth that the heaviest, fattest, and fullest of juice are the best, which may easily be found out by pricking the same with a pin or such like.

CHAP. 152. Of the Pepper Plant.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of Pepper, that is to say, white, black, and long Pepper: one greater and longer than the other; and also a kind of Ethiopian Pepper.

1 *Piper nigrum.*
Blacke Pepper.



Fig. 2135. Black Pepper (1)

2 *Piper album.*
White Pepper.



Fig. 2136. White Pepper (2)

The Description.

1. The plant that beareth the Black Pepper groweth up like a Vine among bushes and brambles where it naturally groweth; but where it is manured it is sown at the botom of the tree *Faufel* and the Date trees, whereon it taketh hold, and climbeth up even to the top, as doth the Vine, ramping and taking hold with his clasping tendrils of any other thing it meeteth withal. The leaves are few in number, growing at each joint one, first on one side of the stalk, then on the other, like in shape to the long undivided leaves of Ivy, but thinner, sharp pointed, and sometimes so broad, that they are four inches over, but most commonly two inches broad, and four long, having always five pretty large nerves running alongst them. The fruit grow cluttering together upon long stalks, which come forth at the joints against the leaves, as you may see in the figure: the root (as one may conjecture) is creeping; for the branches that lie on the ground do at their joints put forth new fibres or roots. We are beholden to Clusius for this exact figure and description, which he made by certain branches which were brought home by the Hollanders from the East Indies. The curious may see more hereof in his *Exotics* and *Notes upon Garcias*.

2. The plant that brings White Pepper is not to be distinguished from the other plant, but only by the colour of the fruit, no more than a Vine that beareth black grapes, from that which bringeth white: and of some it is thought, that the selfsame plant doth sometimes change itself from black to white, as divers other plants do. Neither Clusius, nor any other else that I have yet met with, have delivered us anything of certain, of the plant whereon White Pepper grows: Clusius only hath given us the manner how it grows upon the stalks as you may see it here expressed.

There is also another kind of Pepper, seldom brought into these parts of Europe, called *Piper canarium*: it is hollow within, light, and empty, but good to draw phlegm from the head, to help the toothache and choleric affects.

† 3 *Piper longum*:
Long Pepper.



Fig. 2137. Long Pepper (3)

4 *Piper ~~Aethiopicum~~, sine Vita longa*.
Pepper of Ethiopia.

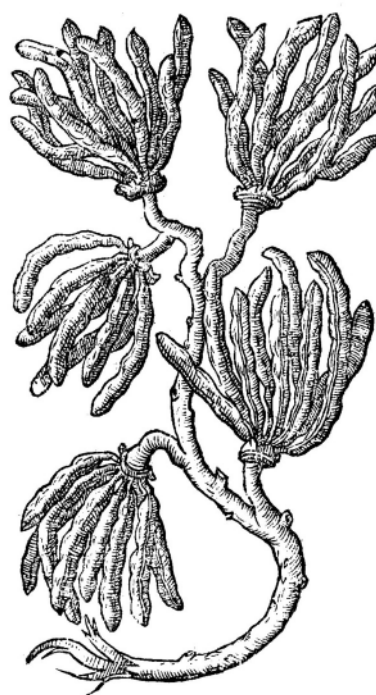


Fig. 2138. Ethiopian Pepper (4)

3. The tree that beareth Long Pepper hath no similitude at all with the plant that brings Black and White Pepper: some have deemed them to grow all on one tree, which is not consonant to truth, for they grow in countries far distant one from, another, and also that country where there is Black Pepper hath not any of the Long Pepper; and therefore Galen following Dioscorides, were together both overseen in this point. This tree, saith Monardes, is not great, yet of a woody substance, dispersing here and there his clasping tendrils, wherewith it taketh hold of other trees and such other things as do grow near unto it. The branches are many and twiggy, whereon grows the fruit, consisting of many grains growing upon a slender footstalk, thrust or compact close together, green at the first, and afterward blackish; in taste sharper and hotter than common black Pepper, yet sweeter, and of better taste.

For this figure also I acknowledge myself beholden to the learned and diligent Clusius who caused it to be drawn from a branch of some foot in length, that he received from Dr. Lambert Hortensius, who brought it from the Indies. The order of growing of the leaves and fruit is like that of the Black; but the joints stand somewhat thicker together, the leaf also doth little differ from that of the Black, only it is thinner, of a lighter green, and (as Clusius thought) hath a shorter footstalk, the veins or nerves also were less imminent, more in number, and run from the middle rib to the sides, rather than alongst the leaf.

4. This other kind of Pepper brought unto us from Ethiopia, called of the country where it groweth, *Piper æthiopicum*: in shops, *Amomum*, and also *Longa Vita*. It groweth upon a small tree, in manner of an hedge bush, whereupon grow long cods in bunches, a finger long, of a brown colour, uneven, and bunched or pushed up in divers places, divided into five or six lockers or cells, each whereof containeth a round seed somewhat long, lesser than the seeds of Pæony, in taste like common Pepper, or Cardamomum, whose faculty and temperature it is thought to have, whereof we hold it a kind.

‡ 5 *Piper Caudatum*.
Tailed Pepper.



Fig. 2139. Tailed Pepper (5)

5. Another kind of Pepper is sometimes brought, which the Spaniards do call *Pimenta de rabo*, that is, Pepper with a tail: it is like unto Cubebs, round, full, somewhat rough, black of colour, and of a sharp quick taste, like the common Pepper, of a good smell: it groweth by clusters upon small stems or stalks, which some have unadvisedly taken for *Amomum*. The King of Portugal forbade this kind of Pepper to be brought over, for fear least the right Pepper should be the less esteemed, and so himself hindered in the sale thereof.

The Place.

Black and White Pepper grow in the kingdom of Malabar, and that very good; in Malacca also, but not so good; and also in the Islands Sunda and Cude: there is great store growing in the kingdom of China, and some in Cananor, but not much.

Pepper of Ethiopia groweth in America, in all the tract of the country where Nata and Carthago are situated. The rest hath been spoken of in their several

descriptions. The white Pepper is not so common as the black, and is used there instead of salt.

The Time.

The plant riseth up in the first of the spring; the fruit is gathered in August.

The Names.

The Grecians, who had best knowledge of Pepper, do call it *Peperi*: the Latins, *Piper*: the Arabians, *Fulfel* and *Fulful*: in Italian, *Pepe*: in Spanish, *Pimenta*: in French, *Poivre*: in High Dutch, *Peffer*: in English, Pepper.

That of Ethiopia is called, *Piper æthiopicum*, *Amomum*, *Vita longa*, and of some, *Cardomomum*, whereof we hold it to be a kind. I received a branch hereof at the hands of a learned physician of London, called M. Steven Bredwell, with his fruit also.

The Temperatare.

The Arabians and Persian physicians judge, that Pepper is hot in the third degree.

But the Indian physicians which for the most part are emperics, hold that Pepper is cold, as almost all other spice, which are hot indeed: the Long Pepper is hot also in the third degree, and as we have said, is thought to be the best of all the kinds.

The Virtues.

A. Dioscorides and others agreeing with him, affirm, that Pepper resisteth poison, and is good to be put in medicaments for the eyes.

B. All Pepper heateth, provoketh urine, digesteth, draweth, disperseth, and cleanseth the dimness of the sight, as Dioscorides noteth.

CHAP. 153. Of Bastard Pepper, called Betel, or Betre.

Betle, sine Betre.
Bastard Pepper.



Fig. 2140. Bastard Pepper or Betel

The Description.

This plant climbeth and rampeth upon trees, bushes, or whatsoever else it meeteth withal, like unto the Vine, or the Black Pepper, whereof some hold it for a kind. The leaves are like those of the greater Bindweed, but somewhat longer, of a dusty colour, with divers veins or ribs running through the same. The fruit groweth among the leaves, very crookedly writhed, in shape like the tail of a Lizard, of the taste of Pepper, yet very pleasant to the palate.

The Place.

It groweth among the Date trees, and *Areca*, in most of the Molucca Islands, especially in the marsh grounds.

The Time.

The time answereth that of Pepper.

The Names.

This hath been taken for the Indian Leaf, but not properly: of most it is called *Tembul*, and *Tambul*: in Malabar *Betre*: in Deccan, Gujerat, and Canam it is called *Pam*: in Malaya, *Siri*.

The Use and Temperature.

The leaves chewed in the mouth are of a bitter taste, whereupon (saith Garcias) they put thereto some *Areca* and with the lime made of oyster shells, whereunto they also add some *Ambergris*, *Lignum Aloes*, and such like, which they stamp together, making it into a paste, which they roll up into round balls, keep dry for their use, and

carry the same in their mouths until by little and little it is consumed; as when we carry sugar candy in our mouths, or the juice of Liquorice; which is not only unto the silly Indians meat, but also drink in their tedious travels, refreshing their wearied spirits and helping memory: which is esteemed among the empiric physicians, to be hot and dry in the second degree. Garcia doth not affirm that the Indians eat it for meat, or in want of drink, but that they eat it after meat, and that to give the breath a pleasant scent, which they count a great grace, so that if an inferior person that hath not chewed Betre, or some such thing, come to speak with any great man, he holds his hand before his mouth lest his breath should offend him.

CHAP. 154. Of Grains, or Grains of Paradise.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of Grains, some long, others Pear fashion; some greater; and others lesser.



Fig. 2141. Grains of Paradise

The first figure hereof setteth forth unto your view the cod wherein the hot spice lieth, which we call Grains: in shops, *Grana Paradisi*: it groweth, by the report of the learned, upon a low herby plant: the leaves are some four inches long, and three broad, with somewhat a thick middle rib, from which run transverse fibres; they much in shape resemble those of Cloves. The fruit is like a great cod or husk, in shape like a fig when it groweth upon the tree, but of colour russet, thrust full of small seeds or grains of a dark reddish colour (as the figure showeth which is divided) of an exceeding hot taste.

The other sorts may be distinguished by the sight of the picture, considering the only difference consists in form.

The Place.

Grains grow in Guinea, and the Cardamoms in all the East Indies, from the port of Calicut unto Cananor; it groweth in Malabar, in Java, and in divers other places.

The Time.

They spring up in May, being sown of seed, and bring their fruit to ripeness in September.

The Names.

Grains are called in Greek, *Kardamomon*: in Latin, *Cardamomum*; of the Arabians, *Corrumeni*: of divers Gentiles, *Dore*: of Avicenna, *Saccolaa quebir* (i.e.) *magnum*: the other, *Saccolaa ceguer* (i.e.) *minus*. It is called in Malabar, *Etremelli*: in Ceylon, *Encal*: in Bengal, Gujerat, and Deccan, *Hil*, and *Eluchi*. The first and largest

sort are called of some, *Mileguetta*, and *Milegetta*: in English, Grains, and Grains of Paradise.

The Temperature.

Avicenna writeth, that *Saccolaa*, *Cardamomum*, or *Grana Paradisi*, are hot and dry in the third degree, with astringtion.

The Virtues.

A. The Grains chewed in the mouth draw forth from the head and stomach waterish and pituitous humours.

B. They also comfort and warm the weak, cold, and feeble stomach, help the ague, and rid the shaking fits, being drunk with Sack.

CHAP. 155. Of Yucca.

Yucca, sine Yucca Peruana.
The root whereof the bread Casava
or Cazava is made.



Fig. 2142. Yucca

The Description.

The plant of whose root the Indian bread called Cassava is made, is a low herb consisting only of leaves and roots: it hath neither stalk, flowers, nor fruit, that I can understand of others, or by experience of the plant itself, which hath grown in my garden four years together, and yet doth grow and prosper exceedingly; nevertheless without stalk, fruit, or flowers, as aforesaid. It hath a very great root, thick and tuberous, and very knobby, full of juice somewhat sweet in taste, but of a pernicious quality, as saith my author: from which root riseth up immediately forth of the ground very many leaves joined unto the head of the root in a round circle; the which are long, of the length of a cubit, hollowed like a gutter or trough, very smooth, and of a green colour, like that of Woad: the edges of the leaves are sharp like the edge of a knife, and of a brown

colour; the point of the leaf is a prick as sharp as a needle, which hurteth those that unadvisedly pass by it: the leaf with advised eye viewed is like unto a little wherry, or such like boat: they are also very tough, hard to break, and not easy to cut, except the knife be very sharp.

Thus saith our author, but Lobel in the second part of his *Adversaria* largely describes and figures this plant; and there he affirms he wrote a description (the which he there sets down) for our author; but he did not follow it, and therefore committed these errors: First, in that he saith it is the root whereof Casava bread was made; whenas Lobel in his description said he thought it to be *alia species a Yucca Indica ex qua panis communis fit* ["Another species of Indian Yucca from which common bread is made"]. Secondly, in that he set down the place out of the *Historia Lugdunensis* (who took it out of Thevet) endeavouring by that means to confound it with that there mentioned, whenas he had his from Mr Edwards his man. And thirdly, (for which indeed he was most blameworthy, and wherein he most showed his weakness) for that he doth confound it with the *Manihot* or true *Yucca*, which all affirm to have a leaf like that of hemp, parted into seven or more divisions: and also in that he puts it to the *Arachidna* of Theophrastus, whenas he denies it both flower and fruit, yet within some few years after our author had set forth this work it flowered in his garden.

This some years puts forth a pretty stiff round stalk some three cubits high, divided into divers unequal branches carrying many pretty large flowers, shaped somewhat like those of *Fritillaria*, but that they are narrower at their bottoms; the leaves of the flower are six: the colour on the inside white, but on the outside of an overworn reddish colour from the stalk to the midst of the leaf; so that it is a flower of no great beauty, yet to be esteemed for the rarity. I saw it once flower in the garden of Mr Wilmot at Bow, but never since, though it hath been kept for many years in sundry other gardens, as with Mr Parkinson and Mr Tuggy. This was first written of by our author; and since by Lobel and Mr Parkinson, who keep the same name, as also Bauhine, who to distinguish it from the other calls it *Yucca foliis aloes*.

The Place.

This plant groweth in all the tract of the Indies, from the Magellan Straits unto the cape of Florida, and in most of the islands of the Cannibals, and others adjoining, from whence I had that plant brought me that groweth in my garden, by a servant of a learned and skilful apothecary of Exeter, named Mr Tho. Edwards.

The Time.

It keepeth green both winter and summer in my garden, without any coverture at all, notwithstanding the injury of our cold climate.

The Names.

It is reported unto me by Travellers, that the Indians do call it in some parts, *Manihot*, but generally *Yucca*: it is thought to be the plant called of Theophrastus, *Arachidna*: and of Pliny, *Aracidna*.

The Temperature.

This plant is hot and dry in the first degree, which is meant by the feces or dross, when the poisonous juice is pressed or strained forth, and is also dry in the middle of the second degree.

CHAP. 156. Of the Fruit *Anacardium*, and *Caious*, or *Caiocus*.

Anacardium.
The Beane of Malaca.

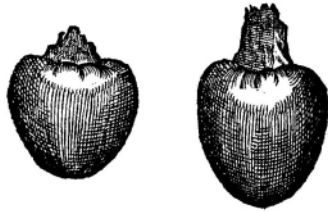


Fig. 2143. Malacca Bean

Caious.
The kidney Beane of Malaca.

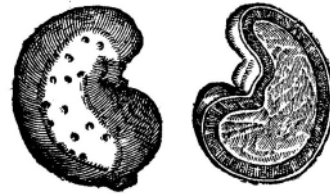


Fig. 2144. Malacca Kidney bean

The Description.

The ancient writers have been very brief in the history of *Anacardium*: the Grecians have touched it by the name of *Anakardion*, taking the name from the likeness it hath of an heart both in shape and colour; called of the Portugals that inhabit the East Indies, *Fava de Malacqua*, the bean of Malacca; for being green, and as it hangeth on the tree, it resembleth a Bean, saving that it is much bigger: but when they be dry they are of a shining blackish colour, containing between the outward rind and the kernel (which is like an Almond) a certain oil of a sharp caustic or burning quality, called *Mel Acardinum*, although the kernel is used in meats and sauces, as we do Olives and such like, to procure appetite.

The other fruit groweth upon a tree of the bigness of a Pear tree: the leaves are much like to those of the Olive tree, but thicker and fatter, of a faint green colour: the flowers are white, consisting of many small leaves much like the flowers of the Cherry tree, but much doubled, without smell: after cometh the fruit (according to Clusius, of the form and magnitude of a goose egg, full of juice; in the end whereof is a nut) in shape like an hare's kidney, having two rinds, between which is contained a most hot and sharp oil like that of *Anacardium*, whereof it is a kind.

The bean or kernel itself is no less pleasant and wholesome in eating, than the *Pistacia*, or fistic nut, whereof the Indians do eat with great delight, affirming that it provoketh venery, wherein is their chiefest felicity. The fruit is contained in long cods like those of beans, but greater: near unto which cods cometh forth an excrescence like unto an apple, very yellow, of a good smell, spongius within, and full of juice, without any seeds, stones, or grains at all, somewhat sweet in taste, at the one end narrower than the other, Pear fashion, or like a little bottle, which hath been reputed of some for the fruit, but not rightly; for it is rather an excrescence, as is the Oak Apple.

The Place.

The first grows in most parts of the East Indies, especially in Cananor, Calicut, Cambaya, and Deccan. The later in Brazil.

The Time.

These trees flower and flourish winter and summer.

The Names.

Their names have been touched in their descriptions. The first is called *Anacardium*, of the likeness it hath with an heart: of the Arabians, *Mador*: of the Indians, *Bibo*.

The second is called *Caious*, and *Caius*: of some, *Caiocus*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The oil of the fruit is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it hath also a caustic or corrosive quality: it taketh away warts, breaketh apostumes, prevaileth against leprosy, *alopecia*, and easeth the pain of the teeth, being put into the hollowness thereof.

B. The people of Malabar do use the said oil mingled with chalk, to mark their clothes or any other thing they desire to be coloured or marked, as we do use chalk, ochre, and red marking stones, but their colour will not be taken forth again by any manner of art whatsoever.

C. They also give the kernel steeped in whey to them that be asthmatic or short winded; and when the fruit is yet green they stick the same so steeped against the worms.

D. The Indians for their pleasure will give the fruit upon a thorn or some other sharp thing, and hold it in the flame of a candle, or any other flame, which there will burn with such crackings, lightnings, and withal yield so many strange colours, that it is great pleasure to the beholders which have not seen the like before.

CHAP. 157. Of Indian Morris Bells, and divers other Indian Fruits.

† 1 *Abouay Theueti.*
Indian Morrice Bels.

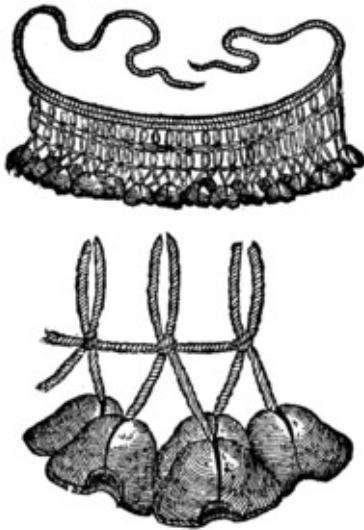


Fig. 2145. Indian Morrice Bells (1)

† 2 *Fructus Higuero.*
Indian Morosco bels.

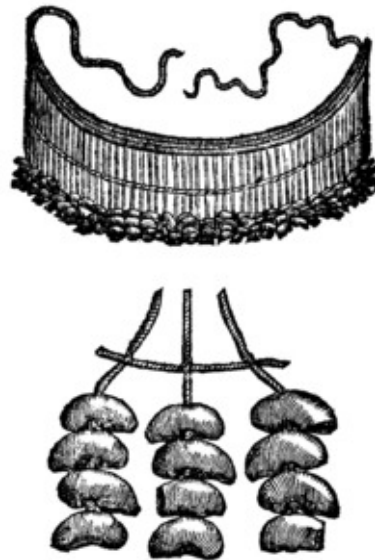


Fig. 2146. Indian Morocco Bells (2)

The Description.

1. This fruit groweth upon a great tree of the bigness of a Pear tree, full of branches, garnished with many leaves which are always green, three or four fingers long, and in breadth two: when the branches are cut off there issueth a milky juice not inferior to the fruit in his venomous quality. The trunk or body is covered with a grayish bark: the timber is white and soft, not fit to make fire of, much less for any other use; for being cut and put to the fire to burn, it yieldeth forth such a loathsome and horrible stink, that neither man nor beast are able to endure it: wherefore the Indians have no use thereof, but only of the fruit which in shape is like the Greek letter delta, of the bigness of a chestnut, and covered with a most hard shell, wherein is contained a kernel of a most venomous and poisonous quality, wherewith the men being angry with their wines, do poison them, and likewise the women their husbands: they likewise use to dip or anoint and envenom their arrows therewith, the more speedily to dispatch their enemies. Which kernel they take forth with some convenient instrument, leaving the shell as whole as may be, not touching the kernel with their hands because of its venomous quality, which would spoil their hands, and sometimes take away their life also. In which shells they put some little stones, and tie them upon strings (as you may perceive by the figure) which they dry in the sun, and after tie them about their legs, as we do bells, to set forth their dances, and Morisco Matachins, wherein they take great pleasure, by reason they think themselves to excel in those kinds of dances. Which rattling sound doth much delight them, because it setteth forth the distinction of sounds, for they tune them and mix them with great ones and little ones, in such sort as we do chimes or bells.

2. There is also another sort hereof, differing only in form; they are of the like venomous quality, and used for the same purpose. Thus saith our author, but the fruit of this *Higuerro* is like that of a gourd in pulp, and it may be eaten: the shape of the fruit is round, whereas the former is three-cornered.

The Place.

These do grow in most parts of the West Indies, especially in some of the islands of the Cannibals, who use them in their dances more than any of the other Indians. You may see these upon strings as they are here figured, amongst many other varieties, with Mr John Tradescant at South Lambeth.

The Time.

We have no certain knowledge of the time of flowering or bringing the fruit to maturity.

The Names and Use.

We have sufficiently spoken of the names and use hereof, therefore what hath been said may suffice.

CHAP. 158. Of the Vomiting and Purging Nuts.

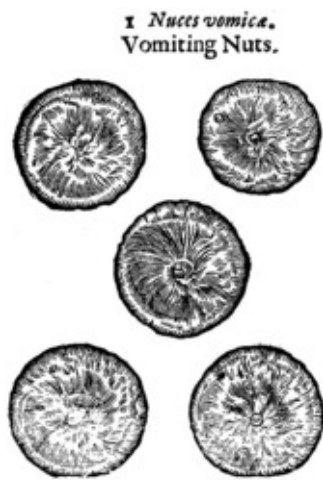


Fig. 2147. Vomiting Nuts (1)



Fig. 2148. Purging Nuts (2)

The Description.

1. Avicenna and Serapio make *Nux vomica*, and *Nux Methel*, to be one, whereabout there hath been much cavilling; yet the case is plain, if the text be true, that the Thorn Apple is *Nux Methel*. Of the tree that beareth the fruit that is called in shops *Nux vomica*, and *Nux Methel*, we have no certain knowledge: some are of opinion, that the fruit is the root of an herb, and not the nut of a tree: and therefore since the case among the learned resteth doubtful, we leave the rest that might be said to a further consideration. The fruit is round, flat, like a little cake, of a russet overworn colour, fat and firm, in taste sweet, and of such an oily substance, that it is not possible to stamp it in a mortar to powder; but when it is to be used, it must be grated or scraped with some instrument for that purpose.

2. There be certain nuts brought from the Indies, called purging nuts, of their quality in purging gross and filthy humours. For want of good instruction from those that have travelled the Indies, we can write nothing of the tree itself: the nut is somewhat long, oval, or in shape like an egg; of a brown colour: within the shell is contained a kernel, in taste sweet, and of a purging faculty.

The Place and Time.

These nuts do grow in the deserts of Arabia, and in some places of the East Indies: we have no certain knowledge of their springing, or time of maturity.

The Temperature.

Avicenna affirmeth the vomiting nut to be of a poisonous quality, cold in the fourth degree, having a stupefying nature, and bringeth deadly sleep.

The Virtues.

A. Of the physical virtues of the vomiting nuts we think it not necessary to write, because the danger is great, and not to be given inwardly, but mixed with other compositions, and that very curiously by the hands of a faithful apothecary.

B. The powder of the nut mixed with some flesh, and cast unto crows and other ravenous fowls, doth kill and so dull their senses at the least, that you may take them with your hands.

C. They make also an excellent salad, mixed with some meat or butter, and laid in the garden where cats use to scrape to bury their excrements, spoiling both the herbs and also seeds new sown.

CHAP. 159. Of Divers Sorts of Indian Fruits.

The Kinds.

These fruits are of divers sorts and kinds, whereof we have little knowledge, more than the fruits themselves, with the names of some of them: therefore it shall suffice to set forth unto your view the form only, leaving unto time, and those that shall succeed, to write of them at large, which in time may know that, that in this time of infancy is unknown.

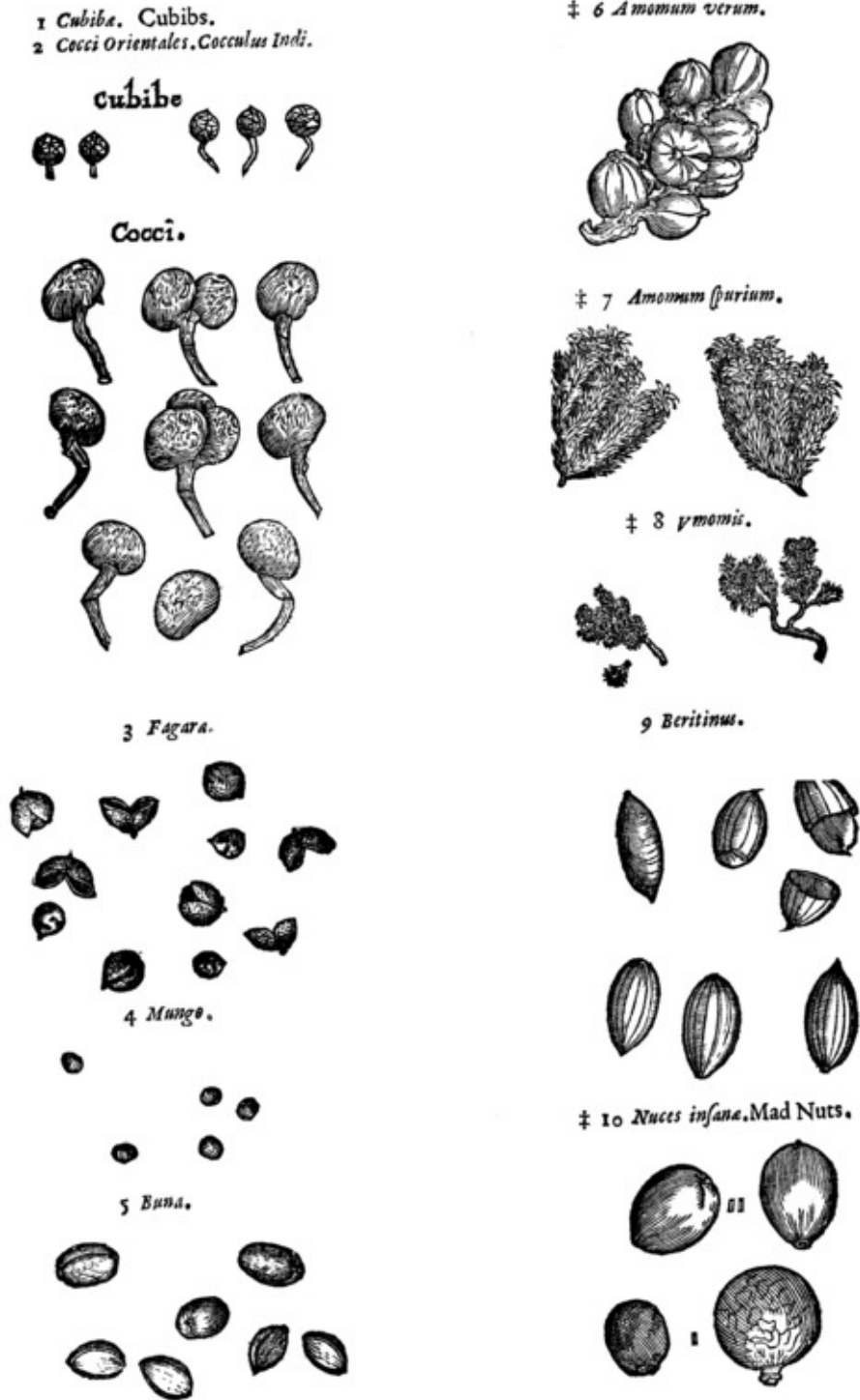


Fig. 2149. Kinds of Indian Fruit (1-10)

The Description.

1. The first and one of the best known of these fruits, are the *Cubibæ*, called of the Arabian physicians *Cubibe* and *Quabeb*; but of the vulgar *Quabebochini*: in Java where they plentifully grow, *Cumuc*: the other Indians, (the Malayans excepted) call them *Cubas sini*, not for that they grow in China, but because the Chinese use to buy them in Java and Sunda, and so carry them to the other ports of India. The plant which

carries this fruit hath leaves like those of pepper, but narrower, and it also winds about trees like as Ivy or Pepper doth: the fruit hangs in clusters, like as those we call Red Currants, and not close thrust together in bunches, as grapes: the fruit or berries are of the bigness of peppercorns, wrinkled, and of a brownish colour: they are of a hot and biting aromatic taste, and oft-times hollow within, but if they be not hollow, then have they a pretty reddish smooth round seed under their rough outer husk; each of these berries commonly hath a piece of his footstalk adhering to it. It is reported that the natives where it grows first gently boil or scald these berries before they sell them, that so none else may have them, by sowing the seeds. Some have thought these to have been the *Carpesium* of the ancients; and other some have judged them the seeds of *Agnus castus*, but both these opinions are erroneous.

A. These are hot and dry in the beginning of the third degree; wherefore they are good against the cold and moist affects of the stomach and flatulencies: they help to cleanse the breast of tough and thick humours; they are good for the spleen, for hoarseness and cold affects of the womb, chewed with Mastic, they draw much phlegmatic matter from the head, they heat and comfort the brain. The Indians use them macerated in wine to excite venery.

2. The plant which carries this fruit is unknown, but the berry is well known in shops by the name of *Cocculus Indicus*: some call them *Cocci Orientales*: others, *Cocculæ Orientales*: Some, as Cardus for one, think them the fruit of *Solanum furiosum*: others judge them the fruit of a *Tithymale*, or of a *Clematis*. These berries are of the bigness of Bay berries commonly round, and growing but one upon a stalk; yet sometimes they are a little cornered, and grow two or three clustering together: their outer coat or shell is hard, rough, and of a brownish dusky colour: their inner substance is very oily, of a bitter taste.

B. They are used with good success to kill lice in in children's heads, being made into powder and so strewed amongst the hair. They have also another faculty which author formerly set down in the chapter of Alaternus (where he confounded these with Fagaras) in these words, which I have there omitted, to insert here;

C. In England we use the fruit called *Cocculus Indi* in powder mixed with flour, honey, and crumbs of bread to catch fish with, it being a numbing, soporiferous, or sleeping medicine, causeth the fish to turn up their bellies, as being senseless for a time.

3. *Fagara* is a fruit of the bigness of a chickpea, covered with a thin coat of a blackish ash colour, under which outer coat is a slender shell containing a solid kernel, involved in a thin and black film. The whole fruit both in magnitude, form, and colour is so like the *Cocculus Indus* last described, that at the first sight one would take it to be the same. Avicenna mentions this in his 266th Chap. after this manner. What is *Fagara*? It is a fruit like a Chickpea, having the seed of *Mahaleb*, and in his hollowness is a black kernel as in *Schehedenegi*, and it is brought out of Sofale.

He places it amongst those that heat and dry in the third degree, and commends it against the coldness of the stomach and liver, it helps concoction, and binds the belly.

4. This which Clusius thinks to be *Mungo* (which is used in the East Indies about Gujerat and Deccan for provender for horses) is a small fruit of the bigness of pepper, crested, very like coriander seed, but that it is bigger and black, it is of a hot taste.

5. *Buna* is a fruit of the bigness of *Fagara*, or somewhat bigger or longer, of a blackish ash colour, covered with a thin skin, furrowed on both sides longwise, whereby it is easily divided into two parts, which contain each a kernel longish and flat upon one

side, of a yellowish colour, and acid taste. They say that in Alexandria they make a certain very cooling drink hereof. Rauwolfius in his journal seems to describe this fruit by the name of *Bumu*: and by the appellation, form, and faculties, he thinks it may be the *Buncho* of Avicenna, and *Buncha* of Rhasis, to Almansor. Clusius.

6. This is a kind of Cardamom: and by divers it is thought to be the true *Amomum* of the ancients, and to this purpose Nicholas Marogna, a physician of Verona hath written a treatise which is set forth at the later end of Pona's description of Mount Baldus, to which I refer the curious: these cods or berries (whether you please to call them) grow thick clustering together, they are round, and commonly of the bigness of a cherry: the outer skin is tough, smoother, whiter, and less crested than that of the cardamom: within this film lie the seeds clustering together, yet with a thin film parted into three, the particular seeds are cornered, somewhat smoother and larger than those of cardamoms, but of the same aromatic taste, and of a brown colour. Their temperature and faculties may be referred to those of cardamoms.

7, 8. This with the next ensuing are by Clusius set forth by the names I here give you them, though (as he saith) neither of them agree with the *Amomum* of Dioscorides, they were only branches set thick with leaves, having neither any observable smell or taste: they were sent to the learned and diligent apothecary Walarandus Donrez, of Lyons, from Ormuz the famous mart & port town in the Persian Bay.

9. Those that accompanied the renowned Sir Francis Drake in his voyage about the world, lit upon a certain desert island, wherein grew many very tall trees, and looking for something amongst these to refresh themselves, amongst others they observed some bigger than Oaks, having leaves like those of the Bay tree, thick and shining, not snipped about the edges; their fruit was longish like to the small acorns of the Ilex or Holm Oak, but without any cup; yet covered with a thin shell of an ash colour, and sometimes black, having within it a longish white kernel wrapped in a thin peeling, being without any manifest taste; they when they found it, though much oppressed with hunger, yet durst not taste thereof, lest it should have been poisonous: but afterwards coming to the island Beretina, not far from this, they found it to abound with these trees, and learned that their fruit was not poisonous, but might be eaten. Whereupon afterwards they in want of other victuals, boiled some as they do peas and ground others into flour, wherewith they made puddings. They found this tree also in the Moluccas.

10. The first expressed in this table is the Mad Plum, or as Clusius had rather term it the Mad Nut; for he calls them *Karya Manika*, or *Insanæ Nuces*. The Hollanders finding them in their return from the East Indies, and eating the kernels, were for a time distracted, and that variously, according to the particular temperature of each that ate of them; as you may see in Clusius *Exot. lib. 2. Cap. 26*. This was round, little more than two inches about, with a shell not thick, but sufficiently strong, brownish on the outside, and not smooth, but on the inside of a yellowish colour and smooth, containing a membranous stone or kernel covered with a black pulp, in form and bigness not much unlike a bullace or sloe, having a large white spot on the lower part whereas it was fastened to the stalk: under the pulp lay the kernel, somewhat hard, and of an ash colour: the footstalk was short and commonly carried but one fruit, yet sometimes they observed two growing together: the tree whereon this fruit grew was of the bigness of a Cherry tree, having long and narrow leaves like those of the Peach tree: the other fruit figured in the 2nd place was of a brownish yellow colour, somewhat bigger, but not unlike a small nut, and inch long, and somewhat more about, smaller below, and bigger

above, and as it were parted into four, being very hard and solid. Of this see more in the fourteenth place.

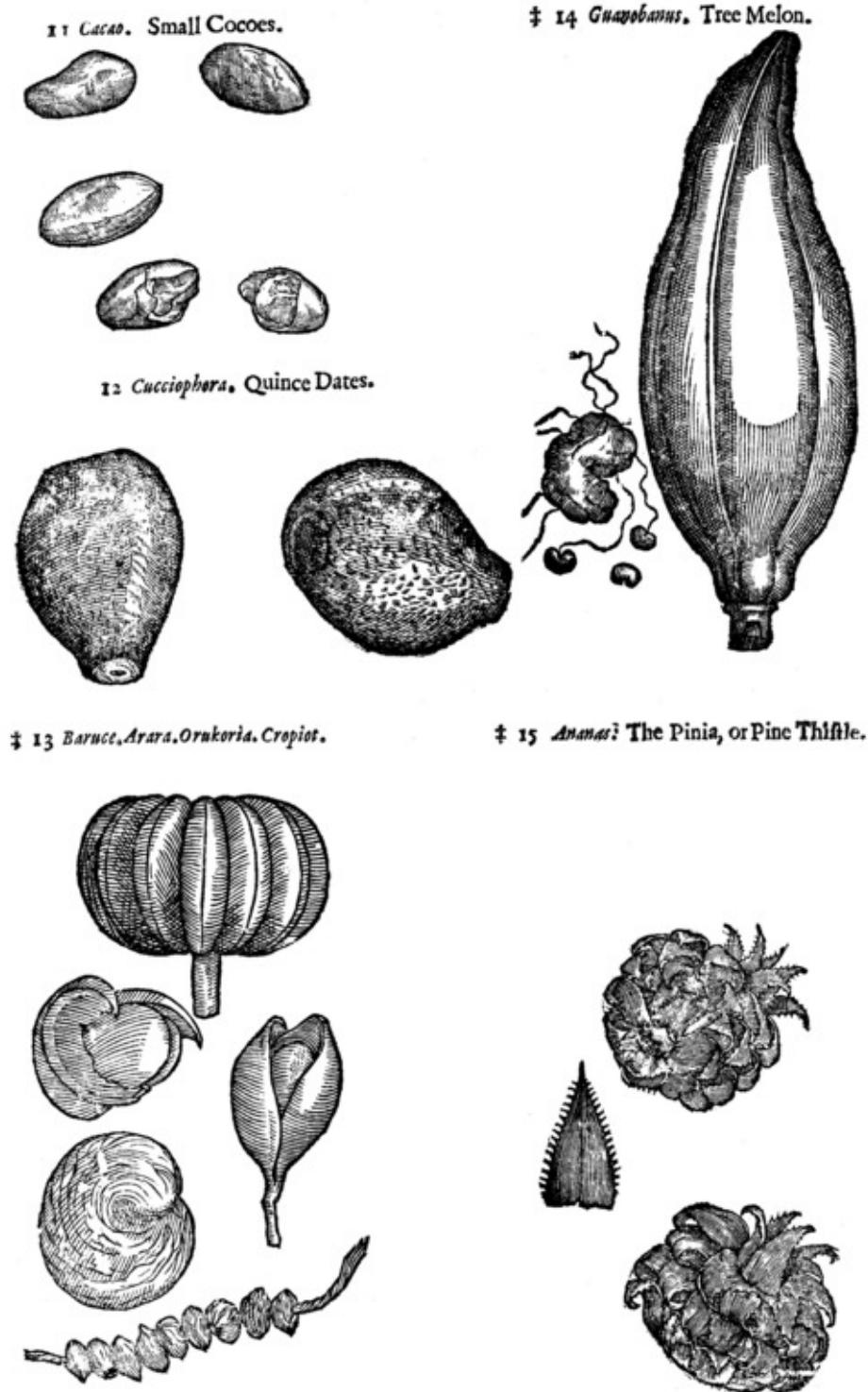


Fig. 2150. Kinds of Indian Fruit (11-15)

11. The *Cacao* is a fruit well known in divers parts of America; for they in some places use it instead of money, and to make a drink, of which, though bitter, they highly esteem: the trees which bear them are but small, having long and narrow leaves, and will only grow well in places shadowed from the sun. The fruit is like an almond taken

out of his husk, and it is covered with a thin black skin wherein is contained a kernel obliquely divided into two or three parts, brownish, and distinguished with ash-coloured veins, of an astringent and ungrateful taste.

12. This which Clusius had from Cortulus, for the fruit of *Bdellium*, is thought to be the *Cuci* of Pliny, and is the *Cuciophera* of Matthiolus. The whole fruit is of the largeness of a quince, and of the same colour, with a sweet and fibrous flesh, under which is a nut of the bigness of a large Walnut or somewhat more, almost of a triangular form, bigger below, and smaller above, well smelling, of a dark ash colour, with a very hard shell, which broken there is therein contained a hard kernel of the colour and hardness of marble, having a hollowness in the middle, as much as may contain a hazelnut.

13. In this table are four several fruits described by Clusius *Exot. lib. 2. cap. 21*. The first is called *Baruce*, and is said to grow upon a high tree in Guyana called *Hura*: it consisted of many nuts of some inch long, strongly fastened or knit together, each having a hard woody shell, falling into two parts, containing a round and smooth kernel covered with an ash-coloured film.

C. They say the names there use this fruit to purge and vomit.

The second called *Arara* grows in Guyana, but how, it is not known: it was some inch long, covered with a skin sufficiently hard and black, fastened to a long and rugged stalk that seemed to have carried more than one fruit: the kernel is black, and of the bigness of a wild Olive.

D. The natives use the decoction hereof to wash malign ulcers, and they say the kernel will loose the belly.

The third named *Orukoria* is the fruit of a tree in Wiapock, called *Iuruwa*, they use this to cure their wounds, dropping the juice of the fruit into them. This fruit is flat, almost an inch broad, and two long, but writhen like the cod of the true *Cytisus*, but much bigger, very wrinkled, of an ash colour, containing a smooth seed.

The fourth called *Cropiot* is a small and shrivelled fruit, not much unlike the particular joints of the Ethiopian pepper.

E. The savages use to take it mixed amongst their tobacco to assuage headache: there were divers of them put upon a string (as you may see in the figure) the better to dry them.

14. This which by Clusius & Lobel is thought to be the *Guanabanus* mentioned by Scaliger *Exerc. 281. Part. 6*, is a thick fruit some foot and half long, covered with a thick and hard rind, friezed over with a soft downiness, like as a Quince is, but of a greenish colour, with some veins, or rather furrows running along st it, as in melons: the lower end is somewhat sharp: at the upper end it is fastened to the boughs, with a firm, hard, and fibrous stalk: this fruit contains a whitish pulp, which the Ethiopians use in burning fevers to quench the thirst, for it hath a pleasant tartness: this dried becomes friable, so that it may be brought into powder with one's fingers, yet retaineth its acidity: in this pulp lie seeds like little kidneys, or the seeds of the true *Anagyris*, of a black shining colour, with some fibres coming out of their middles: these sown brought forth a plant having leaves like the Bay tree, but it died at the approach of winter. Clusius.

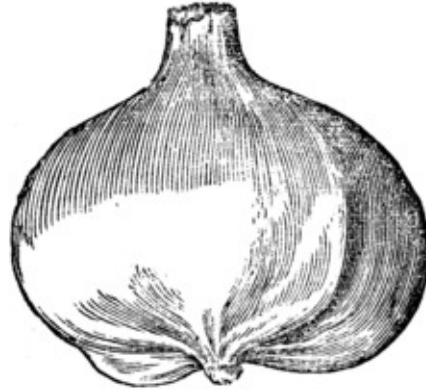
15. *Ananas pinias*, or Pine Thistle, is a plant having leaves like the *Aizoon aquaticum*, or Water Sengreen, somewhat sharp and prickly about the edges: the stalk is round, carrying at the top thereof one fruit of a yellowish colour when it is ripe, of

the bigness of a melon, covered with a scale-like rind: the smell is grateful, somewhat like that of the Melocoton: at the top of the fruit, and sometimes below it, come forth such buds as you see here presented in the figure, which they set in the ground and preserve the kind by instead of seed: the meat of this fruit is sweet & very pleasant of taste, & yields good nourishment; there are certain small fibres in the meat thereof, which though they do not offend the mouth, yet hurt they the gums of such as too frequently feed thereon.

‡ 16 *Faba Aegyptia affinis.*

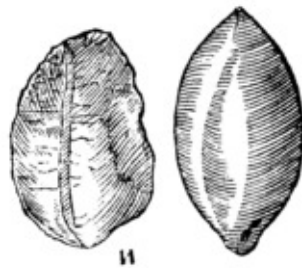


‡ 19 *Fructus tetragonus.* The square Coco.



‡ 17 *Cocco Cypote. Amygdala Peruana.* Almonds of Peru.

‡ 20 *Arboris lanifera filiqua.* A cod of the wooll-bearing tree.



‡ 18 *Buenos Noches.*

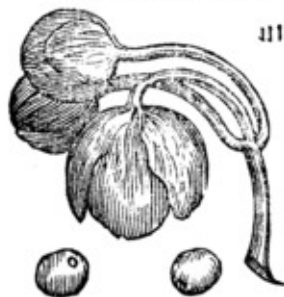


Fig. 2151. Kinds of Indian fruit (16-20)

16. The form of this is somewhat strange, for it is like a large Poppy head cut off nigh the top: the substance thereof was membranous and wrinkled, of a brownish colour, very smooth: the circumference at the top is about nine inches, and so it grows smaller and smaller even to the stalk, which seems to have carried a flower whereto this fruit succeeded: the top of the fruit was even, and in it were orderly placed 24 cavities, in each whereof was contained a little nut like an acorn, almost an inch long, and as much thick; the upper part was of a brownish colour, & the kernel within was rank and

all mouldy. Clusius could learn neither whence this came, nor how it grew, but with a great deal of probability thinks it may be that which the ancients described by the name of *Faba ægyptia*.

17. The former of these two Clusius received by the name of *Coxco Cypote*, that is the nut Cypote: It is of a dusky brown colour, smooth, and shining, but on the lower part of an ash colour, rough, which the painter did not well express in drawing the figure. The 2nd he received by the name of *Almendras del Peru*, (i.e) Almonds of Peru: the shell was like in colour and substance to that of an almond, and the kernel not unlike neither in substance nor taste: yet the form of the shell was different, for it was triangular, with a back standing up, and two sharp sides, and these very rough.

18. This was the fruit of a large kind of *Convolvulus* which the Spaniards called *Buenas noches*, or Goodnight, because the flowers use to fade as soon as night came. The seeds were of a sooty colour as big as large pea, being three of them contained in a skinny three-cornered head. You may see more hereof in Clusius, *Exot. lib. 2. cap. 18*.

19. This is the figure of a square fruit which Clusius conjectures to have been some kind of Indian Nut or Coco: it was covered with a smooth rind, was seven inches long, and a foot and half about, being four inches and a half from square to square.

20. About Bantam in the East Indies grows a tall tree sending forth many branches, which are set thick with leaves long and narrow, bigger than those of Rosemary: it carries cods six inches long, and five about, covered with a thin skin, wrinkled and sharp pointed, which open themselves from below into five parts, and are full of a soft woolly or Cottony matter, wherewith they stuff cushions, pillows and the like, and also spin some for certain uses: amongst the down lie black seeds like those of Cotton, but less, and not fastened to the down.

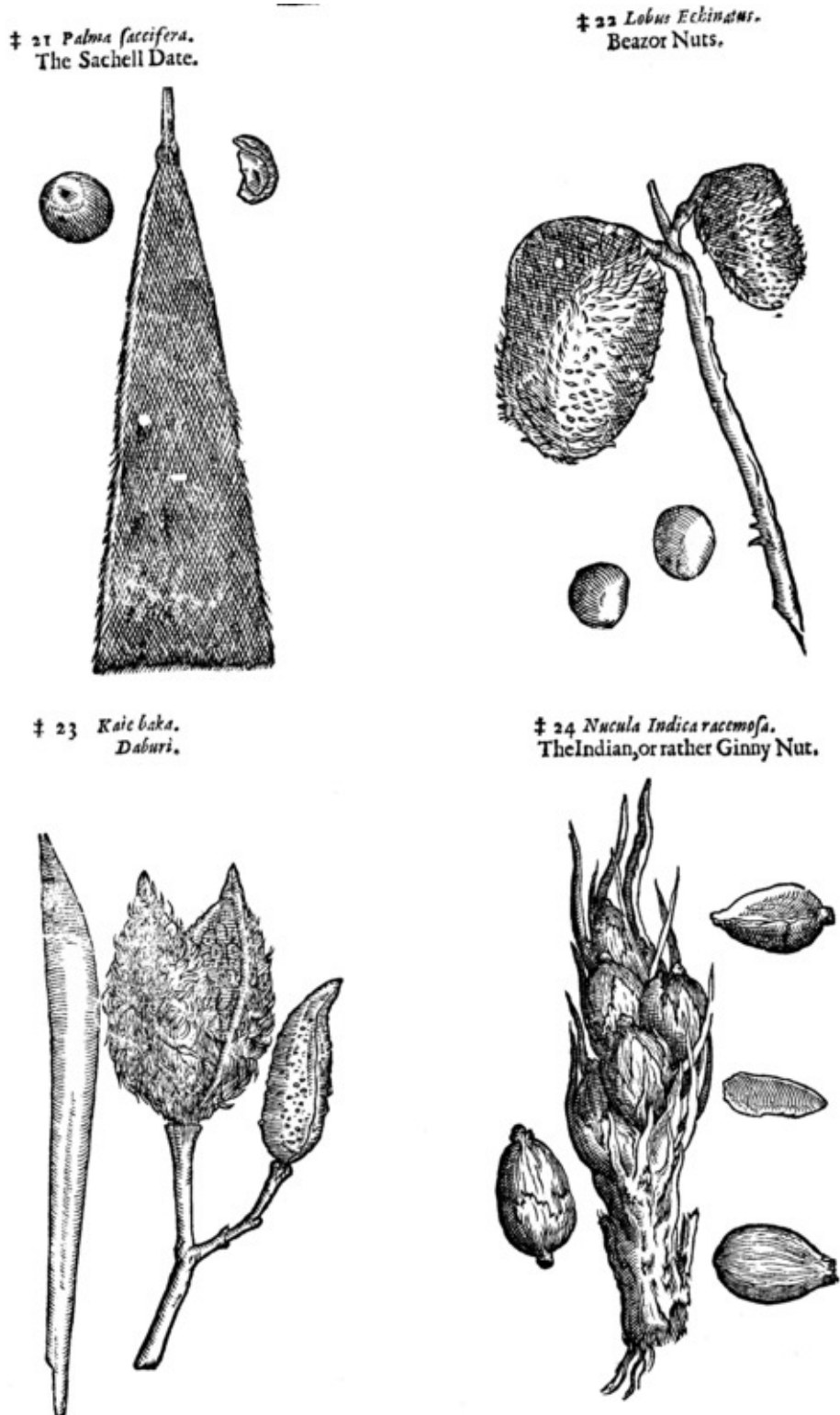


Fig. 2152. Kinds of Indian Fruit (21-24)

21. This which Clusius calls *Palma saccifera*, or the Bag Date, because it carries the figure of an Hippocras bag, was found in a desert island in the Atlantic ocean, by certain Dutch mariners who observed whole woods thereof: these bags were some of them 22 or more inches long, and some seven inches broad in the broadest place, strongly wove with threads crossing one another of a brownish yellow colour. These satchels (as they report who cut them from the tree) were filled with fruit of the bigness

of a walnut husk and all: within these were others, as round as if they had been turned and so hard that you could scarce break them with a hammer: in the midst of these were white kernels, tasting at the first somewhat like pulse, but afterwards bitter like a Lupine.

22. The tree which carries this rough cod is very large, as I have been told by divers: some who saw it in Persia, & others that observed it in Mauritius Island. Clusius also notes that they have been brought from divers places: the cod is some three inches long, and some two inches broad, of a dusky red colour, and all rough and prickly: in these cods are contained one, two or more round nuts or seeds of a grayish ash colour, having a little spot on one side, where they are fastened to the cod they are exceeding hard, and difficult to break, but broken they show a white kernel very bitter and unpleasant of taste. I have seen very many and have some of these, and some have offered to sell them for East Indian *Beazor*, whereto they have some small resemblance, though nothing in faculty like them (if I may credit report, which I had rather do than make trial) for I have been told by some that they are poisonous; and by others, that they strongly procure vomit.

23. The long cod expressed in this figure is called in the East Indies (as Clusius was told) *Kaye baka*, it was round, the thickness of one's little finger, and six inches long: the rind was thick, black, hard and wrinkled, and it contained a hard pulp of a sourish taste, which they affirm was eatable.

The other was a cod of some inch and half long, and some inch broad, membranous, rough, and of a brownish colour, sharp pointed, and opening into two parts, and distinguished with a thin film into four cells, wherein were contained scarlet pear-fashioned little berries, having golden spots especially in the midles. This grows in Brazil, and as Clusius was informed was called *Daburi*.

24. In the second place of the tenth figure and description in this chapter you may find the single nut here figured, described, & set forth; but this figure better expresses the manner of growing thereof: for first it presents to the view the nuts in their outer husks growing close together, then the single nuts in and out of their husks, and lastly their kernel: the shell of this nut contains in it a certain oily substance, somewhat resembling the oil of Sweet almonds: the tree whereof this nut is the fruit grows in Guinea, and is much used by the people there, for they press a liquor forth of the leaves, or else boil them in water, & this serves them instead of wine & beer, or at least for a common drink; of the fruit they make bread of a very sweet and pleasant taste.

‡ 25 *Fruſus ſquamoſi.*
Scaly fruits.

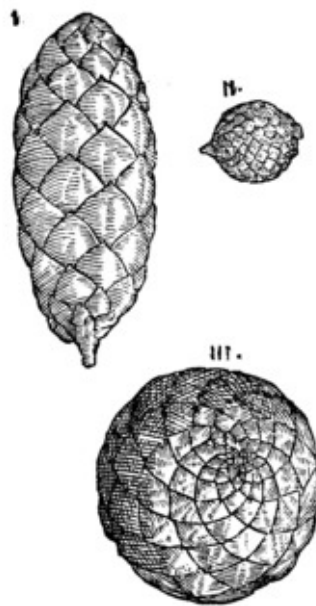


Fig. 2153. Scaly Fruits (25)

25. These scaly fruits are set forth by Clusius, *Exot. l. 2, c. 3*. The first was three inches long and two inches about, and had in it a longish hard solid kernel, with many veins dispersed over it, and such kernels are sometimes polished, whereby they become white, and then their black veins make a fine show, which hath given occasion to some impostors to put them to sale for rare and precious stones.

The second was small, round and scaly, and the scales turned their points downwards towards the stalk.

The third was also scaly, of the bigness of a walnut in his husk, with the scales very orderly placed, and of a brownish colour: it had a kernel which rattled in it when it was shaken.



Fig. 2154. Other Strange Fruits (26a)

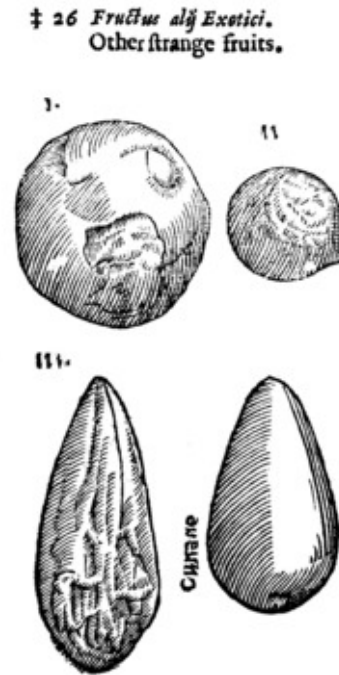


Fig. 2155. Other Strange Fruits (26b)

26a. The first of the two in the former table was brought from Guinea, it was of the bigness and shape of a plum, two inches long, and one and half broad, of a thick fungous substance, somewhat wrinkled, and blackish on the outside, and within containing a certain whitish insipid friable pulp, wherein lay a few small seeds.

The second was some inch and half long, an inch thick, covered with an ash-coloured skins composed within of many fibres almost like the husk of the nut Faufell, at the lower end it stood in a double cup, and it was sharp pointed at the upper end: in this skin was contained a kernel, or rather nut, black, hard, and very wrinkled, not much unlike to that of Faufell, whereto I refer it as a kind thereof. These two are treated of by Clusius, *Exot. lib. 2. c. 23.*

26b. The first of the second table (wherein are contained four figures) was of a round form, yet a little flat on one side, distinguished under the black and shining coat wherewith it was covered, with furrows running every way, not unlike to the nut Faufell taken forth of his cover: the inner pulp was hard and whitish, first of a salt, and then of an astringent taste.

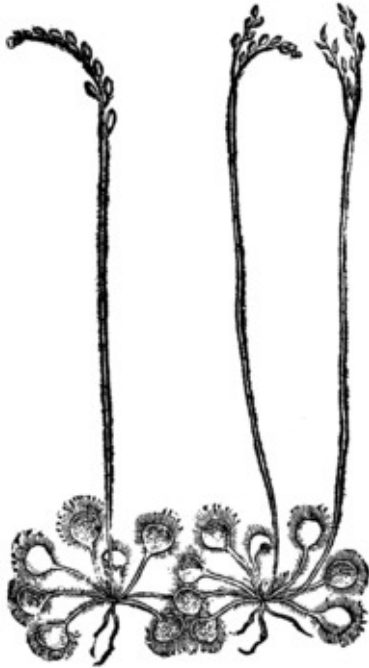
The second of these was an inch long, but rather the kernel of a fruit, than a fruit itself; it was round except at the one end, and all over knobby (though the picture express not so much) there was also some show of a triangular form at each end.

The third was two inches and a half long, and in the broadest part some inch and more broad: it was somewhat crooked, the back high and rising, the top narrow, and the lower part sharp pointed, of an ash colour, with thick and eminent nerves running amongst the back from the top to the lower part, expressed with such art, as if they had been done by some curious hand: it seemed to have been covered over with another rind; but it was worn off by the beating of the waves of the sea upon the shore.

The fruit *Cunane* figured in the fourth place of this table, was two inches long, and an inch broad at the head, and so smaller by little & little, with a back standing out, smooth, black, and shining, having three holes at the top, one above, & two below: they said it grew upon a small tree called *Morremor*, and was yet unripe, but when it was ripe it would be as big again, and that the natives where it grew (which was as I take it about Wiapock) roast it upon the coals, and eat it against the headache. Clusius sets forth these four in his *Exot. l. 2. c. 22*, he describes *Cunane cap. 11*.

CHAP. 160. Of Sundew, Youthwort, or Ros Solis.

1 *Ros Solis folio rotundo.*
Sun-Dew with round leaues.



2 *Ros Solis folio oblongo.*
Sun-Dew with longish leaues.



Fig. 2156. Round-Leaved Sundew (1)

Fig. 2157. Long-Leaved Sundew (2)

The Description.

1. Sundew is a little herb, and groweth very low, it hath a few leaves standing upon slender stems, very small, something round, a little hollow, and like an ear picker, hairy and reddish as be also the stems, having dew and moisture upon them at the driest time of the year, and when the sun shineth hottest even at high noon; and a month after there spring up little stalks, a hand-breadth high, on which stand small whitish flowers: the roots are very slender, and like unto hairs.

2. The second kind is like unto the former, in stalks and flowers, but larger, and the leaves are longer, and not so round, wherein consisteth the difference.

The Place.

They grow in desert, sandy and sunny places, but yet watery, and seldom other-where than among the white marsh moss which groweth on the ground and also upon bogs.

The Time.

Sundew flourisheth in summer, it flowereth in May or June: it is to be gathered when the weather is most dry and calm. The distilled water hereof that is drawn forth with a glass still, is of a glittering yellow colour like gold, and coloureth silver put therein like gold.

The Names.

It is called in Latin, *Ros solis*: of divers, *Rosella*: it is named of others, *Salsi rosa*, of the dew which hangeth upon it, when the sun is at the hottest: it is called in High Dutch, **Sondaw**, and **Suidaw**, in Low Dutch, **Loopichecruit**, which in English signifieth Lustwort, because sheep and other cattle, if they do but only taste of it, are provoked to lust. It is called in English, Sundew, Ros Solis, Youth-wort: in the Northern parts, Red Rot, because it rotteth sheep; and in Yorkshire, Moor Grass.

The Temperature.

It is a searing or caustic herb, and very much biting, being hot and dry in the fourth degree.

The Virtues.

A. The leaves being stamped with salt do exulcerate and raise blisters, to what part of the body soever they be applied.

B. The later physicians have thought this herb to be a rare and singular remedy for all those that be in a consumption of the lungs, and especially the distilled water thereof: for as the herb doth keep and hold fast the moisture and dew, and so fast, that the extreme drying heat of the sun cannot consume and waste away the same: so likewise men thought that herewith the natural and radical humidity in men's bodies is preserved and cherished. But the use thereof doth otherwise teach, and reason showeth the contrary: for seeing it is an extreme biting herb, and that the distilled water is not altogether without this biting quality, it cannot be taken with safety: for it hath also been observed, that they have sooner perished that used the distilled water hereof, than those that abstained from it, and have followed the right and ordinary course of diet.

C. Cattle of the female kind are stirred up to lust by eating even of a small quantity: which thing hath greatly increased their vain opinion, without sense or reason; for it doth not move nor provoke cattle to lust, for that it increaseth the substance of the seed, but because through his sharp and biting quality it stirreth up a desire to lust, which before was dulled, and as it were asleep.

D. It strengtheneth and nourisheth the body, especially if it be distilled with wine, and that liquor made thereof which the common people do call Rosa Solis.

E. If any be desirous to have the said drink effectual for the purposes aforesaid, let them lay the leaves of Rosa Solis in the spirit of wine, aiding thereto cinnamon, cloves, mace, ginger, nutmegs, sugar, and a few grains of musk suffering it so to stand in a glass close stopped from the air, and set in the sun by the space of ten days, then strain the same, and keep it for your use.

CHAP. 161. Of Moss of trees.

Musci quercus.
The Mofle of the Oke & of other trees.



Fig. 2158. Tree Moss

The Description.

Tree Moss hath certain things like hairs, made up as it were of a multitude of slender leaves, now and then all to be jagged, hacked, and finely carved, twisted and interlaced one in another, which cleave fast to the barks of trees, hanging down from the bodies: one of this kind is more slender and thin, another more thick, another shorter, another longer; all of them for the most being of a whitish colour, yet oftentimes there is a certain one also which is black, but lesser and thinner: the most commendable of them all, as Pliny saith, be those that are whitish, then the reddish, and lastly such as be black.

The Place.

This Moss is found on the Oak tree, the White and Black Poplar tree, the Olive tree, the Birch tree, the Apple tree, the Pear tree, the Pine tree, the wild Pine tree, the Pitch Tree, the Fir tree, the Cedar tree, the Larch tree, & on a great sort of other trees, The best, as Dioscorides saith, is that of the Cedar tree, the next of the Poplar, in which kind the white and the sweet smelling Moss is the chiefest; the blackish sort is of no account. Matthiolus writeth, that in Italy that Moss is sweet which groweth on the Pine tree, the Pitch Tree, the Fir tree, & the Larch tree, and the sweetest that of the Larch tree.

The Time.

Moss upon the trees continueth all the year long.

The Names.

It is called of the Grecians, *Bryon*: of the Latins, *Muscus*: the Arabians and some apothecaries in other countries call it *Usnea*: in High Dutch, *flös*: in Low Dutch, *flösch*: the Frenchmen, *Lu Mousch*: the Italians, *Musgo*: in Spanish, *Musco de los arbores*: in English, Moss, Tree Moss, or Moss of trees.

The Temperature.

Moss is somewhat cold and binding, which notwithstanding is more and less according unto the nature and faculty of that tree on which it groweth, and especially of his bark: for it taketh unto itself and also retaineth a certain property of that bark, as of his breeder of which he is engendered: therefore the Moss which cometh of the Oak doth cool and very much bind, besides his own and proper faculty, it receiveth also the extreme binding quality of the Oak bark itself.

The Moss which cometh of the Cedar tree, the Pine tree, the Pitch Tree, the Fir tree, the Larch tree, and generally all the Resin trees are binding and do moreover digest and soften.

The Virtues.

A. Serapio saith, that the wine in which Moss hath been steeped certain days, bringeth sound sleep, strengtheneth the stomach, stayeth vomiting, and stoppeth the belly.

B. Dioscorides writeth, that the decoction of Moss is good for women to sit in, that are troubled with the whites; it is mixed with the oil of Ben, and with oils to thicken them withal.

C. It is fit to be used in compositions which serve for sweet perfumes, and that take away wearisomeness; for which things that is best of all which is most sweet of smell.

CHAP. 162. Of Ground Moss.

The Kinds.

There groweth also on the superficial or uppermost part of the earth divers Mosses, as also upon rocks and stony places, and marsh grounds, differing in form not a little.

1 *Muscus terrestris vulgaris.*
Common ground Moss.



Fig. 2159. Common Ground Moss (1)

The Description.

1. The common Moss groweth upon the earth, and the bottom of old and ancient trees, but specially upon such as grow in shadowy woods, and also at the bottom of shadowy hedges and ditches, and such like places: it is very well known by the softness and length thereof, being a moss most common, and therefore needeth not any further description.

2 *Muscus terrestris scoparium.*
Beehive ground Moss.



3. 4. *Muscus capillaris, sine Adiantum*
aureum maius & minus.
Goldilocks or golden Maiden-haire
the bigger and lesse.



Fig. 2160. Besom Ground Moss (2)

Fig. 2161. Greater and Lesser Golden Moss
(3, 4)

2. Besom Moss, which seldom or never is found but in bogs and marsh places, yet sometimes have I found it in shadowy dry ditches, where the sun never showeth his face: it groweth up half a cubit high, every particular leaf consisting of an innumerable sort of hairy threads set upon a middle rib, of a shining black colour like that of Maidenhair, or the Capillare Moss *Dianthum aureum*, whereof it is a kind.

3. This kind of Moss, called *Muscus capillaris*, is seldom found but upon bogs and moorish places, and also in some shadowy dry ditches where the sun doth not come. I found it in great abundance in a shadowy ditch upon the left hand near unto a gate that leadeth from Hampstead Heath toward Highgate; which place I have showed unto divers expert surgeons of London, in our wandering abroad for our farther knowledge in simples. This kind of Moss, the stalks thereof are not above one handful high, covered with short hairs standing very thick together, of an obscure yellow green colour; out of which stalks spring up sometimes very fine naked stems, somewhat black, upon the tops of which hang as it were little grains like wheat corns. The roots are very slender and marvellous fine.

Of this *Adiantum aureum* there are three kinds, different only in magnitude, and that the two bigger have many hairy threads upon their branches, whenas the least hath only three or four close to the root; and this is the least of plants that I ever yet saw grow.

4. Of this there is also another kind altogether lesser and lower. This kind of moss groweth in moist places also, commonly in old mossy and rotten trees, likewise upon rocks, and oftentimes in the chinks and crannies of stone walls.

5 *Muscus ramosus floridus.*
Flouring branched Moss.



Fig. 2162. Flowering Branched Moss (5)

5. There is oftentimes found upon old Oaks and Beeches, and such like overgrown trees, a kind of Moss having many slender branches, which divide themselves into other lesser branches; whereon are placed confusedly very many small threads like hairs, of a greenish ash colour: upon the ends of the tender branches

sometimes there cometh forth a flower in shape like unto a little buckler or hollow Mushroom, of a whitish colour tending to yellowness, and garnished with the like leaves of those upon the lower branches.

6 *Muscus Pyxidatus.*
Cup or Chalice Mosse.



Fig. 2163. Cup or Chalice Moss (6)

6. Of this Moss there is another kind, which Lobel in his *Dutch Herbal* hath set forth under the title of *Muscus Pyxidatus*, which I have Englished, Cup Moss or Chalice Moss: it groweth in the most barren dry and gravelly ditch banks, creeping flat upon the ground like unto Liverwort, but of a yellowish white colour: among which leaves start up here and there certain little things fashioned like a little cup called a beaker or chalice, and of the same colour and substance of the lower leaves, which undoubtedly may be taken for the flowers: the powder of which Moss given to children in any Liquor for certain days together, is a most certain remedy against that perilous malady called the chincough.

7 *Muscus Filicinns.*
Mosse Ferne.

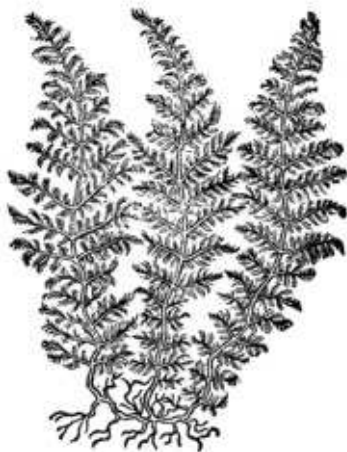


Fig. 2164. Moss Fern (7)

8 *Muscus corniculatus.*
Horned or knagged Mosse.



Fig. 2165. Horned Moss (8)

7. There is likewise found in the shadowy places of high mountains, and at the foot of old and rotten trees, a certain kind of Moss in face and show not unlike to that

kind of Oak fern called *Dryopteris*. It creepeth upon the ground, having divers long branches, consisting of many small leaves, every particular leaf made up of sundry little leaves, set upon a middle rib one opposite to another.

8. There is found upon the tops of our most barren mountains, but especially where sea coals are accustomed to be digged, stone to make iron of, and also where ore is gotten for tin and lead, a certain small plant: it riseth forth of the ground with many bare and naked branches, dividing themselves at the top into sundry knags like the forked horns of a deer, every part whereof is of an overworn whitish colour.

Tragus, Lonicerus, and Bauhin refer this to the Ferns; and the last of them calleth it *Filix saxatilis corniculata*: Pena and Lobel made it their *Holostium alterum*: Thalius calls it *Adiantum acroschiston, seu furcatum*.

9 *Muscus denticulatus.*
Toothed Moss.



Fig. 2166. Toothed Moss (9)

9. There is found creeping upon the ground a certain kind of Moss at the bottom of Heath and Ling, and such like bushes growing upon barren mountains; consisting as it were of scales made up into a long rope or cord, dispersing itself far abroad into sundry branches, thrusting out here and there certain roots like threads, which take hold upon the upper crust of the earth, whereby it is sent and dispersed far abroad: the whole plant is of a yellowish green colour.

10 *Muscus minor denticulatus.*
Little toothed Moss.



Fig. 2167. Little Toothed Moss (10)

10. This other kind of moss is found in the like places: it also disperseth itself far abroad, and is altogether lesser than the precedent, wherein consists the difference.

11 *Muscus clavatus, sine Lycopodium.*
Club Mofse, or Wolfe claw Mofse.



Fig. 2168. Club Moss (11)

† 12 *Muscus clavatus folijs Cypressi.*
Heath Cypres.



Fig. 2169. Heath Cypress (12)

11. There is likewise another kind of Moss, which I have not elsewhere found than upon Hampstead Heath, near unto a little cottage, growing close upon the ground amongst bushes and brakes, which I have showed unto divers surgeons of London, that have walked thither with me for their further knowledge in simples, who have gathered this kind of Moss, whereof some have made them hatbands, girdles, and also bands to tie such things as they had before gathered, for the which purpose it most fitly served; some pieces whereof are six or eight foot long, consisting as it were of many hairy leaves set upon a tough string, very close couched and compact together, from which is also sent forth certain other branches like the first: in sundry places there be sent down fine little strings, which serve instead of roots, wherewith it is fastened to the upper part of the earth, and taketh hold likewise upon such things as grow next unto it. There spring also from the branches bare and naked stalks, on which grow certain ears as it were like the catkins or blowings of the Hazel tree, in shape like a little club or the Reed Mace, saving that it is much lesser, and of a yellowish white colour, very well resembling the claw of a wolf, whereof it took his name; which knobby catkins are altogether barren, and bring forth neither seed nor flower.

12. This is a kind of *Muscus clavatus*, or Club-Moss. It is thought to be the *Selago* mentioned by Pliny, *lib. 25. cap. 11.* Tragus and some others call it *Savina sylvestris*: Turner and Tabernamontanus, *Chamæcyparissus*: but Bauhin the most fitly nameth it *Muscus clavatus folijs cypressi*: and Turner not unfitly in English, Heath Cypress. This is a low plant, and keeps green winter and summer: the leaves are like those of Cypress, bitter in taste, without smell: it carries such ears or catkins as the former, and those of a yellowish colour: it is found growing in divers woody mountainous places of Germany, where they call it **Wald Sevenbaum**, or wild Savin.

† 12 *Muscus clauatus folijs Cypressi.*
Heath Cypres.



Fig. 2170. Skull Moss (13)

13. This kind of Moss is found upon the skulls or bare scalps of men and women, lying long in charnel houses or other places, where the bones of men and women are kept together: it groweth very thick, white, like unto the short moss upon the trunks of trees: it is thought to be a singular remedy against the falling evil and the chincough in children, if it be powdered, and then given in sweet wine for certain days together.

13 *Muscus ex cranio humano.*
Mosse growing vpon the skull of a man.

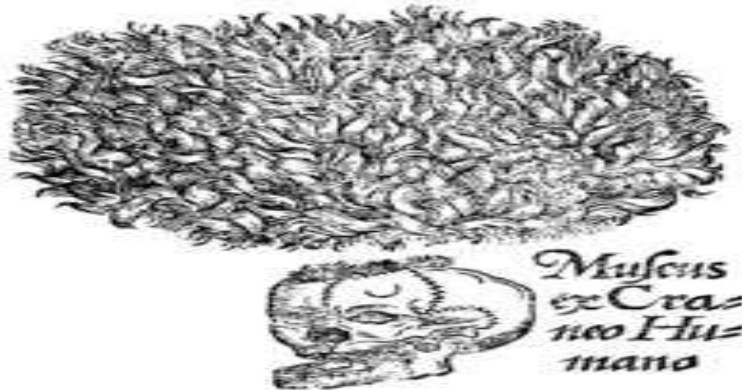


Fig. 2171. Small Heath Moss (14)

14. Upon divers heathy places in the month of May is to be found growing a little short Moss not much in shape different from the first described, but much less, and parted at the top into star-fashioned heads. Lobel calls this, *Muscus in ericetis proveniens*.

The Place.

Their several descriptions set forth their natural places of growing.

The Time.

They flourish especially in the summer months.

The Names.

Goldilocks is called in High Dutch, *Widertodt*, golden *Wedertodt*, *Jung Vrautwen Har*: in Low Dutch, *Gulden Wederdoot*: Fuchsius nameth it *Polytrichon apuleii*, or Apuleius his Maidenhair: nevertheless. Apuleius' Maidenhair is nothing else

but Dioscorides his *Trichomanes*, called English Maidenhair; and for that cause we had rather it should be renamed *Muscus capillaris*, or hairy Moss. This is called in English, Goldilocks: it might also be termed Golden Moss, or Hairy Moss.

Wolf's Claw is called of divers herbarists in our age, *Muscus terrestris*: in High Dutch, *Beerlay*, *Surtekraut*, *Seilkraut*: in Low Dutch, *Wolfs clautwen*: whereupon we first named it *Lycopodium*, and *Pes Lupus*: in English, Wolf's Foot, or Wolf's Claw, and likewise Club-Moss. Most shops of Germany in former times did falsly term it *Spica celtica*: but they did worse, and were very much too blame, that used it in compound medicines instead of *Spica celtica*, or French Spiknard: as touching the rest, they are sufficiently spoken of in their descriptions.

The Temperature.

The Mosses of the earth are dry and astringent, of a binding quality, without any heat or cold.

Goldilocks and the Wolf's Claws are temperate in heat and cold.

The Virtues.

A. The Arabian physicians do put Moss amongst their cordial medicines, as fortifying the stomach, to stay vomit, and to stop the lask.

B. Moss boiled in wine and drunk stoppeth the spitting of blood, pissing of blood, the terms, and bloody flux.

C. Moss made into powder is good to stanch the bleeding of green and fresh wounds, and is a great help unto the cure of the same.

D. Wolf's Claw provoketh urine, and as Hieronymus Tragus reporteth, wasteth the stone, and driveth it forth.

E. Being stamped and boiled in wine and applied, it mitigateth the pain of the gout.

F. Floating wine, which is now become slimy, is restored to his former goodness if it be hanged in the vessel, as the same author testifieth.

CHAP. 163. Of Liverwort.

1 *Hepatica terrestris*.
Ground Liuer-wort.



Fig. 2172. Ground Liverwort (1)

2 *Hepatica stellata & umbellata*.
Small Liuer-wort with starry and round heads.



Fig. 2173. Two kinds of Small Liverwort
(2)

The Description.

1. Liverwort is also a kind of Moss which spreadeth itself abroad upon the ground, having many uneven or crumpled leaves lying one over another, as the scales of fishes do, green above, and brown underneath: amongst these grow up small short stalks, spread at the top like a blazing star, and certain fine little threads are sent down, by which it cleaveth and sticketh fast upon stones, and upon the ground, by which it liveth and flourisheth.

2. The second kind of Liverwort differeth not but in stature, being altogether less, and more smooth or even: the flowers on the tops of the slender stems are not so much laid open like a star; but the especial difference consisteth in one chief point, that is to say, this kind being planted in a pot, and set in a garden above the ground, notwithstanding it spitteth or casteth round about the place great store of the same fruit, where never any did grow before.

Of of this sort which is small, and oftentimes found growing in moist gardens among Bear's-ears, and such plants, when they are kept in pots, there are two varieties, one having little stalks some inch long, with a star-fashioned head at the top: the other hath the like tender stalk, and a round head at the top thereof.



Fig. 2173. Stone Liverwort (3)

3. This is found upon rocks and stony places, as well near unto the sea, as further into the land: it groweth flat upon the stones, and creepeth not far abroad as the ground Liverwort doth, it only resteth itself in spots and tufts set here and there, of a dusty russet colour above, and blackish underneath: among the crumpled leaves rise up divers small stems, whereupon do grow little star-like flowers of the colour of the leaves: it is often found at the bottom of high trees growing upon high mountains, especially in shadowy places.

The Place.

This is often found in shadowy and moist places, on rocks and great stones laid by the highway, and in other common paths where the sunbeams do seldom come, and where no traveller frequenteth.

The Time.

It brings forth his blasing stars and leaves oftentimes in June and July.

The Names.

It is called of the Greeks and Latins, *Lichen*: and of some, *Brion*, that is to say, *Muscus*, or Moss, as Dioscorides witnesseth: it is named in shops *Hepatica*, yet there are also many other herbs named *Hepaticæ*, or Liverworts, for difference whereof this may fitly be called *Hepatica petraea*, or Stone Liverwort, having taken that name from the Germans, who call this Liverwort, *Steyn Leberkraut*: and in Low Dutch, *Steen Lebercrutt*: in English, Liverwort.

The Temperature.

This Stone Liverwort is of temperature cold and dry, and somewhat binding.

The Virtues.

A. It is singular good against the inflammations of the liver, hot and sharp agues, and tertians which proceed of choler.

B. Dioscorides teacheth, that Liverwort being applied to the place stancheth bleeding, takes away all inflammations, and that it is good for a tetter or ring-worm, called in Greek, *lichen*, and that it is a remedy for them that have the yellow jaundice, even that which cometh by the inflammation of the liver; and that furthermore it quencheth the inflammations of the tongue.

CHAP. 164. Of Lungwort, or wood Liverwort, and Oyster-green.

1 *Lichen arborum.*
Tree Lung-wort.



Fig. 2175. Tree Lungwort (1)

The Description.

1. To Liverwort there is joined Lungwort, which is also another kind of Moss, drier, broader, of a larger size, and set with scales: the leaves hereof are greater, and diversely folded one in another, not so smooth, but more wrinkled, rough and thick almost like a fell or hide, and tough withal: on the upper side whitish, and on the nether side blackish or dusty, it seemeth to be after a sort like to lungs or lights.

The Place.

It groweth upon the bodies of old Oaks, Beech, and other wild trees, in dark & thick woods: it is oftentimes found growing upon rocks, and also in other shadowy places.

The Time and Names.

It flourisheth especially in the summer months.

It taketh his name *Pulmonaria* of the likeness of the form which it hath with lungs or lights, called in Latin *Pulmones*, of some, *Lichen*: it is called in High Dutch, *Lungenkraut*: in Low Dutch *Longhentruyt*: in French, *Herb à Poulmon*: in English, Lungwort, and Wood Liverwort.

The Temperature.

This seemeth to be cold and dry.

The Virtues.

A. It is reported that shepherds and certain horse-leeches do with good success give the powder hereof with salt unto their sheep and other cattle which be troubled with the cough, and be broken winded.

B. Lungwort is much commended of the learned physicians of our time against the diseases of the lungs, especially for the inflammations and ulcers of the same, being brought into powder, and drunk with water.

C. It is likewise commended for bloody and green wounds, and for ulcers in the secret parts, and also to stay the reds. Moreover, it stoppeth the bloody flux, and other fluxes and scourings, either upwards or downwards, especially if they proceed of cholera: it stayeth vomiting, as men say, and it also stoppeth the belly.

2 *Lichen marinus.*
Sea Lung-wort, or Oyster-greene.



Fig. 2176. Sea Lungwort or Oyster-Green (2)

2. This kind of sea Moss is an herby matter much like unto Liverwort, altogether without stalk or stem, bearing many green leaves, very uneven or crumpled, and full of wrinkles, and somewhat broad, not much differing from leaves of crisp or curled Lettuce: this groweth upon rocks within the bowels of the sea, but especially among oysters, and in greater plenty among those oysters which are called Wallfleet oysters: it is very well known even to the poor oyster-women which carry oysters to call up and down, who are greatly desirous of the said moss for the decking and beautifying of their oysters, to make them sell the better. This moss they do call Oyster-Green.

D. Oyster green fried with eggs and made into a tansy & eaten, is a singular remedy for to strengthen the weakness of the back.

‡ 3 *Lichen marinus rotundifolius*. Round leaved Oyster-weed.



Fig. 2177. Round-Leaved Oyster-Weed (3)

3. The branches of this elegant plant are some handful or better high, spread abroad on every side, and only consisting of sundry single roundish leaves, whereto are fastened sometimes one, sometimes two or more such leaves, so that the whole plant consists of branches made up of such round leaves, fastened together by divers little & very small threads: the lower leaves which stick fast to the rocks are of a brownish colour, the other of a whitish or a light green colour, smooth and shining. This grows upon rocks in divers parts of the Mediterranean. Clusius setteth it forth by the name of *Lichen marinus*; and he received it from Imperato by the name of *Sertuloria*: and Cortusus had it from Corsica, by the title of *Corrallina latifolia*; and he called it *Opuntia marina*, having reference to that mentioned by Theophrastus in his *Historia Plantarum*, lib. 1. cap. 12.

‡ 4 *Quercus marina*.
Sea Oke or Wracke.



Fig. 2178. Sea Oak or Wrack (4)

‡ 4 *Quercus marina varietas*.
A varietie of the sea Oke or Wracke.



Fig. 2179. Another kind of Sea Oak or Wrack (4a)

4. There is also another sort of seaweed found upon the drowned rocks which are naked and bare of water at every tide. This seaweed groweth unto the rocks, fastened unto the same at one end, being a soft herby plant, very slippery, insomuch that it is a hard matter to stand upon it without falling: it rampeth far abroad, and here and there is set with certain puffed up tubercles or bladders, full of wind, which giveth a crack when it is broken: the leaf itself doth somewhat resemble the Oaken leaf, whereof it took his name *Quercus marina*, the sea Oak: of some, Wrack, and Crow gall. His use in physic hath not been set forth, and therefore this bare description may suffice.

Other Kinds of Seaweed

Of this *Quercus marina*, or *Fucus*, there are divers sorts, whereof I will give you the figures and a brief history.

4a. The first of these is only a variety of the last described, differing therefrom in the narrowness of the leaves, and largeness of the swollen bladders.

‡ 5 *Quercus marina secunda.*
Sea Thongs.



Fig. 2180. Sea Thongs (5)

‡ 6 *Quercus marina tertia.*
The third sea Wracke.



Fig. 2181. The Third Kind of Sea Wrack (6)

5. This grows to the length of five or six foot, is smooth and membranous, being some half fingers breadth, and variously divided, like wet parchment or leather cut into thongs: this hath no swollen knots or bladders like as the former; and is the *Fucus marinus secundus* of Dodonæus.

6. This Wrack or seaweed hath long and flat stalks like the former, but the stalks are thick set with swollen knots or bladders, out of which sometimes grow little leaves,

in other respects it is not unlike the former kinds. Dodonæus makes this his *Fucus marinus* 3.



Fig. 2182. Jagged Sea Wrack (7)

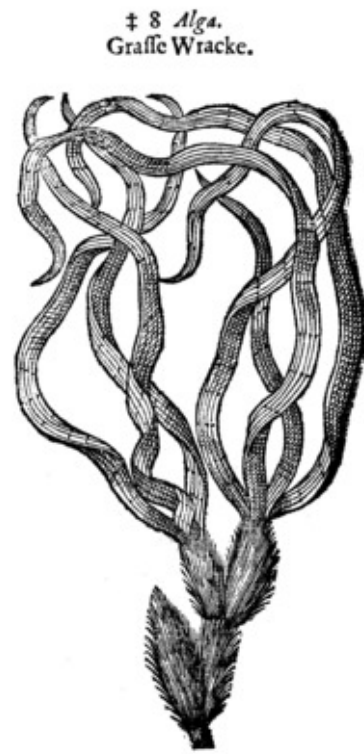


Fig. 2183. Grass Wrack (8)

7. The leaves of this other Wrack, which Dodonæus makes his *Fucus marinus quartus*, are narrower, smaller, and much divided; and this hath either none or very few of those swollen bladders which some of the former kinds have.

8. This, which Lobel calleth *Alga marina*, hath jointed black branched creeping roots of the thickness of one's finger, which end as it were in divers ears, or hairy awns, composed of whitish hairy threads somewhat resembling Spikenard: from the tops of those ears come forth leaves, long, narrow, soft, and grass-like, first green, but white when they are dry. It grows in the sea as the former. They use it in Italy and other hot countries to pack up glasses with, to keep them from breaking.

‡ 9 *Fucus phaeoanoides & polyschides.*
Sea Girdle and Hangers.

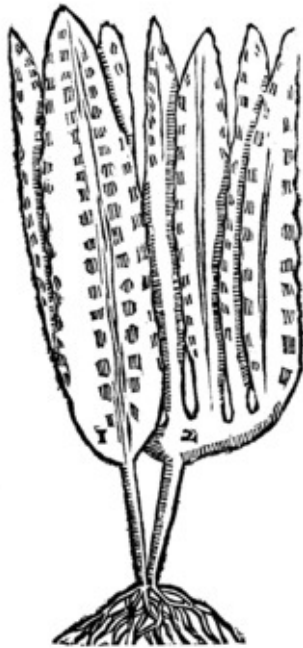


Fig. 2184. Sea Girdle and Hangers (9)

‡ 10 *Fucus spongiosus nodosus.*
Sea ragged Staff.



Fig. 2185. Sea Ragged Staff (10)

9. Of this tribe are divers other plants; but I will only give you the history of two more, which I first observed the last year, going in company with divers London apothecaries to find simples, as far as Margate in the island of Thanet; and whose figures (not before extant that I know of) I first gave in my journal or enumeration of such plants as we there and in other places found. The first of these by reason of his various growth is by Bauhine in his *Prodromus* distinguished into two, and described in the second and third places. The first he calls *Fucus longissimo, latissimo, crassoque folio*, and this is marked with the figure 1. The second he calls *Fucus arboreus polyschides*; and this you may see marked with the figure 2. This seaweed (as I have said) hath a various face, for sometimes from a fibrous root, which commonly groweth to a pebble stone, or fastened to a rock, it sendeth forth a round stalk seldom so thick as one's little finger and about some half foot in length, at the top whereof grows out a single leaf, sometimes an ell long, and then it is about the breadth of one's hand, and it ends in a sharp point, so that it very well resembles a two edged sword. Sometimes from the same root come forth two such fashioned leaves, but then commonly they are lesser. Otherwhiles at the top of the stalk it divides itself into eight, nine, ten, twelve, more or fewer parts, and that just at the top of the stalk, and these never come to that length that the single leaves do. Now this I judge to be the *Fucus polyschides* of Bauhine. That these two are not several kinds I am certain; for I have marked both these varieties from one and the same root, as you may see them here expressed in the figure. At Margate where they grow they call them Sea Girdles, and that name well befits the single one; and the divided one they may call Sea Hangers, for if you do hang the tops downwards, they do reasonable well resemble the old fashioned sword-hangers. Thus much for their shape: now for their colours which is not the same in all; for some are more green, and these can scarce be dried; other some are whitish, and these do quickly dry, and then

both in colour and substance are so like parchment, that such as know them not would at the first view take them to be nothing else. This is of a glutinous substance, and a little saltish taste, and divers have told me they are good meat, being boiled tender, and so eaten with butter, vinegar, and pepper.

10. This which I give you in the tenth place is not figured or described by any that as yet I have met with; wherefore I gave the figure and description in the forementioned journal, which I will here repeat. This is a very succulent and fungous plant, of the thickness of one's thumb; it is of a dark yellowish colour, and buncheth forth on every side with many unequal tuberosities or knots: whereupon W. Thomas Hicks being in our company did fitly name it Sea Ragged Staff. We did not observe it growing, but found one or two plants thereof some foot long apiece.

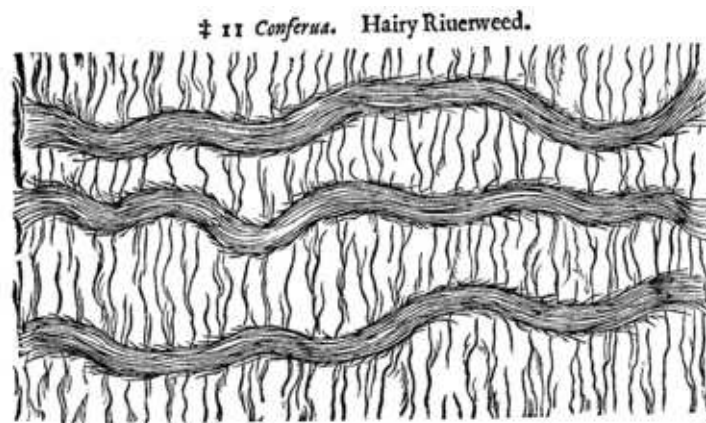


Fig. 2186. Hairy Riverweed (11)

11. In some slow running waters is to be found this long green hairy weed, which is thought to be the *Conferva* of Pliny: it is made up only of long hairy green threads, thick thrummed together without any particular shape or fashion, but only following the current of the stream.

CHAP. 165. Of Sea Moss, or Coralline.

The Kinds.

There be divers sorts of Moss, growing as well within the bowels of the sea, as upon the rocks, distinguished under sundry titles.

1 *Muscus marinus, sive Corallina alba.*
White Coralline, or sea Moss.

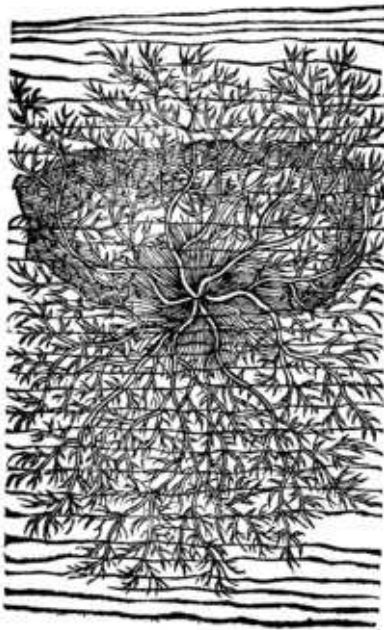


Fig. 2187. White Coralline (1)

† 2 *Muscus marinus albidus.*
White sea Moss.

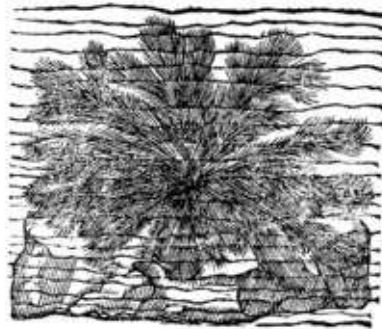


Fig. 2188. White Sea Moss (2)

3 *Corallina Anglica.*
English Coralline.

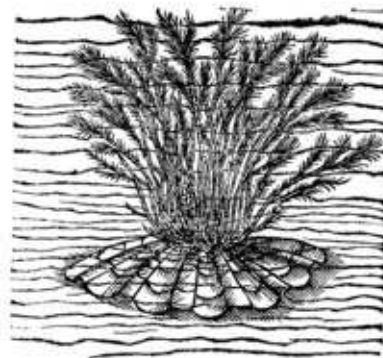


Fig. 2189. English Coralline (3)

The Description.

1. This kind of Sea Moss hath many small stalks finely covered or set over with small leaves, very much cut or jagged, even like the leaves of Dill, but hard, and of a stony substance.

2. The second is much like unto the former, yet not stony, but more finely cut, and growing more upright, branching itself into many divisions at the top, growing very thick together, and in great quantity, out of a piece of stone, which is fashioned like an hat or small stony head, whereby it is fastened unto the rocks.

3. This third kind of Sea Moss is very well known in shops by the name *Corallina*; it yieldeth forth a great number of shoots, in shape much like unto Coral; being full of small branches dispersed here and there, diversely varying his colour, according to the place where it is found, being in some places red, in other some yellow, and of an herby colour; in some gray, or of an ash colour, and in other some very white.

4 *Corallina minima.*
The smallest Coralline.

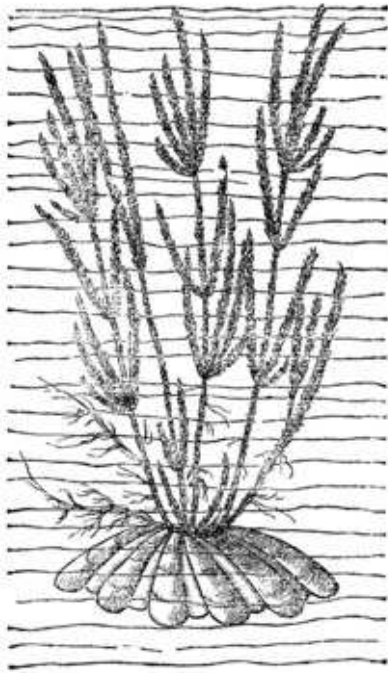


Fig. 2190. Smallest Coralline (4)

5 *Muscus Corallinus, sive Corallina montana.*
Corall Moss, or mountaine Coralline.



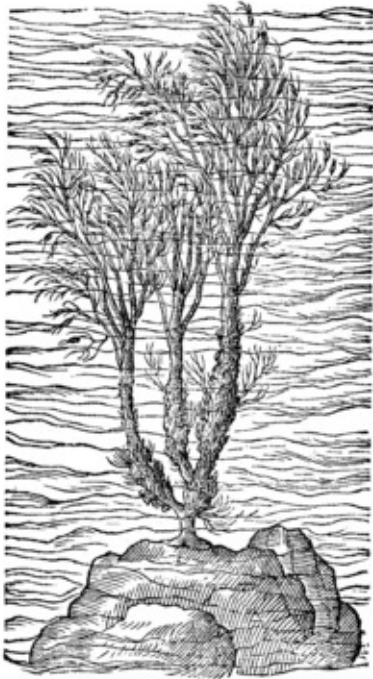
Fig. 2191. Coral Moss (5)

4. The fourth kind of Sea Moss is somewhat like the former, but smaller, and not so plentiful where it groweth, prospering always upon shells, as of oysters, mussels, and scallops, as also upon rolling stones, in the bottom of the water, which have tumbled down from the high cliffs and rocks, notwithstanding the old proverb, that rolling stones never gather moss.

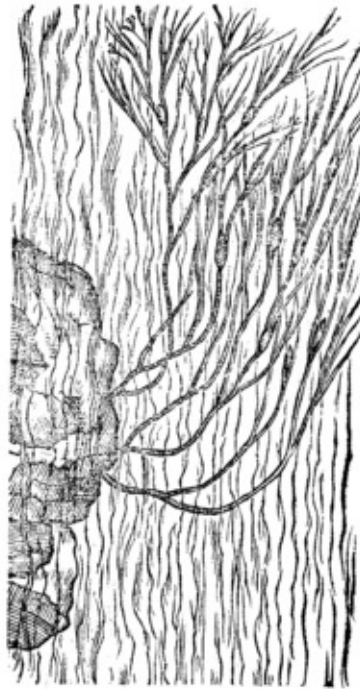
5. There is found upon the rocks and mountains of France, bordering upon the Mediterranean sea, a certain kind of Coralline, which in these parts hath not been found: it groweth in manner like unto a branch of Coral, but altogether lesser, of a shining red colour, and of a stony substance.

I know not what our author meant by this description, but the plant which here is figured out of Tabernamontanus (and by the same title he hath it) is of a Moss growing upon Hampstead Heath, and most such places in England: it grows up some two or three inches high, and is divided into very many little branches ending in little thready chives: all the branches are hollow, and of a very light white dry substance, which makes it somewhat to resemble Coralline, yet is it not stony at all.

6 *Fucus marinus tenuifolius.*
Fenell Coralline, or Fenell Moss.



7 *Fucus fernulaceus.*
Sea Fenell.



8 *Fucus tenuifolius alter.*
Bulbous sea Fenell.



9 *Muscus marinus Clusius.*
Branched Sea Moss.



Fig. 2192. Kinds of Sea Moss (6-9)

6. There is also found upon the rocks near unto Narbonne in France, and not far from the sea, a kind of Coralline. it groweth up to the form of a small shrub, branched diversely; whereon do grow small grass-like leaves, very finely cut or jagged, like unto Fennel; yet are they of a stony substance, as are the rest of the Corallines; of a dark russet colour.

7. This grows also in the like places, having many small long Fennel-like divided leaves upon stalks some foot long, with some swelling eminences here & there set in the divisions of the leaves: this is by Lobel called by the name I here give you it.

8. This also hath fine cut leaves like those of Fennel, but much less & shorter, of a fair green colour: these grow up from round tuberous roots, which together with the fibres they send forth are of a blackish colour: the stalks also are tuberous and swollen, as in other plants of this kind. It grows in the sea with the former. Dodonæus calls this *Fucus marinus virens tenuifolius*.

9. This kind of Sea Moss grows some four or more inches long, divided into many branches, which are subdivided into smaller, set with leaves finely jagged, like those of Camomile; at first soft, flexible, and transparent, green below, and purplish above; being dried, it becometh rough and fragile, like as Coralline. It grows in the Mediterranean sea.

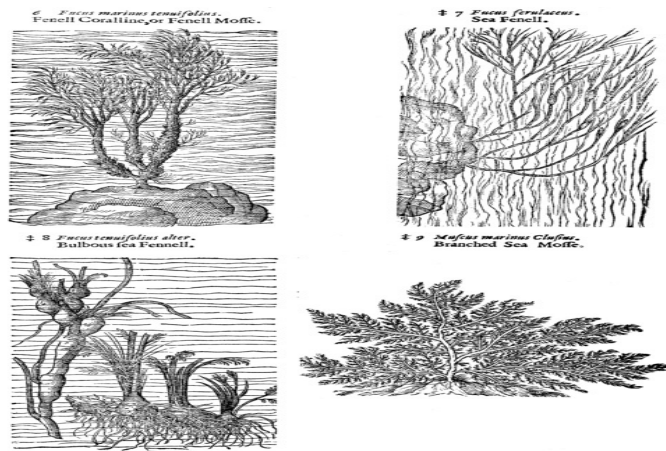


Fig. 2193. Broad-Leaved Sea Moss (10)

10. This Sea Moss is a low little excrescence, having somewhat broad cut leaves growing many from one root: in the whole face it resembles the moss that grows upon the branches of Oaks and other trees, and is also white and very like it, but much more brittle. This by Dodonæus is called *Muscus marinus tertius*.

† 11 *Abies marina Belgica, Clus. Clusius his Sea Fir.*



Fig. 2194. Clusius' Sea Fir (11)

11. Upon the rocks and shells of sea fishes are to be found divers small plants, having resemblance to others that grow upon the land; and Clusius saith, upon the coast of the Low countries he observed one which very much resembled the Fir tree, having branches growing orderly on both sides, but those very brittle and small, seldom

exceeding a handful in height, and covered as it were with many small scales. He observed others that resembled Cypress trees, and other branches that resembled Tamarisk or Heath.

The Place.

These Mosses grow in the sea upon the rocks, and are oftentimes found upon oyster shells, mussel shells, and upon stones: I found very great plenty thereof under Reculver and Margate, in the Isle of Thanet; and in other places amongst the sands from thence unto Dover.

The Time.

The time answereth the other Mosses, and are found at all times of the year.

The Names.

Sea Moss is called in Latin, *Muscus marinus*: of the Apothecaries, Italians, and Frenchmen, *Corallina*: in Spanish, *Malharquiana yerva*: in High Dutch, *Meermos*: in Low Dutch, *Zee Alosch*: in English, Sea Moss, and of many *Corallina*, after the apothecaries' word, and it may be called Coral Moss. The titles distinguish the other kinds.

The Temperature.

Corallina consisteth, as Galen saith, of an earthy and waterish essence, both of them cold: for by his taste it bindeth, and being applied to any hot infirmity, it also evidently cooleth: the earthy essence of this Moss hath in it also a certain saltness, by reason whereof likewise it drieth mightily.

The Virtues.

A. Dioscorides commendeth it to be good for the gout which hath need to be cooled.

B. The later physicians have found by experience, that it killeth worms in the belly; it is given to this purpose to children in the weight of a dram or thereabouts.

C. That which cleaveth to Coral, and is of a reddish colour, is of some preferred and taken for the best: they count that which is whitish, to be the worsen. Notwithstanding in the French Ocean, the Britain, the Low Country, or else in the German ocean sea, there is scarce found any other than the whitish *Coralline*, which the nations near adjoining do effectually use.

CHAP. 166. Of Coral.

1 *Corallium rubrum.*
Red Corall.



Fig. 2195. Red Coral (1)

2 *Corallium nigrum, sive Antipathes.*
Blacke Corall.

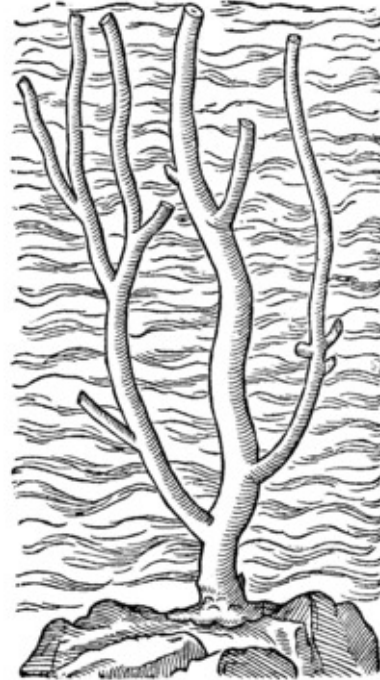


Fig. 2196. Black Coral (2)

The Description.

1. Although Coral be a matter or substance, even as hard as stones; yet I think it not amiss to place and insert it here next unto the mosses, and the rather for that the kinds thereof do show themselves, as well in the manner of their growing, as in their place and form, like unto the Mosses. This later age wherein we live hath found more kinds hereof than ever were known or mentioned among the old writers. Some of these Corals grow in the likeness of a shrub, or stony matter; others in a straight form, with crags and joints, such as we see by experience: the which for that they are so well known, and in such request for physic, I will not stand to describe; only this remember, that there is some Coral of a pale yellow colour, as there be some red, and some white.

2. The black Coral groweth upon the rocks near to the sea about Marseilles, in manner of the former; herein differing from it, in that this is of a shining black colour, and very smooth, growing up rather like a tree, than like a shrub.

3 *Corallium album*, White Corral.

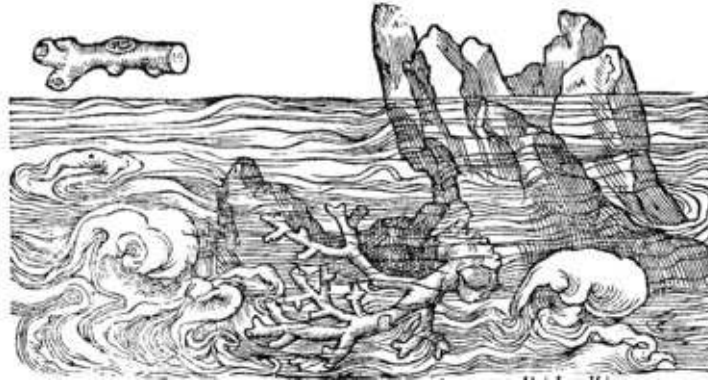


Fig. 2197. White Coral (3)

3. The white Coral is like to the former, growing upon the rocks near the sea, and in the West parts of England, about Saint Michael's Mount; but the branches hereof are smaller, and more brittle, finelier dispersed into a number of branches, of a white colour.

4 *Corallium album alterum*
The other white or yellow Corral;



Fig. 2197. The Other White or Yellow Coral
(4)

4 *Corallium album alterum*
The other white or yellow Corral;

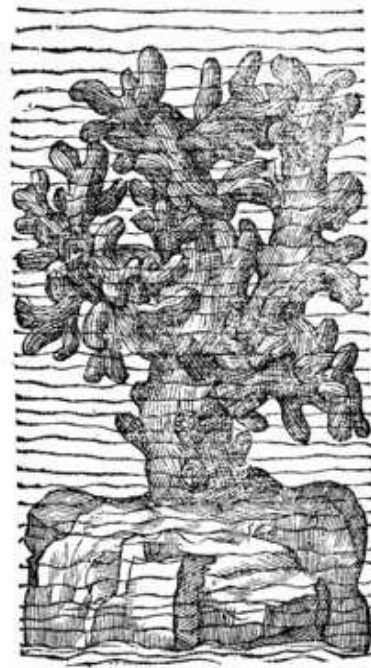


Fig. 2198. Whitish Bastard Coral (5)

4. The fourth groweth also upon the western rocks of the sea, and in the place afore-named, and varieth his colour, sometimes waxing white, sometimes yellow, and sometimes red.

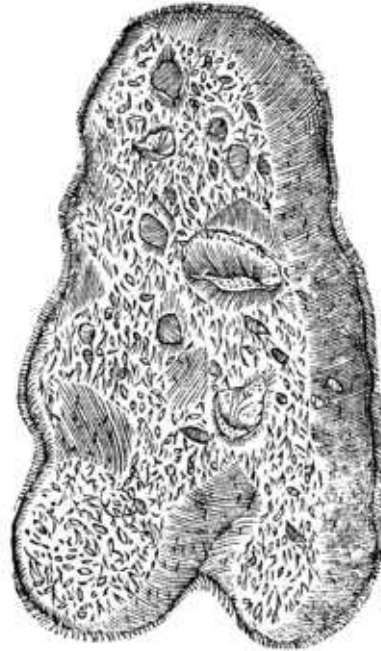
5. This grows up with many branches some two or three handfuls high; the inner part is a hard woody substance, which is covered over with a white and hard stony matter, so that it resembleth White Coral, but that it is neither so thick, hard, nor smooth,

but is rough and bends easily without breaking, which Coral will not do. Lobel calls this *Corallina alba*, it grows in the Mediteranian sea, and upon the coasts of Spain.

‡ 6 *Coralloides rubens.*
Reddish bastard Corall.



7 *Spongia marina alba.*
White Sponge.



‡ 8 *Spongia infundibuli forma.*
Funnell fashioned Sponge.



‡ 9 *Spongia ramosa.*
Branched Sponge.



Fig. 2200. Kinds of Coral and Sponge (6-9)

6. This in all respects is like the last described, the colour excepted, which is a dark red, and therefore better resembles the red Coral. Clusius refers both these to the *Quercus marina* mentioned by Theophrapus, *Hist. plant. lib. 7. cap. 4.*

7. There is found growing upon the rocks near unto the sea, a certain matter wrought together, of the foam or froth of the sea, which we call sponges, after the Latin name, which may very fitly be inserted among the Sea Mosses, whereof to write at large would greatly increase our volume, and little profit the reader, considering we hasten to an end, and also that the use is so well known unto all: therefore these few lines may

serve until a further consideration, or a second edition. Sponges are not like the *Alcyonium*, that is, an accidental matter wrought together of the froth of the sea, as our author affirms, but rather of a nobler nature than plants, for they are said to have sense, and to contract themselves at the approach of one's hand that comes to cut them up, or for fear of any other harm-threatening object, and therefore by most writers they are referred to the *Zeophytai*: which some render *Plantanimalia*, that is, such as are neither absolute plants, nor living creatures, but participate of both: they grow of divers shapes and colours upon the rocks in the Mediterranean, as also in the Archipelago, or Ægean Sea.

8. Clusius observed one yet adhering to the stone whereon it grew, which in shape resembled a funnel, but in substance was like another Sponge.

9. There is also to be found upon our English coast a small kind of sponge cast up by the sea, and this is also of different shapes and colour, for the shape it is always divided into sundry branches, but that after a different manner; and the colour is oft-times brownish, and otherwhiles gray or white. Lobel makes it *Confervæ marinæ* genus.

The Place.

The place of their growing is sufficiently spoken of in their several descriptions.

The Time.

The time answereth the other kinds of Sea Mosses.

The Names.

Corallium rubrum is called in English, Red Coral. *Corallium nigrum*, Black Coral. *Corallium album*, White Coral.

The Temperature.

A. Coral bindeth, and meanly cooleth: it cleareth the scars and spots of the eyes, and is very effectual against the issues of blood, and easeth the difficulty of making water.

The Virtues.

A. Coral drunk in wine or water, preserveth from the spleen; and some hang it about the necks of such as have the falling sickness, and it is given in drink for the same purpose.

B. It is a sovereign remedy to dry, to stop, and stay all issues of blood whatsoever in man or woman, and the dysentery.

C. Burned Coral drieth more than when it is unburned, and being given to drink in water, it helpeth the gripings of the belly, and the griefs of the stone in the bladder.

D. Coral drunk in wine provoketh sleep: but if the patient have an ague, then it is with better success ministered in water, for the Coral cooleth, and the water moisteneth the body, by reason whereof it restraineth the burning heat in agues, and represseth the vapours that hinder sleep.

CHAP. 167. Of Mushrooms, or Toadstools.

The Kinds.

Some Mushrooms grow forth of the earth; other upon the bodies of old trees, which differ altogether in kinds. Many wantons that dwell near the sea, and have fish at will, are very desirous for change of diet to feed upon the birds of the mountains; and such as dwell upon the hills or champion grounds, do long after sea fish; many that have plenty of both, do hunger after the earthy excrescences, called Mushrooms: whereof some are very venomous and full of poison, others not so noisome; and neither of them very wholesome meat; wherefore for the avoiding of the venomous quality of the one, and that the other which is less venomous may be discerned from it, I have thought good to set forth their pictures with their names and places of growth. Because the book is already grown too voluminous, I will only give you the figures of such as my author hath here mentioned, with some few others, but not trouble you with any more history, yet distinguish between such as are eatable, and those that be poisonous, or at least not to be eaten; so the first figured amongst the poisonous ones, is that we call Jew's Ear, which hath no poisonous facility in it. Clusius (all whose figures I could have here given you) hath written a peculiar tract of these bastard plants, or excrescences, where such as desire it may find them sufficiently discoursed of.

1 *Fungi vulgatissimi esculenti. Common Mushrooms to be eaten.*



Fig. 2201. Edible Mushrooms

The Description.

1. Ground Mushrooms grow up in one night, standing upon a thick and round stalk, like unto a broad hat or buckler, of a very white colour until it begin to wither, at what time it loseth his fair white, declining to yellowness: the lower side is somewhat hollow, set or decked with fine gutters, drawn along from the middle centre to the circumference or round edge of the brim.

2 *Fungi tetrales, aut saltem non esculenti.*
Poyson Mushrooms, or at the least such as are not vulgarly eaten.

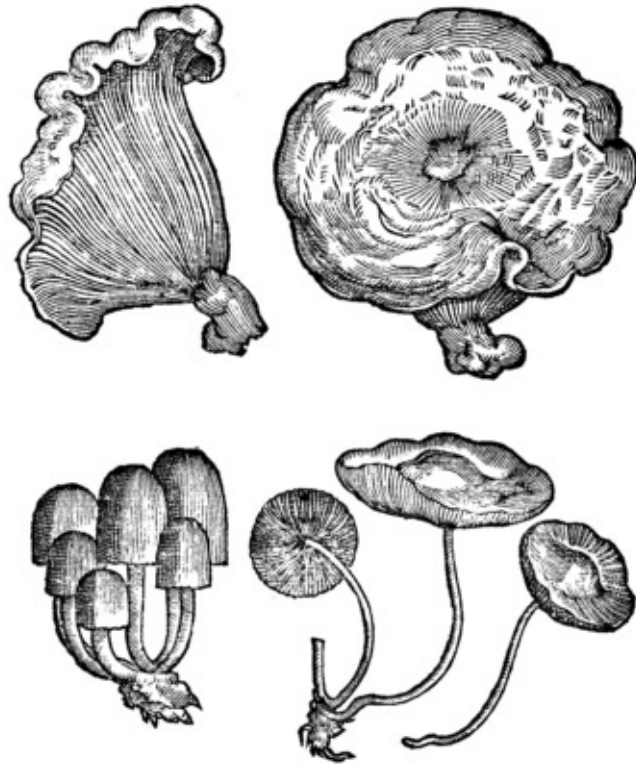


Fig. 2202. Inedible Mushrooms

2. All Mushrooms are without pith, rib, or vein: they differ not a little in bigness and colour; some are great, and like a broad brimmed hat; others smaller, about the bigness of a silver coin called a dollar: most of them are red underneath; some more, some less; others little or nothing red at all: the upper side which beareth out, is either pale or whitish, or else of an ill-favoured colour like ashes (they commonly call it ash colour) or else it seemeth to be somewhat yellow.

Fungus sambucinus, five Auricula Iuda. Iewes cares.



Fungi lethales, sine non esculenti. Poysonous Mushrooms.

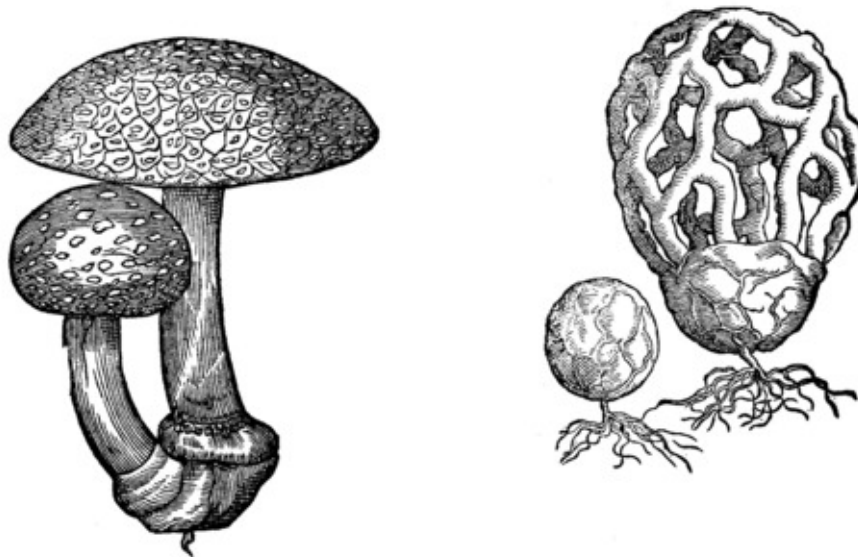


Fig. 2203. Poisonous Mushrooms

There is another kind of Mushrooms called *Fungi parvi lethales galericulati*: in English, deadly Mushrooms, which are fashioned like unto an hood, and are most venomous and full of poison.

There is a kind of Mushroom called *Fungus clypeiformis lethalis*, that is also a deadly Mushroom, fashioned like a little buckler.

There is another kind of Mushroom, which is also most venomous and full of poison, bearing also the shape of a buckler, being called *Fungus venenatus clypeiformis*: in English, the stinking venomous Mushroom.

The Mushrooms or Toodstools which grow upon the trunks or bodies of old trees, very much resembling *Auricula Iudæ*, that is Jew's ear, do in continuance of time grow unto the substance of wood, which the fullers do call touchwood, and are for the most half circled or half round, whose upper part is somewhat plain, and sometime a little hollow, but the lower part is plaited or pursed together. This kind of Mushroom is full of venom or poison as the former, especially those which grow upon the Ilex, Olive, and Oak trees.

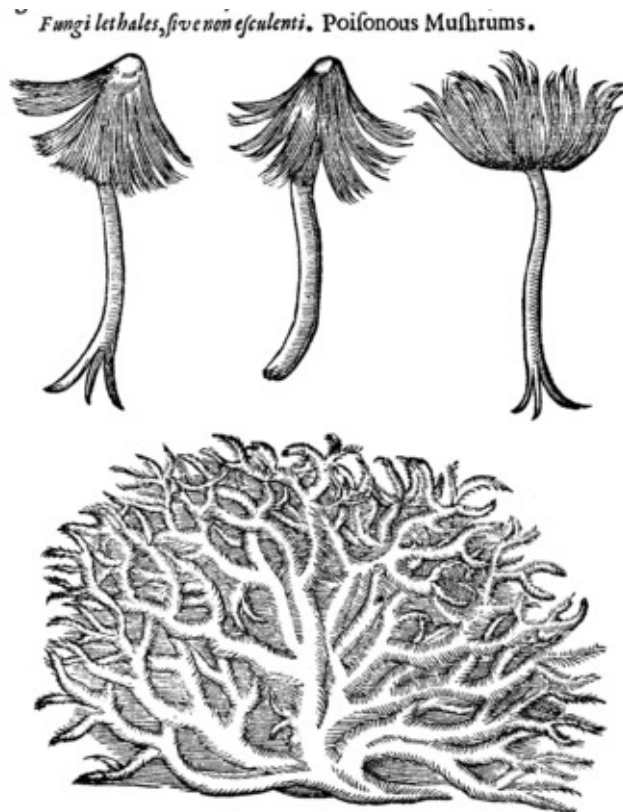


Fig. 2204. Poisonous Mushrooms

Fungi lethales, sive non esculenti. Poisonous Mushrooms.

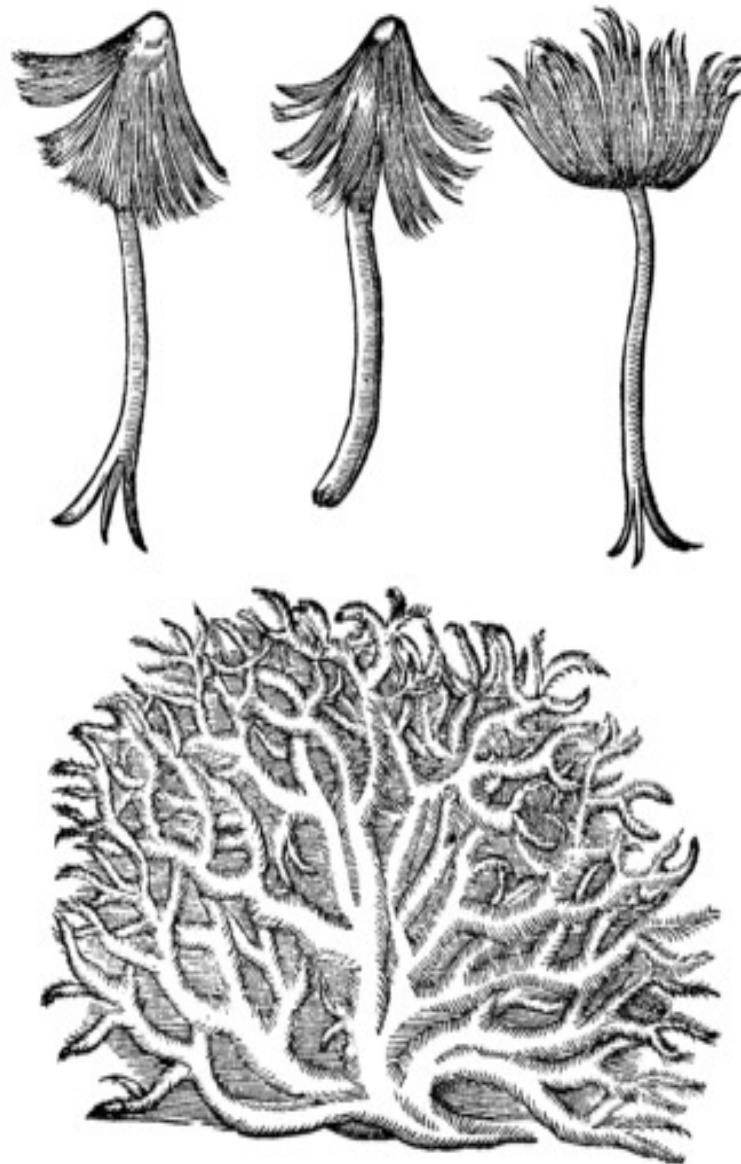


Fig. 2205. Honeycomb Mushroom, Prick Mushroom, and Puffball

There is likewise a kind of Mushroom called *Fungus faviginosus*, growing up in moist and shadowy woods, which is also venomous, having a thick and tuberous stalk, an handful high, of a duskish colour; the top whereof is compact of many small divisions, like unto the honeycomb.

There is also found another, set forth under the title *Fungus virilis penis erecti forma*, which we English, Prick Mushroom, taken from his form.

3. *Fungus orbicularis*, or *Lupi crepitus*, some do call it *Lucernarum fungus*: in English, Puffballs, Puck Fuss, and Bullfists, with which in some places of England they use to kill or smolder their bees, when they would drive the hives, and bereave the poor bees of their meat, houses, and lives: these are also used in some places where neighbours dwell far asunder, to carry and reserve fire from place to place, whereof it took the name, *Lucernarum Fungus*: in form they are very round, sticking and cleaving unto the ground, without any stalks or stems; at the first white, but afterward of a duskish colour, having no hole or breach in them, whereby a man may see into them,

which being troden upon do breathe forth a most thin and fine powder, like unto smoke, very noisome and hurtful unto the eyes, causing a kind of blindness, which is called purblind, or sand-blind.

There is another kind of fungus, or Mushroom, which groweth in moist mesdows, and by ditch sides, five or six inches high, covered over with a skin like a piece of sheep's leather, of a russet colour; which being taken away there appeareth a long and white stump, in form not much unlike to an handle, mentioned in the title, or like unto the white and tender stalk of Aron, but greater this kind is also full of venom and poison.

There is likewise a kind of Mushroom, with a certain round excrescence, growing within the earth, under the upper crust or face of the same, in dry and gravelly grounds in Pannonia and the provinces adjoining, which do cause the ground to swell, and be full of hills like Mole-hills. The people where they grow, are constrained to dig them up and cast them abroad like as we do Mole-hills, spoiling their grounds, as Mole-hills are hurtful unto our soil: these have neither stalks, leaves, fibres nor strings annexed or fastened unto them, and for the most part are of a reddish colour, but within of a whitish yellow: the Grecians have called this tuberous excrescence, *Idna*, and the Latins *Tubera*: the Spaniards do call them *Turmas de tierra*: in English we may call them Spanish Puffballs.

The Place.

Mushrooms come up about the roots of trees, in grassy places of meadows, and lea land newly turned; in woods also where the ground is sandy, but yet dankish: they grow likewise out of wood, forth of the rotten bodies of trees, but they are unprofitable and nothing worth. Poisonsome Mushrooms, as Dioscorides saith, groweth where old rusty iron lieth or rotten clouts, or near to serpents' dens, or roots of trees that bring forth venomous fruit. Divers esteeme those for the best which grow in meadows, and upon mountains and hilly places, as Horace saith, *Lib. Ser. 2. satyr. 4.*

— *pratensibus optima fungis*

Natura est, aliis male creditur.

The Meadow Mushrooms are in kind the best.

It is ill trusting any of the rest.

Horace, *Sermons* II. 4. 1. 20-21

The Time.

Divers come up in April, and last not till May, for they flourish but whilst April continues: others grow later, about August; yet all of them after rain; and therefore they are found one year sooner, and another later. Mushrooms, saith Pliny, grow in showers of rain: they come of the slime of trees, as the same author affirmeth.

The Names.

They are called in Latin; *Fungi*: in Italian, *Fonghi*: in Spanish, *Hungos*, *Cugumenos*: in French, *Campinion*, which word the Low-Country men also use, and call them *Campernoellen*: in High Dutch, *Schwemme*, *Þifferling*: in English, Mushrooms, Toadstools, and Paddock-stools.

The Mushrooms that come up in April are called in Latin of some, *Spongiolæ*: of the Italians, *Prignoli*: and in High Dutch, *Moschel*.

They that are of a light red are called of some *Boleti*, among the later ones which rise and fall away in seven days. The white, or those which be somewhat yellow, are

called in Latin, *Suilli*: which the later physicians name *Porcini*, or Swine Mushrooms. *Suilli*, saith Pliny, are dried, being hanged upon rushes, which are thrust through them. The dry ones are in our age also eaten in Bohemia and Austria: they that grow by the roots of Poplar trees are called of the Latins, *Populnei*, Poplar Mushrooms.

Puffs-fists are commonly called in Latin, *Lupi crepitus*, or Wolf's fists: in Italian, *Vesci de Lupo*: in English, Puff's-fists, Puffballs, and Fuss-balls in the North. Pliny nameth them *Pezicæ*, as though he should say, flat.

Tree Mushrooms be called in Latin, *Fungi arborum*, and *Fungi arborei*: in English, Tree Mushrooms, or Touchwood: in High Dutch also *Schwemme*. They are all thought to be poisonous, being inwardly taken. Nicander writeth, that the Mushrooms of the Olive tree, the Ilex tree, and of the Oak tree bring death.

The Temperature and Virtues

A. Galen affirms, that they are all very cold and moist, and therefore do approach unto a venomous and murdering faculty, and engender a clammy, pituitous, and cold nutriment if they be eaten. To conclude, few of them are good to be eaten, and most of them do suffocate and strangle the eater. Therefore I give my advice unto those that love such strange and new fangled meats, to beware of licking honey among thorns, lest the sweetness of the one do not countervail the sharpness and pricking of the other.

B. Fuss-balls are no way eaten: the powder of them doth dry without biting: it is fitly applied to merry-galls, kibed heels, and such like.

C. In divers parts of England where people dwell far from neighbours, they carry them kindled with fire, which lasteth long: whereupon they were called *Lucernarum Fungi*.

D. The dust or powder hereof is very dangerous for the eyes, for it hath been often seen, that divers have been purblind ever after; when some small quantity thereof hath been blown into their eyes

E. The country people do use to kill or smother Bees with these Fuss-balls, being set on fire, for the which purpose it fitly serveth.

F. The fungous excrescence of the Elder, commonly called a Jew's Ear, is much used against the inflammations and all other sorenesses of the throat, being boiled in milk, steeped in beer, vinegar, or any other convenient liquor.

CHAP. 168. Of Great Toothwort, or Clowns' Lungwort.

1 *Dentaria maior Mathioli.*
Great Toothwort, or Lungwort.



2 *Dentaria minor.*
Little Lungwort.



Fig. 2206. Great Toothwort or Lungwort (1) Fig. 2207. Little Toothwort or Lungwort (2)

The Description.

1. There is often found among the Mushrooms a certain kind of excrescence consisting of a jelly or soft substance, like that of the Mushrooms, and therefore it may the more fitly be here inserted: it riseth forth of the ground in form like unto *Orobanche*, or the Broomrape, and also in substance, having a tender, thick, tuberous, or mis-shapen body, consisting as it were of scales like teeth (whereof it took his name) of a dusty shining colour tending to purple. The stalk riseth up in the middle, garnished with little gaping hollow flowers like those of *Satyrion*; on the outside of an overworn whitish colour: the whole plant resembleth a rude form of that jelly, or slimy matter, found in the fields, which we call the falling of stars: the root is small and tender.

2. There is also another sort hereof found, not differing from the precedent: the chief difference consisteth in that, that this plant is altogether lesser; and hath a root diversely divaricated like Coral, white of colour, full of juice, and without any fibres annexed thereto; in other respects like.

The Place.

These plants do grow at the bottom of Elm trees, and such like, in shadowy places: I found it growing in a lane called East-Lane, upon the right hand as ye go from Maidstone in Kent unto Cock's Heath, half a mile from the town; and in other places thereabout: it doth also grow in the fields about Croydon, especially about a place called Groutes, being the land of a worshipful gentleman called Mr Garth: and also in a wood in Kent near Crayford, called Rowhill, or Rough-hill: it groweth likewise near Harwood in Lancashire, a mile from Whalley, in a wood called Talbot Bank.

The Time.

They flower in May and June.

The Names.

There is not any other name extant, more than is set forth in the description.

The Temperature and Virtues.

There is nothing extant of the faculties hereof; either of the ancient or later writers: neither have we anything of our own experience; only our country women do call it Lungwort, and do use it against the cough, and all other imperfections of the lungs: but what benefit they reap thereby I know not; neither can any of judgement give me further instruction thereof.

CHAP. 169. Of Sanders.

The Kinds.

The ancient Greeks have not known the sorts of Sanders: Garcias and others describe three, *Album*, *Rubrum* and *Pallidum*, which in shops is called *Citrinum*.

The Description.

1. The Sanders tree groweth to the bigness of the Walnut tree, garnished with many goodly branches; whereon are set leaves like those of the Lentisk tree, always green; among which come forth very fair flowers, of a blue colour tending to blackness; after cometh the fruit of the bigness of a Cherry, green at the first, and black when it is ripe; without taste, and ready to fall down with every little blast of wind: the timber or wood is of a white colour, and a very pleasant smell.

2. There is likewise another which groweth very great, the flowers and fruit agree with the other of his kind: the wood is of a yellowish colour, wherein consisteth the difference.

3. The third sort which we call Red Sanders is a very hard and solid wood, having little or no smell, the colour thereof is very red, it groweth not in those places where the others grow, neither is the form of the tree described by any that I know of, it is frequently used to colour sauces, and for such-like uses.

The Place.

The white and yellow Sanders grow naturally, and that in great abundance, in an island called Timor, and also in the East Indies beyond the river Sanges or rather Ganges, which the Indians call *Hanga*, and also about Java, where it is of better odour than any that groweth elsewhere.

The red Sanders grows within the river Ganges, especialiy about Tanasarim, and in the marsh grounds about Coromandel: Avicenna, Serapio and most of the Mauritanians call it by a corrupt name, *Sandal*: in Timor, Malacca, and in places near adjoining, *Chandama*: in Deccan and Gujerat, *Sercanda*: in Latin, *Sandalum* and *Santalum*, adding thereto for the colour *album*, *flavum* or *citrinum*, and *rubrum*, that is, white, yellow, and red Sanders.

The Time.

These trees which are the white and yellow Sanders grow green winter and summer, and are not one known from another, but by the Indians themselves, who have taken very certain notes and marks of them, because they may the more speedily distinguish them when the mart cometh.

The Names.

Their names have been sufficiently spoken of in their descriptions.

The Temperature.

Yellow and White Sanders are hot in the third degree, and dry in the second. The Red Sanders are not so hot.

The Virtues.

A. The Indians do use the decoction made in water, against hot burning agues, and the overmuch flowing of the menses, erysipelas, the gout, and all inflammations, especially if it be mixed with the juice of Nightshade, Houseleek, or Purslane.

B. The White Sanders mixed with rose-water, and the temples bathed therewith, ceaseth the pain of the megrim, and keepeth back the flowing of humours to the eyes.

C. Avicenna affirmeth it to be good for all passions of the heart, and maketh it glad and merry, and therefore good to be put in collises, jellies, and all delicate meats which are made to strengthen and revive the spirits.

D. Red Sanders have an astrictive and strengthning faculty, but are not cordial as the other two, they are used in divers medicines and meats both for their faculty and pleasing red colour, which they give to them.

CHAP. 170. Of Stony Wood, or Wood Made Stones.

Lignum Lapideum, sine in Lapides conuersum.
Stonie wood, or wood made stones.



Fig. 2208. Petrified Wood

The Description.

Among the wonders of England this is one of great admiration, and contrary unto man's reason and capacity, that there should be a kind of wood alterable into the hardness of a stone called Stony wood, or rather a kind of water, which hardeneth wood and other things, into the nature and matter of stones. But we know that the works of God are wonderful, if we do but narrowly search the least of them, which we daily behold; much more if we turn our eyes upon those that are seldom seen, and known but of a few, and that of such as have painfully travelled in the secrets of nature. This strange alteration of nature is to be seen in sundry parts of England & Wales, through the qualities of some waters and earth which change such things into stone as do fall therein, or which are of purpose for trial put into them. In the North part of England there is a well near unto Knaresborough, which will change anything into stone, whether it be wool, timber, leaves of trees, moss, leather gloves, or such like. There be divers places in Bedfordshire, Warwickshire, and Wales, where there is ground of that quality, that if a stake be driven into it, that part of the stake which is within the ground will be a firm and hard stone and all that which is above the ground retaineth his former substance and nature. Also myself being at Rugby (about such time as our fantastic people did with great concourse and multitudes repair and run headlong unto the sacred wells of Newnam Regis, in the edge of Warwickshire, as unto the water of life, which could cure all diseases) I went from thence unto these wells, where I found growing over the same a fair Ash tree, whose boughs did hang over the spring of water, whereof some that were sere and rotten, and some that of purpose were broken off, fell into the water and were all turned into stones. Of these boughs or parts of the tree I brought into London, which when I had broken in pieces, therein might be seen, that the pith and all the rest was turned into stones; yea many buds and flowerings of the tree falling into the said water, were also turned into hard stones, still retaining the same shape and fashion that they were of before they were in the water. I doubt not but if this water were proved about the hardening of some confections physical, for the preservation of them, or other special ends, it would of fer greater occasion of admiration for the health and benefit of mankind, than it doth about such things as already have been experimented, tending to very little purpose.

CHAP. 171. Of the Goose Tree, Barnacle Tree, or the Tree bearing Geese.

Britannica Concha anatifera.
The breed of Barnacles.



Fig. 2209. The Goose Barnacle Tree

The Description.

Having travelled from the grasses growing in the bottom of the fenny waters, the woods, and mountains, even unto Libanus itself; and also the sea, and bowels of the same, we are arrived at the end of our History; thinking it not impertinent to the conclusion of the same, to end with one of the marvels of this land (we may say of the world.) The history whereof to set forth according to the worthiness and rarity thereof, would not only require a large and peculiar volume, but also a deeper search into the bowels of nature, than my intended purpose will suffer me to wade into, my sufficiency also considered; leaving the history thereof rough hewn, unto some excellent men, learned in the secrets of nature, to be both fined and refined: in the mean space take it as it falleth out, the naked and bare truth, though unpolished. There are found in the North parts of Scotland and the islands adjacent, called Orchades, certain trees whereon do grow certain shells of a white colour tending to russet, wherein are contained little living creatures: which shells in time of maturity do open, and out of them grow those little living things, which falling into the water do become fowls, which we call barnacles; in the North of England, brent geese; and in Lancashire, tree geese: but the other that do fall upon the land perish and come to nothing. Thus much by the writings of others, and also from the mouths of people of those parts, which may very well accord with truth.

But what our eyes have seen, and hands have touched we shall declare. There is a small island in Lancashire called the Pile of Foulders, wherein are found the broken pieces of old and bruised ships, some whereof have been cast thither by shipwreck, and also the trunks and bodies with the branches of old and rotten trees, cast up there likewise; whereon is found a certain spume or froth that in time breedeth unto certain shells, in shape like those of the mussel, but sharper pointed, and of a whitish colour: wherein is contained a thing in form like a lace of silk finely woven as it were together, of a whitish colour, one end whereof is fanned unto the inside of the shell, even as the fish of oysters and mussels are: the other end is made fast unto the belly of a rude masse or lump, which in time cometh to the shape and form of a bird: when it is perfectly formed the shell gapeth open, and the first thing that appeareth is the foresaid lace or string; next come the legs of the bird hanging out, and as it groweth greater it openeth the shell by degrees, till at length it is all come forth, and hangeth only by the bill: in

short space after it cometh to full maturity, and falleth into the sea, where it gathereth feathers, and groweth to a fowl bigger than a mallard, and lesser than a goose, having black legs and bill or beak, and feathers black and white, spotted in such manner as is our magpie, called in some places a pie-annet, which the people of Lancashire call by no other name than a tree goose: which place aforesaid, and all those parts adjoining do so much abound therewith, that one of the best is bought for threepence. For the truth hereof, if any doubt, may it please them to repair unto me, and I shall satisfy them by the testimony of good witnesses.

Moreover, it should seem that there is another sort hereof; the history of which is true, and of mine own knowledge: for travelling upon the shore of our English coast between Dover and Romney, I found the trunk of an old rotten tree, which (with some help that I procured by fishermen's wives that were there attending their husbands' return from the sea) we drew out of the water upon dry land: upon this rotten tree I found growing many thousands of long crimson bladders, in shape like unto puddings newly filled, before they be sodden, which were very clear and shining; at the nether end whereof did grow a shell-fish, fashioned somewhat like a small mussel, but much whiter, resembling a shell-fish that groweth upon the rocks about Guernsey and Jersey, called a limpet: many of these shells I brought with me to London, which after I had opened I found in them living things without form or shape; in others which were nearer come to ripenes I found living things that were very naked, in shape like a bird: in others, the birds covered with soft down, the shell half open, and the bird ready to fall out, which no doubt were the fowls called barnacles. I dare not absolutely avouch every circumstance of the first part of this history, concerning the tree that beareth those buds aforesaid, but will leave it to a further consideration; howbeit that which I have seen with mine eyes, and handled with mine hands, I dare confidently avouch, and boldly put down for verity. Now if any will object, that this tree which I saw might be one of those before mentioned, which either by the waves of the sea or some violent wind had been overturned, as many other trees are; or that any trees falling into those seas about the Orchades, will of themselves bear the like fowls, by reason of those seas and waters, these being so probable conjectures, and likely to be true, I may not without prejudice gainsay, or endeavour to confute.

Thus saith our author. However, the barnacle, whose fabulous breed my author here sets down, and divers others have also delivered, were found by some Hollanders to have another original, and that by eggs, as other birds have: for they in their third voyage to find out the North-East passge to China, and the Moluccas, about the eightieth degree and eleven minutes of Northerly latitude, found two little islands, in the one of which they found abundance of these Geese sitting upon their eggs, of which they got one goose, and took away sixty eggs, &c. *Vide Pontani, Rerum &c. Urb. Amstelodam. Hist. lib. 2. cap. 22.* Now the shells out of which these birds were thought to fly, are a kind of *Balanus marinus*; and thus Fabius Columna, in the end of his *Phytobasanos*, writing *piscium aliquot historia*, ["the hoistopry of certain fishes"] judiciously proves: to whose opinion I wholly subscribe, and to it I refer the curious. His asseveration is this: *Conchas vulgo anatiferas, non esse fructus terrestres, neque ex iis anates oriri; sed Balani marinæ speciem.* ["The shells commonly called goose-bearing, are not products of the land, nor do geese come from them, but are a kind of shellfish called barnacle"] I could have said something more hereof, but thus much I think may serve, together with that which Fabius Columna hath written upon this point.

The Place.

The borders and rotten planks whereon are found these shells wherein is bred the Barnacle, are taken up in a small island adjoining to Lancashire, half a mile from the mainland, called the Pile of Foulders.

The Time.

They spawn as it were in March and April; the geese are formed in May and June, and come to fullness of feathers in the month after.

And thus having through God's assistance discoursed somewhat at large of grasss, herbs, shrubs, trees, and mosses, and certain excrescences of the earth, with other things more, incident to the history thereof, we conclude and end our present volume, with this wonder of England. For the which God's name be ever honoured and praised.

FINIS.



**AN APPENDIX OR ADDITION of certain Plants omitted in
the former History.**



The Preface.

Having run through the History of plants gathered by Mr Gerard, and much enlarged the same both by the addition of many figures and histories of plants not formerly contained in it, and by the amending and increasing the history of sundry of those which before were therein treated of; I find that I have forgotten divers which I intended to have added in their fitting places: the occasion hereof hath been, my many businesses, the troublesomeness, and above all, the great expectation and haste of the work, whereby I was forced to perform this task within the compass of a year. Now being constant to my first resolution, I here have, as time would give me leave, and my memory serve, made a brief collection and addition (though without method) of such as offered themselves unto me; and without doubt there are sundry others which are as fitting to be added as those; and I should not have been wanting, if time would have permitted me to have entered into further consideration of them. In the meantime take in good part those that I have here presented to your view.

CHAP. 1. Of the Maracoc or Passion-Flower.

Clematis trifolia, sive Flos Passionis.
The Maracoc or Passion-floure.



Fig. 2210. Passion-Flower

The Description.

This plant, which the Spaniards in the West Indies call *Granadilla*, because the fruit somewhat resembles a Pomegranate, which in their tongue they term *Granadilla*, is the same which the Virginians call *Maracoc*. The Spanish friars for some imaginary resemblances in the flower, first called it *Flos Passionis*, the Passion Flower, and in a counterfeit figure, by adding what was wanting, they made it as it were an epitome of our Saviour's passion: thus superstitious persons *semper sibi somnium fingunt* ["always imagine their own dreams"]. Bauhine desirous to refer it to some stock or kindred of formerly known plants, gives it the name of *Clematis trifolia*: yet the flowers and fruit pronounce it not properly belonging to their tribe; but *Clematis* being a certain generic name to all woody winding plants, this as a species may come under the denomination, though little in other respects participating with them. The roots of this are long, somewhat like, yet thicker than those of *Sarsaparilla*, running up and down, and putting up their heads in several places: from these roots rise up many long winding round stalks, which grow two, three, four, or more yards high, according to the heat and seasonableness of the year and soil whereas they are planted: upon these stalks grow many leaves divided into three parts, sharp pointed, and snipped about the edges: commonly out of the bosoms of each of the uppermost leaves there groweth a clasping tendril and a flower: the flower grows upon a little footstalk some two inches long, and is of a longish cornered form, with five little crooked horns at the top, before such time as it open itself; but opened, this longish head divides itself into ten parts, and sustains the leaves of the flower, which are very many, long, sharp pointed, narrow, and orderly

spread open one by another, some lying straight, others crooked: these leaves are of colour whitish, but thick spotted with a peach colour, and towards the bottom it hath a ring of a perfect peach colour, and above and beneath it a white circle, which give a great grace to the flower; in the midst whereof rises a membrane, which parts itself into four or five crooked spotted horns, with broadish heads: from the midst of these rises another roundish head which carries three nails or horns, biggest above, and smallest at their lower end: this flower with us is never succeeded by any fruit, but in the West Indies, whereas it naturally grows, it bears a fruit, when it is ripe of the bigness and colour of pomegranates, but it wants such a ring or crown about the top as they have; the rind also is much thinner and tenderer, the pulp is whitish, and without taste, but the liquor is somewhat tart: they open them as they do eggs, and the liquor is supped off with great delight, both by the Indians and Spaniards, (as Monardus witnesseth) neither if they sup off many of them shall they find their stomach oppressed, but rather their bellies are gently loosened. In this fruit are contained many seeds somewhat like pear kernels, but more cornered and rough.

This grows wild in most of the hot countries of America, from whence it hath been brought into our English gardens, where it grows very well, but flowers only in some few places and in hot and seasonable years: it is in good plenty growing with Mistress Tuggy at Westminster, where I have some years seen it bear a great many flowers.

CHAP. 2. Of Ribes or Red Currants.

1 *Ribes vulgare fructu rubro.*
Red Currans.



Fig. 2211. Red Currants (1)

2 *Ribes fructu albo.*
White Currans.



Fig. 2212. White Currants (2)

The Description.

1. The plant which carries the fruit which we commonly term redcurrants, is a shrubby bush of the bigness of a Gooseberry bush, but without prickles: the wood is soft and white, with a pretty large pith in the middle: it is covered with a double bark, the undermost, being the thicker, is green, and the uppermost, which sometimes chaps and peels off, is of a brownish colour, and smooth: the bark of the youngest shoots is whitish and tough: the leaves, which grow upon footstalks some two inches long, are somewhat like Vine leaves, but smaller by much, and less cornered, being cut into three, and sometimes, but seldomer, into five parts, somewhat thick, with many veins running over them, greener above than they are below: of the branches in spring time grow stalks hanging down some six inches in length, carrying many little greenish flowers, which are succeeded by little red berries, clear and smooth, of the bigness of the whortleberries, of a pleasant tart taste. Of this kind there is another, only different from this in the fruit, which is twice so big as that of the common kind.

2. The bush which bears the white currants is commonly straighter and bigger than the former: the leaves are lesser, the flowers whiter, and so also is the fruit, being clear and transparent, with a little blackish rough end.

3. Besides these there is another, which differs little from the former in shape, yet grows somewhat higher, and hath lesser leaves: the flowers are of a purplish green colour, and are succeeded by fruit as big again as the ordinary red, but of a stinking and somewhat loathing savour: the leaves also are not without this stinking smell.

The Place, Time, and Names.

None of these grow wild with us, but they are to be found plentifully growing in many gardens, especially the two former, the red and the white.

The leaves and flowers come forth in the spring, and the fruit is ripe about midsummer.

This plant is thought to have been unknown to the ancient Greeks: some think it the *Ribes* of the Arabian Serapio. Fuchsius, Matthiolus, and some other deny it; notwithstanding Dodonæus affirms it: neither is the controversy easily to be decided, because the author is brief in the description thereof, neither have we his words but by the hand of a barbarous translator. However the shops of late time take it (the faculties consenting thereto) for the true *Ribes*, and of the fruit thereof prepare their *Rob de Ribes*. Dodonæus calls it *Ribesium*, *Grossularia rubra*, & *Grossularia transmarina*; and they are distinguished into three sorts, *Ribesia Rubra*, *Alba*, *Nigra*, Red, White, and Black Currants: the Germans call them **S. Johans traubell**, or **traublin**, and **S. Johans Beerlin**: the Dutch, **Besikins over Zee**: the Italians, *Uvetta rossa*: the French, *Groiselles*, *Groiselles d'oultre mer*: the Bohemians, **Jahodi S. Jana**: the English, Red Currants: yet must they not be confounded with those Currants which are brought from Zante, and the continent adjoining thereto, and which are vulgarly sold by our Grocers; for they are the fruit of a small Vine, and differ much from these.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The berries of red Currants, as also of the white, are cold and dry in the end of the second degree, and have some astringency, together with tenuity of parts.

B. They extinguish and mitigate feverish heats, repress cholera, temper the overhot blood, resist putrefaction, quench thirst, help the dejection of the appetite, stay choleric vomitings and scourings, and help the dysentery proceeding of an hot cause.

C. The juice of these boiled to the height of honey, either with or without sugar (which is called *Rob de Ribes*) hath the same qualities, and conduces to the same purposes.

CHAP. 3. Of Parsley Break-Stone, and Bastard Rupturewort.

I Thought it was not altogether inconvenient to couple these two plants together in one chapter; first, because they are of one stature; and secondly, taken out of one and the same history of plants, to wit, the *Adversaria* of Pena and Lobel.

1 *Percepier Anglorum Lob.*
Parsley Breake-stone.



Fig. 2213. Parsley Break-Stone (1)

2 *Polygonū Herniarie facie.*
Bastard Rupture-wort.



Fig. 2214. Bastard Rupturewort (2)

The Description

1. The first of these, which the authors of the *Adversaria* set forth by the name of *Percepier*, (and rather assert, than affirm to be the *Scandix* of the ancients) is by Tabernamontanus called *Scandix minor* and by Fabius Columna, *Alchimilla montana minima*. It hath a small woody yellowish fibrous root from which rise up one, two, or more little stalks, seldom exceeding the height of an handful, and these are round and hairy, and upon them grow little roundish leaves, like the tender leaves of Chervil, but hairy, and of a whitish green colour, fastened to the stalks with short footstalks, and having little ears at their setting on: the flowers are small, green, and five-cornered, many clustering together at the setting on of the leaves: the seed is small, smooth, and yellowish: the stalks of this plant grow sometimes upright, and otherwhiles they lean on the ground: it is to be found upon divers dry and barren grounds, as in Hyde Parke, Tothill Fields, &c. It flowers in May, and ripens the seed in June and July. It seems by the authors of the *Adversaria*, that in the West country about Bristol they call this herb *Percepier*; but our herb women in Cheapside know it by the name of Parsley Breakstone.

A. This is hot and dry, and of subtle parts: it vehemently and speedily moves urine, and by some is kept in pickle, and eaten as a salad.

B. The distilled water is also commended to be effectual to move urine, and cleanse the kidneys of gravel.

2. The history of this, by the forementioned authors, *Adversaria*. pag. 404. is thus set forth under this title, *Polygonium herniarie foliis & facie, perampla radice astragalitidi*: Neither (say they) ought this to be despised by such as are studious of the knowledge of plants; for it is very little known, being a very small herb lying along upon the ground, and almost overwhelmed or covered with the grass, having little branches very full of joints: the little leaves and seeds are whitish, and very like those of *Herniaria*, or Rupturewort: the whole plant is white, having a very small and male

flower: the root is larger than the smallness of the plant seemeth to require, hard, branched, diversely turning and winding, and therefore hard to be plucked up: the taste is dry and hottish. It grows upon a large plain in Provençe, between the cities Arles and Selon. Thus much Pena and Lobel. I am deceived, if some few years agoe I was not showed this plant, gathered in some part of this kingdom, but where, I am not able to affirm.

CHAP. 4. Of Heath Spurge and Rock Rose.

1 *Sanamunda* 1. *Cluf.*
Heath Spurge.



Fig. 2215. Heath Spurge (1)

2 *Sanamunda* 2. *Cluf.*
The second Heath Spurge.



Fig. 2216. 2nd Heath Spurge (2)

The Description.

1. These plants by right should have followed the history of *Thymelæa*, for in shape and faculty they are not much unlike it. The first is a low shrub, sending from one root many branches of some cubit long, and these bending, flexible, and covered with an outer blackish bark, which comprehends another within, tough, and which may be divided into fine threads: the leaves are like those of *Chamælea*, yet lesser, shorter and thicker, a little rough also, and growing about the branches in a certain order: if you chew them they are gummy, bitter at the first, and afterwards hot and biting: the flowers grow amongst the leaves, longish, yellowish, and divided at the end into four little leaves: the fruit is said to be like that of *Thymelæa*, but of a blackish colour, the root is thick and woody. It grows frequently in the kingdom of Grenada and Valencia in Spain, it flowers in March and April. The herbarists there name it *Sanamunda*, and the common people, *Mierda-cruz*, by reason of the purging faculty.

2. The other is a shrub some cubit high, having tough flexible branches covered with a dense and thick bark, which, the outward rind being taken away, over all the plant, but chiefly next the root, may be drawn into threads like Flax or Hemp: the upper branches are set with thick, short, fat, rough sharp pointed leaves, of somewhat a saltish taste at the first, afterwards of a hot & biting taste: the flowers are many, little and yellow: the root is thick and woody like as that of the former: this grows upon the sea coast of Spain, and on the mountains nigh Grenada, where they call it *Sanamunda*, and the common people about Gibraltar call it *Burhalaga*, and they only use it to heat their

ovens with. It flowers in February. Anguillara called this, *Empetron*: Cæsalpinus, *Cneoron*, and in the *Historia Lugdunensis* it is the *Cneoron nigrum myconi*: *Sesamoides minus*: *Dalechampii*, and *Phacoides*, *Oribasii quibusdam*.

3 *Sanamunda* 3. *Clus.*
The third Heath Spurge.



Fig. 2217. The 3rd Heath Spurge (3)

4 *Cneoron Matthioli.*
Rocke Rose.



Fig. 2218. Rock Rose (4)

3. This is bigger than either of the two former, having whiter and more flexible branches, whose bark is unmeasurably tough and hard to break: the upper branches are many, and those very downy, and hanging down their heads, set thick with little leaves like Stonecrop, and of the like hot or burning faculty: the flowers are like those of the former; sometimes greenish, otherwhiles yellow: Clusius did not observe the fruit, but saith, it flowered at the same time with the former, and grew in all the sea coast from the Straits of Gibraltar, to the Pyrennean mountains. Alphonsus Pantius called this *Cneoron*: Lobel and Tabernamontanus call it *Erica alexandrina*.

4. This also may not unfitly be joined to the former, for it hath many tender flexible tough branches commonly leaning or lying along upon the ground, upon which without order grow leaves green, skinny, and like those of the true *Thymelæa*; at first of an ungrateful, and afterwards of a bitter taste, yet having none or very little acrimony (as far as may be perceived by their taste): the flowers grow upon the tops of the branches six, seven or more together, consisting of four little leaves of a reddish purple colour, very beautiful and well smelling, yet offending the head if they be long smelt unto: these are succeeded by small berries, of colour white, containing a round seed, covered with an ash-coloured skin. The root is long, of the thickness of one's little finger, sometimes blackish, yet most commonly yellowish, tough, and smallest at the top where the branches come forth. It flowers in April and May and ripens the fruit in June: it flowers sometimes thrice in the year, and ripens the fruit twice; for Clusius

affirms that twice in one year he gathered ripe berries from one and the same plant. It grows plentifully upon the mountainous places of Austria about Vienna, whither the country women bring the flowers to the market in great plenty to sell them to deck up houses: it grows also in the dry meadows by Frankfort on the Main, where there is observed a variety with white flowers. Matthiolus would have this to be the *Cneoron album* of Theophrastus: Cordus calls it *Thymælia minor*: it is the *Cneoron alterum matthioli*, and *Oleander sylvestre avicennæ myconi*, in the *Hist. Lugd.* The Germans call it **Stein Roselin**: and we may call it Rock Rose, or dwarf Oleander.

5 *Cneorum album folijs argenteis.*
White Rocke Rose.



Fig. 2219. White Rock Rose (5)

5. This plant by Bauhine is called *Cneorum album folio oleo argenteo molli*: and by Dalechampius, *Cneorum album*, which hath been the reason I have put it here, although Cæsalpinus, Imperatus, and Plateau, who sent it to Clusius, would have it to be and call it *Dorychnium*: It is a shrubby herb sending from one root many single stalks some half cubit or better high: the leaves which grow upon the stalks without order, are like those of the Olive, but somewhat narrower, and covered over with a soft downiness: at the top of the stalks grow many flowers clustering together, of the shape of those of the lesser Bindweed, but white of colour. This grows wild in some parts of Sicily, whence Cæsalpinus calls it *Dorychnium ex Sicilia*.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The three first are very hot, and two first have a strong purging faculty, for taken in the weight of a dram with the decotion of Cicers they mightily purge by stool, both phlegm, choler, and also waterish humours, and they are often used for this purpose by the country people in some parts of Spain. The faculties of the rest are not known, nor written of by any as yet.

CHAP. 5. Of Bastard Dwarf Box.

Chamæbuxus flore Coluteæ.
Bastard dwarfe box.



Fig. 2220. Bastard Dwarf Box

The Description.

This which Clusius for want of a name calls *anonymos flore coluteæ*, Gesner called *Chamæbuxus*, to which Bauhine adds *flore coluteæ*; and Besler in his *Hortus Eysettensis*, agreeable to the name I have given it in English, calls it *Pseudochamæbuxus*. It is a small plant having many creeping woody tough roots, here and there sending forth small fibres; from these arise many tough bending branches some span long, having thick sharp pointed green leaves, almost like those of Box; and these grow upon the stalks without any order, and when you first chew them they are of an ungrateful taste, afterwards bitter and hot; at the tops of the branches, do come forth amongst the leaves three or four longish flowers, for the most part without smell; yet in some places they smell sweet, like as some of the Narcisses; they consist of three leaves apiece; two whereof are white, and spread abroad as wings, a whitish little hood covering their lower ends: the third is wrapped up in form of a pipe, with the end hollow & crooked, and this is of a yellow colour, which by age oft-times becomes wholly red: after those flowers succeed cods, broad and flat, little less than those of the broad-leaved *Thlaspi*, and green of colour, rough, and in each of these cods are commonly contained a couple of seeds, of the bigness of little Chichlings, of a blackish ash colour, rough, and resembling a little dug.

This is sometimes found to vary, having the two winged leaves yellow or red, and the middle one yellow.

The Time, Place and Virtues.

It flowers in April and May, and ripens the seed in June; it grows upon most of the Austrian and Styrian Alps, and in divers places of Hungary. It is neither used in physic, nor the faculties thereof in medicine known.

CHAP. 6. Of Winged Bindweed, or Quamoclit.

Quamoclit, five Convolvulus Pennatus.
Winged Windweed.



Fig. 2221. Winged Bindweed

The Description.

The first that writ of and described this plant was Cæsalpinus, & that by the name of *Gelsimium rubrum alterum*: after him Camerarius gave a description and figure thereof in his *Hortus Medicus*, by the name of *Quamoclit*: and after him Fabius Canova both figured and described it more accurately, whose description is put to the figure of it (we here give) in Clusius his *Curæ Posteriores*. It is so tender a plant that it will not come to any perfection with us, unless in extraordinary hot years, and by other artificial helps, wherefore I will borrow the description thereof out of Fabius Columna. This exotic plant, saith he, cannot more fitly be referred to any kind, than to the family of the *Convolvuli* or Bindweeds, for in the nature and whole habit it is almost like them, excepting the shape of the winged leaves: it is stored with less milk: the flowers are long, hollow, but parted into five at the top, of a pleasing red colour, with streaked lines or folds, standing upon long stalks one or two together coming out of the bosoms of the leaves at each joint of the branches, and they have in them five yellowish pointels; then succeeds a longish fruit standing in a scaly cup, ending in a sharp pointel, and covered with a tough skin, as that of the common *Convolvulus*, but lesser, having within it four longish black hard seeds, of a biting taste. The leaves grow alternately out of the joints of the purple winding branches, being winged and finely divided, twice as small as the common *Rheseda*, of a dark green colour, but the young ones are yellowish, first having a few divisions, but afterwards more, till they come to have thirteen on a side, and one at the top: but the lower ones are oft-times forked: by reason of the great plenty of leaves and flowering stalks or branches, winding themselves about artificial hoops, crossings, or other fashioned works of reeds or the like, set for winding herbs to climb upon, it much delights the eye of the beholder, and is therefore kept in pots in gardens of pleasure. The seed sown in the beginning of the spring grows up in June, and the first

leaves resemble the winged fruit of the Maple: it flowers in the end of August, and ripens the seed in the end of September.

CHAP. 7. Of the Sensitive Herb.



Fig. 2222. The Sensitive Herb.



Fig. 2223. A better figure of the Sensitive Herb.

The Description.

This which I here call the sensitive herb; is that which Christopher Acosta sets forth by the name of *Herba mimosa*, or the Mocking Herb, because when one puts his hand thereto it forthwith seems to wither and hang down the leaves; but when you take it away again it recovers the pristine greenness and vigour. I will here give you that which Acosta writes thereof, & the figure & history which Clusius gives in his notes upon him; and also another figure better expressing the leaves and manner of growing. There is found (saith Acosta) in some gardens another plant some five handfuls long, resting upon the neighbouring shrubs or walls, having a slender stalk of a fresh green colour, not very round, set at certain spaces with small and pricking thorns: the leaves are not unlike the former, [That is, the *Herba viva*, which in condition is little different from this] being somewhat lesser than those of the Female Fern. It loves to grow in moist and stoney places, and is called *Herba mimosa*, for the reason formerly given. The nature hereof is much different from that of *Arbor tristis*, for every night at sunset it as it were withers and dries, so that one would think it were dead, but at sunrise it recovers the former vigour, and by how much the sun grows hotter, by so much it becomes the greener, and all the day it turns the leaves to the sun.

A. This plant hath the smell and taste of Liquorice, and the leaves are commonly eaten by the Indians against the cough, to cleanse the chest, & clear the voice: it is also thought good against the pains of the kidneys, and to heal green wounds. Thus much Acosta.

Now, saith Clusius, the leaves of many plants, especially pulses, use to contract or shrink up their leaves in the night time. Now I received a dry plant, which was sent to me by the name of *Herba mimosa*, by James Garret in the end of October, 1599, which he writ he had of the right Honourable the Earl of Cumberland, who returning from Saint John de Puerto Rico in the West Indies, brought it put in a pot with some earth, but could not preserve it live. But I caused the figure of that dried plant to be expressed as well as it might, so to fit it to the description following, made also by the dried plant. This plant which was wholly dry and without leaves had a single root, and that not thick, but hard and woody, with few fibres, from whence arose three or four short stalks, which straight divided themselves into slender branches, which spread themselves round about upon the ground, at each joint putting forth many long and slender fibres, like as in the branches of the common Woodbine, which lie upon the ground: these branches were a cubit long, and sometimes more, round, tough, with some prickles, broader at their setting on, as you may see in the common bramble, yet lesser, fewer, & less firm; these again were divided into other more slender branches set with many little prickles, out of whose joints betwixt two little leaves grew forth footstalks, bedecked with their little leaves, which were many, set in order, with other to answer to them on the other side, but having no single leaf at the end: they were tender & green, not unlike the little leaves of *Acacia*, & these (at the first coming out) covered with a thin whitish hairiness, as I gathered by a little branch retaining the footstalk and leaves thereon (which he sent with the former) and it had also some fibres coming forth thereof. He also added to the former two little heads, which growing upon the same plant, he writ he received of the forementioned right honourable Earl, with some branches yet retaining the leaves. These little heads consisted of many slender, narrow, and as it were prickly little leaves; amongst which lay hid round seeds, smooth, black, and somewhat swollen in the middle: the flowers I saw not, neither know I whether they were brought with the rest: but whether the leaves of this plant being green, & yet growing on the ground, do wither at the approach of one's hand, as Christopher Acosta writes, and for that cause imposes the name thereon, they best know who have seen the green and yet growing plant: for the faculties you may have recourse to that which Acosta hath set down. Thus much out of Clusius.

November 7, 1632. I being with Mr Job Best at the Trinity House in Ratcliffe; among other varieties, he showed me a dry plant hereof, which I heedfully observed, and carefully opening out some of the fairest leaves, which (as also the whole plant besides) were carelessly dried, I found the leaves grew usually some dozen or more on a footstalk, just as many on one side as on the other; & they were covered over with a little downiness, which standing out on their edges made them look as if they had been snipped about the edges, which they were not: also I found at every joint two little hooked prickles, & not two little leaves or appendices at the setting on of the footstalks, but three or four little leaves, as the rudiment of a young branch, coming forth at the bosom of each footstalk: the longest branch (as far as I remember) was not above a span long; I then drew as perfect a figure as I could of the perfectest branch thereof, drawing as near as I could the leaves to their full bigness, the which I here present you withal. There are two figures formerly extant, the one of Clusius which I here give you, and the other in the 18th Book and 44th Chapter out of Acosta, and this seems to be so far different from that of Clusius, that Bauhine in his *Pinax* saith, *Clusius notis suis in Acosta diversam plane figuram proposuit, herbam mimosam nominans*:["Clusius in his notes on Acosta gives an entirely different figure, calling it mimicking herb"] but he did not well consider it, for if he had, he might have found these so much different, thus far to agree; they both make the branches prickly & weak: the leaves many on one rib,

one opposite to another without an odd one at the end: but Clusius figures the leaves so close together, that they seem but one leaf, and Acosta makes them too far asunder, and both of them make them too sharp pointed; Clusius made his be taken from a dried plant, and Acosta I judge made his by the idea thereof which he had in his mernory, and after this manner, if my judgement fail me not, are most of the figures in him expressed: but of this enough, if not too much.

CHAP. 8. Of the Staff Tree, and Evergreen Privet.

1 *Celastrus Theophrasti.*
The staffe tree.



Fig. 2224. Staff Tree (1)

2 *Phillyrea* 1. *Clus.*
Clusius his 1. *Mocke-Privet.*



Fig. 2225. Clusius' Mock-Privet (2)

The Description.

1. The history and figure of this tree are set forth in Clusius his *Curæ Poster.*, and there it is asserted to be the *Kelasros* or *Kelasron* of Theophrastus, for by divers places in Theophrastus there collected, it is evident that his *Celastus* was evergreen, grew upon very high and cold mountains, yet might be transplanted into plain and milder places, that it flowered exceeding late and could not perfect the fruit by reason of the nigh approach of winter, and that it was fit for no other use but to make staves on for old men.

Now this tree grows but to a small height, having a firm and hard body, dividing itself at the top into sundry branches, which being young are covered with a green bark, but waxing old with a brownish one; it hath many leaves, growing always one against another, and thick together, of a deep shining green above, and lighter underneath, keeping their verdure both winter and summer: they are of the bigness of those of *Alaternus*, not snipped about the edges, but only a little nicked, when they are yet young; at the top of the tenderest branches among the leaves, upon footstalks of some inch long, grow five or six little flowers consisting commonly of five little leaves of a yellowish green colour, and these show themselves in the end of autumn, or the beginning of winter, and also in the beginning of the spring; but if the summer be cold and moist it shows the buds of the flowers in October; the fruit grows on a short stalk and is a berry of the bigness of the Myrtle, first green, then red, of the colour of that of *Asparagus*, and lastly black when it is withered: the stone within the berry is little, and

as it were three-cornered, containing a kernel covered with a yellow film. Where this grows wild I know not, but it was first taken notice of in the public garden at the University of Leyden, from whence it was brought into some few gardens of this kingdom.

2. The first *Phyllyria* of Clusius, may fitly be referred to the rest of the same tribe and name described formerly in the 59th chapter of the the third book. It grows somewhat taller than the Scarlet Oak, and hath branches of the thickness of one's thumb or somewhat more, and those covered with a green bark marked with whitish spots; the leaves somewhat resemble those of the Scarlet Oak, but greater, greener, thicker, somewhat prickly about the edges, of an astringent taste, but not ungrateful. The flower thereof Clusius did not see, the fruit is a little black berry, hanging down out from the bosom of the leaves, and containing a kernel or stone therein. It grows wild in many wild places of Portugal, where they call it *Azebo*.

The temperature and virtues are referred to those set down in the formerly mentioned chapter.

CHAP. 9. Of Mock Willow.

Speiraea Theophrasti, Clus.
Mocke-Willow.



Fig. 2226. Mock Willow

The Description.

This Willow-Leaved shrub, which Clusius conjectures may be referred to the *Speiraea* mentioned by Theophrastus, *lib. 1. cap. 23. Hist. Plant.*, I have named in English, Mock Willow, how fitly I know not; but if any will impose a fitter name I shall be well pleased therewith; but to the thing itself. It is a shrub, (saith Clusius) some two cubits high, having slender branches or twigs covered over with a reddish bark, whereon grow many leaves without order, long, narrow, like those of the Willow, snapped about the edges, of a light green above, and of a bluish green underneath, of a drying taste conjoined with some bitterness. The tops of the branches for some fingers' length carry thick spikes of small flowers clustering together, and consisting of five leaves apiece, out of whose middle come forth many little threads of a whitish red or flesh colour, together with the flower, having no peculiar smell, but such as is in the flower of the Olive tree; these flowers fading there succeed small five-cornered heads, which coming to full maturity contain a small and yellowish dusty seed: it flowers in July, and ripens the seed in the end of August. Clusius had this plant from Frederick Sebisius physician to the Duke of Briga, and that from Briga in Silesia, and he (as I said) refers it to the *Speiraia* of Theophrastus, which he reckons amongst the shrubs that carry spike-fashioned flowers.

This is not used in medicine, nor the temperature and faculties thereof as yet known.

CHAP. 10. Of the Strawberry Bay.

Adrachne Theophrasti.
The Strawberry-Bay.



Fig. 2227. Strawberry Bay

The Description.

The figure and history of this were sent by Honorius Bellus out of Candy to Clusius, from whom I have it. It is that which Theophrastus calls *Adrachne* or (as most of the printed books have it), *Andrachne*, but the former seems the righter, and is the better liked by Pliny, *lib. 1, cap. 22*. At this day in Candy where it plentifully grows, it is called *Adracla*. It is rather a shrub than a tree, delighting in rocky and mountainous places, and keeping green winter and summer, having leaves so like those of Bays, that they are distinguishable only by the smell, which these are destitute of. The bark of the bole and all the branches is so smooth, red and shining, that they show like branches of Coral, this bark cracks or breaks off in summer, and peels off in thin flakes, at which time it is neither red nor shining but in a mean between yellow and ash colour. It hath flowers twice in a year like as the *Arbutus*, or Strawberry tree, and that so like it, that you can scarce know the one from the other; yet this differs from it in that it grows only in the mountains, hath not the leaves jagged, neither a rough bark; the wood hereof is very hard, and so brittle that it will not bend, and they use it to burn and to make whorls for their women's spindles. Theophrastus reckons up this tree amongst those which die not when their barks are taken off, and are always green, and retain their leaves at their tops all winter long: which to be so Honorius Bellus observed. Bellonius also observed this tree in many places of Syria.

The fruit in temperature, as in shape, is like that of the Strawberry Tree.

CHAP. 11. Of the Cherry-Bay.

Laurocerasi flos.
The Cherry-bay in floure.

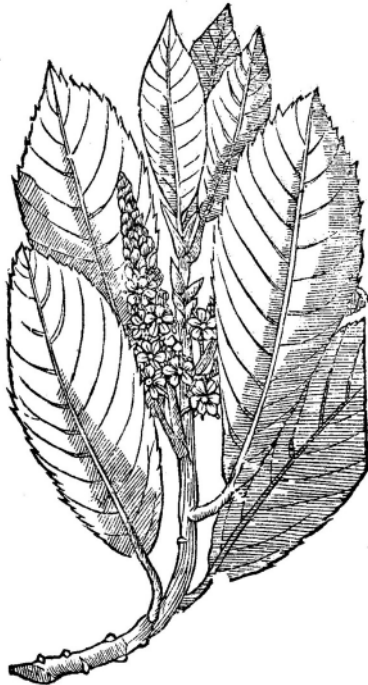


Fig. 2228. The Cherry-Bay in flower

Laurocerasi fructus.
The Cherry-bay with the fruit.



Fig. 2229. The Cherry-Bay with fruit

The Description.

The Cherry-Bay is one of the evergreen trees: it rises up to an indifferent height, and is divided into sundry branches, covered over with a swart green bark: that of the younger shoots is wholly green, the leaves alternately engirt the branches, & they are long, smooth, thick, green, and snipped also lightly about the edges: when the tree is grown to some height, at the tops of the branches among the leaves of the former year's growth, upon a sprig of some finger's length, it puts forth a great many little white flowers, consisting of five leaves apiece, with many little chives in them: these flowers quickly fall away, and the fruit that succeeds them is a berry of an oval figure, of the bigness of a large Cherry or Damson, and of the same colour, and of a sweet and pleasant taste, with a stone in it like to a Cherry stone. This flowers in May, and ripens the fruit in August or September: it was first sent to Clusius from Constantinople, and that by the name of *Trabison curmasi*. i.e. *Trapezuntina dactylus*, the Date of Trabizond; but it hath no affinity with the Date. Dalechampius refers it to the second *Lotus* mentioned by Theophrastus, *Hist Plant. lib. 4. cap. 4*, but therewith it doth not agree. Clusius and most since, call it fitly *Laurocerasus* or *Laurino cerasus folio*. It is now got into many of our choice English gardens, where it is well respected for the beauty of the leaves and their lasting or continual greenness.

The fruit hereof is good to be eaten, but what physical virtues the tree or leaves thereof have, it is not yet known.

CHAP. 12. Of the Evergreen Thorn.

This plant which Lobel and some other late writers have called by the name of *Pyracantha*, is the *Oxyacantha* mentioned by Theophrastus, *lib. 1. cap. 15 & lib. 3. cap. 4. Hist. Plant.*, among the evergreen trees, and I think rather this than our Whitethorn to be the *Oxyacantha* of Dioscorides *lib. 1. c. 123*; and certainly it was no other than this Thorn which Virgil makes mention of by the name of *Acanthus*, *lib. 2. Georg.* in these words, *Et baccas semper frondentis Acanthi*. That is, And the berries of the Evergreen Thorn.

Oxyacantha Theophrasti.
The Euer-greene Thorne.



Fig. 2230. Evergreen Thorn

The Description.

This grows up like a bush, unless you keep it with pruning, and then it will in time grow to the height of a small tree, as the Hawthorn, whereto it is of affinity, for the wood is white and hard, like it, and covered over with the like bark; but the leaves are somewhat like those of the Damson tree, longish, sharp pointed, and snipped about the edges: & they grow alongst the branches, without any order, yet sometimes they keep this manner of growing: at each knot, where commonly there is a sharp prickle, grows out one of the larger leaves, which may be some inch and half long, and some three quarters of an inch broad: then upon the prickle, and at the coming out thereof are three or four, more or less, much smaller leaves: now these leaves are of a fair and shining green above, but paler underneath, and they keep on all the year: At the ends, and oft-times in the middles of the branches, come forth clusters or umbels of little whitish-blush coloured flowers, consisting of five leaves apiece, with some little chives in their middles: then follow clusters of berries, in shape, taste, and bigness like those of the Hawthorn, and of the same, but much more orient and pleasing colour, and containing in them the like seed: now these berries hang long upon the tree, & make a gallant show amongst the green leaves, and chiefly then, whenas the autumn blasts have

deprived other trees of their wonted verdure. This flowers in May and June, and ripens the fruit in September and October: it grows wild in sundry places of Italy, and Provence in France, but is kept in gardens with us, where it is held in good esteem for his ever greenness and pliableness to any work or form you desire to impose upon him.

The fruit have the same faculties that are formerly attributed to Haws, in the foregoing book, and therefore I will not here repeat them.

CHAP. 13. Of the Egyptian Nap, or Great Jujube Tree.

Oenoplianon spinosa.
The great Iuibes tree.

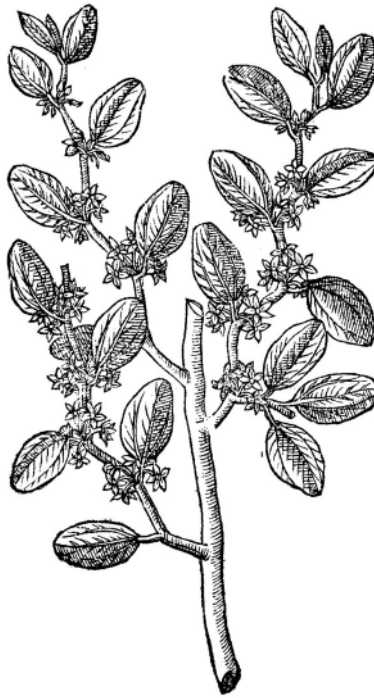


Fig. 2231. Great Jujube Tree

The Description.

This tree, which for his leaves and manner of growing I think may fitly be referred to the Jujube tree, is of two sorts; that is, the one prickly, and the other not prickly, in other respects they are both alike, so that one figure and history may serve for them both; which I will give you out of Clusius, who received this figure together with a description thereof from Honorius Bellus, and also added thereto that which Prosper Alpinus hath written of it in his *De Plant. Ægypt. 5th chap.* It grows to the height of an indifferent Pear tree, and the body and branches thereof are covered with a whitish ash-coloured bark: the leaves are like those of the Jujube tree, two inches long, and one broad, with three nerves running alongst them; of a deep shining green above, and more whitish underneath: and they grow alternately upon the branches: and at their coming forth grow tufts of little white flowers hanging upon single long footstalks: after these follows the fruit like unto a small apple, of the bigness for the most part of a large cherry, and sometimes as big as a walnut, of a sweet taste, containing therein a kernel or stone like that of an olive. It bears fruit twice a year, for it hath ripe fruit both in the spring and fall; yet the vernal fruit seldom comes to good, by reason of the too much moislure of the season, which causes it to become worm-eaten. The thorny kind is described by Alpinus, who rightly judges it the *Connarus* of Athenæus, but the figure he gives is not very accurate. That which wants prickles grows (as well as the prickly one) in Egypt and Syria, as also in the city Rethymno in Candy, whither it was brought out of Syria.

The history of both these trees is in Serapio by the name of *Sadar*: but he, according to his custom confounds it with the *Lotus* of Dioscorides, from which it very much differs. Bellonius in his second book, and 79th chap. of his *Observations*, reckons

up *Napeca* amongst the trees that are always green: which is true, in those that grow in Egypt and Syria; but false in such as grow in Candy. That tree in Egypt and Syria is called *Nep*, or *Nap*. Alpinia calls it *Paliurus athenæi*, or *Nabca ægyptorum*, thinking it (as I formerly said) the *Connarus* mentioned in the 14th book of Athenæus his *Deipnosophists*.

The Virtues out of Alpinus.

A. The fruit is of a cold and dry faculty, and the unripe ones are frequently used to strengthen the stomach, and stop lasks: the juice of them being for this purpose either taken by the mouth, or injected by clyster: of the same fruit dried and macerated in water is made an infusion profitable against the relaxation and ulceration of the guts.

B. The decoction or infusion of the ripe dried fruit, is of a very frequent use against all pestilent fevers: for they affirm that this fruit hath a wonderful efficacy against venenate qualities, and putrefaction, and that it powerfully strengthens the heart.

C. Also the juice of the perfectly ripe fruit is very good to purge choler forth of the stomach and first veins: and they willingly use an infusion made of them in all putrid fevers to mitigate their heat or burning.

CHAP. 14. Of the Persian Plum.

Persea arbor.
The Persian Plum.



Fig. 2231. Persian Plum

The Description.

This tree is thought by Clusius (to whom I am beholden for the history and figure) to be the *Persea arbor* mentioned by Pliny and Plutarch, but he somewhat doubts whether it be that which is mentioned by Theophrastus. Dioscorides also, Galen and Strabo make mention of the *Persea arbor*, and they all make it a tree always green, having a longish fruit shut up in the shell and coat of an almond: with which how this agrees you may see by this description of Clusius.

This tree (saith he) is like to a Pear tree, spreading itself far abroad, and being always green, having branches of a yellowish green colour. The leaves are like those of the broadest-leaved Bay tree, green above, and of a grayish colour underneath, firm, having some nerves running obliquely, of a good taste and smell, yet biting the tongue with a little astringency. The flowers are like those of the Bay, growing many thick together, and consist of six small whitish yellow leaves. The fruit at the first is like a plum, and afterwards it becomes pear-fashioned, of a black colour, and pleasant taste: it hath in it a heart-fashioned kernel, in taste not unlike a chestnut, or sweet almond. I found it flowering in the spring, and I understood the fruit was ripe in autumn, by the relation of Sig. John Placa, physician and professor of Valencia, who showed me the tree growing in the garden of a monastery a mile from Valencia, brought thither, as they say, out of America; and he said they called it *Mamay*; but the Spaniards who have described America give this name to another tree. But divers years after, I understood by the most learned Simon de Tovar, a physician of Seville, who hath the same tree in his garden, with other exotic plants, that it is not called *Mamay*, but *Aguacate*. Thus much out of Clusius; where such as are desirous, may find more largely handled the question, whither this be the *Persea* of the ancients or no? *Rariorum Plant. Hist. lib. 1. c. 2.*

CHAP. 15. Of Gesner's Wild Quince.

Cotonafter Gesneri.
Gesners wilde Quince



Fig. 2233. Gesner's Wild Quince

The Description.

The shrub which I here figure out of Clusius, is thought both by him and others to be the *Cotonastrum* or *Cidonago* mentioned by Gesner in his *Epistles*, lib. 3. pag. 88. It hath branches some cubit long, tough, and bare of leaves in their lower parts, covered with a black bark: and towards the tops of the branches grow leaves somewhat like those of Quinces: of a dark green above, and whitish underneath, snipped about the edges: at the tops of the branches grow usually many flowers, consisting of five purplish coloured leaves apiece, with some threads in their middles: these decaying, under them grow up red dry berries without any pulp or juice, each of them containing four triangular seeds. Clusius found this flowering in June upon the tops of the Austrian Alps, and he questions whether it were not this which Bellonius found in the mountains of Candy, and called *Agriomælea*, lib. 1. cap. 17. This is not used in physic, nor the faculties thereof known.

CHAP. 16. Of Tamarind.

Tamarindus.
The Tamarinde.



Fig. 2234. Tamarind

Tamarindis fliqua.
The cod of the Tamarinde.

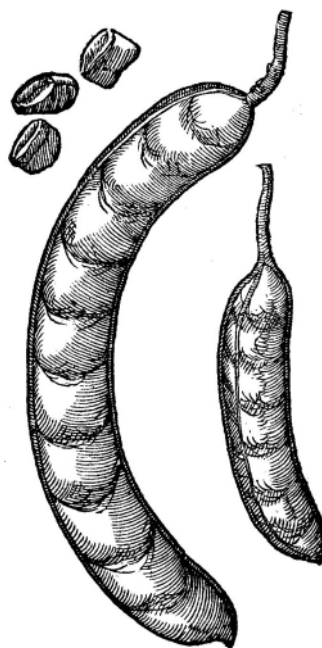


Fig. 2235. Tamarind Fruit

The Description.

Tamarinds, which at this day are a medicine frequently used, and vulgarly known in shops, were not known to the ancient Greeks, but to some of the later, as Actuarius, and that by the name of *Oxyphœnicæ*, that is, sour dates, drawn as it may seem from the Arabic appellation, *Tamarindi*, that is, Indian Date: but this name is unproper, neither tree nor fruit being of any affinity with the Date, unless the Arabic *Tamar* be a word used in composition for fruits of many kinds, as the Greek *melon*, the Latin *malum*, and apple with us in English; for we call the cone of the Pine, and excrescence of the Oak leaf, by the name of Pine apple, and Oak apple. But howsoever it be, it is no matter for the name, whether it be proper or no, if so be that it serve to distinguish the thing from others, and we know what is denoted by it. In Malabar they call it *Puti*: in Gujerat, *Amibili*, by which name it is known in most parts of the East Indies. This tree is thus described by Prosper Alpinus, *De Plant. Ægypt. Cap. 10*. The Tamarind (saith he) is a tree of the bigness of a Plum tree, with many boughs and leaves like those of the Myrtle, many standing upon one rib, one against another, with a single one at the end: it carrieth white flowers very like those of the Orange tree: out of whose middle comes forth some white and very slender threads: after these come thick and large cods, at first green, but when they are ripe of an ash colour; and within these are contained thick, hard, brownish, cornered seeds, and a black acid pulp. These trees grow in some few gardens of Egypt, whither they have been brought out of Arabia and Ethiopia. This plant hath this strange quality that the leaves always follow the sun, and when it sets they all contract themselves, and open out themselves again at the rising thereof; and there is observed to be such force in this motion, that they closely shut up and hold their cods (if any be on the tree) and then at the rising of the sun they forgo

them again. But I have observed this folding up of the leaves to be common to divers other Egyptian plants, as *Acacia*, *Abrus*, *Absus*, and *Sesban*. Thus much out of Alpinus.

The figure I here give in the first place out of Lobel, is of a plant some six months old, arisen of a seed, and such sowing of seeds I have seen growing in the garden of my deceased friend Mr Tuggy, but they still died at the first approach of winter. The other figure expresses the cods, and some of the seeds apart, taken forth of the cods: now the cods are never brought whole to us, but the outer rinds are taken off, and the strings or nerves that run amongst the cods: the pulp and seeds in it are close thrust together and so are brought to us in pots and such like vessels.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. The fruit or pulp of Tamarinds is cold and dry in the third degree: it is of good use in choleric diseases as burning fevers, tertians, and the like: it is a lenitive and very gently purging medicine and therefore used to be put into medicines serving to that purpose.

B. They use (saith Alpinus) the leaves of Tamarinds to kill worms, in young children; and also their infusion or decoction to loosen the belly: the leaves are acid, and not unpleasant unto the taste.

C. The Arabians preserve the small and yet green cods of this tree, as also the ripe ones, either with sugar, or the honey boiled out of the fruit of the Carob tree: they also mix the pulp with sugar, which travellers carry with them in their journeys through the desert places of Africa, wherewith they being dry or overheated, may quench their thirst, cool and refresh themselves, and also evacuate many hot humours by stool.

D. In pestilent and all other burning putrid fevers they drink the water with sugar wherein a good quantity of Tamarinds have been infused; for it is a drink very pleasant to such as are thirsty by reason of too much heat, for it powerfully cools and quenches thirst.

E. They are also used in all putrid fevers caused by choleric and adust humours, and also against the hot distempers and inflammations of the liver and reins, and withal against the gonorrhœa.

F. Some also commend them against obstructions, the dropsy, jaundice, and the hot distempers of the spleen: they conduce also to the cure of the itch, scab, leprosy, tetters, and all such ulcerations of the skin which proceed of adust humours.

G. They are not good for such as have cold stomachs, unless their coldness be corrected by putting to them mace, anise seeds, Squinanth, or such like.

CHAP. 17. Of the Mamoera, the Male and Female.

Mamoera mas.
The male Dug tree.



Mamoera femina.
The female Dug tree.



Fig. 2236. Male Dug Tree or Mamoera

Fig. 2237. Female Dug Tree or Mamoera

The Description.

The history of these two trees, together with the figures I here give you, are in the *Curæ Posteriores* of Clusius, from whence I will take as much as concerns their history, and briefly here give it you.

That of the poet (saith he) is most true, *Non omnis fert omnia tellus*:["not every land brings forth every thing" Virgil, *Eclogues*. IV. l.39] for I think there is no province to be found, which produces not some peculiar plant not growing in other regions, as they can testify who have travelled over foreign countries, especially if they have applied themselves to the observation of plants. Amongst such I think I may reckon that honest and courteous man John Van Ufele, who returning out of that part of America called Brazil, showed me in the year 1607 a book, wherein he in lively colours had expressed some plants and living creatures: for as he told me, when he purposed to travel he learned to paint, that so he might express in colours, for his memory and delight after he was returned home, such singularities as he should observe abroad. Now amongst those which he in that book had expressed, I observed two very singular, and of a strange nature, whose figures without any difficulty he bestowed upon me, as also the following history.

These two trees, whose figures you see here expressed, are of the same kind, and differ only in sex; for the one of them, to wit the male, is barren, and only carries flowers, without any fruit; but the female only fruit, and that without flower: yet they say they are so loving, and of such a nature, that if they be set far asunder, and the

female have not a male near her, she becomes barren, and bears no fruit: of which nature they also say the Palm is.

Now the bole or trunk of that tree which bears the fruit is about two foot thick, and it groweth some nine foot high before it begin to bear fruit; but when it hath acquired a just magnitude, then shall you see the upper part of the tree laden with fruit, and that it will be as it were thick girt about therewith for some nine foot high more: the fruit is round and globe-fashioned, of the shape and magnitude of a small gourd, having when it is ripe a yellowish pulp, which the inhabitants use to eat to loosen their bellies: this fruit contains many kernels of the bigness of a small pea, black and shining, of no use that he could learn, but which were cast away as unnecessary; the leaves come forth amongst the fruit, growing upon long footstalks, and they in shape much resemble the Plane tree or great Maple.

What name the Brazilians give it he could not tell, but of the Portugals that dwelt there it was called *Mamoera*, and the fruit *mamaon*, of the similitude I think they have with dugs, which by the Spaniards are called *Mamas* and *Tetas*.

There is no difference in the form of the trunk or leaves of the male and female, but the male only carries flowers hanging down, clustering together upon long stalks like to the flowers of Elder, but of a whitish yellow colour, and these unprofitable, as they affirm.

Both these trees grow in that part of America wherein is situate the famous bay called by the Portugals, *Baya de todos los santos*, lying about thirteen degrees distant from the Equator towards the Antarctic pole.

CHAP. 18. Of the Clove-Berry Tree.

Amomum quorundam, fortè Gargophylon Plinij.
The Cloue-berry tree.



Fig. 2238. Clove-Berry Tree

The Description.

I must also abstract the history of this out of the works of the learned and diligent Clusius, who sets it forth in his *Exoticks, lib. 1. cap. 17*, in the next chapter after Cloves.

I put (saith he) the description of this fruit next after the history of Cloves, both for the affinity of smell it hath with cloves, as also for another cause, which I will show hereafter. James Garret in the year 1601 sent me from London this round fruit, commonly bigger than peppercorns, yet some less, wrinkled, of a brownish colour, sufficiently fragile; which opened, I found contained a seed round, black, which might be divided into two parts, of no less aromatic taste and smell than the fruit itself, and in some sort resembling that of cloves; it grows in bunches or clusters, as I conjectured by many berries which yet kept their stalks, & two or three which stuck to one little stalk: to these were added leaves of one form, but of much different bigness, for some of them were seven inches long, and three broad; some only five inches long, and two and a half broad; others did not exceed 3 inches in length, and these were not two inches broad; and some also were much less and narrower than these, especially those that were found mixed with the berries, differing according to the place in the boughs or branches which they possessed. I observed none among them which had snapped leaves, but smooth, with many small veins running obliquely from the middle rib to the sides, with their points now narrower, otherwhiles broader, and roundish: they were of a brownish ash colour, of a sufficient acrid taste: the branches which were added to the rest were slender, quadrangular, covered with a bark of an ash colour, and those were they of a year's growth; for those that were of an after growth were brownish, and they had yet remaining the prints where the leaves had grown, which for the most part were one against another, and these also were of an acrid taste, as well as the leaves, and of no ungrateful smell.

I received the same fruit some years before, but without the stalks, and with this question propounded by him which sent it, *An Amomum?* ["Is this Amomum?"] And certainly the faculties of this fruit are not very much unlike those which Dioscorides attributes to his *Amomum*; for it hath an heating astringent and drying faculty, and I think it may perform those things whereto Dioscorides, *lib. 1. cap. 14*, saith his is good; yet this wanteth some notes which he gives unto his, as the leaves of Bryony, &c.

But I more diligently considering this exotic fruit, find some prime notes which do much move me (for I will ingenuously profess what I think) to judge it the *Garyophyllon* of Pliny; for he, *Hist. Nat. lib. 12. cap. 7*, after he hath treated of Pepper adds these words: There is besides in the Indies a thing like to the peppercorn, which is called *Garyophyllon*, but more great and fragile; they affirm it grows in an Indian grove; it is brought over for the smell's sake. Though this description be brief and succinct, neither contains any faculties of the fruit itself, yet it hath manifest notes, which, compared with those which the fruit I here give you possess, you shall find them very like; as comparing them to peppercorns, yet bigger and more fragile, as for the most part these berries are: their smell is also very pleasing, and coming very near to that of cloves, and for the smell's sake only they were brought over in Pliny's time. I found, this fruit being chewed made the breath to smell well: and it is credible, that it would be good for many other purposes, if trial were made.

CHAP. 19. Of Guaiacum, or Indian Pockwood.

Guaiaci arboris ramulus.
A branch of the Guaiacum tree.



Fig. 2239. A Branch of the Guaiacum Tree

The Description.

Guaiacum, which some call *Lignum sanctum*: others, *Lignum vitæ*, is a well known wood, though of a tree unknown, or at least not certainly known; for this figure which I here give you out of Clusius, was gotten, and the history framed as you shall hear by his own words, taken out of his *Scholia* upon the 21st Chapter of Monardus. About the beginning (saith he) of the year 1601 I received from Peter Garret a branch of a foot long, which he writ was given him by a certain surgeon lately returned from America, for a branch of the tree Guaiacum: which if it be a branch of the true *Guaiacum*, then hath Nicolas Monardus sleightly enough set down the history of this tree. I thus described this branch which was sent me.

This branch was a foot long, very writhen, and distinguished with many knots, scarce at the lower end equalling the thickness of a writing pen or goose quill, having an hard and yellowish wood, and a wrinkled bark of an ash colour: at the upper end it was divided into slender branches, whereof some yet retained their leaves, and other some the flowers and the rudiment of the fruit: the leaves, or more truly the wings or footstalks of leaves grew upon slender branches one against another, each winged leaf having four or six little leaves, always growing by couples one against other, as in the Mastic tree; and these were thickish, round, and distinguished with many veins which by reason of their dryness (as I observed) would easily fall off, leaving the footstalks naked, and only retaining the marks whereas the leaves had been. In the knots of the upper branches there grew as it were swellings, out of which together grew six, eight, ten, or more slender footstalks, some inch long, each carrying a flower not great, consisting of six little leaves (but whether white, yellow, or blue, I could not by reason of the dryness judge): out of the middle of the flower grew many little threads, and in

some the rudiment of the fruit began to appear; having two cells, almost shaped like the seed-vessel of the common Shepherd's Purse.

Thus much Clusius, who afterwards received the fruit from two or three, but the most perfect from the learned apothecary John Pona of Verona: they are commonly parted into two parts or cells, yet he observed one with three: he found longish stones in them almost like those of *Euonymus*, and they consisted of a very hard and hairy substance like to that of the Date stones, containing a smooth kernel of a yellowish colour.

Now will I give you the descriptions of Monardus; then, what I have observed myself of this wood, which I must confess is very little, yet which may give some light to the ignorant. Of this wood (saith Monardus) many have written many ways, saying that it is either Ebony, or a kind of Box, or calling it by some other names. But as it is a new kind of tree, not found in these regions, or any other of the whole world described by the ancients, but only those of late discovered; so this shall be a new tree to us: however it be, it is a large tree of the bigness of the Ilex, full of branches, having a great matrix or blackish pith, the substance of the wood being harder than Ebony: the bark is thick, gummy or fat, and when the wood is dry falleth easily off: the leaves are small and hard: the flower yellow: the which is followed by a round solid fruit, containing in it seeds like those of the Medlar.

It grows plentifully in the isles of Santo Domingo.

Another kind of this was afterwards found in the island of St. Juan de Puerto Rico, near to the former; it is also like the last described, but altogether less, and almost without matrix or pith, smelling stronger, and being bitterer than the former; which being left, this is now in use, and of the wondrous effects it is called *Lignum sanctum*; neither without desert, being (experience giving testimony) it excels the other: yet both their faculties are admirable in curing the French disease, and therefore the water or decoction of both of them are drunk, either mixed together, or severally, both for the cure of the forementioned disease, as also against divers other affects. Thus much for Monardus his description.

The wood which is now in use with us is of a large tree, whose wood is very heavy, solid, and fit to turn into bowls or the like, and all that I have yet seen hath been wholly without matrix or pith, and commonly it is of a dark brownish colour, somewhat inclining to yellow, having a ring of white ingirting it next to the bark; I have observed a tree whose diameter hath been two foot and a quarter, to have had as little or less of this white wood as one whose diameter was thirteen inches; and this which was thirteen inches had only a white circle about it of one inch in breadth: I think the younger the tree is, the bigger the white circle is: the best wood is dense, heavy, brownish, leaving a quick and biting taste in the decoction, as also his smell and colour. The bark of this wood is also dense and heavy, of a hard substance and yellowish colour within, but rough and greenish, or else grayish without, and of somewhat a bitterish taste. Thus much for the description of the wood and his bark. Now let me say somewhat briefly of the temperature and qualities.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. It is judged to be hot and dry in the second degree: it hath a drying, attenuating, dissolving, and cleansing faculty, as also to move sweat, and resist contagion and putrefaction.

B. The decoction of the bark or wood of Guaiacum, made either alone or with other ingredients, as shall be thought most fit for the temper and age of the patient, is of singular use in the cure of the French poxes, and it is the most ancient and powerful antidote that is yet known against that disease. I forbear to specify any particular medicine made thereof, because they are well enough known to all to whom this knowledge belongs, and they are abundantly set down by all those that have treated of that disease.

C. It also conduceth to the cure of the dropsy, asthma, epilepsy, the diseases of the bladder and reins, pains of the joints, flatulences, crudities, and lastly all chronical diseases proceeding from cold and moist causes: for it oftentimes works singular effects whereas other medicines little prevail.

D. It doth also open the obstructions of the liver and spleen, warms and comforts the stomach and all the entrails, and helps to free them of any gross viscous matter which may be apt to breed diseases in them.

CHAP. 20. Of the Guava, or Orange-Bay.

Guayava arboris ramus.
The Orange-Bay.



Fig. 2240. Guava or Orange-Bay

The Description.

Simon de Tovar sent Clusius a branch of the tree which the Spaniards call *Guayavas*, from which he drew this figure, and thus describes it. This branch (saith Clusius) whose upper part together with the fruit I caused to be drawn, was some foot long, four square, alternately set with leaves growing by couples, being four inches long, and one and a half or two broad, of the form of Bay leaves, very firm, having a swelling rib running alongst the lower side, with veins running obliquely from thence to the sides, of an ash or grayish colour beneath, but smooth above, with the veins less appearing; which broken, though old, yet retained the smell of Bay leaves, and also after some sort the taste: the fruit was smooth, yet shriveled, because peradventure it was unripe, of the bigness of a small apple, longish, blackish on the outside like a ripe plum, but within full of a reddish pulp, of an acid taste; and in the middle were many whitish seeds of the bigness of Millet, or those that are in figs.

Nicolas Monardus (as he is turned into Latin by Clusius) thus gives us the history of *Guayavas*, in his 64th Chapter. It is a tree, saith he, of an indifferent bigness) and hath spreading branches, the leaf of the Bay, and a white flower, like that of the Orange, yet somewhat bigger, and well smelling; it easily grows, wheresoever it be sown, and so spreads and creeps that it is accounted as a weed, for it spoils the grass of many pastures, with the too much spreading as brambles do; the fruit is like to our apples, of the bigness of those the Spaniards call *Camuesas*, green at the first, and of a golden colour when they be ripe, with their inner pulp, white, and sometimes red; divided: it hath four cells wherein lie the seeds, like those of the medlars, very hard, of a brownish colour, wholly stony, without kernel and taste.

A. The fruit is usually eaten, the rind being first taken off; it is pleasing to the palate, wholesome and easy of concoction; being green it is good in fluxes of the belly, for it powerfully binds; and over, or throughly ripe it looseth the belly; but between both, that it is neither too green, nor over-ripe, if roasted, it is good both for sound and sick; for so handled it is wholesomer, and of a more pleasing taste; that also is the better which is gathered from domestic and husbanded trees. The Indians profitably bathe their swollen legs in the decoction of the leaves; and by the same they free the spleen from obstructions. The fruit seems to be cold, wherefore they give it roasted to such as are in fevers. It grows commonly in all the West Indies. Thus much Monardus.

CHAP. 21. Of the Coral Tree.

Coral arboris ramus.
A branch of the Corall tree.



Fig. 2241. A Branch of the Coral Tree

The Description.

The same last mentioned Simon de Tovar a learned and prime physician of Seville sent Clusius three or four branches of this tree, from whence he framed this history and figure. He writ (saith Clusius) that this tree grew in his garden, sprung up of seeds sent from America, which had the name of Coral imposed on them, by reason the flowers were like Coral, but he did not set down their shape; writing only this in his letter: That he had two little shrubs, which had borne flowers, and that the greater of them bore also cods full of large beans, but in the extreme winter, which they had the year before, he lost not only that tree, and others sprung up of Indian seeds but also many other plants. Now seeing that this tree carries cods, I conjecture the flowers were in form not unlike to those of Peas, or of the tree called *Arbor iudæ*, but of another colour, to wit, red like Coral, especially seeing that in the catalogue of his garden which he sent me the year before, he had writ thus: *Arbor indica dicta Coral, ob eius florem simile corallo, &c.* that is, An Indian tree called Coral, by reason of the flower like to Coral, whose leaves are very like those of the *Arbor iudæ*, but this hath thorns, which that wants. And verily the branches which he sent (for he writ he sent the branches with the leaves, but the tree brought out some twice or thrice as big) had leaves not much unlike those of *Arbor iudæ*, but fastened to a shorter footstalk and growing one against another, with a single one at the end of the branch, which was here and there set with sharp and crooked prickles; but whether these branches are only the stalks of the leaves, or perfect branches, I doubt, because all that he sent had three leaves apiece; I could easily persuade myself, that they were only leaves, seeing the upper part ended in one leaf; and the lower end of one among the rest, yet showed the place where it seemed it grew to the bough. But I affirm nothing, seeing there was none whereof I could inquire, by reason of his death who sent them me, which happened shortly after; yet I have made the form of the leaves with the manner as I conjectured they grow, to be delineated in

the figure which I here give you. Whether Matthiolus in his last edition of his *Commentaries upon Dioscorides* would have expressed this, by the icon of his first *Acacia*, which is prickly, and hath leaves resembling those of *Arbor iudæ*, I know not; but if he would have expressed this tree, the painter did not well play his part.

After that Clusius had set forth thus much of this tree in his *Hist. Rariorum Plant.* the learned Dr. Castaneda a physician also of Seville certified me, saith he, that the flowers of this tree grow thick together at the tops of the branches, ten, twelve, or more hanging upon short footstalks, growing out of the same place: whose figure he also sent, but so rudely drawn, that I could not thereby have come to any knowledge of the flowers, but that he therewith sent me two dried flowers, by which I partly gathered their form. Now these flowers were very narrow, 2 inches long or more, consisting of three leaves, the uppermost of which much exceeded the two narrow ones on the sides both in length and breadth, and it was doubled; but before the flower was opened it better resembled a horn or cod, than a flower, and the lower end of it stood in a short green cup, in the midst of the flower under the upper leaf that was folded, but open at the top; there came forth a smooth pointel, divided at the top into nine parts or threads, whose ends of what colour they were, as also the threads, I know not, because I could not gather by the dry flower, whose colour was quite decayed, and the picture itself expressed no separation of the leaves in the flower, no form of threads, but only the flowers shut, and resembling rather cods than flowers, and those of a deep red colour. But if I could have seen them fresher, I should have been able to have given a more exact description: wherefore let the reader take in good part that which I have here performed. Thus much Clusius.

CHAP. 22. Of the Sea Lentil.

1 *Lenticula marina angustifolia.*
Narrow leaved Sea Lentill.

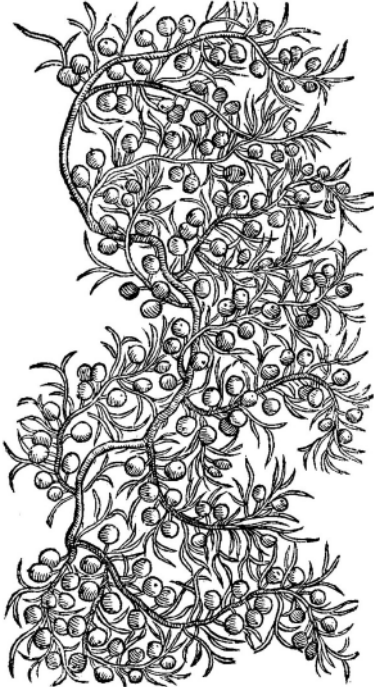


Fig. 2242. Narrow-Leaved Sea Lentil (1)

2 *Lenticula marina ferratis folys.*
Cut leaved Sea Lentill.



Fig. 2242. Cut-Leaved Sea Lentil (2)

The Description.

Some call this *Uva marina*, and others have thought it the *Lenticula marina* of Serapio, but they are deceived, for his *Lenticula marina* described in his 245th chapter, is nothing else than the *Moscus marinus* or *Bryon thalassion*, described by Dioscorides, *lib. 4. cap. 99*, as any that compares these two places together may plainly see.

1. The former of these hath many winding stalks, whereon grow short branches set thick with narrow leaves like those of Belvidere, or Besom Flax, and among these grow many skinny, hollow, empty round berries of the bigness and shape of lentils, whence it takes the name: this grows in divers places of the Mediterranean and Adriatic seas.

2. This differs little from the former, but that the leaves are broader, shorter, and snipped about the edges. But this being in probability the *Sargasso* of Acosta, you shall here what he says thereof. In that famous and no less to be feared navigation del Sergazo (for so they which sail into the Indies call all that space of the Ocean from the 18th to the 34th degree of Northerly latitude) is seen a deep and spacious sea covered with an herb called *Sargasso*, being a span long, wrapped with the tender branches as it were into balls, having narrow and tender leaves some half inch long, much snipped about the edges, of colour reddish, of taste insipid, or without any sensible biting, but what is rather drawn from the salt water, than naturally inherent in the plant. At the setting on of each leaf grows a seed round like a peppercorn, of a whitish colour, and sometimes of white and red mixed, very tender whenas it is first drawn forth of the water, but hard

when it is dried, but by reason of the thinness very fragile, and full of salt water: there is no root to be observed in this plant, but only the marks of the breaking off appears; and it is likely it grows in the deep and sandy bottom of the sea, and hath small roots; yet some are of opinion that this herb is plucked up and carried away by the rapid course of waters that fall out of many islands into the Ocean. Now the Master of the ship wherein I was did stiffly maintain this opinion; and in the sailing here we were becalmed; but as far as ever we could see we saw the sea wholly covered with this plant, and sending down some young sailors which should drive the weeds from the ship, and cleanse the water, we plainly saw round heaps thereof rise up from the bottom of the sea where by sounding we could find no bottom.

A. This plant pickled with salt and vinegar hath the same taste as Samphire, and may be used instead thereof, and also eaten by such as sail, in place of capers. I willed it should be given newly taken forth of the sea, to goats which we carried in the ship, and they fed upon it greedily.

B. I found no faculties thereof; but one of the sailors troubled with a difficulty of making water, casting out sand and gross humours, ate thereof by chance both raw and boiled, only for that the taste thereof pleased him: after a few days he told to me that he found great good by the eating thereof, and he took some of it with him, that so he might use it when he came ashore. Hitherto Acosta.

CHAP. 23. Of the Sea Feather.

Myriophyllum marinum.
The Sea Feather.

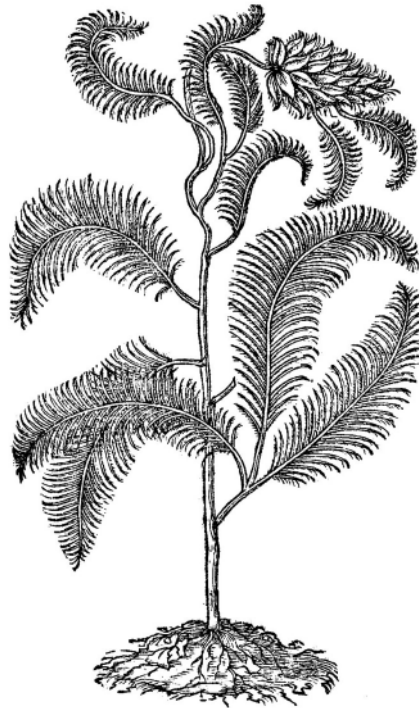


Fig. 2244. Sea Feather

The Description.

This elegant plant, which Clusius received from Cortusus by the name of *Myriophyllum pelagicum*, is thus described by him: As much (saith he) as I could conjecture by the picture, this was some cubit high, having a straight stalk, sufficiently slender, divided into many branches, or rather branched leaves, almost like those of Fern, but far finer, bending their tops like the branches of the Palm, of a yellowish colour: the top of the stalk adorned with lesser leaves, ended in certain scales or cloves framed into a head; which are found to contain no other seed than tender plants already formed, in shape like to the old one: which falling, sink to the bottom of the sea, and there take root and grow, and so become of the same magnitude as the old one from whence they came. The stalk is fastened with most slender and more than capillary fibres, instead of a root, not upon rocks and oyster shells, as most other sea plants are, but upon sand or mud in the bottom of the sea: this stalk when it is dry is no less brittle than glass or Coralline; but green and yet growing it is as tough and flexible as *Spartum* or Matweed.

The Place.

It groweth in the deeper streams of the Illyrian sea, whence the fishermen draw it forth with hooks and other instruments which they call sperne. The whole plant, though dried, retains the faculties.

The Names.

The Italian fishermen call it *Penachio delle Ninfe*, and *Palma de Nettuno*: some also, *Scettro di Nettuno*.

The Virtues.

A. They say it is good against the virulent bites of the sea serpents, and the venomous stings or pricks of fishes.

B. Applied to small green wounds it cures them in the space of 24 hours.

C. Cortusus writ, that he had made trial thereof for the killing and voiding of worms, and that he found it to be of no less efficacy than any Coralline, and that given in less quantity.

CHAP. 24. Of the Sea Fan.

Frutex marinus reticulatus.
Sea Fan.

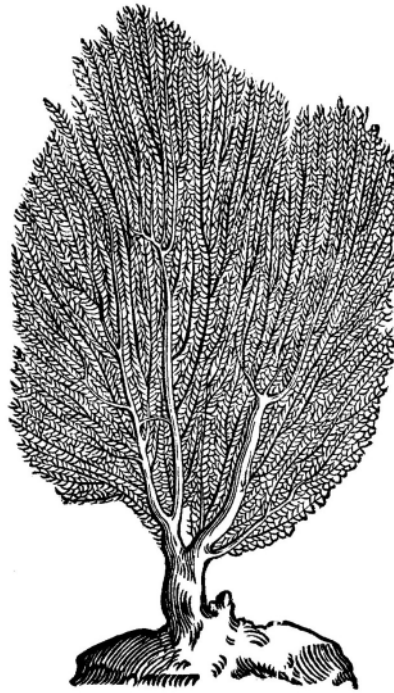


Fig. 2245. Sea Fan

The Description.

This elegant shrub groweth upon the rocks of the sea (where it is sometimes covered with the water) in divers places; for it hath been brought both from the East and West Indies, and as I have been informed it is to be found in great plenty upon the rocks at the Bermuda Isles. Clusius calls it *Frutex marinus elegantissimus*, and thinks it may be referred to the *Palma marina* of Theophrastus. Bauhine hath referred it to the *Corallinae*, calling it *Corallina cortice reticulata maculoso purpurascente*. It grows up sometimes to the height of three foot, having a stalk some handful or two high before it part into branches: then is it divided into three, four, or more branches, which are subdivided into infinite other lesser strings, which are finely interwoven and joined together as if they were netted, yet leaving sometimes bigger, otherwhiles lesser holes: and these twiggy branches become smaller and smaller, the farther they are from the root, and end as it were in small threads: these branches grow not up on every side, as in other plants, but flat one besides another, so that the whole plant resembles a fan, or a cabbage leaf eaten full of holes; yet sometimes upon the sides come forth other such fan-like branches, some bigger, some less, sometimes one or two, otherwhiles more. The inner substance of this Sea Fan is a blackish tough, and hard wood, and it is all covered over with a rough Coral-like stony matter, of a reddish or purplish colour, and this you may with your nail or a knife scrape off from the smooth and black wood.

I know no use of this, but it is kept for the beauty and rarity thereof, by many lovers of such curiosities, amongst which for the rareness of the structure this may hold a prime place.

CHAP. 25. Of China, and Bastard China.

This root which is brought from the remotest parts of the world, and is in frequent use with us, hath not been known in Europe little above fourscore and ten years: for Garcias ab Orta the Portugal physician writes, That he came to the first knowledge thereof in the East Indies, in the year 1535, and that by this means, as he relates it: It happened (saith he) that about that time a merchant in the isle Diu told the noble gentleman Sr. Mart. Alfonso De Sousa my patron, by what means he was cured of the French poxes, which was by a certain root brought from China; whose faculties he much extolled, because such as used it needed not observe so strict a diet as was requisite in the use of guaiacum, but should only abstain from beef, pork, fish, and crude fruits; but in China they do not abstain from fish, for they are there great gluttons. When the report of this root was divulged abroad, every man wonderfully desired to see and use it, because they did not well like of the strict diet they were forced to observe in the use of guaiacum. Besides, the inhabitants of these countries, by reason of their idle life are much given to gluttony. About this time the China ships arrive at Malacca, bringing a small quantity of this root for their own use. But this little was sought for with such earnestness, that they gave an excessive rate for it; but afterwards the Chinois bringing a greater quantity, the price fell, and it was sold very cheap. From this time guaiacum began to be out of use, and banished the Indies, as a Spaniard that would famish the natives. Thus much Garcia concerning the first use thereof in the East Indies.

1 *China vulgaris Officinarum.*
True China.

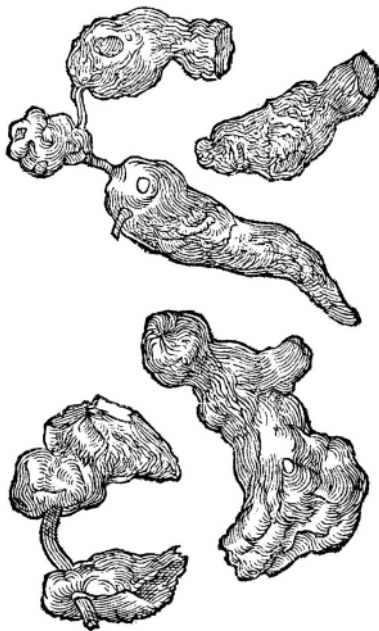


Fig. 2246. True China (1)

2 *Pseudo-China.*
Bastard China,



Fig. 2247. Bastard China (2)

The Description.

1. The China now in use is a root of the largeness of that of the ordinary Flag, or *Iris palustris* and not much in shape unlike thereto, but that it wants the rings or circles that are imprinted in the other: the outer coat or skin of this root is thin, sometimes smooth, otherwhiles rugged, of a brownish red colour, and not to be separated from the substance of the root, which is of an indifferent firmness, being not so hard as wood, but more solid than most roots which are not of shrubs or trees: the colour is sometimes white, with some very small mixture of redness; otherwhiles it hath a greater mixture of red, and some are more red than white: it is almost without taste, yet that it hath is dry, without any bitterness or acrimony at all. The best is that which is indifferently ponderous, new, firm, not worm-eaten, nor rotten, and which hath a good and fresh colour, and that either white, or much inclining thereto. The plant whose root this is (if we may believe Christopher Acosta) hath many small prickly and flexible branches, not unlike the *Smilax aspera*, or the prickly Bindweed: the biggest of these exceedeth not the thickness of one's little finger. The leaves are of the bigness of those of the Broad-Leaved Plantain: the roots are as large as one's hand, sometimes less, solid, heavy, white, and also sometimes red, and many oft-times growing together.

It groweth abundantly in the territory of China, and is also found in Malabar, Cochin, Cranganore, Quilon, Tanor, and other places.

The Chinois call it *Lampatan*: in Deccan they call it *Lampatos*: in Canarin, *Bouti*: the Arabians, Persians, and Turks term it *Choph-china*.

2. This other root, whose figure you see here expressed, was sent from London to Clusius in the year 1591, by James Garret, being brought out of Wingandecaow, or Virginia, with this inscription, *Chinae species*, a kind of China. Clusius caused this figure thereof to be drawn, and thus describeth it. This root (saith he) was very knotty, and formed with outgrowings, or bunches hanging out, of a reddish colour, and it yet retained at the top some part of the stalk, being somewhat like unto that of *Smilax aspera*, or common Rough Bindweed, hard, woody, and full of veins, as the stalks of *Smilax aspera*: the substance of the root was also reddish, as the root of the common Flag, at the first of a saltish taste it being old, (for so it was when I received it) and then drying. Now I judge this the same that the writer of the *Virginian History* mentions in his chapter of roots, and saith, it was brought into England for China, though the natives knew no use thereof: but they use another root very like China, which they call *Tsinaw*, of which being cut, beaten, and pressed out with water, they draw a juice wherewith they make their bread. Thus much Clusius, to whose words I think it not amiss to add that which Mr Thomas Hariot (who was the writer of the *Virginian History*, here mentioned by Clusius) hath set down concerning this thing.

Tsinaw (saith he) is a kind of root much like unto that which in England is called the China root, brought from the East Indies. And we know not anything to the contrary but that it may be of the same kind. These roots grow many together in great clusters, and do bring forth a Brier stalk, but the leaf in shape is far unlike: which being supported by the trees it groweth nearest unto, will reach or climb to the top of the highest. From these roots whilst they be new or fresh, being chopped into small pieces and stamped, is strained with water a juice that maketh bread, and also being boiled, a very good spoon-meat in manner of a jelly, and is much better in taste, if it be tempered with oil. This *Tsinaw* is not of that sort which by some was caused to be brought into England for the China root; for it was discovered since, and is in use as is aforesaid; but that which was brought hither is not yet known, neither by us, nor by the inhabitants, to

serve for any use or purpose, although the roots in shape are very like. Thus much Hariot.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. China is thought to be moderately hot and dry: the decoction thereof made alone or with other things, as the disease and symptoms shall require, is much commended by Garcias, for to cure the French pox, but chiefly that disease which is of some standing: yet by most it is judged less powerful than *Guaiacum*, or *Sarsaparilla*.

B. It attenuates, moves sweat, and dries, and therefore resists putrefaction: it strengthens the liver, helps the dropsy, cures malign ulcers, scabs, and leprosy. It is also commended in consumptions.

C. The decoction of this root, saith Garcias, besides the diseases which have community with the pox, conduces to the cure of the palsy, gout, sciatica, scirrhus and oedematous tumours. It also helps the King's evil. It cureth the weakness of the stomach, the inveterate headache, the stone and ulceration of the bladder; for many by the use of the decoction hereof have been cured, which formerly received help by no medicine.

CHAP. 26. Of Costus.

This simple medicine was briefly described by Dioscorides, who mentions three kinds thereof, but what part of a plant, whether root, wood, or fruit, he hath not expressed: but one may probably conjecture it is a root, for that he writes toward the end of the chapter where he treats thereof, *lib. 1 cap. 15*, that it is adulterated by mixing therewith the roots of *Helenium commagenum*; now a root cannot well be adulterated but with another. Also Pliny, *lib. 12. cap. 12*, calls it a root; but neither any of the ancient or modern writers have delineated the plant, whose root should be this Costus. Dioscorides makes three sorts, as I have said: the Arabian being the best; which was white, light, strong, and well smelling: the Indian, which was large, light, and black: the Syrian, which was heavy, of the colour of Box, and strong smelling. Now Pliny makes two kinds, the black, and the white, which he saith is the better; so I judge his black to be the Indian of Dioscorides, and his white, the Arabian. Much agreeable to these (but whether the same or no, I do not determine) are the two roots whose figures I here present to your view, and they are called by the names of *Costus dulcis* (I think they should have said *odoratus*) and *Costus amarus*.

1 *Costus Indicus sive odoratus.*
Indian or sweet smelling Costus.

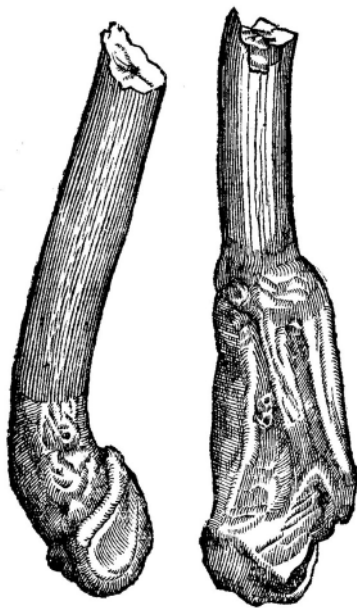


Fig. 2248. Indian or Sweet Costus (1)

2 *Costus Officinarum Lobelij.*
Bitter Costus.



Fig. 2249. Bitter Costus

The Description.

1. The first of these, which rather from the smell, than taste, is called sweet, is a pretty large root, light, white, and well smelling, having the smell of orris, or a violet, but somewhat more quick and piercing, especially if the root be fresh, and not too old: it is oft-times divided at the top into two, three, or more parts, from whence several stalks have grown, and you shall sometimes observe upon some of them pieces of these

stalks some two or three inches long, of the thickeness of one's little finger, crested, and filled with a soft pith, like as the stalks of Elder, or more like those of the Burdock: the taste of the root is bitter, with some acrimony, which also Dioscorides requires in his, for he saith, the taste should be biting and hot; thus much for the first, being *Costus dulcis* of the shops.

2. The second, which is the *Costus amarus*, and it may be the Indian of Dioscorides and *niger* of Pliny, is a root black both within and without, light, yet very dense. It seems to be of some large root, for that it is brought over cut into large pieces, of the bigness of one's finger, sometimes bigger, sometimes less, which it seems is for the more convenient drying thereof for a large root, unless it be cut into pieces can scarcely be well dried: the taste of this is bitter, somewhat clammy and ingrate: the smell is little or none.

There are some other roots which have been set forth by late writers for *Costus*, but because they are neither in use, known here with us, nor more agreeable to the descriptions of the ancients, I hastening to an end, am willing to pass them over in silence.

The Temperature and Virtues out of the ancients.

A. It hath a heating and attenuating faculty, and therefore was used in oil to anoint the body against the cold fits of agues, the sciatica, and when it was needful to draw anything to the superficies of the body.

B. It is also convenient to move urine, to procure the terms, to help strains, convulsions, or cramps and pains in the sides; and by reason of the bitterness it kills worms.

C. It is good to be drunk against the bite of the viper: against pains of the chest, and windiness of the stomach taken in wine with wormwood: and it is used to be put into sundry antidotes.

CHAP. 27. Of Drake's Root, or Contrayerva.

1 *Drakenradix.*
Contra-yerua.



Fig. 2250. Contrayerva (1)

2 *Radix Drakena affinis.*
Another sort of Contra-yerua.



Fig. 2251. Another Kind of Contrayerva. (2)

The Description.

1. That root which of late is known in some shops by the Spanish name *Contrayerva*, is the same which Clusius hath set forth by the title of *Drakena radix*: wherefore I will give you the history of Clusius, and thereto add that which Monardus writes of the *Contrayerva*. For though Bauhine, and the author of the *Historia Lugdunensis* seem to make these different, yet I find that both Clusius, his figure and history exactly agree with the roots sent us from Spain by that title, wherefore I shall make them one, till some shall show me how they differ: and Clusius seems to be of this mind also, who desired but the degree of heat which Monardus gives these, and that is but the second degree: now these have no taste at the first, until you have chewed them a pretty while, and then you than find a manifest heat and acrimony in them, which Clusius did also observe in his.

In the year (saith Clusius) 1581 the generous knight Sir Francis Drake gave me at London certain roots, with three or four Peruvian bezoar stones, which in the autumn before (having finished his voyage, wherein passing the Straits of Magellan, he had encompassed the world) he had brought with him, affirming them to be of high esteem amongst the Peruvians: now for his sake that bestowed these roots upon me, I have given them the title *Drakena radix*, or Drake's root, and have made them to be expressed in a table, as you may here see them.

These roots were for the most part some half inch thick, longish, now and then bunching out into knots and unequal heads, and their tops looked as if they were composed of thick scales, almost like those of the *Dentaria enneaphyllos*; blackish without, wrinkled, and hard, because dried: their inner part was white; they had slender fibres here and there growing out of them, and some more thick and large, hard also

and tough, at which hung other knots: I observed no manifest smell they had, but found them to have a taste somewhat astringent, & drying the tongue at the first; but being long chewed, they left a quick and pleasing acrimony in the mouth.

It seemed to have great affinity with the *Radix S. Helenæ*, whereof Nic. Monardus speaks in his book *Of the Simple Medicines brought from the West Indies*: but seeing N. Eliot (who accompanied Sir Francis Drake in that voyage, said, that the Spaniards in Peru had them in great request; and they could not easily be got of them, and that he had learned by them, that the leaves were present poison, but the root an antidote, and that not only against the same poison, but also against other; and that it strengthened the heart and vital faculties, if it were beaten to powder, and taken in the morning in a little wine; and given in water, it mitigated the heat of fevers. By reason of these faculties it should much agree with the *Radix contrayerva*, whereof Monardus writes in the same book: yet in these I required the aromatic taste and degree of heat, which he attributes unto these roots. Thus much Clusius.

A. From Charcis, a province of Peru, saith Monardus, are brought certain roots very like the roots of *Iris*, but less, and having the smell of Fig leaves. The Spaniards that live in the Indies call them *Contrayerva*, as if you should say an antidote against poison; because the powder of them taken in white wine is a most present remedy against all poison of what kind soever it be (only sublimate excepted, whose malignity is only extinguished by the drinking of milk) it causes them to be cast up by vomit, or evacuated by sweat. They also say that philtres or amorous potions are cast forth by drinking this powder. It also killeth worms in the belly. The root chewed hath a certain aromatic taste joined with acrimony; wherefore it seems hot in the second degree. Thus far Monardus.

2. Clusius *Exot. lib. 4. cap. 11*, being the next after *Drakena radix*, describes this root, whose figure I give you in the 2nd place, & that by the same title as it is here set forth. These roots, saith he, seem somewhat like the *Drakena radix* which were found in the great ship which brought back the Viceroy from the East Indies, and was taken by the English; for they were tuberous, and as much as one may gather by their form, crept upon the surface of the earth, having upon them many hairs and fibres, and being of a sooty colour, yet somewhat inclining to yellow, drying the spittle in chewing them and being bitter: they as yet retained footstalks of the leaves, but of what fashion they were no man can easily guess. But it was likely they were of great use among the Indians, seeing that the Viceroy brought them together with other precious medicines growing in the East Indies. James Garret sent this to Clusius with the little plant dried, whose figure you see expressed by it.

CHAP. 28. Of Lignum Aloes.

Lignum Aloes vulgare.



Fog. 2252. Lignum Aloes

The Description.

It is a question whether the *Agallochum* described in the *lib. 1 cap. 21* of Dioscorides be the same which the later Greeks and shops at this time call *Xyloaloe*, or *Lignum Aloes*, many make them the same: others, to whose opinion I adhere, make them different, yet have, not the later, show what *Agallochum* should be, which I not withstanding will do; and though I do not now give you my arguments, yet I will point at the things, & show positively my opinions of them.

The first and best of these is that which some call *Calumbart*: others, *Calumba*, or *Calambec*: this is of high esteem in the Indies, & seldom found but amongst the princes, and persons of great quality; for it is sold oft-times for the weight in gold; I have not seen any thereof but in beads; it seems to be a whiter wood than the ordinary, of a finer grain, not so subject to rot, and of a more fragrant smell, and but light.

The second sort, which is usually brought over, and called in shops by the name of *Lignum Aloes*, is also a precious and odoriferous wood, especially burnt: the sticks of this are commonly knotty & unsightly: some parts of them being white, soft, and doted: other some, dense, blackish, or rather intermixed with black and white veins, but much more black than white, and this put to the fire will sweat out an oily moisture, and burnt, yield a most fragrant odour. This I take to be the true *Xyloaloe* of the late Greeks; and the *Agalugen* of Avicenna, and that they call *Palo d'Agula* in the Indies.

The third is a wood of much less price than the former: and I conjecture it might well be substituted for *Thus*: and this I take to be the *Agallochion* of Dioscorides; the *Lignum Aloes silvestre* of Garcias; and *Agula brava* of Linscoten. It is a firm and solid wood, somewhat like that of the Cedar, not subject to rot or decay: the colour thereof is blackish, especially on the outside; but on the inside it is oft-times brownish and speckled, containing also in it an oily substance, and yielding a sweet and pleasing smell when it is burnt, but not like that of the two former: the taste also of this is bitterer than that of the former: and the wood (though dense and solid) may be easily cleft longways; it is also a far handsomer and more sightly wood than the former, having not many knots in it.

Garcia ab Orta thus describes the tree that is the *Lignum Aloes* (I judge it's that I have set forth in the second place): it is (saith he) like an Olive tree, sometimes larger: the fruit or flower I could not yet see, by reason of the difficulties and dangers which are to be undergone in the accurate observation of this tree (Tigers frequently there seeking their prey.) I had the branches with the leaves brought me from Malacca. Now they say that the wood new cut down hath no fragrant odour, nor till it be dried: neither the smell to be diffused over the whole matter of the wood, but in the heart of the tree; for the bark is thick, and the matter of the wood without smell. Yet may I not deny, but the bark and wood putrefying that oily and fat moisture, may betake itself to the heart of the tree, and make the more odoriferous: but there is no need of putrefaction to get a smell to the *Lignum Aloes*: for there are sundry so expert and skilful in the knowledge thereof, that they will judge of that which is new cut down, whither it will be odoriferous or no. For in all sorts of wood some are better than other some: thus much out of Garcias; where such as are desirous may see more upon this subject.

The Temperature and Virtues.

A. It is of temperature moderately hot and dry, and also of somewhat subtle parts. Chewed it makes the breath smell sweet, and burnt it is a rich perfume.

B. Taken inwardly it is good to help the stomach that is too cold and moist, as also the weak liver.

C. It is commended likewise in dysenteries and pleurisies: and put also into divers cordial medicines and antidotes as a prime ingredient.

CHAP. 29. Of Gedwar.

1 *Gedwar aut, Geidnar.*



Fig. 2253. Gedwar (1)

2 *Zedoaria exactior icon.* A better figure of Zedoary.



Fig. 2254. A better figure of Zedoary (2)

In the chapter of Zedoary (which I made the 28th of the first book) I might fitly have given you this history of Gedwar, which is thought to be that described by Avicenna, *lib. 2, cap. 734*, and a kind of Zedoary: Garcias saith, Gedwar is at a high rate, and not easily to be found, unless with the Indian mountebanks and jugglers, which they call *yogis*, which go up and down the country like rogues, and of these the kings and noblemen buy Gedwar: it is good for many things, but chiefly against poisons, and the bites and stings of venomous creatures.

1. Clusius in his *Auctuarium* at the end thereof gives this figure, with the following history. Because Garcias, *lib. 1. cap. 42, Aromatum Hist.* treating of Zedoary writes, that Avicenna calls it Gedwar; and saith that it is of the magnitude of an acorn, and almost of the same shape, I in my notes at the end of that chapter affirmed that it was not known in Europe, and hard to be known. But in the year 1605 John Pona sent me from Verona together with other things two roots written on by the name of *Gedwar verum*. They were not much unlike a longish acorn, or (that I may more truly compare them) the smaller bulbs of an Asphodel, or *Anthora*: the one of them was whole and not perished: the other rotten and broken, yet both of them very hard and solid, of an ash colour without, but yellowish within: which tasted, seemed to possess a heating faculty and acrimony.

But although I can affirm nothing of certainty of this root, yet I made the figure of the wholer of them to be expressed in a table, that so the form might be conceived in one's mind more easily, than by a naked description. Let the studious thank Pona for the knowledge hereof. Thus much Clusius.

2. In the 28th chapter of the first book I gave the figure of Zedoary out of Clusius, having not at that time this figure of Lobel, which presents to your view both the long and the round, with the manner how they grow together, being not several roots, but parts of one and the same.

CHAP. 30. Of Rosewood.

Aspalathus albicans torulo citreo.
White Rose-wood.

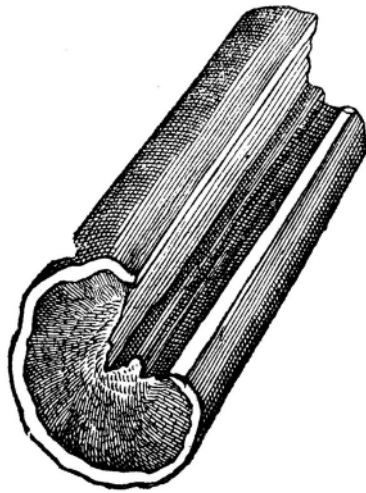


Fig. 2255. White Rosewood

Aspalathus rubens.
Reddish Rose-wood.



Fig. 2256. Red Rosewood

The Description.

Both these as also some other woods are referred to the *Aspalathus* described by Dioscorides, *lib. 1. cap. 19*. But the later of these I take to be the better of the two sorts there mentioned. The first of them is whitish without, having a yellowish or citrine-coloured round in the middle: the taste is hottish, and smell somewhat like that of a white Rose.

The other hath also a small ring of white, next the thick and rugged bark, and the inner wood is of a reddish colour, very dense, solid and firm, as also indifferent heavy: the smell of this is also like that of a Rose, whence they vulgarly call it *Lignum rhodium*, Rosewood, rather than from Rhodes the place where the later of them is said to grow.

The Faculties out of Dioscorides.

A. It hath a heating faculty with astringency, whence the decoction thereof made in wine is convenient to wash the ulcers of the mouth, and the eating ulcers of the privities and such unclean poxes as the ozæna (a stinking ulcer in the nose so called.)

B. Put up in a pessary it draws forth the child, the decoction thereof stays the looseness of the belly, and drunk it helps the casting up of blood, the difficulty of making water, and windiness.

CHAP. 31. Of Divers Other Plants Previously Omitted.

At the end of this Appendix I have thought good to give you divers descriptions of plants, which I received from my often mentioned friend Mr Goodyer, which also were omitted in their fitting places, partly through haste, and partly for that I received some of them after the printing of those chapters wherein of right they should have been inserted. They are most of them of rare and not written of plants, wherefore more grateful to the curious.

Hieracium stellatum boelii.

This plant is in round, hairy, streaked, branched stalks, and long, rough, blunt indented leaves like to *Hieracium falcatum*, but scarce a foot high: the flowers are also yellow, three times smaller: which past, there succeed long crooked slender sharp pointed cods or husks, near an inch long, spreading abroad, star-fashion, wherein a long seed is contained: this hath no heads or woolly down like any of the rest, but only the said crooked cods which do at the first spread abroad. The root is small, thready, full of milky juice, as is also the whole plant; and it perisheth when the seed is ripe.

Hieracium medio nigrum flore maiore boelii.

This hath at the first spreading upon the ground many long, narrow, green, smooth leaves bluntly indented about the edges, like those of *Hieracium falcatum*, but smaller: amongst which rise up three, four, or more, small, smooth, streaked, round stalks, divided into other branches, which grow longer than the stalks themselves leaning or trailing near the ground: the flowers grow on the tops of the stalks, but one together, composed of many pale yellow leaves, the middle of each flower being of a blackish purple colour.

Hieracium media nigrum flore minore boelii.

This is altogether like the last before described in stalks and leaves: the flowers are also of a blackish purple in the middle, but they are three times smaller.

Hieracium lanosum

There groweth from one root three, four or more round upright soft cottony stalks, of a reasonable bigness, two foot high, divided into many branches, especially near the top, whereon groweth at each division one broad sharp-pointed leaf, divided into corners, and very much crumpled, and also very soft cottony and woolly, as is the whole plant: the flowers are small, double, of a pale yellow colour, very like those of *Pilosella repens*, growing clustering very many together at the tops of the stalks and branches, forth of small round soft cottony heads: these four plants grew from seed which I received from Mr Coys, 1620, and I made these descriptions by the plants the 22nd August, 1621.

Blitum spinosum: est Beta cretica fæmine aculeato bauhini matthioli.

This sendeth forth from one root many round green trailing, jointed, small branches, about a foot long: the leaves are of a light green colour, and grow at every joint one, somewhat like the leaves of great Sorrel, but they are round topped without barbs or ears below, or any manifest taste or smell, very like the leaves of Beets, but much smaller: the flowers grow cluttering together about the joints, and at the tops of the branches small and greenish, each flower containing five or six very small blunt-topped leaves, and a few dusty chives in the middle: which past, there cometh great prickly shrivelled seed, growing even close to the root, and upwards on the joints, each

seed having three sharp pricks at the top growing sideways, which indeed may be more properly called the husk; which husk in the inside is of a dark reddish colour, and containeth one seed in form like the seed of *Flos adonis*, round at the lower end, and cornered towards the top, and sharp pointed, covered over with a dark yellowish skin; which skin pulled away, the kernel appeareth yellow on the outside, and exceeding white within, and will with a light touch fall into very small powder like meal.

Geranii bæticae species boelii.

This hath at the beginning many broad leaves, indented about the edges, somewhat divided, like those of *Geranium creticum*, but of a lighter green colour, and smaller: amongst which grow up many round hairy kneed trailing branches, divided into many other branches, bearing leaves like the former, but smaller, and no more divided. The flowers are small like those of *Geranium moschatum*, but of a deeper reddish colour, each flower having five small round-topped leaves: after followeth small long hairy seed, growing at the lower end of a sharp pointed beak like that of *Geranium moschatum*: the whole plant perisheth when the seed is ripe.

Boelius a Low-Country man gathered the seeds hereof in Bætica a part of Spain, and imparted them to Mr William Coys, a man very skilfull in the knowledge of simples, who hath gotten plants thereof, and of infinite other strange herbs, and friendly gave me seeds hereof; and of many other, Anno 1620.

Antirrhinum minus flore linariae luteum inscriptum.

This hath at the first many very small, round, smooth branches from one root, trailing on the ground, about four or five inches long, set with many small green short sharp-pointed leaves, like those of *Serpillum*, but that these are longer, smooth, and three or four growing opposite one against another: amongst which rise up five or six, sometimes ten or twelve upright round smooth little stalks a cubit high, divided into branches bearing small long smooth green leaves, growing without order, as narrow as the upper leaves of *Oenanthe angustifolia*: at the tops of the stalks and branches grow clustering together five, six or more small yellow flowers, flowering upwards, leaving a long spike of very small husks, each husk having a small line or chink as though two husks were joined together, the one side of the husk being a little longer than the other, wherein is contained exceeding small blackish seed. The root is very short, small, and white, with a few threads, and perisheth at winter.

This plant is not written of that I can find. I received seed thereof from Mr William Coys often remembered.

Linaria minor aestiva.

The stalks are round, smooth, of a whitish green colour, a foot high, weak, not able to stand upright: whereon grow long narrow sharp pointed leaves, most commonly bending or turning downwards. The flowers grow in spikes at the tops of the branches, yet not very near together, and are very small and yellow, with a small tail: the seed of this plant is small, flat, and of a blackish gray colour enclosed in small round husks, and you shall commonly have at one time flowers and ripe seed on a stalk. The whole plant is like to the common Linaria, but that it is a great deal lesser, and the flowers are six times as small, and perish at winter. I also received seeds thereof from M. William Coys.

Scorpioides multiflora boelii.

This plant is in creeping branches and leaves like the common *Scorpioides bupleuri folio*: the flowers are also alike, but a little bigger, and grow four or five together on one footstalk: the cods are rougher, and very much turned round, or folded one within another: in all things else alike.

Scorpioides siliqua crassa boelii.

This is also like the other in creeping branches and leaves: the flowers are something bigger than any of the rest, and grow not above one or two together on a footstalk: the cods are crooked, without any rough hair, yet finely chequered, and seven times bigger than any of the rest, fully as big as a great palmer-worm, wherein is the difference: the seed is almost round, yet extending somewhat in length, almost as big as small field pea, of a brown or yellowish colour. This also perisheth when the seed is ripe. Sept 1 1621.

Silibium minus flore nutante boelii.

This Thistle is in stalks and leaves much smaller than Our Lady's Thistle, that is to say, the stalks are round, straked, somewhat woolly, with narrow skinny prickly edges, three or four foot high, divided into many branches, whereon grow long leaves, deeply divided, full of white milk-like streaks and sharp prickles by the edges: the flowers grow on the top of the stalks and branches full of small heads, commonly turning downwards, of the bigness of an olive, set with very small slender sharp pricks, containing nothing but small purple chives, spreading abroad like those of *Iacca*, with some bluish chives in the middle: the seed followeth, enclosed in down, and is small and grayish like the seed of other Thistles, but it is as clammy as bird-lime. The whole plant perisheth at winter, and reneweth itself by the falling of the seed. I find not this written of. It was first gathered by Boelius in Spain, and imparted unto Mr William Coys, who friendly gave me seeds thereof.

Aracus major baeticus boelii.

It hath small weak four-square streaked trailing branches, two foot high, lesser, but like those of Vetches; whereon grow many leaves without order, and every several leaf is composed of six, seven, or more small sharp pointed leaves, like those of Lentils, set on each side of a middle rib, which middle rib endeth with clasping tendrils: the flowers grow forth of the bosoms of the leaves, but one in a place, almost without any footstalks at all, like those of Vetches, but of a whitish colour, with purple streaks, and of a deeper colour tending to purple towards the nails of the upper cornering leaves: after which follow the cods, which are little above an inch long, not fully so big as those of the wild bean, almost round, and very hairy: wherein is contained about four peas, seldom round, most commonly somewhat flat, and sometimes cornered, of a blackish colour, near as big as field pea, and of the taste of Vetches: the whole herb perisheth when the seed is ripe. This plant Boelius sent to Mr William Coys, who hath carefully preserved the same kind ever since, and friendly imparted seeds to me in Anno 1620.

Legumen pallidum ulissiponensi, nonii brandonii.

This plant is very like, both in stalks, leaves, and cods, to *Aracus major baeticus*, but the flowers of this are of a pale yellow or Primrose colour, and the whole herb smaller, and nothing so hairy. It perisheth also when the seed is ripe. I received the seeds likewise from Mr Coys.

Vicia indica fructo albo. Pisum indicum gerardo.

This Vetch differeth not in anything at all, either in stalks, leaves, cods, fashion of the flowers, or colour thereof, from our common manured Vetch, but that it groweth higher, and the fruit is bigger and rounder, and of a very clear white colour, more like to Peas than Vetches. Mr Gerard was wont to call this Vetch by the name of *Pisum indicum*, or Indian Pea, gotten by him after the publishing of his Herbal, as Mr Coys reported to me. But the said Mr Coys hath in my judgement more properly named it *Vicia fructu albo*: which name I thought most fit to call it by, only adding *indica* to it, from whence it is reported to have been gotten. Jul. 30, 1621.

Astragalus marinus lusitanicus boelii.

This hath five, six, or more round streaked reddish hairy stalks or branches, of a reasonable bigness, proceeding from one root, sometimes creeping or leaning near the ground, and sometimes standing upright, a cubit high, with many green leaves, set by certain distances, out of order like those of *Glaux vulgaris* but lesser, every leaf being composed of fourteen or more round-topped leaves, a little hairy by the edges, set on each side of a long middle rib, which is about nine or ten inches in length, without tendrils: the flowers grow forth of the bosoms of the leaves, near the tops of the stalks, on long round streaked hairy footstalks, of a very pale yellow colour, like those of *Securidaca minor*, but bigger, growing close together in short spikes, which turn into spikes of the length of two or three inches, containing many small three-cornered cods about an inch long, growing close together like those of *Glaux vulgaris*, each cod containing two rows of small flat four-cornered seeds, three or four in each row, of a dark yellowish or leadish colour, like to those of *Securidaca minor*, but three or four times as big, of little taste: the root is small, slender, white, with a few threads, and groweth downright, and perisheth when the seed is ripe. I first gathered seeds of this plant in the garden of my good friend Mr John Parkinson an apothecary of London, Anno 1616.

Faba veterum serratis foliis boelii.

This is like the other wild Bean in stalks, flowers, cods, fruit and clasping tendrils, but it differeth from it in that the leaves hereof (especially those that grow near the tops of the stalks) are notched and indented about the edges like the teeth of a saw. The root also perisheth when the seed is ripe. The seeds of this wild Bean were gathered by Boelius, a Low-country man, in Bætica a part of Spain, and by him sent to Mr William Coys, who carefully preserved them, and also imparted seeds thereof to me, in Anno 1620. July 31, 1621.

Pisum maculatum boelii.

They are like to the small common field Peas in stalks, leaves, and cods; the difference is, the flowers are commonly smaller, and of a whitish green colour: the peas are of a dark gray colour, spotted with black spots in show like to black velvet; in taste they are also like, but somewhat harsher. These peas I gathered, in the garden of Mr John Parkinson, a skilful apothecary of London; and they were first brought out of Spain by Boelius a Low-country man.

Lathyrus æstivus flore luteo.

July 28, 1621. This is like *Lathyrus latiore folio lobelii*, in stalks, leaves, and branches, but smaller: the stalks are two or three foot long, made flat with two skins, with two exceeding small leaves growing on the stalks, one opposite against another: between which spring up flat footstalks, an inch long, bearing two exceeding narrow sharp pointed leaves, three inches long: between which grow the tendrils, divided into

many parts at the top, and taking hold therewith: the flowers are small, and grow forth of the bosoms of the leaves: on each footstalk one flower, wholly yellow, with purple streaks. After each flower followeth a smooth cod, almost round, two inches long, wherein is contained several round peas, somewhat rough, but after a curious manner, of the bigness and taste of field peas, and of a dark sand colour.

Lathyrus æstivus bæticus flore cæruleo boelii.

This is also like *Lathyrus latiore folio lobelii*, but smaller, yet greater than that with yellow flowers, having also adjoining to the flat stalks, two eared sharp pointed leaves, and also two other slender sharp pointed leaves, about four inches long, growing on a flat footstalk between them, an inch and an half long, and one tendril between them divided into two or three parts: the flowers are large, and grow on long slender four-square footstalks from the bosoms of the leaves, on each footstalk one: the upper great covering leaf being of a light blue, and the lower smaller leaves of a deeper blue: which past, there come up short flat cods, with two films, edges, or skins on the upper side, iike those of *Ervilia lobelii*, containing within, four or five great flat cornered peas, bigger than field peas, of a dark sand colour.

Lathyrus æstivus edulis bæticus flore albo boelii.

This is in flat skinny stalks, leaves, footstalks, and cods, with two skins on the upper side, and all things else like the said *Lathyrus* with blue flowers; only the flowers of this are milk white: the fruit is also like.

Lathyrus æstivus flore miniato.

This is also in skinny flat stalks and leaves like the said *Lathyrus latiore folio*, but far smaller, not three foot high: it hath also small sharp-pointed leaves growing by couples on the stalk, between which grow two leaves, about three inches long, on a flat footstalk half an inch long: also between those leaves grow the tendrils: the flowers are coloured like red lead, but not so bright, growing on smooth short footstalks, one on a footstalk: after which follow cods very like those of the common field pea, but lesser, an inch and a half long, containing four, five or six-cornered peas, of a sand colour, or dark obscure yellow, as big as common field peas, and of the same taste.

Lathyrus palustris lusitanicus boelii

Hath also flat skinny stalks like the said *Lathyrus latiore folio*, but the pair of leaves which grow on the stalk are exceeding small as are those of *Lathyrus flore luteo*, and are indeed scarce worthy to be called leaves: the other pair of leaves are about two inches long, above half an inch broad, and grow from between those leaves, on flat footstalks, an inch long: between which leaves also grow the tendrils: the flowers grow on footstalks which are five inches long, commonly two on a footstalk, the great upper covering leaves being of a bright red colour, and the under leaves are somewhat paler: after cometh flat cods, containing seven or eight small round peas, no bigger than a peppercorn, gray and black, spotted before they are ripe, and when they are fully ripe of a black colour, in taste like common peas: the stalks, leaves, footstalks and cods are somewhat hairy and rough.

Lathyrus æstivus dumetorum bæticus boelii.

Hath also flat skinny stalks like the said *Lathyrus latiore folio*, but smaller, and in the manner of the growing of the leaves altogether contrary. This hath also two small sharp pointed leaves, adjoining to the stalk: between which groweth forth a flat middle rib with tendrils at the top having on each side (not one against another) commonly

three blunt-topped leaves, sometimes three on the one side, and two on the other, and sometimes but four in all about an inch and a half long; the flowers grow on footstalks, about two or three inches long, each footstalk usually bearing two flowers, the great covering leaf being of a bright red colour; and the two under leaves of a bluish purple colour: after which follow smooth cods, about two inches long, containing five, six or seven smooth peas, of a brown chestnut colour, not round but somewhat flat, more long than broad, especially those next both the ends of the cod, of the bigness and taste of common field peas.

Juniperus sterilis.

This shrub is in the manner of growing altogether like the Juniper tree that beareth berries, only the upper part of the leaves of the youngest and tenderest boughs and branches are of a more reddish green colour: the flowers grow forth of the bosoms of the leaves, of a yellowish colour, which never exceed three in one row, the number also of each row of leaves: each flower is like to a small bud, more long than round, never growing to the length of a quarter of an inch, being nothing else but very small short crudely chives, very thick and close thrust together, fastened to a very small middle stem, in the end turning into small dust, which flieth away with the wind, not much unlike that of *Taxus sterilis*: on this shrub is never found any fruit. 15 May, 1621.

Additional Notes by Mr John Redman

When the last sheets of this work were on the press, I received a letter from Mr Roger Bradshaw, wherein he sent me enclosed a note concerning some plants mentioned by our author which I have thought fitting here to impart to the reader: he writ not then who it was that writ it, but since hath certified me that it was one Mr John Redman a skilful Herbarist, to whom, though unknown, I give thanks, for his desire to manifest the truth and satisfy our doubts in these particulars.

Because you write that Gerard's *Herbal* is upon a review, I have thought good to put you in mind what I have observed touching some plants which by him are affirmed to grow in our Northern parts: first the plant called *Pyrola*, which he saith groweth in Lansdale, I have made search for it the space of twenty years, but no such is to be heard of.

Sea Campion with a red flower was told him groweth in Lancashire: no such hath ever been seen by such as dwell near where they should grow.

White Foxgloves grow naturally in Lansdale, saith he: it is very rare to see one in Lansdale.

Garden Rose he writes groweth about Leyland in Glover's Field wild: I have learned the truth from those to whom this Glover's Field did belong, and I find no such thing, only abundance of red wild Poppy, which the people call Corn-Rose, is there seen.

White Whortles, as he saith, grow at Crosby in Westmorland, and upon Wendle hill in Lancashire: I have sought Crosby very diligently for this plant and others, which are said to grow there, but none could I find, nor can I hear of any of the country people in these parts, who daily are labouring upon the mountains where the Whortleberries abound, that any white ones have been seen, saving that those which Gerard calls Red Whortles, and they are of a very pale white green until they be full ripe, so as when the ripe ones look red, the unripe ones look white. Cloudberry assuredly is no other than Knoutberry.

Hesketh's Primrose groweth in Clapdale. If Mr Hesketh found it there it was some extraordinary luxurious flower; for now I am well assured no such is there to be seen, but it is only cherished in our gardens.

Gerard saith many of these Northern plants do grow in Crag Close. In the North every town and village near unto any craggy ground both with us and in Westmorland have closes so called, whereby Gerard's Crag Close is kept close from our knowledge.

Chamaemorus, seu Vaccinia nubis. Knot, or Knout-berry, or Cloudberry.

This Knot, Knout, or Cloudberry (for by all these names it is known by us in the North, and taketh the names from the high mountains whereon it groweth; and is perhaps, as Gerard saith, one of the brambles, though without any prickles) hath roots as small as pack-thread, which creep far abroad under the ground, of an overworn red colour, here and there thrusting more fastly into the mossy hillocks tufts of small thready strings, and at certain joints putting up small stalks rather tough than woody, half a foot high, something reddish below, on which do grow two or three leaves of a reasonable sad green colour, with footstalks an inch long, one above another without order: the highest is but little, and seldom will spread open; they are something rugged, crispy, full of nerves in every part, notched about the edges, and with some gashes a little deeper than the rest, whereby the whole leaf is lightly divided into five portions. On the top of the stalk cometh one flower consisting of four, sometimes of five leaves apiece, very white and tender, and rather crumpled than plain, with some few short yellow threads in the midst: it standeth in a little green husk of five leaves, out of which when the flower fades, cometh the fruit, composed of divers grains like that of the bramble, as of eight, ten, or twelve, sometimes of fewer, and perhaps through some mischance but of three or two, so joined, as they make some resemblance of a heart, from whence (it may be) hath grown that error in Gerard of dividing this plant into two kinds: the fruit is first whitish green, after becometh yellow, and reddish on that side next the sun.

It groweth naturally in a black moist earth or moss, whereof the country maketh a fuel we call turf, and that upon the tops of wet fells and mountains among the heath, moss, and brake: as about Ingleborough in the West part of Yorkshire, on Graygreth a high fell on the edge of Lancashire, on Stainmore such a like place in Westmorland, and other such like high places. The leaves come forth in May, and in the beginning of June the flowers: the fruit is not ripe till late in July.

The berries have a harsh and something unpleasant taste.

Heath Matweed

* *Spartum nostras parvum* Lobelij.
Heath Mat-weed.
Pag. 41. lib. 1. Cap. 34. the fifth.



Fig. 2259. Heath Matweed

In August whilst this work was in the press, and drawing to an end, I and Mr William Broad were at Chislehurst with my oft mentioned friend Mr George Bowles, and going over the heath there I observed this small *Spartum* whose figure I here give, and whereof you shall find mention, in the place noted under the title of the figure; but it is not there described, for that I had not seen it, nor could find the description thereof in any author, but in Dutch, which I neither had, nor understood. Now this little Matweed hath some small creeping stringy roots: on which grow somewhat thick heads, consisting of three or four leaves, as it were wrapped together in one skin, biggest below, and so growing smaller upwards, as in *Schænanth*, until they grow up to the height of half an inch, then these rushy green leaves (whereof the longest scarce exceeds two inches) break out of these whitish skins wherein they are wrapped, and lie along upon the ground, and amongst these grows up a small grassy stalk some handful or better high, bending back the top, which carries two rows of small chaffy seeds. It is in the perfection about the beginning of August.

Some Figures previously Omitted

This work was begun to be printed before such time as we received all the figures, from beyond the seas, which was the occasion I omitted these following in their fitting places: but thinking it not fit to omit them wholly, having them by me, I will give you them with their titles, and the references to the places whereto they belong.

Cyperus Indicus, sine Curcuma.
Turmericke.
Pag. 33. Lib. 1. Cap. 27.



Fig. 2257. Turmeric

Juncus minor capitulis Equiseti.
Club-Rush.
Pag. 35. Lib. 1. Cap. 29. the fifth.

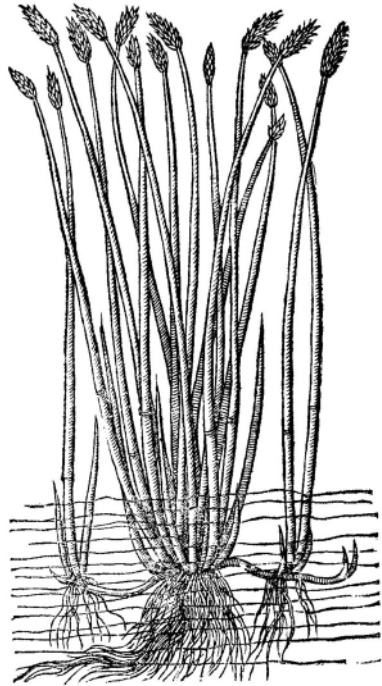


Fig. 2258. Club-Rush

Schœnanthi flores.
The flowers of Camel's Hay.
Pag. 43. Lib. 1. cap. 35. the fifth.



Fig. 2260. Flowers of Camel's-Hay

FINIS

Glossary

Of obsolete words, or words used in an obsolete sense

Abstersion	Cleaning or scouring
Abstersive	Having a cleansing or purging nature
Acin	One of the individual sections of which a fruit like the blackberry is formed.
Adjutories	Substances added to a medicine in order to increase or assist the action of another ingredient.
Adust	Scorched or dried by heat
Adustion	Scorching or drying by heat
Ægilops	An ulcer in the inner corner of the eye
Ague	Malaria
Alexipharmical	Being an antidote against poisons
Allay	To dilute
Allege	To advance as evidence or in argument.
Almonds in the throat	Tonsils
Ancome	A small sore or boil
Angina	Tonsilitis or swollen neck glands
Aposteme	An abscess
Argema	An ulcer on the eyeball
Astonied	Numbed
Astriction	Binding together
Available	Effective
Axungia	Goose grease
Baggage	Filth or refuse
Banquet	A sweetmeat
Barrow	A castrated pig
Bastard	A strong sweet Spanish wine
Beach	Shingle, pebbles by the seashore
Bear-worm	A centipede or hairy caterpillar
Bewray	To expose or reveal
Bezoar-stone	A hard stone-like deposit found in the digestive system of certain ruminants, as goats, llamas, etc.; believed to have great effect as an antidote to poisons.

Bifid	Divided into two parts
Bird-lime	A sticky substance used for catching birds, by smearing it on twigs on which they perch, and are stuck fast.
Bletch	Shoe blacking
Blowing	Blossoming
Blunket	Greyish blue
Bole Armeniac	An astringent clay from Armenia, used as an antidote and styptic.
Bombast	Cotton-wool
Botch	A swelling, wen or tumour
Bray	To crush in a mortar
Buckler	A shield
Bunny	A lump or soft watery swelling of a joint
Burgundian cross	A St. Andrew's cross, one in the shape of the letter X
Bursting	Hernia
Calcitheos	Litharge (Lead oxide)
Calends	The first of the month
Candia, Candy	Crete
Capillary	Hair-like
Caria	A region now in south-western Turkey
Carinated	Having a central ridge, like the keel of a boat
Carole	A syphilitic sore
Caudle	A warm drink consisting of thin gruel, mixed with wine or ale, sweetened and spiced.
Cellar	A store room
Censure	To decide definitively
Cerecloth	A cloth impregnated with wax or ointment.
Cerot	A mixture of wax and tallow used as a basis for ointments
Ceruse	White lead, a mixture of lead monoxide and lead carbonate
Chamfered	Grooved
Champion	Fertile open country
Chap	A jaw
Cheer	Face, appearance
Chiches	Chickpeas
Chimetla	Chilblains

Chincough	Whooping cough or pertussis
Chirurgion	A surgeon
Chirurgery	Surgery
Chives	(If not the herb of the onion family) Thread-like stamens or pistils of a flower.
Chœrada	The swellings of scrofula or King's evil
Choler	Bile
Chylisma	The juice of a plant boiled until thick
Cimolia	A kind of soft clay like fuller's earth
Classis	A group of plants classed together; what modern botanists call a <i>taxon</i>
Clog	A tuber
Clout	A piece of cloth
Clown	A peasant or countryman
Clyster	An enema
Cod	Of a plant, a seed-pod; of a man, a testicle.
Collyrium, Collyrie	An eye-wash
Commodity	Ease of being obtained
Concocted	Digested
Cony-berry	A rabbit warren
Copperas	Sulphate of iron
Courses	(Of a woman) Menstrual flow
Cousin german	A first cousin
Crag	A projecting rough piece of stone or the like
Crambling	Twisting about while creeping along the ground
Cray	A disease of hawks, whose symptoms are severe constipation.
Cross Week	The sixth week after Easter, the Thursday of which is the Feast of the Ascension of Jesus Christ
Crudities	Defined as "Imperfect concoction of the humours"
Cubit	About 18 inches or 45 centimetres
Cuit	Sweet wine boiled down until it is thick
Degree	As in e.g. <i>Galen maketh them hot in the third degree, and dry in the second degree &c.:</i> "Upon the subject both of simple medicines, and of compounding them, Galen wrote many treatises; and he

	<p>exercised the utmost stretch of imagination in determining the properties of simples. For these properties were deduced from the four primary qualities of hot, cold, moist, and dry, and were conceived by him to exist each in four different degrees. Thus the quality of hot, for instance, was possessed by different substances in the first, second, third, or fourth degree. Chicory was believed to be cold in the first degree, and pepper to be hot in the fourth degree. By the different combinations of these qualities, in their different degrees, he supposed that all medicines operated; and he even explained the sensible qualities of certain substances, such as sour, salt, acrid, &c. as depending upon the primary qualities just mentioned. Thus saltiness, he said, originated in the principle of heat: bitterness he deduced from dryness; sourness from cold; &c."</p> <p>From <i>The Cyclopædia, Or, Universal Dictionary of Arts, Sciences, and Literature</i> by Abraham Rees (1824)</p>
Delay	To dilute
Delayed	Weakened or diluted
Deleterey	Noxious, deleterious
Depured	Purified
Desired sickness	Menstruation, in cases of amenorrhoea or delayed menarche.
Dial	A navigator's compass
Discuss	To dissolve, disperse or drive away.
Divers	Several
Dodkin	A bud or shoot
Doted	Decayed internally
Dram	One eighth of an apothecary's ounce, or about 3.9 g.
Earsh	A stubble field
<i>Electuario Aromaticum</i>	A medicine compounded of aromatic herbs and spices, with honey
Electuary	A medicine made by mixing a drug with honey or thick syrup
Empiric	A quack doctor
Emplastic	Adhesive, glutinous
Enteroccele	A internal hernia where the small intestine has ruptured through its containing membrane
Epinyctides	Pustules which appear only at night
Eschar	A dry brown dead patch on the skin, caused by a burn or some corrosive substance.
Falked	Curved

Falling sickness	Epilepsy
Feculent	Polluted with filth
Fell	The skin of an animal
Felon	A sore on the skin, like a boil, but smaller
Ferulous	Resembling or related to Fennel
Flash	Watery
Floating	Having scum floating on the top
Flowers	(Of a woman) Menstrual flow
Flux	A discharge; if substance is not specified, of bloody excrements i.e. dysentery
Foggy	Mossy or marshy
French pox, French disease	Syphilis
Friezed	Covered with a downy coating
Fuliginous	Sooty
Fundament	The anus
Gagate Lapide	Jet, a black semiprecious stone
Galbineous	Yellowish in colour
Gallipot	A small glazed pot used for holding medicine etc.
Gang Week	The sixth week after Easter, the Thursday of which is the Feast of the Ascension of Jesus Christ
Gargarise	To gargle
Gargarism	A gargle
Garner	A storehouse for grain or other food.
Garum	A salty condiment prepared from fish offal; Thai fish sauce is the modern equivalent.
Good-morrow	Something trifling or unimportant
Grain	(Measure) One 480 th of an apothecary's ounce, or about 65 mg.
Graver	A maker of engravings or woodcuts.
Grim the Collier	A character in old songs, plays and nursery rhymes; he sold coal in Croydon and was involved in various adventures
Gum elemi	The resin of various tropical trees used for making plasters, ointments and varnish. It has a piny and lemony smell.
Handful	4 inches, or approximately 10.2 cm
Haw	(Of the eye) a film-like growth on the cornea

Helvetian	Swiss
Hicket	Hiccups
Hippocras bag	A conical cloth bag used as a strainer
Horse-leech	A horse doctor
Hose	The sheath enclosing a seed-head or inflorescence
Hoven	Swollen
Huckle	The hips
Hydromel	Honey and water mixed
Imbided	Steeped in liquid until it has been absorbed
Impertinent	Irrelevant
Impostume	An abscess
Incarnative	Promoting the growth of flesh
Inoculated	Propagated by bud-grafting
Jade	A worn-out horse
Joan Silver Pin	According to Marriam-Webster "probably from English dialect <i>Joan's silver pin</i> , an article of beauty in a sordid setting; from the fact that this showy flower is often found among weeds. " Also a character in Thomas Middleton's <i>The Black Book</i> ; she was "Fair without and foul within"
Keel	A brewing vessel
Kernel	An enlarged lymph gland in the neck or groin.
Kex	The hollow stem of a plant
Kibed	Afflicted with chilblains
Kine	Cattle, specifically bovine
King's Evil	Scrofula, an infection of the lymph nodes in the neck by the tuberculosis bacterium. It was so called because it was believed that being touched by a King would cure it.
Knop	A flower-bud
Lady Day	One of the feasts of the Virgin Mary: March 25th, the Annunciation; Aug. 15th, the Assumption; Sep. 8th, the Nativity; or Dec. 8th, the Immaculate Conception
Lask	Diarrhoea
Leasing	Telling lies
Lenitive	Soothing
Lentils	Freckles
Lepry	Leprosy

Lichen	A skin disease involving patches of reddish bumps which itch intensely.
Liefland, Livland	An area on the eastern shore of the Gulf of Riga, in the Baltic Sea, now divided between Latvia and Estonia.
Lieger	An ambassador
Limmer	A manuscript illuminator
Link	A torch made of tow and pitch, used for guiding people on the street at night
Litharge of gold	A mixture of white lead (lead carbonate) and red lead (lead tetroxide)
Lithy	Pliable
Loafed	Having a compact head, resembling a loaf of bread.
Loam	A mixture of clay, sand and straw, used for plastering and making bricks
Loblolly	A kind of thick soup
Lohoch	A cough syrup
Lousy evil	An ailment which causes the body to be infested with great numbers of lice.
Marchpane	Marzipan
Massicot	Yellow lead oxide
Massilia	Marseille
Massilians	People of Marseille and surrounding districts
Matrix	The womb. <i>Sickness of the matrix</i> = hysteria
Mattering	Oozing pus
Medullous	Pithy
Merry-gall	A sore caused by chafing of the skin
Mesaraic, Mesaraical	Relating to the mesentery, a membrane surrounding the intestines.
Metheglin	Mead flavoured with spices
Midland Sea	The Mediterranean
Milt	The spleen
Mithridate	A compound of many different ingredients, believed to be a universal antidote against all poisons.
Morphew	A scurfy or leprous skin condition, usually of the face.
Mother	The womb
Mucronata cartilago	The xiphoid process

Mundify	To clean a wound or sore of noxious matter.
Murr	Excessive production of mucus from the nose
Murrey	A purplish red colour
Muscatel	A strong sweet wine made from Muscat grapes
Nail	The narrower part of a petal, which is joined to the stalk or base of the flower
Nave	The central hub of a wooden wheel, into which the axle is inserted
Neeze	To sneeze
Nemausium	Nîmes, a city in the South of France
Nervous	(Of a leaf) Having prominent veins
Nitre	Sodium carbonate, <i>not</i> potassium nitrate
Node	A hard swelling, especially on a joint afflicted with arthritis or gout.
Norembega	A vaguely defined area somewhere in eastern Canada or USA.
Nugament	A small or trivial thing
Œdemata	Fluid-filled swellings or tumours
Oil of vitriol	Concentrated sulphuric acid
Olivet	An olive grove
Oppilation	A stopping or obstruction
Orient	Brilliant or brightly shining
Ounce	The apothecary's ounce was approximately 31 grams, which is about 10% heavier than the avoirdupois ounce of 28.35 g. used today.
Overflown	Flooded
Oxycrate	Vinegar diluted with water
Oxymel	A mixture of vinegar and honey
Painful	Painstaking
Pale	A fence
Palmer-worm	A large hairy caterpillar
Pamphylia	A region now in south-eastern Turkey
Panicle	A spike of flowers
Pantofles	Slippers
Pappose	Of a seed, having a feather-like appendage to allow it to be carried away by the wind

Parbreak	Vomit
Pearl	(Of the eye) a cataract
Peevish	Stupid or crazy
Pennyweight	One twentieth of an apothecary's ounce, or approximately 1.5 grams
Per accidens	Accidentally
Perting	Standing upright
Phlegmon	A boil or similar inflammatory tumour
Phthisis	Tuberculosis of the lungs
Phymata	Tuberculous swellings
Physic	Medicine
Physical	Medicinal
Pilled	Skinned or peeled
Pilling	The skin or bark
Pineapple	A pine-cone
Pituitous	Caused by or containing excess of phlegm
Pointel	A pistil (or sometimes, a stamen) of a flower
Pomander	A small cloth bag, or a box with many small holes, filled with aromatic herbs, and carried on the person or hung in a room or wardrobe to perfume the air.
Pontic	a) Sour and astringent <i>or</i> b) Of Pontus, a region in Asia Minor
Populeon	An ointment made from Poplar buds.
Pose	A cold in the head
Posset	A warm drink consisting of rich milk, mixed with wine or ale, sweetened and spiced.
Precious	Afflicted with carbuncles or similar swellings
Pretermit	To omit
Privy maim	An injury to the private parts
Pterygium	A (usually harmless) growth of pink tissue in the corner of the eye. Also called a haw
Pugil	A small handful
Pullen	Poultry
Pulsy	Tasting like peas or beans
Purples	Purpura, an ailment characterised by purple spots, caused by bursting of small blood vessels under the skin

Pursy	Asthmatic, short-winded
Push	A boil or pustule
Quacksalver	A quack doctor
Quartan	A fever recurring every third (fourth, by inclusive reckoning which is no longer used) day
Quickset	A hedge
Quitter	Pus
Rankle	To fester, become ulcerated
Rathe	Early
Rear	(Of eggs) very lightly cooked.
Reds	Menstrual flow
Reins	Kidneys
Remove	To transplant
Rhaetia	Eastern Switzerland and nearby areas of Bavaria and Austria
Rim	The peritoneum, a membrane surrounding the abdominal organs
Rogation Week	The sixth week after Easter, the Thursday of which is the Feast of the Ascension of Jesus Christ
Rosinniness	Resinousness
Ruby	A large, bright red boil or pimple on the face
Saint Anthony's Fire	Erysipelas, a streptococcal infection causing reddish inflamed patches on the skin; or any similar ailment
Saintonge	A former province of France, between the rivers Gironde and Loire
Sal gemmæ, Salgem	Rock salt
Salve colour	Dark brown
Sandarac	Red arsenic sulphide
Sanguine	Of, or resembling, blood; blood-coloured
Sanguinolent	Bloody
Sanguis draconis	"Dragon's blood:" the resin of the dragon tree (<i>Dracæna draco</i>); also used of other red juices.
Sanies	A thin pus or fluid discharge
Sanious	Oozing a thin pus or fluid discharge
Saucefleme	A swelling of the face accompanied by inflammation
Saunders	Red sandalwood
Scab of Naples	Syphilis

Gerard's Herbal Volume 5

Scirrhus	A hard and painless tumour
Scoggin's heirs	Farts
Scolopender	A centipede
Scouring	Violent diarrhoea
Scruple	One twenty-fourth of an apothecary's ounce, or about 1.3 grams
Searced	Sieved
Secondine	The afterbirth or placenta
Sere	Withered
Serpigo	Ringworm (Tinea), a fungal disease of the skin
Several	Separate
Share	The groin
Shiver	A splinter of stone
Siege	Excrement or excretion
Simple	A medicinal herb
Simpling	Collecting plants for medical use
Sith	Since
Sleightly	Skilfully
Smitted	Infected with smut disease
Sod, Sodden	Boiled
Soluble	Not constipated
Sound of a fish	A swim-bladder
Span	Nine inches, or approximately 23 cm
Spather	A spatula
Spature	A spatula
Spittle	A hospital
Squat	A violent jolt or jar.
Squinancy, squincy	Illness: Tonsilitis; Plant: Blackcurrant
Stammel	Red
Staphyloma	An inflammation of the eye which results in it bulging out of its socket
Stean	A large earthenware pot with two handles
Stones	Testicles
Strangury	Slow and painful flow, or complete stoppage, of urine.

Stripe	A blow with a whip, cane, or similar weapon; the welt produced by it.
Stufe	A piece of cloth etc. made very hot with boiling water, for applying to a sore or swelling.
<i>Sub præputio</i>	Under the foreskin
Succade, sucket	Fruit or nuts preserved in sugar or syrup.
Succedaneum, (pl. Succedanea)	A substitute
Sugar roset	A sweetmeat of crystallised sugar flavoured with rose-water
Surculous	Having or producing shoots
Surname	A nickname
Swart	Blackish or dark-coloured
Tansy	(If not the name of a plant) A custard pudding
Tare	The common vetch (<i>Vicia sativa</i>) or its seed
Temperature	Degree of "hotness" or "coldness" – see <i>Degree</i> above
Terms	(Of a woman) Menstrual flow
Terra Sigillata	A reddish astringent clay from Lemnos
Tertian	A fever recurring every second (third, by inclusive reckoning which is no longer used) day
Testern	A sixpenny piece
Tetter	An itchy skin rash
Thrum	A bunch of loose threads, or the stamens of a flower resembling such
Treacle	Generally, any kind of medicine; more specifically, a salve composed of a number of different ingredients, regarded as useful against a wide variety of ailments
Treacle of Vipers	A medicine containing, amongst other ingredients, viper's flesh. It was believed to be a sovereign antidote against poisons, and especially snakebite
Trochisk	A tablet or pastille
Tunned	Brewed
Tympany	Swelling of the abdomen caused by gas in the digestive tract.
Unsavoury	Tasteless and scentless
Untoiled	Uncultivated
Vallesians	Inhabitants of the Valais, an area in Southern Switzerland and the contiguous part of Italy
Venenate	Poisonous

Gerard's Herbal Volume 5

Verjuice	Sour apple or grape juice
Vindelicia	An area now in southern Germany, east of the Black Forest
Vulnerary	A medicine used for healing wounds
Wamble	Of the belly, to seem to move about within the body, as happens with acute nausea.
Wambling	Nausea
Warden	A large variety of pear
Watchet	A light blue colour
Welt	A narrow strip of material put on the edge of a garment, etc., as a border, binding, or hem; a frill, fringe, or trimming. (OED)
Whites	Leucorrhoea, a whitish purulent discharge from a woman's genitals.
Whitlow	An inflamed sore beside or under the fingernail or in a finger joint.
Wimble	A gimlet or drill-bit
Writhen	Twisted
Yard	The penis. <i>Conduit of the yard</i> : The urethra
Yexing	Hiccuping

Glossary of Latin descriptive words in plant names.

Gerard and Johnson wrote before Linnaeus' binomial system, but the standard way of naming plants in their day was (name of plant in Latin) + (descriptive words, often several of them.) For example in Chap. 6 of Book 2, *Rapistrum flore albo erucae foliis* means *Rapistrum (Radish) with white flowers, and leaves like Eruca (Rocket)*. This glossary gives the meanings of the descriptive words.

Names of other plants (as Rocket in the example above) are not shown.

Note that the endings of many of these words change to agree with the gender or case of the preceding word; for example, *albus*, *alba*, *album*, *albo* all mean white.

Also that *-que* added to the end of a word means *and*, *-ior* means *more* and *-issimus* means *most*.

<i>Abortiva</i>	Premature
<i>Acaulis</i>	Without a stem
<i>Acetabulum</i>	Of the hip-socket
<i>Acetosa</i>	Sour-tasting
<i>Acroschiston</i>	Split at the top
<i>Aculeis</i>	Stinging
<i>Acutum</i>	Sharp
<i>Adulterina</i>	False
<i>Ægyptius</i>	Of Egypt
<i>Æstivalis, æstiva</i>	Of summer
<i>Agrestis</i>	Of the fields or countryside
<i>Agria</i>	Wild
<i>Alba</i>	White
<i>Albida</i>	Whitish
<i>Aldroandi</i>	Of Ulisse Aldrovandi, an Italian botanist (d. 1605)
<i>Alopecuri</i>	Of foxes
<i>Alpinum</i>	Of the Alps
<i>Alterum</i>	Other
<i>Altilis</i>	Fat
<i>Altissimus</i>	Highest
<i>Amarum</i>	Bitter
<i>Ambarvalis</i>	Relating to the ceremony of Rogation, a Church procession and service celebrated during the three days before Ascension Thursday. This is forty days after Easter, and so falls in May or early June.

Gerard's Herbal Volume 5

<i>Amerina</i>	Of Ameria, (modern name Amelia), a town in central Italy
<i>Amæno</i>	Delightful
<i>Amoris</i>	Of love
<i>Amygdaloides</i>	Almond-like
<i>Anglica, anglicana, anglorum</i>	Of England
<i>Angustifolia</i>	Narrow-leaved
<i>Apulei</i>	Of Apuleius, author of a herbal about 400 AD.
<i>Aquaticus, aquatile</i>	Of water
<i>Arborea, arborescens</i>	Tree-like
<i>Arenolis</i>	Of sand
<i>Arvensis, arvorum</i>	Of tillage fields
<i>Asininus</i>	Of a donkey
<i>Asper</i>	Rough
<i>Asperior</i>	More rough or jagged
<i>Assurgens</i>	Rising up
<i>Atrarubente</i>	Blackish red
<i>Atropurpurescens</i>	Blackish purple
<i>Atticus</i>	Of Attica, the area around Athens in Greece
<i>Attollens</i>	Rising up
<i>Aurea</i>	Golden
<i>Auricomus</i>	Golden-haired
<i>Auriculae</i>	Ears
<i>Austriacus</i>	Of Austria
<i>Aut</i>	Or
<i>Aut potius</i>	Or rather
<i>Avicennæ</i>	Of Abu Sina, known in the West as Avicenna, a Persian physician and naturalist of the 10 th & 11 th Centuries.
<i>Bacca</i>	Berry
<i>Bacciferum</i>	Berry-bearing
<i>Bætica</i>	Of Boeotia, an area of Greece north of Athens
<i>Barbarum</i>	Of Barbary, strictly North Africa west of Egypt, but often used in a more general sense to mean any Arab country
<i>Batrachioides</i>	Frog-like
<i>Belgarum</i>	Of the Belgians

<i>Biflorum</i>	Two-flowered or twice-flowering
<i>Boelii</i>	Of Boelius, a Dutch contemporary of Johnson.
<i>Borussicum</i>	From Prussia
<i>Bosci</i>	Of the woods
<i>Botryodes</i>	Like a bunch of grapes
<i>Brabantica</i>	Of Brabant, an area now divided between France, Belgium and the Netherlands
<i>Brevioribus</i>	With shorter
<i>Bubonium</i>	Of buboes, which are swellings of inflamed lymph glands in the groin
<i>Bubula</i>	Of a cow or ox
<i>Bulbosa</i>	Bulbous in shape or having bulbs
<i>Bursa</i>	A purse
<i>Cæli</i>	Of the sky
<i>Cærulea</i>	Blue
<i>Calamistrato</i>	Curled
<i>Calicutium</i>	Of Calicut, a city in India, also called Kozhikode
<i>Cameraria</i>	Climbing
<i>Campestris</i>	Of the fields
<i>Candido</i>	Pure white
<i>Caninum</i>	Of dogs
<i>Cantabrica</i>	Of Cambridge
<i>Capillaris</i>	Hairy, hair-like
<i>Capitata</i>	Headed
<i>Capite</i>	Head
<i>Cardamantica</i>	Like Cress
<i>Cardiaca</i>	Of the heart
<i>Castoris</i>	Of a beaver
<i>Caulis</i>	With a stem
<i>Cava</i>	Hollow
<i>Centunculi</i>	A patchwork of different colours
<i>Ceratites</i>	Horned
<i>Cerebrum</i>	Of the brain
<i>Cervi</i>	Of deer

<i>Chalcedonica</i>	Of Chalcedon, a suburb of Istanbul now called Kadikoy
<i>Chamæ-</i>	Dwarf
<i>Chela</i>	A claw
<i>Chironium</i>	Of Chiron the centaur
<i>Cilicia</i>	Of Cilicia, a Roman province encompassing what is now the eastern part of the south coast of Turkey
<i>Citrina</i>	Lemon-yellow
<i>Clavellata, Clavatus</i>	Club-shaped
<i>Clusii</i>	Of Carolus Clusius (1526–1609) a French/Dutch botanist who wrote extensively on plants.
<i>Clypeatum</i>	Resembling a round shield
<i>Cocciger, Coccifera</i>	Scarlet-bearing
<i>Coccinia</i>	Scarlet coloured
<i>Cognata</i>	Known as
<i>Cognatum</i>	Related to
<i>Columbinum</i>	Of doves
<i>Comoso</i>	Long-haired
<i>Concava</i>	Hollow
<i>Constantinopolitanum</i>	Of Istanbul
<i>Convallium</i>	Of the valley
<i>Cordatum</i>	Heart-shaped
<i>Cordi</i>	Of the heart, or of Valerius Cordus, (1515-1544) whose <i>Dispensatorium</i> , one of the greatest early modern pharmacopoeias was published in 1546.
<i>Corniculatum</i>	Horned
<i>Corymbifera</i>	Having berries like Ivy
<i>Coxendicum</i>	Of the hips
<i>Crassus</i>	Thick, fleshy
<i>Crenato</i>	Notched
<i>Creticum</i>	Of Crete
<i>Crispum</i>	With curled leaves
<i>Cruciata</i>	Crossing or cross-shaped
<i>Cuculi</i>	Of the cuckoo
<i>Culinaria</i>	Used in cooking
<i>Cypria</i>	Of Cyprus

<i>Dæmonum</i>	Of demons
<i>Dalechampii</i>	Of Jacobus Dalechampius (Jacques Dalechamp), 1513-1588, a French physician, botanist and scholar.
<i>Damascena</i>	Of Damascus
<i>Daphnoides</i>	Like Bay or Laurel
<i>Decima</i>	Tenth
<i>Denticulatus</i>	Toothed
<i>Diaboli</i>	Of the Devil
<i>Dioscoridis</i>	Of Dioscorides, a 1 st Century AD Greek medical writer
<i>Dissectis</i>	Deeply cut
<i>Distincta</i>	Separate
<i>Domestica</i>	Of the household
<i>Dulcis</i>	Sweet
<i>Dumetorum</i>	Of thorn bushes or hedges
<i>Duracina</i>	Having hard fruit
<i>Durius</i>	Harder
<i>Echinata</i>	Prickly
<i>Edulis</i>	Edible
<i>Effigio</i>	Shaped like
<i>Elegantissimus</i>	Most elegant
<i>Enneaphyllos</i>	Having nine leaves
<i>Erectior</i>	More upright
<i>Erraticum</i>	Wandering
<i>Excelsa</i>	Very high
<i>Exigua</i>	Slender
<i>Exoticum</i>	Foreign
<i>Fabago</i>	Like beans
<i>Facie</i>	Appearance
<i>Falcata</i>	Like a scythe-blade
<i>Fatua, fatuina</i>	Simple, foolish
<i>Ferens</i>	Bearing
<i>Ferruginea</i>	Iron-coloured
<i>Ferulaceum</i>	Like Fennel
<i>Fibrinum</i>	Of a beaver

<i>Fimbriatis</i>	Fibrous
<i>Fistula</i>	Having a tube
<i>Flammeus</i>	Flaming, fiery
<i>Flandrorum</i>	Of Flanders, an area making up the northern part of modern Belgium
<i>Flavo</i>	Yellow
<i>Florens</i>	Flowering
<i>Flos, Flore</i>	Flower
<i>Flosculus</i>	With little flowers
<i>Fluidum</i>	Flowing
<i>Fœmina</i>	Female. The old herbarists regarded some plants as male and others as female, on what basis is unclear.
<i>Fætida</i>	Stinking
<i>Fætidagarum</i>	Stinking of rotten fish
<i>Foliis</i>	Leaves; in (name of other plant) <i>foliis</i> = having leaves like the other plant
<i>Forficulum</i>	A scissors or shears
<i>Fortis</i>	Strong
<i>Fragiferum</i>	Strawberry-bearing
<i>Frisicum</i>	Of Frisia, an area now in Northern Holland.
<i>Fructum</i>	Fruit
<i>Fruticosior</i>	More shrubby
<i>Fruticosum, frutescens</i>	Shrubby, having many shoots.
<i>Fuchsii</i>	Of Leonhard Fuchs or Fuchsius, (1501–1566), a German physician and botanist whose <i>New Herbal</i> was the first to use accurate and detailed illustrations to identify the plants.
<i>Fugax</i>	Fleeting
<i>Fullonum</i>	Of fullers (workers who clean and prepare cloth after it has been woven)
<i>Furcatum</i>	Forked
<i>Fuscum</i>	Dark-coloured
<i>Galericulata</i>	Having a skull-cap
<i>Galli, Gallica</i>	Of France
<i>Gallinæ</i>	Of hens
<i>Galloprovinciæ</i>	Of Provence, in Southeastern France

<i>Gallorum</i>	Of the French
<i>Geminata</i>	Twinned
<i>Germanicum</i>	Of Germany
<i>Giganteum</i>	Giant
<i>Glabrum</i>	Smooth
<i>Globosus</i>	Globe-shaped
<i>Græcum</i>	Of Greece
<i>Grandius</i>	Great
<i>Gruinale</i>	Crane-like
<i>Guttata</i>	Speckled
<i>Hæmatoides</i>	Like blood
<i>Hederaceum</i>	Like Ivy
<i>Helvetica</i>	Of Switzerland
<i>Heptaphyllos</i>	Seven-leaved
<i>Heraclea, herculea</i>	Of Hercules
<i>Heracleotica</i>	Of Hercules, or of one of the several towns called Heracleia or Heracleum
<i>Herbariorum</i>	Of herbarists
<i>Herbido</i>	Grass-like
<i>Hibernum</i>	Of winter
<i>Hiericontea</i>	Of Jericho
<i>Hierosolymitanus</i>	Of Jerusalem
<i>Hirci, hircinus</i>	Of a billy-goat
<i>Hirsutum</i>	Hairy
<i>Hirundinariæ</i>	Of swallows, swallow-tailed
<i>Hispanica</i>	Of Spain
<i>Hispanorum</i>	Of the Spanish
<i>Hispido</i>	Prickly or bristly
<i>Hortensis</i>	Of the garden
<i>Humilis</i>	Low-growing
<i>Hyemale</i>	Of winter
<i>Illyricus</i>	Of Illyria, the eastern shore of the Adriatic
<i>Ilva</i>	Of Elba, an island in the Mediterranean between Corsica and Italy.

<i>Improbus</i>	Bad, false
<i>Incanum</i>	Grey or hoary
<i>Indium, Indicum</i>	Of India
<i>Iners</i>	Inactive
<i>Infectoria</i>	Used in dyeing
<i>Infernalis</i>	Of Hell
<i>Inguinalis</i>	Of the groin
<i>Inodora</i>	Scentless
<i>Inutilis</i>	Useless
<i>Inversa</i>	Upside-down
<i>Irriguam</i>	Watered, irrigated
<i>Iudaica</i>	Jewish
<i>Laciniatis</i>	Having flaps
<i>Laconia</i>	Of Sparta
<i>Lactea, lactescens</i>	Milky
<i>Lactifica</i>	Milk-making
<i>Lacustris</i>	Of lakes
<i>Læthale</i>	Deadly
<i>Lævis</i>	Light
<i>Lanuginoso</i>	Downy or woolly
<i>Lassulata</i>	Worn out
<i>Latifolium</i>	Broad-leaved
<i>Latiore</i>	Wider
<i>Latissimo</i>	Widest
<i>Lato</i>	Wide
<i>Leguminosa</i>	Pod-bearing, leguminous
<i>Leporina, Leporis</i>	Of hares
<i>Leptophyllon</i>	Slender-leaved
<i>Liburnica</i>	Of Liburnia, an area on the Adriatic coast of Croatia.
<i>Lignosum. Lignea</i>	Woody
<i>Lingua</i>	A tongue
<i>Littoreum</i>	Of the seashore
<i>Lobelii</i>	Of Matthias de Lobel or Lobelius, a Flemish Botanist (d. 1616)

<i>Longissimo</i>	Longest
<i>Lunaris</i>	Of the Moon
<i>Lupina</i>	Of wolves
<i>Lusitanica</i>	Of Lusitania, a Roman province corresponding roughly to modern Portugal.
<i>Lutea</i>	Golden yellow
<i>Lutetiana</i>	Of Paris
<i>Lycnhites</i>	A candle wick
<i>Lycocotonon</i>	Wolf-slayer
<i>Macrorhizon</i>	Large-rooted
<i>Maculostum, maculatum</i>	Stained or marked
<i>Magnus, maius</i>	Large
<i>Major</i>	Larger
<i>Malus</i>	An apple
<i>Maniacum</i>	Insane
<i>Mansue</i>	Soft, gentle
<i>Mansuefacta</i>	Tame
<i>Mariæ, Marianus</i>	Of (the Virgin) Mary
<i>Marina</i>	Of the sea or the seaside
<i>Mas</i>	Male. The old herbarists regarded some plants as male and others as female, on what basis is unclear.
<i>Massiliensium</i>	Of Marseille, in France
<i>Mater</i>	Mother
<i>Matronalis</i>	Of the mother
<i>Matthioli</i>	Of Matthiolum, or Pietro Andrea Mattioli, an Italian botanist and physician of the 16 th Century, who translated and expanded Dioscorides' <i>Materia Medica</i>
<i>Maxima</i>	Largest
<i>Mechliniesne</i>	Of Mechelen, a city in Belgium.
<i>Media</i>	Medium, middle
<i>Mellita</i>	Of honey
<i>Mesuae</i>	Of Mesua, or Masawaiyh, an 8 th -century Persian medical writer.
<i>Mexicanum</i>	Of Mexico
<i>Miniato</i>	Painted with red lead

<i>Minimum</i>	Smallest
<i>Minor</i>	Smaller
<i>Minus</i>	Small
<i>Mirabile</i>	Wonderful
<i>Mithridate</i>	An antidote
<i>Mitius</i>	Mild
<i>Mollior</i>	Softer
<i>Monachi</i>	Of monks
<i>Monspeliensium</i>	Of Montpellier, a city in the South of France
<i>Montanus</i>	Of the mountains
<i>Montis Ceti</i>	Of Mons Cetium, a hill and region in Lower Austria
<i>Mordax</i>	Biting or stinging
<i>Mortua</i>	Dead
<i>Moschata</i>	Smelling like musk
<i>Moysis</i>	Of Moses
<i>Multifido</i>	Divided into many parts
<i>Multiplex</i>	Double-flowered
<i>Muralis, murorum</i>	Of walls
<i>Muricatum</i>	Pointed
<i>Muris, murinum</i>	Of mice
<i>Muscoso</i>	Mossy
<i>Myrsinitis</i>	Resembling or smelling of myrrh
<i>Napifolia</i>	Turnip-leaved
<i>Narbonense</i>	Of Narbonne, a city in the South of France
<i>Nemorum, nemorosus</i>	Of open woodland
<i>Niger, Nigro</i>	Black
<i>Nigricans</i>	Blackish
<i>Niveum</i>	Snowy, of snow
<i>Noctu</i>	By night
<i>Nodosa</i>	With nodes or joints on the stem
<i>Nonum</i>	Ninth
<i>Nostras</i>	Our
<i>Nothum</i>	Bastard
<i>Nutante</i>	Nodding

<i>Obsoniorum</i>	Used for sauces
<i>Obtuso</i>	Blunt
<i>Odoratum</i>	Strong-smelling
<i>Odoriferum</i>	Aromatic
<i>Officinarium, officinalis</i>	Used in medicine
<i>Oleus</i>	Smelling
<i>Omnium</i>	Of everything
<i>Opii odore vehementi</i>	Smelling strongly of opium
<i>Ornans</i>	Decorating, adorning
<i>Pagana</i>	Rustic, of the countryside
<i>Pallida</i>	Pale or colourless
<i>Palustris</i>	Of the swamp
<i>Pannonicum</i>	Of Pannonia, a Roman province encompassing present-day western Hungary, eastern Austria, northern Croatia, north-western Serbia, northern Slovenia, western Slovakia and northern Bosnia and Herzegovina.
<i>Paralius</i>	Growing by the seaside
<i>Pardalianches</i>	Leopard-killing
<i>Parvum</i>	Small
<i>Passerina</i>	Of a sparrow
<i>Pastoris</i>	Of shepherds
<i>Patavinum</i>	Of Padua, a city in Italy
<i>Pelagicum</i>	Of the sea
<i>Peleponnese</i>	Of the Peleponnese, the southern part of mainland Greece
<i>Peltatum</i>	Half-moon shaped
<i>Penæ</i>	Of Pierre Pena, a 16 th Century French herbarist.
<i>Pentagonia</i>	Five-sided
<i>Pentaphylla</i>	Five-leaved
<i>Perampla</i>	Very large
<i>Perdicium</i>	Of partridges
<i>Peregrina</i>	Wandering
<i>Perfoliata</i>	Through the leaf
<i>Perpusillum</i>	Extremely small

<i>Persicum</i>	Of Persia
<i>Perticalis</i>	Used for poles
<i>Peruana, peruviana</i>	Of Peru, or South America generally
<i>Pes</i>	A foot
<i>Petræum</i>	Of stones, either meaning growing in stony ground, or used for treating kidney or bladder stones
<i>Phacoides</i>	Like a lentil
<i>Pinnula</i>	A little plume
<i>Planum</i>	Flat
<i>Plebia</i>	Lowly
<i>Pleno</i>	Full
<i>Plinii</i>	Of Pliny the Elder, a 1 st Century AD Roman writer, author of an encyclopædic <i>Natural History</i>
<i>Poetarum</i>	Of the poets
<i>Polyanthemum, polyanthus</i>	Having many flowers
<i>Polyschides</i>	Having many narrow strips
<i>Polyspermon</i>	Having many seeds
<i>Pomiferum</i>	Apple-bearing
<i>Pompeiana</i>	Of Pompeii
<i>Ponticum</i>	Of Pontus, an area now in Turkey on the south coast of the Black Sea
<i>Porcellia</i>	Of little pigs
<i>Porcinum</i>	Of pigs
<i>Praëmorsa</i>	Bitten off at the end
<i>Præcox</i>	Early appearing or flowering
<i>Prænestina</i>	Of Prænestis, now called Palestrina, a town about 35 kilometres east of Rome.
<i>Praestantiore</i>	More excellent
<i>Pratense, Pratorum</i>	Growing in meadows
<i>Primum</i>	First; either the first described, or else the earliest flowering or appearing
<i>Prior</i>	Earlier
<i>Proveniens</i>	Arising from
<i>Pulcherrima</i>	Most beautiful
<i>Pulchrum</i>	Beautiful

<i>Pullo</i>	Blackish or very dark-coloured
<i>Pumilum</i>	Dwarf
<i>Pumulum</i>	Of wild vines
<i>Punctus</i>	A point or prick
<i>Pungens</i>	Strong-smelling
<i>Punica, Punicea</i>	Of Carthage, an area corresponding to modern Tunisia.
<i>Purpurascens</i>	Purplish
<i>Purpurea</i>	Purple
<i>Pusilla</i>	Very small
<i>Putei</i>	Of a well
<i>Pyriformis</i>	Pear-shaped
<i>Pyxidatus</i>	Like a box or cup
<i>Quartus</i>	Fourth
<i>Quasi</i>	As if
<i>Quernis</i>	Of Oak leaves
<i>Quorundam</i>	Of certain things or people
<i>Radicatum</i>	Rooted
<i>Radice, Radix</i>	Root
<i>Ramosa</i>	Branched
<i>Recentiorum</i>	Fresher
<i>Recta</i>	True, right
<i>Rectum</i>	Upright
<i>Regalis, Regia</i>	Royal
<i>Repens</i>	Creeping
<i>Retuso</i>	Blunt
<i>Rhæas</i>	Flowing
<i>Risus</i>	Laughter
<i>Romana</i>	Of Rome
<i>Romanorum</i>	Of the Romans
<i>Rotundifolium</i>	Round-leaved
<i>Rotundioribus</i>	Rounder
<i>Rubrum, Rubente, Rubellum</i>	Red
<i>Rustica, Rusticanus</i>	Of the countryside

<i>Sacerdotis</i>	Holy
<i>Salamanticum, salamanticensium</i>	Of Salamanca, a city in Spain
<i>Salictarius</i>	Growing among willows
<i>Salutaris</i>	Useful for health
<i>Sanguineum</i>	Bloody
<i>Sanguis draconis</i>	Dragon's Blood, the resin of the Dragon Tree, native to Madeira and the Canary islands; also used of similar substances
<i>Sanguisorba</i>	Blood-stanching
<i>Sardoa</i>	Of Sardinia
<i>Sarracenicæ</i>	Of Saracens i.e. Muslim Arabs
<i>Sativa</i>	Cultivated
<i>Saxatile</i>	Found among rocks
<i>Scabro</i>	Rough
<i>Scaligeri</i>	Of Scaliger
<i>Scansoria</i>	Climbing
<i>Secundum</i>	Second
<i>Segetum</i>	Of cornfields
<i>Semine</i>	With seeds
<i>Sempervirens</i>	Evergreen
<i>Sempervivum</i>	Everlasting
<i>Senescens</i>	Growing old
<i>Septentrionale</i>	Of the North
<i>Seriphium</i>	Of Seriphos, a small rocky island in the Ægean Sea
<i>Serotinus</i>	Late ripening or flowering
<i>Serpentis</i>	Of snakes
<i>Serratifolia</i>	Having toothed leaves
<i>Sessilis</i>	Having no footstalk
<i>Seu</i>	Also called . .
<i>Silesiacum</i>	Of Silesia, a province now in southwestern Poland
<i>Siliqua</i>	A pod or seed-vessel
<i>Siliquastrum, siliquosus</i>	Pod-bearing
<i>Silvarum</i>	Of the woods

<i>Simiana</i>	Of monkeys or apes
<i>Simplex</i>	Single-flowered
<i>Sive</i>	Also called . .
<i>Solutivus</i>	Loosening, purging
<i>Somniferum</i>	Causing sleep
<i>Species</i>	A kind of
<i>Spinosum</i>	Prickly
<i>Spumeum</i>	Foaming or frothy
<i>Spuria</i>	False
<i>Stans</i>	Standing upright
<i>Stella, Stellaria, Stellatum</i>	Star-like
<i>Sterilis</i>	Sterile, not having seeds
<i>Striatum</i>	Striped
<i>Studiosorum</i>	Of scholars
<i>Styriaca</i>	Of Styria, or Steiermark, a province in Austria
<i>Subrubens</i>	Reddish
<i>Suilla</i>	Of pigs
<i>Supercilium</i>	An eyebrow
<i>Supinum</i>	Lying flat
<i>Surrecta</i>	Upright
<i>Sylvaticus</i>	Of the forest
<i>Sylvestris</i>	Wild
<i>Tauricum</i>	Of bulls, or of the Taurus, a mountain range in southern Turkey
<i>Taurinensium</i>	Of Turin, a city in northern Italy.
<i>Tectorum</i>	Of roofs
<i>Tenerior</i>	More delicate
<i>Tenuifolia</i>	Narrow-leaved
<i>Tenuis</i>	Narrow
<i>Terræ</i>	Of the earth
<i>Terrestris</i>	Of the land
<i>Tertium</i>	Third
<i>Tetragonolobus</i>	Having four lobes in the form of a square

<i>Tetraphyllum</i>	Four-leaved
<i>Tinctoria</i>	Used for dyeing
<i>Torminalis</i>	Used for treating colic
<i>Tragi</i>	Of Tragus, pen name of Hieronymus Bock, a 16th Century German botanist and physician
<i>Tridentinum</i>	Of Trent or Trento, a city in Northern Italy
<i>Trimestris</i>	Three-month
<i>Trollius</i>	Globe-shaped
<i>Tuberosa</i>	Having a swollen root, tuber or bulb(s)
<i>Tunctanus</i>	Of Tunis
<i>Tunica</i>	A tunic or undershirt
<i>Umbellatum</i>	Having flowers in an umbel
<i>Umbilicum</i>	Of the navel
<i>Unguentaria</i>	Used for ointments
<i>Urceolaris</i>	Of pitchers
<i>Urens</i>	Burning
<i>Ursi</i>	Of bears
<i>Valdensium</i>	Of the Waldensian Valleys, an area in the Alps in north-western Italy
<i>Valentina</i>	Of Valencia, in Spain
<i>Vel</i>	Or else
<i>Veneris</i>	Of the Goddess Venus, or physical love
<i>Venti</i>	Of the wind
<i>Vermiculata</i>	Full of worms
<i>Verna, vernis</i>	Of spring
<i>Verrucaria</i>	Of warts
<i>Verum</i>	True
<i>Vesicarium</i>	Of the bladder or having bladders
<i>Via</i>	A path or road
<i>Vidua</i>	Bereft
<i>Villoso</i>	Hairy
<i>Viminalis</i>	Used for basket-weaving
<i>Vinciendo</i>	Binding or wrapping around
<i>Virens</i>	Green

<i>Virgata</i>	Staff or stick-like
<i>Virginianus</i>	Of Virginia, or more generally, anywhere in North America
<i>Viridis</i>	Green
<i>Viscosa</i>	Sticky, used for birdlime or glue
<i>Vitæ</i>	Of life
<i>Vitium</i>	Imperfect
<i>Vitraria</i>	Of glass vessels
<i>Vituli</i>	Of a calf
<i>Vulgare, Vulgatis</i>	Common
<i>Vulgatior</i>	More common
<i>Vulgatissimum</i>	Most common
<i>Vulneraria</i>	Of wounds

THE END